Theoretical and Mathematical Physics

Monique Combescure
Didier Robert

# Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics

Springer

Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics

# Theoretical and Mathematical Physics

The series founded in 1975 and formerly (until 2005) entitled *Texts and Monographs in Physics* (TMP) publishes high-level monographs in theoretical and mathematical physics. The change of title to *Theoretical and Mathematical Physics* (TMP) signals that the series is a suitable publication platform for both the mathematical and the theoretical physicist. The wider scope of the series is reflected by the composition of the editorial board, comprising both physicists and mathematicians.

The books, written in a didactic style and containing a certain amount of elementary background material, bridge the gap between advanced textbooks and research monographs. They can thus serve as basis for advanced studies, not only for lectures and seminars at graduate level, but also for scientists entering a field of research.



For further volumes:
www.springer.com/series/720

Monique Combescure • Didier Robert

# Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics

Springer

Monique Combescure
Batiment Paul Dirac
IPNL
Villeurbanne
France

Didier Robert
Laboratoire Jean-Leray
Departement de Mathematiques
Nantes University
Nantes Cedex 03
France

ISSN 1864-5879 e-ISSN 1864-5887
Theoretical and Mathematical Physics
ISBN 978-94-007-0195-3 e-ISBN 978-94-007-0196-0
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0
Springer Dordrecht Heidelberg London New York

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012931507



Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

# Preface

The main goal of this book is to give a presentation of various types of coherent states introduced and studied in the physics and mathematics literature during almost a century. We describe their mathematical properties together with application to quantum physics problems. It is intended to serve as a compendium on coherent states and their applications for physicists and mathematicians, stretching from the basic mathematical structures of generalized coherent states in the sense of Gilmore and Perelomov[1] via the semiclassical evolution of coherent states to various specific examples of coherent states (hydrogen atom, torus quantization, quantum oscillator).

We have tried to show that the field of applications of coherent states is wide, diversified and still alive. Because of our own ability limitations we have not covered the whole field. Besides this would be impossible in one book. We have chosen some parts of the subject which are significant for us. Other colleagues may have different opinions.

There exist several definitions of coherent states which are not equivalent. Nowadays the most well known is the Gilmore–Perelomov [84, 85, 155] definition: a coherent state system is an orbit for an irreducible group action in an Hilbert space. From a mathematical point of view coherent states appear like a part of group representation theory.

In particular canonical coherent states are obtained with the Weyl–Heisenberg group action in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ and the standard Gaussian $\varphi_0(x) = \pi^{1/4}\mathrm{e}^{-x^2/2}$. Modulo multiplication by a complex number, the orbit of $\varphi_0$ is described by two parameters $(q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and the $L^2$-normalized canonical coherent states are

$$\varphi_{q,p}(x) = \pi^{-1/4}\mathrm{e}^{-(x-q)^2/2}\mathrm{e}^{i((x-q)p+qp/2)}.$$

Wavelets are included in the group definition of coherent states: they are obtained from the action of the affine group of $\mathbb{R}$ $(x \mapsto ax + b)$ on a "mother function" $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$. The wavelet system has two parameters: $\psi_{a,b}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}\psi(\frac{x-b}{a})$.

[1] They have discovered independently the relationship with group theory in 1972.

One of the most useful property of coherent system $\psi_z$ is that they are an "over-complete" system in the Hilbert space in the sense that we can analyze any $\eta \in \mathcal{H}$ with its coefficient $\langle \psi_z, \eta \rangle$ and we have a reconstruction formula of $\eta$ like

$$\eta = \int dz\, \tilde{\eta}(z) \psi_z,$$

where $\tilde{\eta}$ is a complex valued function depending on $\langle \psi_z, \eta \rangle$.

Coherent states (being given no name) were discovered by Schrödinger (1926) when he searched solutions of the quantum harmonic oscillator being the closest possible to the classical state or minimizing the uncertainty principle. He found that the solutions are exactly the canonical coherent states $\varphi_z$.

Glauber (1963) has extended the Schrödinger approach to quantum electrodynamic and he called these states *coherent states* because he succeeded to explain coherence phenomena in light propagation using them. After the works of Glauber, coherent states became a very popular subject of research in physics and in mathematics.

There exist several books discussing coherent states. Perelomov's book [156] played an important role in the development of the group aspect of the subject and in its applications in mathematical physics. Several other books brought contributions to the theory of coherent states and worked out their applications in several fields of physics; among them we have [3, 80, 126] but many others could be quoted as well. There is a huge number of original papers and review papers on the subject; we have quoted some of them in the bibliography. We apologize the authors for forgotten references.

In this book we put emphasis on applications of coherent states to semi-classical analysis of Schrödinger type equation (time dependent or time independent). Semi-classical analysis means that we try to understand how solutions of the Schrödinger equation behave as the Planck constant $\hbar$ is negligible and how classical mechanics is a limit of quantum mechanics. It is not surprising that semi-classical analysis and coherent states are closely related because coherent states (which are particular quantum states) will be chosen localized close to classical states. Nevertheless we think that in this book we have given more mathematical details concerning these connections than in the other monographs on that subjects.

Let us give now a quick overview of the content of the book.

The first half of the book (Chap. 1 to Chap. 5) is concerned with the canonical (standard) Gaussian Coherent States and their applications in semi-classical analysis of the time dependent and the time independent Schrödinger equation.

The basic ingredient here is the Weyl–Heisenberg algebra and its irreducible representations. The relationship between coherent states and Weyl quantization is explained in Chaps. 2 and 3. In Chap. 4 we compute the quantum time evolution of coherent states in the semi-classical régime: the result is a squeezed coherent states whose shape is deformed, depending on the classical evolution of the system. The main outcome is a proof of the Gutzwiller trace formula given in Chap. 5.

The second half of the book (Chap. 6 to Chap. 12) is concerned with extensions of coherent states systems to other geometry settings. In Chap. 6 we consider quantization of the 2-torus with application to the cat map and an example of "quantum chaos".

Chapters 7 and 8 explain the first examples of non canonical coherent states where the Weyl–Heisenberg group is replaced successively by the compact group $SU(2)$ and the non-compact group $SU(1,1)$. We shall see that some representations of $SU(1,1)$ are related with squeezed canonical coherent states, with quantum dynamics for singular potentials and with wavelets.

We show in Chap. 9 how it is possible to study the hydrogen atom with coherent states related with the group $SO(4)$.

In Chap. 10 we consider infinite systems of bosons for which it is possible to extend the definition of canonical coherent states. This is used to prove mean-field limit result for two-body interactions: the linear field equation can be approximated by a non linear Schrödinger equation in $\mathbb{R}^3$ in the semi-classical limit (large number of particles or small Planck constant are mathematically equivalent problems).

Chapters 11 and 12 are concerned with extension of coherent states for fermions with applications to supersymmetric systems.

Finally in the appendices we have a technical section A around the stationary phase theorem, and in section B we recall some basic facts concerning Lie algebras, Lie groups and their representations. We explain how this is used to build generalized coherent systems in the sense of Gilmore–Perelomov.

The material covered in these book is designed for an advanced graduate student, or researcher, who wishes to acquaint himself with applications of coherent states in mathematics or in theoretical physics. We have assumed that the reader has a good founding in linear algebra and classical analysis and some familiarity with functional analysis, group theory, linear partial differential equations and quantum mechanics.

We would like to thank our colleagues of Lyon, Nantes and elsewhere, for discussions concerning coherent states. In particular we thank our collaborator Jim Ralston with whom we have given a new proof of the trace formula, Stephan Debièvre, Alain Joye and André Martinez for stimulating meetings.

M.C. also thanks Sylvie Flores for offering valuable support in the bibliography.

To conclude we wish to express our gratitude to our spouses Alain and Marie-France whose understanding and support have permitted to us to spend many hours for the writing of this book.

Lyon and Nantes, France

Monique Combescure
Didier Robert

# Contents

# Chapter 1
# Introduction to Coherent States

**Abstract** In this Chapter we study the Weyl–Heisenberg group in the Schrödinger representation in arbitrary dimension $n$. One shows that it operates in the Hilbert space of quantum states (and on quantum operators) as a phase-space translation. Then applying it to a Schwartz class state of arbitrary profile we get a set of generalized coherent states. When we apply the Weyl–Heisenberg translation operator to the ground state of the $n$-dimensional Harmonic Oscillator, one gets the standard coherent states introduced by Schrödinger (Naturwissenshaften 14:664–666, 1926) in the early days of quantum mechanics (1926). Later the coherent states have been extensively studied by Glauber (Phys. Rev. 131:2766–2788, 1963; Phys. Rev. 130:2529–2539, 1963) for the purpose of quantum optics and it seems that their name comes back to this work. The standard coherent states have been generalized by Perelomov (Generalised Coherent States and Their Applications, 1986) to more general Lie groups than the Weyl–Heisenberg group.

We also introduce the usual creation and annihilation operators in dimension $n$ which are very convenient for the study of coherent states. We show that coherent states constitute a non-orthogonal over-complete system which yields a resolution of the identity operator in the Hilbert space and which allows a computation of the Hilbert–Schmidt norm and of the trace of respectively Hilbert–Schmidt class and trace-class operators.

We study their time-evolution for the quantum Harmonic Oscillator hamiltonian and show that a time evolved coherent state located around phase-space point $z$ is up to a phase a coherent state located around the phase-space point $z_t$, where $z_t$ is the phase-space point of the classical flow governed by the Harmonic Oscillator. This property was described by Schrödinger as the non-spreading of the time evolution of coherent states under the quantum Harmonic Oscillator dynamics.

We also show how to go from the Schrödinger to the Fock–Bargmann representation using the standard coherent states.

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_1, 

## 1.1 The Weyl–Heisenberg Group and the Canonical Coherent States

### *1.1.1 The Weyl–Heisenberg Translation Operator*

Consider quantum mechanics in dimension $n$. Then the position operator $\hat{Q}$ has $n$ components $\hat{Q}_1, \dots, \hat{Q}_n$ where $\hat{Q}_j$ is the multiplication operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ by the coordinate $x_j$. Similarly the momentum operator $\hat{P}$ has $n$ components $\hat{P}_j$ where

$$\hat{P}_j = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \tag{1.1}$$

$\hbar$ is the Planck constant divided dy $2\pi$. $\hat{Q}$ and $\hat{P}$ are selfadjoint operators with suitable domains $\mathcal{D}(\hat{Q})$ and $\mathcal{D}(\hat{P})$.

$$\mathcal{D}(\hat{Q}) = \{u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \mid x_j u(x) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n),\ \forall j = 1, \dots, n\}$$
$$\mathcal{D}(\hat{P}) = \left\{u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \,\middle|\, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_j} \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n),\ \forall j = 1, \dots, n\right\}$$

The operators $\hat{Q}$ and $\hat{P}$ obey the famous Heisenberg commutation relation

$$[\hat{P}_j, \hat{Q}_k] = -\delta_{j,k} i\hbar \tag{1.2}$$

on the domain of $\hat{Q} \cdot \hat{P} - \hat{P} \cdot \hat{Q}$. The bracket $[\hat{A}, \hat{B}]$ is the commutator:

$$[\hat{A}, \hat{B}] = \hat{A}\hat{B} - \hat{B}\hat{A}$$

On the intersection of the domains $\mathcal{D}(\hat{Q}) \cap \mathcal{D}(\hat{P})$ the operator $p \cdot \hat{Q} - q \cdot \hat{P}$ is well defined for $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, where the dot represents the scalar product:

$$p \cdot \hat{Q} = \sum_1^n p_j \hat{Q}_j$$

It is selfadjoint so it is the generator of a unitary operator $\hat{T}(z)$ called the Weyl–Heisenberg translation operator:

$$\hat{T}(z) = \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}(p \cdot \hat{Q} - q \cdot \hat{P})\right) \tag{1.3}$$

Now we use the Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula

**Lemma 1** *Consider two anti-selfadjoint operators $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$ in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, with domains $D(\hat{A})$, $D(\hat{B})$. We assume the following conditions are satisfied*:

(i) *There exists a linear subspace space $\mathcal{H}_0$ dense in $\mathcal{H}$, which is a core for $\hat{A}$ and $\hat{B}$.*

(ii) *$\mathcal{H}_0$ is invariant for* $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$, $e^{t\hat{A}}$, $e^{t\hat{B}}$, $\forall t \in \mathbb{R}$.
(iii) $\hat{A}$ *and* $\hat{B}$ *commute with* $[\hat{A}, \hat{B}]$ *in* $\mathcal{H}_0$ *and* $i[\hat{A}, \hat{B}]$, *well defined in* $\mathcal{H}_0$, *has a selfadjoint extension in* $\mathcal{H}$.

*Then we have*

$$\exp\big(\hat{A}+\hat{B}\big) = \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\big[\hat{A}, \hat{B}\big]\right)\exp\big(\hat{A}\big)\exp\big(\hat{B}\big) \tag{1.4}$$

*Proof* Let us introduce

$$F(t)u = e^{-t^2/2[\hat{A},\hat{B}]}e^{t\hat{A}}e^{t\hat{B}}u$$

where $u \in \mathcal{H}_0$ is fixed. Let us compute the time derivative

$$\begin{aligned} F'(t)u = -t\big[\hat{A}, \hat{B}\big]e^{-t^2/2[\hat{A},\hat{B}]}e^{t\hat{A}}e^{t\hat{B}}u \\ + e^{-t^2/2[\hat{A},\hat{B}]}e^{t\hat{A}}\big(\hat{A}+\hat{B}\big)e^{t\hat{B}}u \end{aligned} \tag{1.5}$$

The only difficulty is to commute $\hat{B}$ with $e^{t\hat{A}}$. But we have, using the commutations assumptions,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\big(e^{t\hat{A}}\hat{B}e^{-t\hat{A}}\big) = e^{t\hat{A}}\big[\hat{A}, \hat{B}\big]e^{-t\hat{A}} = \big[\hat{A}, \hat{B}\big]$$

So we get that

$$F'(t) = \big(\hat{A}+\hat{B}\big)F(t) \tag{1.6}$$

and the formula (1.4) follows. □

Using this formula, one deduces the multiplication law for the operators $\hat{T}(z)$:

$$\hat{T}(z)\hat{T}(z') = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{2\hbar}\sigma(z, z')\right)\hat{T}(z+z') \tag{1.7}$$

where for $z = (q, p)$, $z' = (q', p')$, $\sigma(z, z')$ is the symplectic product:

$$\sigma(z, z') = q\cdot p' - p\cdot q' \tag{1.8}$$

and

$$\hat{T}(z)\hat{T}(z') = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\sigma(z, z')\right)\hat{T}\big(z'\big)\hat{T}(z)$$

which is the integral form of the Heisenberg commutation relation. In particular we have:

$$\big(\hat{T}(z)\big)^{-1} = \big(\hat{T}(z)\big)^* = \hat{T}(-z)$$

since the symplectic product of $z$ by itself is zero.

The fact that the Weyl–Heisenberg unitary operator is a translation operator can be seen in the following lemma:

**Lemma 2** *For any $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ one has*

$$\hat{T}(z)\begin{pmatrix}\hat{Q}\\ \hat{P}\end{pmatrix}\hat{T}(z)^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix}\hat{Q}-q\\ \hat{P}-p\end{pmatrix} \tag{1.9}$$

*Proof* Let us denote $\hat{L}(z) = p\cdot\hat{Q} - q\cdot\hat{P}$ if $z = (q, p)$. We have easily

$$i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}\left(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{it}{\hbar}\hat{L}(z)}\hat{Q}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{it}{\hbar}\hat{L}(z)}\right) = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{it}{\hbar}\hat{L}(z)}\big[\hat{Q}, \hat{L}(z)\big]\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{it}{\hbar}\hat{L}(z)}$$

But we have $[\hat{Q}, \hat{L}(z)] = -i\hbar q$. So we get the formula for $\hat{Q}$. With the same proof we get the formula for $\hat{P}$. □

**Corollary 1**

$$\hat{T}(z) = \mathrm{e}^{-iq\cdot p/2\hbar}\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{\hbar}p\cdot\hat{Q}}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}q\cdot\hat{P}} \tag{1.10}$$

*Proof* Let

$$\hat{U}(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-it^2q\cdot p/2\hbar}\mathrm{e}^{\frac{it}{\hbar}p\cdot\hat{Q}}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{it}{\hbar}q\cdot\hat{P}}$$

Using Lemma 1 we get

$$\frac{d}{dt}\hat{T}(tz) = \frac{d}{dt}\hat{U}(t) = \frac{i}{\hbar}\hat{L}(tz)\hat{U}(t)$$

Hence the corollary follows. □

Let us specify the situation in dimension 1. We introduce:

$$e_1 = \frac{i}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\hat{P}$$
$$e_2 = \frac{i}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\hat{Q}$$
$$e_3 = i\mathbb{1}$$

We easily check that

$$[e_1, e_2] = e_3, \qquad [e_1, e_3] = [e_2, e_3] = 0$$

This means that the operators $\hat{Q},\ \hat{P},\ \mathbb{1}$ generate a Lie algebra denoted by $\mathfrak{h}_1$ which is the Weyl–Heisenberg algebra. The elements of this algebra are defined using triplets of coordinates $(s; x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ by:

$$W = xe_1 + ye_2 + se_3 \tag{1.11}$$

In quantum mechanics it is more convenient to use the following coordinates:

$$W = -\frac{it}{2\hbar}\mathbb{1} + \frac{i}{\hbar}\big(p\hat{Q} - q\hat{P}\big)$$

where the real numbers $t, q, p$ are defined as

$$q = -\sqrt{\hbar}x, \qquad p = \sqrt{\hbar}y, \qquad t = -2\hbar s$$

Then we can calculate the commutator of two elements $W,\ W'$ of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{h}_1$:

**Lemma 3**

$$[W, W'] = \big(xy' - yx'\big)e_3 \tag{1.12}$$

*$\sigma((x, y), (x', y')) = xy' - x'y$ is simply the symplectic product of $(x, y)$ and $(x', y')$.*

*Proof* We simply use Lemma 1. □

For any $W$ in $\mathfrak{h}_1$ we can define the unitary operator $e^W$ and we get a group using (1.4). This group is denoted $\mathbf{H}_1$. It is a Lie group and its Lie algebra is $\mathfrak{h}_1$. The Lie group $\mathbf{H}_1$ is simply $\mathbb{R}^3$ with the non commutative multiplication

$$(t, z)(t', z') = \big(t + t' + \sigma(z, z'), z + z'\big), \quad \text{where } t \in \mathbb{R}, z \in \mathbb{R}^2 \tag{1.13}$$

We deduce (1.13) from an elementary computation. If $W, W' \in \mathfrak{h}_1$ using (1.4) we have

$$e^W e^{W'} = e^{W''}, \quad \text{where } W'' = \frac{1}{2}[W, W'] + W + W'$$

Using the $(t, q, p)$ and $(t', q', p')$ coordinates for $W$ and $W'$ respectively, we get the corresponding coordinates $(t'', q'', p'')$ for $W''$ such that

$$t'' = t + t' + \sigma(z, z'), \qquad z'' = z + z'$$

which is the Weyl–Heisenberg group multiplication (1.13).

In the same way we define the Weyl–Heisenberg algebra $\mathfrak{h}_n$ and its Lie Weyl–Heisenberg group $\mathbf{H}_n$ for any $n \geq 1$.

**The Weyl–Heisenberg Group $\mathbf{H}_n$ and Schrödinger Representation in Dimension $n$** The Weyl–Heisenberg Lie algebra $\mathfrak{h}_n$ is a real linear space of dimension $2n + 1$. Any $W \in \mathfrak{h}_n$ has the decomposition

$$W = -\frac{it}{2\hbar}\mathbb{1} + \frac{i}{\hbar}\big(p \cdot \hat{Q} - q \cdot \hat{P}\big), \quad \text{where } \hat{Q} = \big(\hat{Q}_1, \dots, \hat{Q}_n\big),\ \hat{P} = \big(\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_n\big)$$

$(t; q, p) = (t; z) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ is a coordinates system for $W$. The Lie bracket of $W$ and $W'$, in these coordinates, is

$$[W, W'] = \frac{i}{\hbar}\sigma(z, z')\mathbb{1}$$

This reflects the Heisenberg commutation relations (1.2).

As for $n = 1$ a group multiplication is introduced in $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ to reflect multiplication between operators $e^W$. So, $\mathbf{H}_n$ is the set $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ with the group multiplication

$$(t, z)(t', z') = \big(t + t' + \sigma(z, z'), z + z'\big) \tag{1.14}$$

where $\sigma$ is the symplectic bilinear form in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$:

$$\sigma(z, z') = q \cdot p' - q' \cdot p, \quad \text{if } z = (q, p),\ z' = (q', p')$$

$\mathbf{H}_n$ is a Lie group of dimension $2n + 1$.

The Schrödinger representation is defined as the following unitary representation of $\mathbf{H}_n$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$:

$$\rho(t, z) = \mathrm{e}^{-it/2\hbar}\hat{T}(z), \quad (t, z) \in \mathbf{H}_n$$

In other words the map $(t, z) \mapsto \rho(t, z)$ is a group homomorphism from the Weyl–Heisenberg group $\mathbf{H}_n$ into the group of unitary operators in the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

By taking the exponential of $W$ one recovers the Weyl–Heisenberg Lie group defined above:

$$e^W = \mathrm{e}^{-it/2\hbar} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\big(p\hat{Q} - q\hat{P}\big)\right) = \mathrm{e}^{-it/2\hbar}\hat{T}(z)$$

Recall that $z = (q, p)$.

*Remark 1* The Schrödinger representation is irreducible, this will be a consequence of the Schur Lemma 10. According to the celebrated Stone–von Neumann theorem (see [182]) the Schrödinger representation is the unique irreducible representation of $\mathbf{H}_n$, up to conjugation with a unitary operator, for every $\hbar > 0$.

### *1.1.2 The Coherent States of Arbitrary Profile*

The action of the Weyl–Heisenberg translation operator on a state $u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the following:

$$\big(\hat{T}(z)u\big)(x) = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{2\hbar} q \cdot p\right) \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} x \cdot p\right) u(x - q) \tag{1.15}$$

Physically it translates a state by $z = (q, p)$ in phase space. One has a similar formula for the Fourier transform that we denote $\mathcal{F}$ defined as follows:

$$\mathcal{F}u(\xi) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} x \cdot \xi} u(x)\, dx$$

$$\big(\mathcal{F}\big(\hat{T}(z)u\big)(\xi) = \exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}q\cdot p\right)\exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}q\cdot\xi\right)\mathcal{F}(u)(\xi - p)$$

which says that the state is translated both in position and momentum by respectively $q$ and $p$. Now taking any function $u_0$ in the Schwartz class $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ the coherent state associated to it will be simply

$$u_z(x) = \big(\hat{T}(z)u_0\big)(x) \tag{1.16}$$

A useful example for applications is the following generalized Gaussian function. Le be $\Gamma$ a symmetric complex $n \times n$ matrix such that its imaginary part $\Im\Gamma$ is positive-definite. Then we can take $u_0 = \varphi^{(\Gamma)}$, where

$$\varphi^{(\Gamma)}(x) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n/4}\det{}^{1/4}(\Im\Gamma)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2\hbar}\Gamma x\cdot x} \tag{1.17}$$

## 1.2 The Coherent States of the Harmonic Oscillator

### *1.2.1 Definition and Properties*

They have been introduced by Schrödinger and have been extensively studied and used. They are obtained by taking as reference state $u_0$ the ground state of the harmonic oscillator

$$u_0(x) = \varphi_0(x) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n/4}\exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{2\hbar}\right) \tag{1.18}$$

Thus $\varphi_z := \hat{T}(z)\varphi_0$ is simply a Gaussian state of the form

$$\varphi_z(x) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n/4}\exp\left(-\frac{i}{2\hbar}q\cdot p\right)\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}x\cdot p\right)\exp\left(-\frac{(x-q)^2}{2\hbar}\right) \tag{1.19}$$

$$(\mathcal{F}\varphi_z)(\xi) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n/4}\exp\left(\frac{iq\cdot p}{2\hbar}\right)\exp\left(-i\frac{q\cdot\xi}{\hbar} - \frac{(\xi-p)^2}{2\hbar}\right) \tag{1.20}$$

$\varphi_z$ is a state localized in the neighborhood of a phase-space point $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ of size $\sqrt{\hbar}$ in all the position and momentum coordinates. Then it is a quantum state which is the analog of a classical state $z$ obtained by the action of the Weyl–Heisenberg group $\mathbf{H}_n$ on $\varphi_0$. They are also called canonical coherent states. They have many interesting and useful properties that we consider now.

It is useful to use the standard creation and annihilation operators:

$$\mathbf{a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\hbar}}\big(\hat{Q} + i\hat{P}\big) \tag{1.21}$$

$$\mathbf{a}^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\hbar}}\big(\hat{Q} - i\hat{P}\big) \tag{1.22}$$

$\mathbf{a}^\dagger$ is simply the adjoint of $\mathbf{a}$ defined on $\mathcal{D}(\hat{Q}) \cap \mathcal{D}(\hat{P})$. Furthermore a simple consequence of the Heisenberg commutation relation is that:

$$[\mathbf{a}_j, \mathbf{a}_k^\dagger] = \delta_{j,k} \tag{1.23}$$

Then the Hamiltonian of the $n$-dimensional harmonic oscillator of frequency 1 is

$$\hat{H}_{\text{os}} = \frac{1}{2}(\hat{P}^2 + \hat{Q}^2) = \hbar \sum_{j=1}^{n} \left( \mathbf{a}_j^\dagger \mathbf{a}_j + \frac{n}{2} \right) = \frac{\hbar}{2}(\mathbf{a}^\dagger \cdot \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a}^\dagger) \tag{1.24}$$

It is trivial to check that the ground state $\varphi_0$ of $\hat{H}_{\text{os}}$ is an eigenstate of $\mathbf{a}$ with eigenvalue 0. A question is: are the coherent states $\varphi_z$ also eigenstates of $\mathbf{a}$? The answer is yes and is contained in the following proposition:

**Proposition 1** *Let $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. We define the number $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}^n$ as*

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\hbar}}(q + ip) \tag{1.25}$$

*Then the following holds*

$$\hat{T}(z)\mathbf{a}\hat{T}(z)^{-1} = \mathbf{a} - \alpha \tag{1.26}$$

*Moreover*

$$\mathbf{a}\varphi_z = \alpha\varphi_z \tag{1.27}$$

*Proof* We simply use Lemma 2 to prove (1.26). Then we remark that:

$$\hat{T}(z)\mathbf{a}\hat{T}(z)^{-1}\varphi_z = \hat{T}(z)\mathbf{a}\varphi_0 = 0 = (\mathbf{a} - \alpha)\varphi_z$$ □

The Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula (1.4) is still true for annihilation-creation operators but we need to adapt the proof with the following modifications.

Let $\mathcal{H}_0$ be the linear space spanned by the products $\phi_\alpha(x)\mathrm{e}^{\eta \cdot x}$ where $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^n$ and $\eta \in \mathbb{C}^n$. We can extend the definition of $\hat{T}(z)u$ for every $u \in \mathcal{H}_0$ and $z \in \mathbb{C}^{2n}$.

**Lemma 4** *For every $u \in \mathcal{H}_0$, $z \mapsto \hat{T}(z)u$ can be extended analytically to $\mathbb{C}^{2n}$. Moreover $\hat{T}(z)u \in \mathcal{H}_0$ and we have for every $z, z' \in \mathbb{C}^{2n}$ and every $u \in \mathcal{H}_0$,*

$$\hat{T}(z)\hat{T}(z')u = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{2\hbar}\sigma(z, z')\right)\hat{T}(z + z')u \tag{1.28}$$

*where $\sigma$ is extended as a bilinear form to $\mathbb{C}^{2n} \times \mathbb{C}^{2n}$.*

*Proof* Using formula (1.15), we can extend $\hat{T}(z)u$ analytically to $\mathbb{C}^{2n}$. So we can define

$$\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}(p \cdot \hat{Q} - q \cdot \hat{P})\right)u := \hat{T}(z)u, \quad \text{for } z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{C}^{2n}$$

Now with the same proof as for (1.4), we get that (1.28) is still true for every $z$, $z' \in \mathbb{C}^n$. □

Using (1.28), in the creation and annihilation operators representation we have that

$$\hat{T}(z) = \exp\big(\alpha \cdot \mathbf{a}^\dagger - \bar{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{a}\big) = \exp\left(-\frac{|\alpha|^2}{2}\right) \exp\big(\alpha \cdot \mathbf{a}^\dagger\big) \exp(-\bar{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{a}) \tag{1.29}$$

Recall that by convention of the scalar product $\cdot$ we have:

$$\bar{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{a} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} \bar{\alpha}_j \mathbf{a}_j, \qquad \alpha \cdot \mathbf{a}^\dagger = \sum_{j=1}^{n} \alpha_j \mathbf{a}_j^\dagger$$

Using (1.29) we have, since $\exp(-\bar{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{a})\varphi_0 = \varphi_0$:

$$\varphi_z = \exp\left(-\frac{|\alpha|^2}{2}\right) \exp\big(\alpha \cdot \mathbf{a}^\dagger\big)\varphi_0 \tag{1.30}$$

Two different coherent states overlap. Their overlapping is given by the scalar product in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. We have the following result:

**Proposition 2**

$$\langle \varphi_z, \varphi_{z'} \rangle = \exp\left(i \frac{\sigma(z, z')}{2\hbar}\right) \exp\left(-\frac{|z - z'|^2}{4\hbar}\right) \tag{1.31}$$

*Proof* We first establish a useful lemma:

**Lemma 5**

$$\big\langle \varphi_0, \hat{T}(z)\varphi_0 \big\rangle = \exp\left(-\frac{|z|^2}{4\hbar}\right) \tag{1.32}$$

*Proof* We use (1.29). So we get

$$\big\langle \varphi_0, \hat{T}(z)\varphi_0 \big\rangle = \exp\left(-\frac{|\alpha|^2}{2}\right) \big\langle \varphi_0, \mathrm{e}^{\alpha \cdot \mathbf{a}^\dagger} \mathrm{e}^{-\bar{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{a}} \varphi_0 \big\rangle = \exp\left(-\frac{|z|^2}{4\hbar}\right) \big\| \mathrm{e}^{-\bar{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{a}} \varphi_0 \big\|^2$$

But since $\varphi_0$ is an eigenstate of $\mathbf{a}$ with eigenvalue 0, we simply have

$$\big\| \mathrm{e}^{-\bar{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{a}} \varphi_0 \big\| = 1$$

□

The operator $\hat{T}(z)$ transforms any coherent state in another coherent state up to a phase:

**Lemma 6**

$$\hat{T}(z)\varphi_{z'} = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{2\hbar}\sigma(z,z')\right)\varphi_{z+z'}$$

*Proof* The proof is immediate using (1.7).

The overlap between $\varphi_z$ and $\varphi_{z'}$ is given by:

$$\langle\varphi_z, \varphi_{z'}\rangle = \left\langle\hat{T}(z)\varphi_0, \hat{T}(z')\varphi_0\right\rangle = \exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}\sigma(z,z')\right)\left\langle\varphi_0, \hat{T}\left(z'-z\right)\varphi_0\right\rangle$$

where we have used (1.7). Now using the lemma for the last factor we get the result. □

In the particular case of the dimension $n$ equals one, the $k$th eigenstate $\phi_k$ of the harmonic oscillator (the Hermite function, normalized to unity) is generated by $(\mathbf{a}^\dagger)^k$:

$$\phi_k = (k!)^{-1/2}\left(\mathbf{a}^\dagger\right)^k\varphi_0$$

so that expanding the exponential, formula (1.30) gives rise to the following well-known identity:

$$\varphi_z = \exp\left(-|\alpha|^2/2\right)\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{\alpha^k}{\sqrt{k!}}\phi_k$$

In arbitrary dimension $n$, the operator $(\mathbf{a}_j^\dagger)^k$ excites the ground state of the harmonic oscillator to the $k$th excited state of the $j$th degree of freedom. More precisely let $\mathbf{k} = (k_1, \dots, k_n) \in \mathbb{N}^n$ be a multiindex. The corresponding eigenstate of $\hat{H}_{\text{os}}$ is:

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}}(x) = \phi_{k_1}(x_1)\dots\phi_{k_n}(x_n) \tag{1.33}$$

and it has eigenvalue $E_{\mathbf{k}} = (k_1 + k_2 + \dots + k_n + n/2)\hbar$. Note that this eigenvalue is highly degenerate, except $E_0$. We have

**Lemma 7**

$$\phi_{\mathbf{k}} = \prod_{j=1}^{n}\frac{(\mathbf{a}_j^\dagger)^{k_j}}{k_j!}\varphi_0 \tag{1.34}$$

The physicists often use the ket notation for the quantum states. Let us define it for completeness:

$$|0\rangle = \varphi_0$$
$$|\mathbf{k}\rangle = \phi_{\mathbf{k}}$$

and they also designate the coherent state with the ket notation:

$$|z\rangle = \varphi_z$$

Then we have:

**Lemma 8**

$$|z\rangle = \exp\left(-\frac{|z|^2}{4\hbar}\right) \sum_{k_j=1}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{\mathbf{k}}}{\mathbf{k}!} |\mathbf{k}\rangle \tag{1.35}$$

*where* $\alpha_j = \frac{q_j + ip_j}{\sqrt{2\hbar}}$ *and*

$$\alpha^{\mathbf{k}} = \alpha_1^{k_1} \alpha_2^{k_2} \dots \alpha_n^{k_n}$$
$$\mathbf{k}! = k_1! k_2! \dots k_n!$$

□

### 1.2.2 The Time Evolution of the Coherent State for the Harmonic Oscillator Hamiltonian

A remarkable property of the coherent states is that the Harmonic Oscillator dynamics transforms them into other coherent states up to a phase. This property was anticipated by Schrödinger himself [175] who describes it as the non-spreading of the coherent states wavepackets under the Harmonic Oscillator dynamics. Furthermore the time-evolved coherent state is located around the classical phase-space point of the harmonic oscillator classical dynamics.

Let $z := (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ be the classical phase-space point at time 0. Then it is trivial to show that the phase-space point at time $t$ is just $z_t := (q_t, p_t)$ given by

$$z_t = F_t z$$

where $F_t$ is the rotation matrix

$$F_t = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix}$$

We have the following property:

**Lemma 9** *Define*

$$\begin{pmatrix} \hat{Q}(t) \\ \hat{P}(t) \end{pmatrix} = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}_{\mathrm{os}}/\hbar} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{Q} \\ \hat{P} \end{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{it\hat{H}_{\mathrm{os}}/\hbar}$$

*Note that* $\hat{Q}(-t)$, $\hat{P}(-t)$ *are the so-called Heisenberg observables associated to* $\hat{Q}$, $\hat{P}$. *Then*:

(i)

$$\begin{pmatrix} \hat{Q}(t) \\ \hat{P}(t) \end{pmatrix} = F_{-t} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{Q} \\ \hat{P} \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.36}$$

(ii)

$$e^{-it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar}\hat{T}(z)e^{it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar} = \hat{T}(z_t)$$

*Proof*

(i) One has, using the Schrödinger equation and the commutation property of $\hat{Q}$, $\hat{P}$ that

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} \hat{Q}(t) \\ \hat{P}(t) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\hat{P}(t) \\ \hat{Q}(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

Then the solution is (1.36).

(ii) Then

$$e^{-it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar}\big(p \cdot \hat{Q} - q \cdot \hat{P}\big)e^{it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar} = p \cdot \hat{Q}(t) - q \cdot \hat{P}(t) = p_t \cdot \hat{Q} - q_t \cdot \hat{P}$$

By exponentiation one gets the result. □

**Proposition 3** *The quantum evolution for the harmonic oscillator dynamics of a coherent state $\varphi_z$ is given by*

$$e^{-it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar}\varphi_z = e^{-itn/2}\varphi_{z_t}$$

*Proof*

$$\begin{aligned} e^{-it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar}\varphi_z &= e^{-it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar}\hat{T}(z)e^{it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar} \times e^{-it\hat{H}_{\rm os}/\hbar}\varphi_0 \\ &= \hat{T}(z_t)e^{-itn/2}\varphi_0 = e^{-itn/2}\varphi_{z_t} \end{aligned}$$

where we have used that $\varphi_0$ is an eigenstate of $\hat{H}_{\rm os}$ with eigenvalue $n\frac{\hbar}{2}$. □

In Chap. 3 we shall see a similar property for any quadratic hamiltonian with possible time-dependent coefficients. Then the quantum time evolution of a coherent state will be a squeezed state instead of a coherent state, located around the phase-space point $z_t$ for the associated classical flow which is linear (since the Hamiltonian is quadratic).

### *1.2.3 An Over-complete System*

We have seen that the coherent states are not orthogonal. So they cannot be considered as a basis of the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of the quantum states. Instead they will constitute an over-complete set of continuous states over which the states and operators of quantum mechanics can be expanded.

We can now introduce the Fourier–Bargmann transform that will be studied in more details in Sect. 1.3. We start from $u_0 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$, $\|u_0\|^2 := \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u_0(x)|^2\, dx = 1$. Let us define the Fourier–Bargmann transform by the following formula

$$\mathcal{F}_u^{\mathcal{B}} v(z) =: v^\sharp(z) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2}\langle u_z, v\rangle, \quad z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} \tag{1.37}$$

If $u_0$ is the standard Gaussian $\varphi_0$, the associated Fourier–Bargmann transform will be denoted $\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}$.

**Proposition 4** $\mathcal{F}_u^{\mathcal{B}}$ *is an isometry from* $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ *into* $L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$

*Proof* We have

$$\langle u_z, v\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2\hbar} p\cdot q} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} v(x)\overline{u_0(x-q)}\mathrm{e}^{-ix\cdot p/\hbar}\, dx \tag{1.38}$$

From Plancherel theorem we get

$$(2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left|\langle u_{(q,p)}, v\rangle\right|^2 dp = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left|v(x)u_0(x-q)\right|^2 dx \tag{1.39}$$

Then we integrate in $q$ variable and change the variables: $q' = x - q$, $x' = x$, so we get the result. □

Then by polarization we get that the scalar product of two states $\psi, \psi' \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ can be expressed in terms of $\psi^\sharp$, $(\psi')^\sharp$:

$$\langle \psi', \psi\rangle = \int dz\overline{(\psi')^\sharp(z)}\psi^\sharp(z) \tag{1.40}$$

We deduce, using Fubini theorem that the function $\psi^\sharp(z)$ determines the state $\psi$ completely:

$$\psi = \int dz\, \psi^\sharp(z)\varphi_z \tag{1.41}$$

This implies that the Schrödinger representation is irreducible.

Then we use Schur's lemma:

**Lemma 10** *If* $\hat{A}$ *is a bounded operator in* $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ *such that*

$$\hat{A}\hat{T}(z) = \hat{T}(z)\hat{A}, \quad \forall z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

*then*

$$\hat{A} = C\hat{\mathbb{1}}$$

*for some* $C \in \mathbb{C}$.

We deduce that the coherent states provide a resolution of unity. Define the following measure:

$$d\mu(z) = C\,dz = C\,dq_1\,dq_2\ldots dq_n\,dp_1\,dp_2\ldots dp_n \tag{1.42}$$

where and $C \in \mathbb{C}$ is a constant to be determined later. Let $|z\rangle\langle z|$ be the projection operator on the state $|z\rangle$. We consider the operator

$$\hat{A} = \int d\mu(z)\,|z\rangle\langle z|$$

We have the following result:

**Proposition 5** *$\hat{A}$ commutes with all the operators $\hat{T}(z)$.*

*Proof* Using (1.7) we get:

$$\left[\hat{A}, \hat{T}(z)\right] = \int d\mu(z')\Big(\exp\Big(-\frac{i}{2\hbar}\sigma(z,z')\Big)|z'\rangle\langle z'-z| - \exp\Big(-\frac{i}{2\hbar}\sigma(z,z')\Big)|z+z'\rangle\langle z'|\Big)$$

Now using the change of variable $z'' = z + z'$ in the last term we get zero.

Therefore in view of the Schur's lemma $\hat{A}$ must be a multiple of the identity operator:

$$\hat{A} = d^{-1}\mathbb{1}$$

We determine the constant $d$ by calculating the average of the operator $\hat{A}$ in the coherent state $|z\rangle$:

$$d^{-1} = \langle z|\hat{A}|z\rangle = \int d\mu(z')\,\left|\langle z|z'\rangle\right|^2 = \int d\mu(z')\exp\Big(-\frac{|z'|^2}{2\hbar}\Big)$$

The constant $C$ can be chosen so that $d = 1$. Therefore the resolution of the identity takes the form:

$$\int d\mu(z)\,|z\rangle\langle z| = \mathbb{1} \tag{1.43}$$

where $d\mu(z)$ is given by (1.42) and the constant $C$ is such that

$$C\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} dz\exp\Big(-\frac{|z|^2}{2\hbar}\Big) = 1$$

This gives

$$C = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \tag{1.44}$$

□

The resolution of identity (1.43) allows to compute the trace of an operator in terms of its expectation value in the coherent states. Let us recall what the trace of an operator is when it exists.

**Definition 1** An operator $\hat{B}$ is said to be of trace class when for some (and then any) eigenbasis $e_k$ of the Hilbert space one has that the series $\langle e_k, (\hat{B}^*\hat{B})^{1/2}e_k\rangle$ is convergent. Then the trace of $\hat{B}$ is defined as

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{B}\big) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{N}}\big\langle e_k, \hat{B}e_k\big\rangle \tag{1.45}$$

An operator $\hat{B}$ is said to be of Hilbert–Schmidt class if $\hat{B}^*\hat{B}$ is of trace class.

**Proposition 6** *Let $\hat{B}$ be an Hilbert–Schmidt operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ then we have*

$$\|\hat{B}\|_{HS}^2 = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}}\|\hat{B}u_z\|^2\,dz \tag{1.46}$$

*If $\hat{B}$ is a trace-class operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ then we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\,\hat{B} = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}}\big\langle u_z, \hat{B}u_z\big\rangle\,dz \tag{1.47}$$

*Proof* Let $\{e_j\}$ be an orthonormal basis for $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ (for example the Hermite basis $\phi_j$). We have

$$\begin{aligned}\|\hat{B}\|_{HS}^2 &= \sum_j\|\hat{B}e_j\|^2\\ &= \sum_j\big\|\big(\hat{B}e_j\big)^\sharp\big\|^2\end{aligned} \tag{1.48}$$

But we have

$$\big(\hat{B}e_j\big)^\sharp(z) = \big\langle\hat{B}e_j, u_z\big\rangle = \big\langle e_j, \hat{B}^*u_z\big\rangle \tag{1.49}$$

Using Parseval formula for the basis $\{e_j\}$ we get

$$\sum_{j\geq 0}\|\hat{B}e_j\|^2 = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}}\|\hat{B}^*u_z\|^2\,dz \tag{1.50}$$

Using that $\|\hat{B}\|_{HS}^2 = \|\hat{B}^*\|_{HS}^2$ we get the first part of the corollary.

For the second part we use that every class trace operator can be written as $\hat{B} = \hat{B}_2^*\hat{B}_1$ where $\hat{B}_1, \hat{B}_2$ are Hilbert–Schmidt. Moreover the Hilbert–Schmidt norm is associated with the scalar product $\langle\hat{B}_2, \hat{B}_1\rangle = \mathrm{Tr}(\hat{B}_2^*\hat{B}_1)$. So we get

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Tr}(\hat{B}) = \mathrm{Tr}(\hat{B}_2^* \hat{B}_1) &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \langle \hat{B}_2 u_z, \hat{B}_1 u_z \rangle dz \\ &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \langle u_z, \hat{B} u_z \rangle dz \end{aligned} \tag{1.51}$$

□

These formulas will appear to be very useful in the sequel.

## 1.3 From Schrödinger to Bargmann–Fock Representation

This representation is well adapted to the creation-annihilation operators and to the Harmonic oscillator. It was introduced by Bargmann [17]. In this representation the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ is identified to $\mathbb{C}^n$:

$$(q, p) \mapsto \zeta = \frac{q - ip}{\sqrt{2}}$$

and a state $\psi$ is represented by the following entire function on $\mathbb{C}^n$:

$$\psi_{\mathrm{Hol}}^{\sharp}(\zeta) = \psi^{\sharp}(q, p) \mathrm{e}^{\frac{p^2+q^2}{4\hbar}}$$

Recall that $\psi^{\sharp}(z) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2} \langle \varphi_z, \psi \rangle$, $z = (q, p)$.

**Proposition 7** *The map $\psi \mapsto \psi_{\mathrm{Hol}}^{\sharp}$ is an isometry from $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ into the Fock space $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ of entire functions $f$ on $\mathbb{C}^n$ such that*

$$\int_{\mathbb{C}^n} |f(\zeta)|^2 \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\zeta \cdot \bar{\zeta}}{\hbar}} |d\zeta \wedge d\bar{\zeta}| < +\infty$$

*$\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ is an Hilbert space for the scalar product*

$$\langle f_2, f_1 \rangle = \int_{\mathbb{C}^n} f_1(\zeta) \overline{f_2(\zeta)} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\zeta \cdot \bar{\zeta}}{\hbar}} |d\zeta \wedge d\bar{\zeta}| \tag{1.52}$$

*Proof* A direct computation shows that $\psi_{\mathrm{Hol}}^{\sharp}$ is holomorphic: $\partial_{\bar{\zeta}} \psi_{\mathrm{Hol}}^{\sharp} = 0$. Recall that the holomorphic and antiholomorphic derivatives are defined as follows.

$$\partial_\zeta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\partial_q + i\partial_p), \qquad \partial_{\bar{\zeta}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\partial_q - i\partial_p)$$

We can easily get the following explicit formula for $\psi_{\mathrm{Hol}}^{\sharp}$:

$$\psi_{\mathrm{Hol}}^{\sharp}(\zeta) = (\pi\hbar)^{-3n/4} 2^{-n/2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \psi(x) \exp\left[-\frac{1}{\hbar}\left(\frac{x^2}{2} - \sqrt{2} x \cdot \zeta + \frac{\zeta^2}{2}\right)\right] dx \tag{1.53}$$

The transformation $\psi \mapsto \psi^\sharp_{\mathrm{Hol}}$ is called the Bargmann transform and is denoted by $\mathcal{B}$. Its kernel is the Bargmann kernel:

$$\mathcal{B}(x,\zeta) = (\pi\hbar)^{-3n/4}2^{-n/2}\exp\left[-\frac{1}{\hbar}\left(\frac{x^2}{2} - \sqrt{2}x\cdot\zeta + \frac{\zeta^2}{2}\right)\right],$$
$$\text{where } x \in \mathbb{R}^n,\ \zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n \tag{1.54}$$

Recall the notations $x^2 = x\cdot x$, $\zeta^2 = \zeta\cdot\zeta$, $\zeta\cdot\bar\zeta = |\zeta|^2$.

Using that $\psi \mapsto \psi^\sharp$ is an isometry from $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ into $L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$, we easily get that

$$\int_{\mathbb{C}^n} \left|\psi^\sharp_{\mathrm{Hol}}(\zeta)\right|^2 \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\zeta\cdot\bar\zeta}{\hbar}}\left|d\zeta\wedge d\bar\zeta\right| = \|\psi\|_2^2 \tag{1.55}$$

Hence $\mathcal{B}$ is an isometry form $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ into $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$.

For convenience let us introduce the Gaussian measure on $\mathbb{C}^n$, $d\mu_{\mathcal{B}} = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\zeta\cdot\bar\zeta}{\hbar}}|d\zeta \wedge d\bar\zeta|$.

It is not difficult to see that $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ is a complete space.

If $\{f_k\}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ then $\{f_k\}$ converges to $f$ in $L^2(\mathbb{C}^n, d\mu_{\mathcal{B}})$. So we get in a weak sense that $\partial_{\bar\zeta} f = 0$ so $f$ is holomorphic hence $f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$. □

Let us now compute the standard harmonic oscillator in the Bargmann representation. We first get the following formula

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \partial_x\psi(x)\mathcal{B}(x,\zeta)\,dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n}\psi(x)\left(\frac{x}{\hbar} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\hbar}\zeta\right)\mathcal{B}(x,\zeta)\,dx \tag{1.56}$$

$$\partial_\zeta\int_{\mathbb{R}^n}\psi(x)\mathcal{B}(x,\zeta)\,dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n}\psi(x)\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\hbar}x - \frac{\zeta}{\hbar}\right)\mathcal{B}(x,\zeta)\,dx \tag{1.57}$$

Hence

$$\mathcal{B}(x\psi)(\zeta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\hbar\partial_\zeta + \zeta)\mathcal{B}\psi(\zeta) \tag{1.58}$$

$$\mathcal{B}(\hbar\partial_x\psi)(\zeta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\hbar\partial_\zeta - \zeta)\mathcal{B}\psi(\zeta) \tag{1.59}$$

Then we get the Bargmann representation for the creation and annihilation operators

$$\mathcal{B}\left[\mathbf{a}^\dagger\psi\right](\zeta) = \zeta\mathcal{B}[\psi](\zeta) \tag{1.60}$$

$$\mathcal{B}[\mathbf{a}\psi](\zeta) = \partial_\zeta\mathcal{B}[\psi](\zeta) \tag{1.61}$$

So the standard harmonic oscillator $\hat{H}_{\mathrm{os}} = \hbar(\mathbf{a}^\dagger\mathbf{a} + \frac{n}{2})$, has the following Bargmann representation

$$\hat{H}^\sharp_{\mathrm{os}} = \hbar\zeta\cdot\partial_\zeta + n\frac{\hbar}{2} \tag{1.62}$$

*Remark 2* It is very easy to solve the time dependent Schrödinger equation for $\hat{H}^\sharp_{\mathrm{os}}$. If $F \in \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ such that $\zeta\partial_\zeta F \in \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$, then $F(t,\zeta) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{it}{2\hbar}} F(\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{it}{2\hbar}}\zeta)$ satisfies

$$i\hbar\partial_t F(t) = \hat{H}^\sharp_{\mathrm{os}} F(t), \qquad F(0,\zeta) = F(\zeta) \tag{1.63}$$

Moreover if $\hbar = 1$ and if we put $\mathrm{e}^{-t/2}$ in place of $\mathrm{e}^{-it/2}$ we solve the heat equation $\partial_t F(t) = \hat{H}^\sharp_{\mathrm{os}} F(t)$.

We shall see now that the Hermite functions $\phi_\alpha$ have a very simple shape in the Bargmann representation. Let us denote $\phi^\#_\alpha(\zeta) = \mathcal{B}\phi_\alpha$. Then we have

**Proposition 8** *For every* $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^n$, $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n$,

$$\phi^\#_\alpha(\zeta) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2}(\alpha!)^{-1/2}\zeta^\alpha \tag{1.64}$$

*Moreover* $\{\phi^\#_\alpha(\zeta)\}_{\alpha\in\mathbb{N}^n}$ *is an orthonormal basis in* $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$.

*Proof* Let us first recall the notations in dimension $n$. For $\alpha = (\alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{N}$, $\alpha! = \alpha_1! \cdots \alpha_n!$ and for $\zeta = (\zeta_1, \ldots, \zeta_n) \in \mathbb{C}^n$, $\zeta^\alpha = \zeta_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots \zeta_n^{\alpha_n}$.

We get easily that $\langle \zeta^\alpha, \zeta^\beta\rangle = 0$ if $\alpha \neq \beta$.

It is enough to compute, for $n = 1$, $\|\zeta^k\|^2_{\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C})}$ and this is an easy computation with the Gamma function.

Let us prove now that the system $\{\zeta^\alpha\}_{\alpha\in\mathbb{N}^n}$ is total in $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$.

Let $f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ be such that $\langle\zeta^\alpha, f\rangle = 0$ for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^n$. $f$ is entire so we have

$$f(\zeta) = \sum_\alpha f_\alpha \zeta^\alpha$$

where $f_\alpha$ are the Taylor coefficient of $f$ at 0. The sum is uniformly convergent on every ball of $\mathbb{C}^n$. On the other side from Bessel inequality, we know that the Taylor series $\sum_\alpha f_\alpha\zeta^\alpha$ converges in $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$. But we can see that $\{\zeta^\alpha\}_{\alpha\in\mathbb{N}^n}$ is also an orthogonal system in each ball with center at 0. Then we get that $f_\alpha = 0$ for every $\alpha$ hence $f = 0$.

Let us remark here that we could also prove that the system $\{\phi^\#_\alpha(\zeta)\}_{\alpha\in\mathbb{N}^n}$ is orthogonal using that Hermite functions is an orthonormal system and $\mathcal{B}$ is an isometry.

Finally, let us prove formula (1.64). It is enough to assume $n = 1$. We get easily that $\phi^\#_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}$. So for every $k \geq 1$, we have, using (1.60),

$$\phi^\#_k(\zeta) = \mathcal{B}\left[\frac{(a^\dagger)^k}{\sqrt{k!}}\phi_0\right](\zeta) = \frac{\zeta^k}{\sqrt{2\pi k!}} \qquad \square$$

Then we get the following interesting result.

**Corollary 2** *The Bargmann transform $\mathcal{B}$ is an isometry from $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ onto $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$. The integral kernel of $\mathcal{B}^{-1}$ is*

$$\mathcal{B}^{-1}(\zeta, x) = (\pi\hbar)^{-3n/4} 2^{-n/2} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{\hbar}\left(\frac{x^2}{2} - \sqrt{2}x \cdot \bar{\zeta} + \frac{\bar{\zeta}^2}{2}\right)\right] \tag{1.65}$$

*where $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n$.*

We also get that the Bargmann kernel is a generating function for the Hermite functions.

**Corollary 3** *For every $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n$ we have*

$$\mathcal{B}(x, \zeta) = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^n} \frac{\zeta^\alpha}{((2\pi)^n \alpha!)^{1/2}} \phi_\alpha(x) \tag{1.66}$$

*Proof* Compute the Fourier coefficient in the Hermite basis of $x \mapsto \mathcal{B}(x, \zeta)$. □

The standard coherent states also have a simple expression in the Bargmann–Fock space.

Let $\varphi_X$ be the normalized coherent state at $X = (x, \xi)$.

**Proposition 9** *We have the following Bargmann representation for the coherent state $\varphi_X$*

$$\mathcal{B}[\varphi_X](\zeta) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\bar{\eta}}{\hbar}(\zeta - \frac{\eta}{2})} \tag{1.67}$$

*where $\eta = \frac{x - i\xi}{\sqrt{2}}$.*

*Proof* A direct computation gives

$$\mathcal{B}[\varphi_X](\zeta) = \left(\sqrt{2}\pi\hbar\right)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} dy \, \exp\left[-\frac{1}{\hbar}\left(y^2 - y\left(x + i\xi + \sqrt{2}\zeta\right) - \frac{\zeta^2}{2}\right)\right] \tag{1.68}$$

Then we get the result by Fourier transform of the Gaussian $\mathrm{e}^{-y^2}$. □

One of the nice properties of the space $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ is existence of a reproducing kernel.

**Proposition 10** *For every $f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ we have*

$$f(\zeta) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{C}^n} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\bar{\eta}\cdot\zeta}{\hbar}} f(\eta) \, d\mu_{\mathcal{B}}(\eta), \quad \forall \zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n \tag{1.69}$$

*Proof* It is enough to assume that $f$ is a polynomial in $\zeta$ and that $\hbar = 1$. So we have

$$f(\zeta) = \sum_\alpha c_\alpha \frac{\zeta^\alpha}{(2\pi)^{n/2}(\alpha!)^{1/2}}, \quad \text{with } c_\alpha = \int_{\mathbb{C}^n} \frac{\bar{\eta}^\alpha}{(2\pi)^{n/2}(\alpha!)^{1/2}} f(\eta)\, d\mu_{\mathcal{B}}(\eta) \tag{1.70}$$

Hence we get

$$f(\zeta) = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{C}^n} \left(\sum_\alpha \frac{\zeta^\alpha \bar{\eta}^\alpha}{\alpha!}\right) f(\eta)\, d\mu_{\mathcal{B}}(\eta) = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{C}^n} \mathrm{e}^{\bar{\eta}\cdot\zeta} f(\eta)\, d\mu_{\mathcal{B}}(\eta) \tag{1.71}$$

□

*Remark 3* The function $e_\zeta(\eta) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\bar{\eta}\cdot\zeta}{\hbar}}$ is a representation of the Dirac delta function in the point $\zeta$. Note that $e_\zeta$ is not in $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$. Moreover we have $f(\zeta) = \langle e_\zeta, f\rangle$ and $|f(\zeta)| \le (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\|f\|_{\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)}$.

Using the Bargmann representation we can give a proof of the well-known Mehler formula concerning the Hermite orthonormal basis $\{\phi_k\}$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$. It is sufficient to assume that $\hbar = 1$.

**Theorem 1** *For every $w \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $|w| < 1$ we have*

$$\sum_{\mathbf{k}\in\mathbb{N}^n} \phi_{\mathbf{k}}(x)\phi_{\mathbf{k}}(y)w^k = \pi^{-n/2}(1-w^2)^{-n/2} \exp\left(-\frac{1+w^2}{2(1-w^2)}\left(x^2+y^2\right) + \frac{2w}{1-w^2} x\cdot y\right) \tag{1.72}$$

*where $k = |\mathbf{k}| = k_1 + \cdots + k_k$.*

*Proof* The case $n \ge 2$ can be easily deduced from the case $n = 1$. So let $n = 1$.

The left and right side of (1.72) are holomorphic in $w$ in the unit disc $\{w \in \mathbb{C}, |w| < 1\}$. So by analytic continuation principle it is enough to prove it for $w = \mathrm{e}^{-t/2}$ for every $t > 0$. Hence the right side of (1.72) is the heat kernel denoted $K_{os}(t; x, y)$ of the harmonic oscillator $\hat{H}_{os}$.

Using Remark 2 and inverse Bargmann transform we get easily the following integral expression for $K(t; x, y)$:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{os}(t; x, y) &= 2^{-1}\pi^{-3/2}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{x^2+y^2}{2}} \\ &\times \int_{\mathbb{C}} \exp\left(\sqrt{2}\left(x\cdot\bar{\zeta} + wy\cdot\zeta\right) - \frac{1}{2}\left(w^2\zeta^2 + \bar{\zeta}^2\right) - \zeta\bar{\zeta}\right)\left|d\zeta\wedge d\bar{\zeta}\right| \end{aligned} \tag{1.73}$$

The last integral is a Fourier transform of a Gaussian function as it is seen using real coordinates $\zeta = \frac{q-ip}{\sqrt{2}}$, $z = (q, p)$. We have

$$K_{os}(t; x, y) = 2^{-1}\pi^{-3/2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}Az\cdot z - iz\cdot Y}\, dY \tag{1.74}$$

where

$$Y = \begin{pmatrix} i(x+wy) \\ wy - x \end{pmatrix}, \qquad A = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 3+w^2 & i(1-w^2) \\ i(1-w^2) & 1-w^2 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad w = \mathrm{e}^{-t/2} \tag{1.75}$$

$A$ is a symmetric matrix, its real part is positive definite and $\det(A) = 1 - w^2$. So we have (see [117] or Appendices A, B and C)

$$K_{os}(t; x, y) = \pi^{-1/2}(1-w^2)^{-1/2}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{x^2+y^2}{2}}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}A^{-1}Y\cdot Y} \tag{1.76}$$

The Mehler formula follows. □

# Chapter 2
# Weyl Quantization and Coherent States

**Abstract** It is well known from the work of Berezin (Commun. Math. Phys. 40:153–174, 1975) in 1975 that the quantization problem of a classical mechanical system is closely related with coherent states. In particular coherent states help to understand the limiting behavior of a quantum system when the Planck constant $\hbar$ becomes negligible in macroscopic units. This problem is called the semi-classical limit problem.

In this chapter we discuss properties of quantum systems when the configuration space is the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^n$, so that in the Hamiltonian formalism, the phase space is $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$ with its canonical symplectic form $\sigma$. The quantization problem has many solutions, so we choose a convenient one, introduced by Weyl (The Classical Groups, 1997) and Wigner (Group Theory and Its Applications to Quantum Mechanics of Atomic Spectra, 1959).

We study the symmetries of Weyl quantization, the operational calculus and applications to propagation of observables.

We show that Wick quantization is a natural bridge between Weyl quantization and coherent states. Applications are given of the semi-classical limit after introducing an efficient modern tool: semi-classical measures.

We illustrate the general results proved in this chapter by explicit computations for the harmonic oscillator. More applications will be given in the following chapters, in particular concerning propagators and trace formulas for a large class of quantum systems.

## 2.1 Classical and Quantum Observables

The quantization problem comes from quantum mechanics and is a mathematical setting for the Bohr correspondence principle between the classical world and the quantum world.

Let us consider a system with $n$ degrees of freedom. According the Bohr correspondence principle, it is natural to check a way to associate to every real function $A$ on the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ (classical observable) a self-adjoint operator $\hat{A}$ in the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ (quantum observable). According the quantum mechanical principles, the map $A \to \hat{A}$ has to satisfy some properties.

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_2, 

(1) $A \to \hat{A}$ is *linear*, $\hat{A}$ is self-adjoint if $A$ is real and $\hat{1} = \mathbb{1}_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)}$.
(2) *position observables*: $x_j \to \hat{x}_j := \hat{Q}_j$ where $\hat{Q}_j$ is the multiplication operator by $x_j$.
(3) *momentum observables* : $\xi_j \to \hat{\xi}_j := \hat{P}_j$ where $\hat{P}_j$ is the differential operator $\frac{\hbar}{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x_j}$.
(4) *commutation rule and classical limit*: for every classical observables $A, B$ we have

$$\lim_{\hbar\to 0}\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\big[\hat{A}, \hat{B}\big] - \widehat{\{A, B\}}\right) = 0.$$

Let us recall that $[\hat{A}, \hat{B}] = \hat{A}\hat{B} - \hat{B}\hat{A}$ is the commutator of $\hat{A}$ and $\hat{B}$, $\{A, B\}$ is the Poisson bracket defined as follows:

$$\{A, B\}(x, \xi) = (\partial_x A \cdot \partial_\xi B - \partial_x B \cdot \partial_\xi A)(x, \xi), \quad x, \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Let us remark that if we introduce $\nabla A = (\partial_x A, \partial_\xi A)$ then we have $\{A, B\}(x, \xi) = \sigma(\nabla A(x, \xi), \nabla B(x, \xi))$ ($\sigma$ is the symplectic bilinear form).

If the observables $A, B$ depend only on the position variable (or on the momentum variables) then $\hat{A} \cdot \hat{B} = \widehat{A.B}$ but, this is no longer true for a mixed observable. This is related to the non-commutativity for product of quantum observables and the identity: $[\hat{x}_j, \hat{\xi}_j] = i\hbar$ so, the quantum observable corresponding to $x_1\xi_1$ is not determined by the rules (1) to (4).

We do not want to discuss here the quantization problem in its full generality (see for example [77]). One way to choose a reasonable and convenient quantization procedure is the following, which is called Weyl quantization (see [117] for more details). Let $L_z$ be a real linear form on the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, where $z = (p, q)$, $L_z(x, \xi) = \sigma(z, (x, \xi))$ (every linear form on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ is like this). It is not difficult to see that $\hat{L}_z$ is a well defined quantum Hamiltonian (i.e. an essentially self-adjoint operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$). Its propagator $\mathrm{e}^{\frac{-it}{\hbar}\widehat{L_z}}$ has been studied in Chap. 1.

Remark that we have $\hat{L}_z = -\hat{L}(z)$, with the notation of Chap. 1.

For $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, we have explicitly

$$\mathrm{e}^{\frac{-it}{\hbar}\widehat{L_z}}\psi(x) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{2\hbar}t^2 q\cdot p}\mathrm{e}^{\frac{it}{\hbar}x\cdot p}\psi(x - tq). \tag{2.1}$$

So, the Weyl prescription is defined by the conditions (1) to (4) and the following:

(5)

$$\mathrm{e}^{-iL_z(x,\xi)} \to \widehat{\mathrm{e}^{-iL_z}} = \hat{T}(z)$$

We shall use freely the Schwartz space $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$[1] and its dual $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$ (temperate distributions space).

[1]Recall that $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ means that $f$ is a smooth function in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and for every multiindices $\alpha, \beta$, $x^\alpha \partial_x^\beta u$ is bounded in $\mathbb{R}^n$. It has a natural topology. $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the linear space of continuous linear form on $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

**Proposition 11** *There exists a unique continuous map $A \to \hat{A}$ from $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ into $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n), \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n))$ satisfying conditions* (1) *to* (5).

*Moreover if $A \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ and $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we have the familiar formula*

$$\hat{A}\psi(x) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, \xi\right) \mathrm{e}^{i\hbar^{-1}(x-y)\cdot\xi} \psi(y)\, dy\, d\xi, \tag{2.2}$$

*and $\hat{A}$ is a continuous map from $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.*

*The hermitian conjugate of $\hat{A}$ is the quantization of the complex conjugate of $A$ i.e. $(\hat{A})^* = \hat{\bar{A}}$. In particular $\hat{A}$ is Hermitian if and only if $A$ is real.*

*Proof* Here it is enough to assume that $\hbar = 1$.

Let us consider the symplectic Fourier transform in $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$. Assume first that $A \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$.

$$\tilde{A}(z) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(\zeta) \mathrm{e}^{-i\sigma(z,\zeta)}\, d\zeta. \tag{2.3}$$

We have the inverse formula

$$A(X) = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \tilde{A}(z) \mathrm{e}^{i\sigma(z,X)}\, dz. \tag{2.4}$$

For $\psi, \eta \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we have

$$\langle \psi, \hat{A}\eta \rangle = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \tilde{A}(z) \left\langle \mathrm{e}^{i\hat{L}_z}\psi, \eta \right\rangle dz. \tag{2.5}$$

In other words we get

$$\hat{A}\psi = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \tilde{A}(z) \hat{T}(z)\psi\, dz. \tag{2.6}$$

□

**Definition 2** For a given operator $\hat{A}$, the function $A$ is called the contravariant symbol of $\hat{A}$ and the function $\tilde{A}$ is the covariant symbol of $\hat{A}$.

Let us remark that we have the inverse formula

**Proposition 12** *If $\hat{A}$ is a continuous map from $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ then we have for every $X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$,*

$$\tilde{A}(X) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{A}\hat{T}(-X)\big). \tag{2.7}$$

*Proof* For $X = 0$ the formula is a consequence of the Fourier inversion formula.

For any $X$ we use that the Weyl symbol of $\hat{T}(-X)$ is $z \mapsto \mathrm{e}^{-i\sigma(z,X)}$. □

As a consequence we have a first norm operator estimate. If $\tilde{A} \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ we have

$$\|\hat{A}\| \le (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|\tilde{A}(z)\right| dz. \tag{2.8}$$

The r.h.s. in formula (2.2) can be extended by continuity in $A$ to the distribution space $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$.

Let us compute now the Schwartz kernel $K_A$ of the operator $\hat{A}$ defined in formula (2.6). We have

$$K_A(x, y) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \tilde{A}(x-y, p) \mathrm{e}^{ip\cdot(x+y)/2} dp. \tag{2.9}$$

Using inverse Fourier transform in $p$ variables, we get

$$K_A(x, y) = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} A\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, \xi\right) \mathrm{e}^{i(x-y)\cdot\xi} d\xi \tag{2.10}$$

this gives (2.2). The other properties are easy to prove and left to the reader.

Let us first remark that from (2.10) we get a formula to compute the $\hbar$-Weyl symbol of $\hat{A}$ if we know its Schwartz kernel $K$

$$A(x, \xi) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}u\cdot\xi} K\left(x + \frac{u}{2}, x - \frac{u}{2}\right) du. \tag{2.11}$$

Sometimes, we shall use also the notation $\hat{A} = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w A$ ($\hbar$-Weyl quantization of $A$). Hence we shall say that $\hat{A}$ is an $\hbar$-pseudodifferential operators and that $A$ is its Weyl symbol. For applications it is useful to be able to read properties of the operator $\hat{A}$ on its Weyl symbol $A$. A first example is the Hilbert–Schmidt property.

**Proposition 13** *Let $\hat{A} \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n), \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n))$. Then $\hat{A}$ is Hilbert–Schmidt in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ if and only if $A \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ and we have*

$$\|\hat{A}\|_{HS}^2 = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|A(x, \xi)\right|^2 dx\, d\xi. \tag{2.12}$$

*In particular if $\hat{A}$ and $\hat{B}$ are two Hilbert–Schmidt operators then $\hat{A}.\hat{B}$ is a trace operator and we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{A}.\hat{B}\big) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(x, \xi) B(x, \xi)\, dx\, d\xi. \tag{2.13}$$

*Proof* We know that

$$\|\hat{A}\|_{HS}^2 = \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|K_A(x, y)\right|^2 dx\, dy.$$

Then we get the proposition using formula (2.10) and Plancherel theorem. □

We shall see later many other properties concerning Weyl quantization but most of time we only have sufficient conditions on $A$ to have some property of $\hat{A}$, like for example $L^2$ continuity or trace-class property.

Let us give a first example of computation of a Weyl symbol starting from an integral kernel. We consider the heat semi-group $\mathrm{e}^{-t\hat{H}_{os}}$, of the harmonic oscillator $\hat{H}_{os}$. Let us denote $K_w(t;x,\xi)$ the Weyl symbol of $\mathrm{e}^{-t\hat{H}_{os}}$ and $K(t;x,y)$ its integral kernel. From formula (2.11) we get

$$K_w(t;x,\xi) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}u\cdot\xi} K\left(t; x + \frac{u}{2}, x - \frac{u}{2}\right) du. \tag{2.14}$$

Using Mehler formula (1.72) we have to compute the Fourier transform of a generalized Gaussian function, so after some computations, we get the following nice formula:

$$K_w(t;x,\xi) = \big(\cos(t/2)\big)^{-n/2} \mathrm{e}^{-\tanh(t/2)(x^2+\xi^2)}. \tag{2.15}$$

Recall that $x^2 = x \cdot x = |x|^2$.

### 2.1.1 Group Invariance of Weyl Quantization

Let us first remark that an easy consequence of the definition of Weyl quantization is the invariance by translations in the phase space. More precisely, we have, for any classical observable $A$ and any $z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$,

$$\hat{T}(z)^{-1}\hat{A}\hat{T}(z) = \widehat{A \cdot T(z)}, \quad \text{where } A \cdot T(z)(z') = A(z' - z). \tag{2.16}$$

Hamiltonian classical mechanics is invariant by the action of the group $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ of symplectic transformations of the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. A natural question to ask is to quantize linear symplectic transformations. We shall see later how it is possible. In this section we state the main results.

Recall that the symplectic group $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ is the group of linear transformations of $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ which preserves the symplectic form $\sigma$. So $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$ means that $\sigma(FX, FY) = \sigma(X, Y)$ for all $X, Y \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. If we introduce the matrix

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbb{1} \\ -\mathbb{1} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

then

$$F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n) \iff F^t J F = J, \tag{2.17}$$

where $F^t$ is the transposed matrix of $F$.

If $n = 1$ then $F$ is symplectic if and only if $\det(F) = 1$.

Linear symplectic transformations can be quantized as unitary operators in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$

**Theorem 2** *For every linear symplectic transformation* $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$ *and every symbol* $A \in \Sigma(1)$ *we have*

$$\hat{R}(F)^{-1}\hat{A}\hat{R}(F) = \widehat{A \cdot F}. \tag{2.18}$$

*Moreover* $\hat{R}(F)$ *is unique up to multiplication by a complex number of modulus* 1

**Definition 3** The *metaplectic group* is the group $\mathrm{Met}(n)$ generated by $\hat{R}(F)$ and $\lambda\mathbb{1}$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, $|\lambda| = 1$.

*Remark 4* A consequence of Theorem 2 is that $\hat{R}$ is a projective representation of the symplectic group $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ in the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. It is a particular case of a more general setting [193].

More properties of the metaplectic group will be studied in the next chapter. Let us give here some examples of the metaplectic transform.

- The Fourier transform $\mathcal{F}$ is associated with the symplectic transformation $(x, \xi) \mapsto (\xi, -x)$.
- The partial Fourier transform $\mathcal{F}_j$, in variable $x_j$, is associated with the symplectic transform:

$$(x_j, \xi_j) \mapsto (\xi_j, -x_j), \qquad (x_k, \xi_k) \mapsto (x_k, \xi_k), \quad \text{if } k \neq j.$$

- Let $A$ be a linear transformation on $\mathbb{R}^n$, the transformation $\psi \mapsto |\det(A)|^{1/2} \times \psi(Ax)$ is associated with the symplectic transform

$$F_A\begin{pmatrix} x \\ \xi \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} Ax \\ (A^t)^{-1}\xi \end{pmatrix}.$$

- Let $A$ be a real symmetric matrix, the transformation $\psi \mapsto \mathrm{e}^{iAx\cdot x/2}\psi$ is associated with the symplectic transform

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{1} & 0 \\ A & \mathbb{1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

## 2.2 Wigner Functions

Let $\varphi, \psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. They define a rank one operator $\Pi_{\psi,\varphi}\eta = \langle \psi, \eta \rangle \varphi$. Its Weyl symbol can be computed using (2.11).

**Definition 4** The Wigner function of the pair $(\psi,\varphi)$ is the Weyl symbol of the rank one operator $\Pi_{\psi,\varphi}$. It will be denoted $\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}$. More explicitly we have

$$\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}(x,\xi)=\int_{\mathbb{R}^n}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}u\cdot\xi}\varphi\left(x+\frac{u}{2}\right)\overline{\psi\left(x-\frac{u}{2}\right)}\,du. \tag{2.19}$$

An equivalent definition of the Wigner function is the following:

$$\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}(z)=(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}}\langle\varphi,\hat{T}(z')\psi\rangle\mathrm{e}^{-i\sigma(z,z')/\hbar}\,dz', \tag{2.20}$$

where $\hat{T}(z)=\mathrm{e}^{-i\hat{L}_z}$.

We can easily see that (2.19) and (2.20) are equivalent using formula (2.6) and Plancherel formula for symplectic Fourier transform.

The Wigner functions are very convenient to use. In particular we have the following nice property:

**Proposition 14** *Let us assume that $\hat{A}$ is Hilbert–Schmidt and $\psi,\varphi\in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. Then we have*

$$\langle\psi,\hat{A}\varphi\rangle=(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}}A(X)\mathcal{W}_{\psi,\varphi}(X)\,dX. \tag{2.21}$$

*If $A\in\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ and if $\psi,\varphi\in\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, the formula (2.21) is still true in the weak sense of temperate distributions.*

*Proof* Let us first remark that $\langle\psi,\hat{A}\varphi\rangle=\mathrm{Tr}(\hat{A}\Pi_{\psi,\varphi})$. Hence the first part of the proposition comes from (2.13).

Now if $\psi,\varphi\in\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ then we easily get $\mathcal{W}_{\psi,\varphi}\in\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$. On the other side there exists $A_j\in\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ such that $A_j\to A$ in $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$. So we apply (2.21) to $A_j$ and we go to the limit in $j$. □

What Wigner was looking for was an equivalent of the classical probability distribution in the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. That is, associated to any quantum state a distribution function in phase space that imitates a classical distribution probability in phase space. Recall that a classical probability distribution is a non-negative Borel function $\rho$; $Z\to\mathbb{R}^+$, $Z:=\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, normalized to unity:

$$\int_Z\rho(z)\,dz=1,$$

and such that the average of any observable $A\in\mathcal{C}^\infty$ is simply given by

$$\rho(A)=\int_Z A(z)\rho(z)\,dz.$$

From Proposition 14 we see that a possible candidate is

$$\rho(z) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\varphi}.$$

Actually in the physical literature the expression above (with the factor $(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}$) is taken as the definition of the Wigner function but we do not take this convention.

In the following we denote by $\mathcal{W}_\varphi$ the Wigner transform for $\varphi, \varphi$.

What about the expected properties of $(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathcal{W}_\varphi$ as a possible probability distribution in phase space? Namely:

- positivity
- normalization to 1
- correct marginal distributions

**Proposition 15** *Let $z = (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ and $\varphi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ with $\|\varphi\| = 1$. We have*

(i)

$$(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathcal{W}_\varphi(x,\xi)\,d\xi = \left|\varphi(x)\right|^2,$$

*which is the probability amplitude to find the quantum particle at position $x$.*

(ii)

$$(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathcal{W}_\varphi(x,\xi)\,dx = \left|\tilde{\varphi}(\xi)\right|^2,$$

*which is the probability amplitude to find the quantum particle at momentum $\xi$.*

(iii)

$$(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \mathcal{W}_\varphi(x,\xi)\,dx\,d\xi = 1.$$

(iv) $\mathcal{W}_\varphi(x,\xi) \in \mathbb{R}$.

*Proof*

(i) Let $f \in \mathcal{S}$ be an arbitrary test function. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathcal{W}_\varphi(x,\xi) f(\xi)\,d\xi \\
&\quad = \int dy\,\bar{\varphi}\left(x + \frac{y}{2}\right)\varphi\left(x - \frac{y}{2}\right)\int d\xi\,\mathrm{e}^{-i\xi\cdot y/\hbar} f(\xi) \\
&\quad = (2\pi\hbar)^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} dy\,\bar{\varphi}\left(x + \frac{y}{2}\right)\varphi\left(x - \frac{y}{2}\right)(\mathcal{F}f)(y).
\end{aligned} \tag{2.22}$$

By taking for the usual Fourier transform $\mathcal{F}f$ an approximation of the Dirac distribution at $y = 0$ we get the result.

(ii) Is proven similarly.
(iii) Follows from the normalization to unity of the state $\varphi$.
(iv) We have

$$\mathcal{W}_\varphi(z)^* = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int dz' \langle\varphi, \hat{T}(-z')\varphi\rangle e^{i\sigma(z,z')/\hbar}$$

and the result follows by change of the integration variable $z' \to -z'$ and by noting that $\sigma(z, -z') = -\sigma(z, z')$. □

Let us now compute the Wigner function $\mathcal{W}_{z,z'}$ for a pair $(\varphi_z, \varphi_{z'})$ of coherent states.

**Proposition 16** *For every $X, z, z' \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ we have*

$$\mathcal{W}_{z,z'}(X) = 2^n \exp\left(-\frac{1}{\hbar}\left|X - \frac{z+z'}{2}\right|^2 - \frac{i}{\hbar}\sigma\left(X - \frac{1}{2}z', z - z'\right)\right). \tag{2.23}$$

*Proof* It is enough to consider the case $\hbar = 1$. Let us apply formula (2.20):

$$\mathcal{W}_{z,z'}(X) = (2\pi)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \langle\varphi_z, \hat{T}(z'')\varphi_{z'}\rangle e^{-i\sigma(X,z'')}\, dz''. \tag{2.24}$$

Using formula (1.7) from Chap. 1, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle\varphi_z, \hat{T}(z'')\varphi_{z'}\rangle &= \langle\varphi_z, \varphi_{z'+z''}\rangle e^{\frac{i}{2}\sigma(z',z'')}\\ &= e^{-\frac{1}{4}|z-z'-z''|^2} e^{\frac{i}{2}\sigma(z,z'+z'')+\sigma(z',z'')}.\end{aligned} \tag{2.25}$$

Using the change of variables $z'' = z - z' + u$, we have to compute the Fourier transform of the standard Gaussian $e^{-|u|^2/4}$ and (2.23) follows. □

We have the following properties of the Wigner transform:

**Proposition 17** *Let $\varphi, \psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ be two quantum states. Then $\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi} \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n}) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ and we have*

(i)

$$\|\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}\|_{L^\infty} \leq 2^n \|\varphi\|_2 \|\psi\|_2.$$

(ii)

$$\|\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}\|_{L^2} \leq (2\pi\hbar)^{n/2} \|\varphi\|_2 \|\psi\|_2.$$

(iii) *Let $\varphi, \psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. Then we have*

$$\left|\langle\varphi, \psi\rangle\right|^2 = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\langle\mathcal{W}_\varphi, \mathcal{W}_\psi\rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n})}.$$

*Proof* (i) is a simple consequence of the definition of the Wigner transform and of the Cauchy–Schwartz inequality. For the proof of (ii) we note that

$$\int dz\big|\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}(z)\big|^2 = \int dx\,d\xi\left|\int dy\,\mathrm{e}^{i\xi\cdot y/\hbar}\bar{\varphi}\left(x+\frac{y}{2}\right)\psi\left(x-\frac{y}{2}\right)\right|^2.$$

Using an approximation argument, we can assume that $\varphi, \psi \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$. So we have $\bar{\varphi}(x+\frac{y}{2})\psi(x-\frac{y}{2}) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n, dy)$. According to the Plancherel theorem we have

$$\begin{aligned}(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int d\xi&\left|\int dy\,\mathrm{e}^{i\xi\cdot y/\hbar}\bar{\varphi}\left(x+\frac{y}{2}\right)\psi\left(x-\frac{y}{2}\right)\right|^2\\ &= \int dy\left|\bar{\varphi}\left(x+\frac{y}{2}\right)\psi\left(x-\frac{y}{2}\right)\right|^2\end{aligned}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned}\int dz\big|\mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}(z)\big|^2 &= (2\pi\hbar)^n\int dx\int dy\left|\bar{\varphi}\left(x+\frac{y}{2}\right)\psi\left(x-\frac{y}{2}\right)\right|^2\\ &= (2\pi\hbar)^n\|\varphi\|^2\|\psi\|^2.\end{aligned} \tag{2.26}$$

□

The Wigner transform operate "as one wishes" in phase space, namely according to the scheme of classical mechanics:

**Proposition 18** *Let $\varphi, \psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and $\hat{T}(z)$, $\hat{R}(F)$ be, respectively, operators of the Weyl–Heisenberg and metaplectic groups, corresponding, respectively, to*

- *a phase-space translation by vector $z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$*
- *a symplectic transformation in phase space*

*We have*

$$\mathcal{W}_{\hat{T}(z')\varphi,\hat{T}(z')\psi}(z) = \mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}(z-z'), \tag{2.27}$$

$$\mathcal{W}_{\hat{R}(F)\varphi,\hat{R}(F)\psi}(z) = \mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}\big(F^{-1}z\big). \tag{2.28}$$

*Proof* We have the nice group property of the Weyl–Heisenberg translation operator:

$$\hat{T}(-z')\hat{T}(X)\hat{T}(z') = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\sigma(X,z')\right)\hat{T}(X)$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{W}_{\hat{T}(z')\varphi,\hat{T}(z')\psi}(z) &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int dX\exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\sigma(z-z',X)\right)\big\langle\varphi,\hat{T}(X)\psi\big\rangle\\ &= \mathcal{W}_{\varphi,\psi}(z-z').\end{aligned}$$

As a result of the property of the metaplectic transformation we have

$$\hat{R}(F)^{-1}\hat{T}(z')\hat{R}(F) = \hat{T}\big(F^{-1}z'\big).$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{W}_{\hat{R}(F)\varphi,\hat{R}(F)\psi}(z) &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int dz'\,\big\langle\varphi,\hat{T}(Fz')\psi\big\rangle e^{-i\sigma(z,z')/\hbar}\\ &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int dz''\,\big\langle\varphi,\hat{T}(z'')\psi\big\rangle e^{-i\sigma(z,Fz'')/\hbar}\\ &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int dz'\,\big\langle\varphi,\hat{T}(z')\psi\big\rangle e^{-i\sigma(F^{-1}z,z')/\hbar},\end{aligned}$$

where we have used the change of variable $Fz' = z''$ and the fact that a symplectic matrix has determinant one. □

Now we get a formula to recover the Weyl symbol of any operator $\hat{A} \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n), \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n))$.

**Proposition 19** *Every operator $\hat{A} \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n), \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n))$ has a contravariant Weyl symbol $A$ and a covariant Weyl symbol $\tilde{A}$ in $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$.*

*We have, in the distribution sense in general, in the usual sense if $\hat{A}$ is bounded in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$,*

$$A(X) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-2n}\iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}}\big\langle\varphi_{z'},\hat{A}\varphi_z\big\rangle\mathcal{W}_{z',z}(X)\,dz\,dz', \tag{2.29}$$

$$\tilde{A}(X) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}}\big\langle\varphi_{z+X},\hat{A}\varphi_z\big\rangle e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\sigma(X,z)}\,dz. \tag{2.30}$$

*Proof* We compute formally. It is not very difficult to give all the details for a rigorous proof.

We apply inverse formula for the Fourier–Bargmann transform (see Chap. 1). So for any $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, we have

$$\hat{A}\psi(x) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-2n}\iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}}\big\langle\varphi_{z'},\hat{A}\varphi_z\big\rangle\langle\varphi_z,\psi\rangle\varphi_{z'}(x)\,dz\,dz'. \tag{2.31}$$

So we get a formula for the Schwartz kernel $K_A$ for $\hat{A}$,

$$K_A(x,x') = (2\pi\hbar)^{-2n}\iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}}\big\langle\varphi_{z'},\hat{A}\varphi_z\big\rangle\overline{\varphi_z(x')}\varphi_{z'}(x)\,dz\,dz'. \tag{2.32}$$

Then we apply formula (2.11) to get the contravariant symbol $A$.

The formula for the covariant symbol follows from (2.7) and trace computation with coherent states. □

The only but important missing property to have a nice probabilistic setting with the Wigner functions is *positivity* which is unfortunately not satisfied because we have the following result, proved by Hudson [120] for $n = 1$, then extended to $n \geq 2$ by Soto–Claverie [181].

**Theorem 3** *$\mathcal{W}_\psi(X) \geq 0$ on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ if and only if $\psi = C\varphi_z^{(\Gamma)}$ where $C$ is a complex number, $\Gamma$ a complex, symmetric $n \times n$ matrix with a positive non degenerate imaginary part $\Im\Gamma$, $z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, where we define the Gaussian*

$$\varphi^{(\Gamma)}(x) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n/4} \det{}^{1/4} \Im\Gamma \exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}\Gamma x \cdot x\right). \tag{2.33}$$

*Proof* We more or less follow the paper of Soto–Claverie [181].

We can check by direct computation that the Wigner density of ${\varphi_z}^{(\Gamma)}$ is positive (according the definition we have to compute the Fourier transform of the exponent of a quadratic form). We can also give the following more elegant proof. First, it is enough to consider the case $z = (0, 0)$. Second, it is possible to find a metaplectic transformation $F$ such that ${\varphi_z}^{(\Gamma)} = \hat{R}(F)\varphi_0$ (see the section on symplectic invariance and Chap. 3 for more properties on the metaplectic group). Hence we get $\mathcal{W}_{\hat{R}(F)\varphi_0}(X) = \mathcal{W}_{\varphi_0}(F^{-1}(X))$. But we have computed above $\mathcal{W}_{\varphi_0}$, which is a standard Gaussian, so it is positive.

Conversely, assume now that $\mathcal{W}_\psi(X) \geq 0$ on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. We shall prove that the Fourier–Bargmann transform $\psi^\#(z)$ is a Gaussian function on the phase space. Hence using the inverse Bargmann transform formula, we shall see that $\psi$ is a Gaussian.

Let us first prove the two following properties:

$$\psi^\#(z) \neq 0, \quad \forall z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}, \tag{2.34}$$

$$\left|\psi^\#(z)\right| \leq C\mathrm{e}^{\delta|z|^2}, \quad \forall z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}, \text{ for some } C, \delta > 0. \tag{2.35}$$

We have seen that

$$\begin{aligned}\left|\langle\psi, \varphi_z\rangle\right|^2 &= (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \mathcal{W}_\psi(X)\mathcal{W}_{\varphi_z}(X)\, dX \\ &= 2^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \mathcal{W}_\psi(X)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{\hbar}|X-z|^2}\, dX.\end{aligned} \tag{2.36}$$

The last integral is positive because by assumption $\mathcal{W}_\psi(X) \geq 0$ and $\int \mathcal{W}_\psi(X)\, dX = 1$.

Using again (2.36) we easily get (2.34). The second step is to use a property of entire functions in $\mathbb{C}^n$. Let us recall that in Chap. 1, we have seen that the function

$$\psi_a^\#(\zeta) := \exp\left(\frac{p^2 + ip \cdot q}{2\hbar}\right)\psi^\#(q, p) \tag{2.37}$$

is an entire function in the variable $\zeta = q - ip \in \mathbb{C}^n$. Moreover we get easily that $\psi_a^\#(\zeta)$ satisfies properties (2.34). To achieve the proof of Theorem 3 we apply the following lemma, which is a particular case of Hadamard factorization theorem for $n = 1$, extended for $n \geq 2$ in [181]. □

**Lemma 11** *Let $f$ be an entire function in $\mathbb{C}^n$ such that $f(\zeta) \neq 0$ for all $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n$ and for some $C > 0$, $\delta > 0$,*

$$\left|f(\zeta)\right| \leq C\mathrm{e}^{\delta|\zeta|^m}, \quad \forall\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n. \tag{2.38}$$

*Then $f(\zeta) = \mathrm{e}^{P(\zeta)}$, where $P$ is a polynomial of degree $\leq m$.*

## 2.3 Coherent States and Operator Norms Estimates

Let us give now a first application of coherent states to Weyl quantization. We assume first that $\hbar = 1$.

**Theorem 4** (Calderon–Vaillancourt) *There exists a universal constant $C_n$ such that for every symbol $A \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ we have*

$$\|\hat{A}\|_{\mathcal{L}(L^2,L^2)} \leq C_n \sup_{|\gamma|\leq 2n+1, X\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|\partial_X^\gamma A(X)\right|. \tag{2.39}$$

*Beginning of the Proof* From (2.32) we get the formula

$$\langle\psi, \hat{A}\eta\rangle = (2\pi)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}} \langle\varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle\psi^\#(z')\overline{\eta^\#(z)}\, dz\, dz'. \tag{2.40}$$

We shall get (2.39) by proving that the Bargmann kernel $K_A^{\mathcal{B}}(z, z') := \langle\varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle$ is the kernel of a bounded operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$. Let us first recall a classical lemma

**Lemma 12** *Let $(\Omega, \mu)$ be a measured ($\sigma$-finite) space, $K$ a measurable function on $\Omega \times \Omega$ such that*

$$m_K := \max\left\{\sup_{z\in\Omega} \int_\Omega \left|K(z, z')\right| dz', \sup_{z'\in\Omega} \int_\Omega \left|K(z, z')\right| dz\right\}.$$

*Then $K$ is the integral kernel of a bounded operator $T_K$ on $L^2(\Omega)$ and we have*

$$\|T_K\| \leq m_K.$$

So the Calderon–Vaillancourt theorem will be a consequence of the following.

**Lemma 13** *There exists a universal constant $C_n$ such that for every symbol $A \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ we have*

$$\left|K_A^{\mathcal{B}}(z, z')\right| \le C_n\big(1+|z-z'|\big)^{-2n-1} \sup_{|\gamma|\le 2n+1,\, X\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|\partial_X^\gamma A(X)\right|. \tag{2.41}$$

*Proof* We have already seen that

$$\begin{aligned} K_A^{\mathcal{B}}(z, z') &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} A(X)\mathcal{W}_{z',z}(X)\,dX \\ &= 2^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} A(X)\exp\left(-\left|X-\frac{z+z'}{2}\right|^2 - i\sigma\left(X-\frac{1}{2}z', z-z'\right)\right)dX. \end{aligned} \tag{2.42}$$

First remark that we have

$$\left|\langle\varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle\right| \le \sup_{X\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|A(X)\right|. \tag{2.43}$$

So we only have to consider the case $|z'-z| \ge 1$. The estimate is proved by integration by parts (as is usual for an oscillating integral).

Let us introduce the phase function

$$\Phi = -\left|X-\frac{z+z'}{2}\right|^2 - i\sigma\left(X-\frac{1}{2}z', z-z'\right). \tag{2.44}$$

We have $|\partial_X\Phi| \ge |z-z'|$ hence

$$\frac{\overline{\partial_X\Phi}\cdot\partial_X}{|\partial_X\Phi|^2}\mathrm{e}^{\Phi} = \mathrm{e}^{\Phi}. \tag{2.45}$$

So we get the wanted estimates performing $2n+1$ integrations by parts in the integral (2.42) using formula (2.45).

This achieves the proof of the Calderon–Vaillancourt theorem. □

**Corollary 4** *$\hat{A}$ is a compact operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ if $A$ is $C^\infty$ on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ and satisfies the following condition*:

$$\lim_{|z|\to+\infty} \left|\partial_z^\gamma A(z)\right| = 0, \quad \forall\gamma\in\mathbb{N}^{2d},\ |\gamma| \le 2n+1. \tag{2.46}$$

*Proof* Let us introduce $\chi \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ such that $\chi(X) = 1$ if $|X| \le \frac{1}{2}$ and $\chi(X) = 0$ if $|X| \ge 1$. Let us define $A_R(X) = \chi(X/R)A(X)$. For every $R > 0$, $\hat{A}_R$ is Hilbert–

Schmidt hence compact. Using the Calderon–Vaillancourt estimate, we get

$$\lim_{|R|\to+\infty}\|\hat{A}-\widehat{A_R}\|=0.$$

So $\hat{A}$ is compact. □

Using the same idea as for proving Calderon–Vaillancourt theorem, we get now a sufficient trace-class condition.

**Theorem 5** *There exists a universal constant $\tau_n$ such that for every $A \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ we have*

$$\|\hat{A}\|_{Tr} \le \tau_n \sum_{|\gamma|\le 2n+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|\partial_X^\gamma A(X)\right| dX. \tag{2.47}$$

*In particular if the r.h.s. is finite then $\hat{A}$ is in the trace class and we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\,\hat{A} = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(X)\, dX. \tag{2.48}$$

*Proof* Recall that $\hbar = 1$. From (2.29) we know that $\hat{A}$ has the following decomposition into rank one operators:

$$\hat{A} = (2\pi)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}} \langle \varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle \Pi_{z,z'}\, dz\, dz'. \tag{2.49}$$

But we know that $\|\Pi_{z,z'}\|_{TR} = 1$. So we have

$$\|\hat{A}\|_{TR} \le (2\pi)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}} \left|\langle \varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle\right| dz\, dz'. \tag{2.50}$$

Using integration by parts as in the proof of Calderon–Vaillancourt, we have

$$\left|\langle \varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle\right| \le C_N \left(1+|z-z'|\right)^{-N} \sum_{|\gamma|\le N} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \mathrm{e}^{-|X-(z+z')/2|^2} \left|\partial_X^\gamma A(X)\right| dX \tag{2.51}$$

with $N = 2n+1$. Now perform the change of variables $u = (z+z')/2$, $v = z - z'$ and using Young inequality we get

$$\iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}} \left|\langle \varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle\right| dz\, dz' \le \tau_n \sum_{|\gamma|\le N} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left|\partial_X^\gamma A(X)\right| dX \tag{2.52}$$

hence (2.47) follows.

We can get (2.48) by using approximations with compact support $A_R$ like in the proof of Corollary 4. □

*Remark 5* Using interpolation results it is possible to get similar estimates for the Schatten norm $\|\hat{A}\|_p$ for $1 < p < +\infty$.

Let us now compute the action of Weyl quantization on Gaussian coherent states.

**Lemma 14** *Assume that $A \in \Sigma(m)$ ($m$ is temperate weight). Then for every $N \geq 1$, we have*

$$\hat{A}\varphi_z = \sum_{|\gamma|\leq N} \hbar^{\frac{|\gamma|}{2}} \frac{\partial^\gamma A(z)}{\gamma!} \Psi_{\gamma,z} + \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{(N+1)/2}\big), \tag{2.53}$$

*the estimate of the remainder is uniform in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ for $z$ in every bounded set of the phase space and*

$$\Psi_{\gamma,z} = \hat{T}(z)\Lambda_\hbar \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big(z^\gamma\big)g, \tag{2.54}$$

*where $g(x) = \pi^{-n/4}\mathrm{e}^{-|x|^2/2}$, $\mathrm{Op}_1^w(z^\gamma)$ is the 1-Weyl quantization of the monomial: $(x,\xi)^\gamma = x^{\gamma'}\xi^{\gamma''}$, $\gamma = (\gamma', \gamma'') \in \mathbb{N}^{2d}$. In particular $\mathrm{Op}_1^w(z^\gamma)g = P_\gamma g$ where $P_\gamma$ is a polynomial of the same parity as $|\gamma|$.*

*Proof* Let us write

$$\hat{A}\varphi_z = \hat{A}\Lambda_\hbar\hat{T}_1(z)g = \Lambda_\hbar\hat{T}_1(z)\big(\Lambda_\hbar\hat{T}_1(z)\big)^{-1}\hat{A}\Lambda_\hbar\hat{T}_1(z)g,$$

where $\Lambda_\hbar$ is the dilation: $\Lambda_\hbar\psi = \hbar^{-n/4}\psi(\hbar^{-1/2}x)$ and $\hat{T}_1$ is $\hat{T}$ for $\hbar = 1$.

Let us remark that $(\Lambda_\hbar\hat{T}(z))^{-1}\hat{A}\Lambda_\hbar\hat{T}(z) = \mathrm{Op}_1^w[A_{\hbar,z}]$ where $A_{\hbar,z}(X) = A(\sqrt{\hbar}X + z)$. So we prove the lemma by expanding $A_{\hbar,z}$ in $X$, around $z$, with the Taylor formula with integral remainder term to estimate the error term. □

The following Lemma allows to localized observables acting on coherent states.

**Lemma 15** *Let $A$ be a smooth observable with compact support in the ball $B(X_0, r_0)$ of the phase space. Then there exists $R > 0$ and for all $N \geq 1$ there exists $C_N$ such that for $|z - X_0| \geq 2r_0$ we have*

$$\big\|\hat{A}\varphi_z\big\| \leq C_N\hbar^N\langle z\rangle^{-N}, \quad \text{for } |z| \geq R. \tag{2.55}$$

*Proof* It is convenient here to work on Fourier–Bargmannn side. So we estimate

$$\big\langle\varphi_z, \hat{A}\varphi_{z'}\big\rangle = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(Y)\mathcal{W}_{z,z'}(Y)\,dY. \tag{2.56}$$

As we have already seen, we have

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(Y)\mathcal{W}_{z,z'}(Y)\,dY$$
$$= 2^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{\hbar}\left|Y - \frac{z+z'}{2}\right|^2 - \frac{i}{\hbar}\sigma\left(Y - \frac{1}{2}z', z - z'\right)\right) A(Y)\,dY. \quad (2.57)$$

Using integrations by parts as above, considering the phase function $\Psi(Y) = -|Y - \frac{z+X}{2}|^2 - i\sigma(Y - \frac{1}{2}X, z - X)$ and the differential operator $\frac{\overline{\partial_Y \Psi}}{|\partial_Y \Psi|^2}\partial_Y$, we get for every $M, M'$ large enough,

$$\left|\langle \hat{A}\varphi_z, \varphi_{z'}\rangle\right| \le C_{M,M'} \int_{[|Y|\le r_0]} \left(1 + \frac{|Y - z|}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right)^{-M} \left(1 + \frac{|z - z'|}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right)^{M-M'} dY. \quad (2.58)$$

Therefore we easily get the estimate choosing $M, M'$ conveniently and using that the Fourier–Bargmannn transform is an isometry. □

We need to introduce some properties for the Weyl symbols $A$.

**Definition 5** A positive function $m$ on $\mathbb{R}^d$ is a temperate weight if it satisfies the following property. There exist $N, C$ such that

$$m(X+Y) \le m(X)\big(1 + |X - Y|\big)^N, \quad \forall X, Y \in \mathbb{R}^d. \quad (2.59)$$

A symbol $A$ is a classical observable of weight $m$ if for every multiindex $\alpha$ there exists $C_\alpha$ such that

$$\left|\partial_X^\alpha A(X)\right| \le C_\alpha m(X), \quad \forall X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}.$$

The space of symbols of weight $m$ is denoted $\Sigma(m)$.

A basic example of temperate weight is $m_\mu(X) = (1 + |X|)^\mu$, $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$. We shall denote $\Sigma^\mu = \Sigma(m_\mu)$. For example $\Sigma^0 = \Sigma(1)$.

*Remark 6* The product of two temperate weights is a temperate weight and if $m$ is a temperate weight then $m^{-1}$ is also a temperate weight.

As proved by Unterberger [186] and rediscovered by Tataru [183], it is possible to characterize the operator class $\widehat{\Sigma(1)}$ on the matrix element $\langle \varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle$. We state now a semi-classical version of Unterberger result.

**Theorem 6** *Let $\hat{A}_\hbar$ be a $\hbar$-dependent family of operators from $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$. Then $\hat{A} = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(A_\hbar)$ with $A_\hbar \in \Sigma(1)$ with uniform estimate[2] if and only if for every*

[2] This means that for every $\gamma$, $\sup_{\hbar\in]0,1]} \|\partial^\gamma A\|_\infty < +\infty$.

*N there exists $C_N$ such that we have*

$$\left|\langle\varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}\varphi_z\rangle\right| \le C_N\left(1+\frac{|z-z'|}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right)^{-N}, \quad \forall\hbar\in]0,1),\ z,z'\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}. \tag{2.60}$$

*Proof* Suppose that $\hat{A} = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(A_\hbar)$, with $A_\hbar \in \Sigma(1)$ is a bounded family. We get estimate (2.60) by integrations by parts as above.

Conversely if we have estimates (2.60), using (2.23) and (2.29) we have

$$A_\hbar(X) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n}\iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}}\langle\varphi_{z'}, \hat{A}_\hbar\varphi_z\rangle \exp\left(-\frac{1}{\hbar}\left(\left|X-\frac{z+z'}{2}\right|^2 + iJ\left(X-\frac{z'}{2}\right)\cdot(z-z')\right)\right)dz\,dz'. \tag{2.61}$$

Using the change of variables $\frac{z+z'}{2} = u$ and $z-z' = \sqrt{\hbar}v$ we get easily that there exists $C>0$ such that

$$\left|A_\hbar(X)\right| \le C, \quad \forall X\in\mathbb{R}^{2n},\ \hbar\in]0,1]. \tag{2.62}$$

In the same way we can estimate every derivatives of $A_\hbar$, after derivation in $X$ in the integral (2.61). □

The other main fact in Weyl quantization is existence of an operational calculus. We shall recall its properties in the next section.

## 2.4 Product Rule and Applications

### *2.4.1 The Moyal Product*

One of the most useful properties of Weyl quantization is that we have an operational calculus defined by:

**The Product Rule for Quantum Observables** Let us start with $A, B \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$. We look for a classical observable $C$ such that $\hat{A}\cdot\hat{B} = \hat{C}$. Let us first remark that the integral kernel of $\hat{C}$ is

$$K_C(x,y) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K_A(x,s)K_B(s,y)\,ds. \tag{2.63}$$

Using relationship between integral kernels and Weyl symbols, we get

$$C(X) = (\pi\hbar)^{-2n}\iint_{\mathbb{R}^{4n}} \mathrm{e}^{2i\hbar\sigma(Y,Z)}A(X+Z)B(X+Y)\,dY\,dZ, \tag{2.64}$$

where $\sigma$ is the symplectic bilinear form introduced above.

Now let us apply Plancherel formula in $\mathbb{R}^{4n}$ and the following Fourier transform formula:

**Lemma 16** *Let* $f(T) = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\langle B.T,T\rangle}$, *for* $T \in \mathbb{R}^m$ *where* $B$ *is a non degenerate symmetric* $m \times m$ *matrix. Then the Fourier transform* $\tilde{f}$ *is*

$$\tilde{f}(\zeta) = (2\pi)^{m/2}|\det B|^{-1/2}\mathrm{e}^{i\pi\,\mathrm{sgn}\,B}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{2}\langle B^{-1}\zeta,\zeta\rangle}, \tag{2.65}$$

*where* $\mathrm{sgn}\,B$ *is the signature of the matrix* $B$.

*Proof* See [117, 163]. □

Hence we get

$$C(x,\xi) = \exp\left(\frac{i\hbar}{2}\sigma(D_x, D_\xi; D_y, D_\eta)\right)A(x,\xi)B(y,\eta)\Big|_{(x,\xi)=(y,\eta)}. \tag{2.66}$$

We can see easily on formula (2.66) that $C \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$. So that (2.64) defines a non-commutative product on classical observables. We shall denote this product $C = A \star B$ (Moyal product).

In semi-classical analysis, it is useful to expand the exponent in (2.66), so we get the formal series in $\hbar$:

$$C(x,\xi) = \sum_{j\geq 0} C_j(x,\xi)\hbar^j, \quad \text{where}$$

$$C_j(x,\xi) = \frac{1}{j!}\left(\frac{i}{2}\sigma(D_x, D_\xi; D_y, D_\eta)\right)^j A(x,\xi)B(y,\eta)\Big|_{(x,\xi)=(y,\eta)}. \tag{2.67}$$

We can easily see that in general $C$ is not a classical observable because of the $\hbar$ dependence. It can be proved that it is a *semi-classical observable* in the following sense.

**Definition 6** We say that $A$ is a semi-classical observable of weight $m$, where $m$ is temperate weight on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, if there exist $\hbar_0 > 0$ and a sequence $A_j \in \Sigma(m)$, $j \in \mathbb{N}$, so that $A$ is a map from $]0, \hbar_0]$ into $\Sigma(m)$ satisfying the following asymptotic condition: for every $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and every $\gamma \in \mathbb{N}^{2n}$ there exists $C_N > 0$ such that for all $\hbar \in ]0, 1[$ we have

$$\sup_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} m^{-1}(z)\left|\frac{\partial^\gamma}{\partial z^\gamma}\left(A(\hbar,z) - \sum_{0\leq j\leq N}\hbar^j A_j(z)\right)\right| \leq C_N\hbar^{N+1}, \tag{2.68}$$

$A_0$ is called the principal symbol, $A_1$ the sub-principal symbol of $\hat{A}$.

The set of semi-classical observables of weight $m$ is denoted by $\Sigma_{sc}(m)$. Its range in $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n), \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n))$ is denoted $\widehat{\Sigma}_{sc}(m)$.

We may use the notation $\Sigma_{sc}^{\mu} = \Sigma_{sc}(m_\mu)$.

Now we state the product rule for Weyl quantization.

**Theorem 7** *Let $m$, $m'$ be two temperate weights in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. For every $A \in \Sigma(m)$ and $B \in \Sigma(m')$, there exists a unique $C \in \Sigma_{sc}(mp)$ such that $\hat{A} \cdot \hat{B} = \hat{C}$ with $C \asymp \sum_{j\geq 0} \hbar^j C_j$. The $C_j$ are given by*

$$C_j(x,\xi) = \frac{1}{2^j} \sum_{|\alpha+\beta|=j} \frac{(-1)^{|\beta|}}{\alpha!\beta!} \big(D_x^\beta \partial_\xi^\alpha A\big) \cdot \big(D_x^\alpha \partial_\xi^\beta B\big)(x,\xi).$$

*Proof* The main technical point is to control the remainder terms uniformly in the semi-classical parameter $\hbar$. This is detailed in the appendix of the paper [31]. □

**Corollary 5** *Under the assumption of the theorem, we have the well known correspondence between the commutator for quantum observables and the Poisson bracket for classical observables, $\frac{i}{\hbar}[\hat{A}, \hat{B}] \in \widehat{\Sigma_{sc}(mm')}$ and its principal symbol is the Poisson bracket $\{A, B\}$.*

A very useful application of the Moyal product is the possibility to get semi-classical approximations for inverse of elliptic symbol.

**Definition 7** Let $A(\hbar)$ be a semi-classical observable in $\Sigma_{sc}(m)$ and $X_0 \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. We shall say that $A$ is elliptic at $X_0$ if $A_0(X_0) \neq 0$.

We shall say that $A$ is uniformly elliptic if there exists $c > 0$ such that

$$\big|A(X)\big| \geq cm(X), \quad \forall X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}. \tag{2.69}$$

**Theorem 8** *Let $A \in \Sigma_{sc}(m)$ be an uniformly elliptic semi-classical symbol. Then there exists $B \in \Sigma_{sc}(m^{-1})$ such that $B \star A = 1$ (in the sense of asymptotic expansion in $\Sigma_{sc}(1)$). Moreover, we have*

$$\hat{B} \cdot \hat{A} = \mathbb{1} + \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^\infty\big), \tag{2.70}$$

*where the remainder is estimated in the $L^2$norm of operators.*

*Moreover the semi-classical symbol $B$ of $\hat{B}$ is $B = \sum_{j\geq 0} \hbar^j B_j$ with*

$$B_0 = A_0^{-1}, \qquad B_1 = -A_1 A_0^{-2}. \tag{2.71}$$

*Proof* Let us denote by $C_j(E,F)$ the $j$th term in the Moyal product $E \star F$. The method consists to compute by induction $B_0, \dots, B_N$ such that

$$\Big(\sum_{0\leq j\leq N} \hbar^j B_j\Big) \star A(h) = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{N+1}\big). \tag{2.72}$$

We start with $B_0 = \frac{1}{A_0}$. The next step is to compute $B_1$ such that $B_1 A_0 + A_1 B_0 = 0$. Then to compute $B_2$ such that

$$C_2(A_0, B_0) + C_1(A_1, B_1) + B_2 A_0 = 0.$$

So we get all the $B_j$ by induction using the asymptotic expansion for the Moyal product.

The remainder term in (2.70) is estimated using the Calderon–Vaillancourt theorem. □

We give now a local version of the above theorem, which can be proved by the same method.

**Theorem 9** *Let $A \in \Sigma_{sc}(m)$ be an elliptic symbol in an open bounded set $\Omega$ of $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. Then for every $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ there exists $B_\chi \in \Sigma_{sc}^{-\infty}$ such that*

$$\hat{B}_\chi \hat{A} = \hat{\chi} + \mathcal{O}(\hbar^\infty). \tag{2.73}$$

*Remark 7* For application it is useful to note that if $A$ depends in a uniform way of some parameter $\varepsilon \in [0, 1]$ then $B$ also depends uniformly in $\varepsilon$. In particular $\varepsilon$ may depend on $\hbar$.

## *2.4.2 Functional Calculus*

An useful consequence of the algebraic properties of symbolic quantization is a functional calculus: under suitable assumptions if $\hat{H}$ is an Hermitian semi-classical observable then for every smooth function $f$, $f(\hat{H})$ is also a semi-classical observable. The technical statement is

**Theorem 10** *Let $\hat{H}$ be a uniformly elliptic semi-classical Hamiltonian. Let $f$ be a smooth real valued function such that, for some $r \in \mathbb{R}$, we have*

$$\forall k \in \mathbb{N},\ \exists C_k, \quad \left|f^{(k)}(s)\right| \le C_k \langle s\rangle^{r-k}, \quad \forall s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

*Then $f(\hat{H})$ is a semi-classical observable with a semi-classical symbol $H_f(\hbar, z)$ given by*

$$H_f(\hbar, z) \asymp \sum_{j\ge 0} \hbar^j H_{f,j}(z). \tag{2.74}$$

*In particular we have*

$$H_{f,0}(z) = f\big(H_0(z)\big), \tag{2.75}$$

$$H_{f,1}(z) = H_1(z) f'\big(H_0(z)\big), \tag{2.76}$$

$$\textit{and for},\ j \geq 2, \quad H_{f,j} = \sum_{1 \leq 1 \leq 2j-1} d_{j,k}(H) f^{(k)}(H_0), \tag{2.77}$$

*where $d_{j,k}(H)$ are universal polynomials in $\partial_z^\gamma H_\ell(z)$ with $|\gamma| + \ell \leq j$.*

A proof of this theorem can be found in [68, Chap. 8], [107]. In particular we can take $f(s) = (\lambda + s)^{-1}$ for $\Im\lambda \neq 0$ (the proof begins with this case) or $f$ with a compact support.

From this theorem we can get the following consequences on the spectrum of $\hat{H}$ (see [107]).

**Theorem 11** *Let $\hat{H}$ be like in Theorem 10. Assume that $H_0^{-1}[E_-, E_+]$ is a compact set in $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$. Consider a closed interval $I \subset [E_-, E_+]$. Then we have the following properties.*

(i) $\forall \hbar \in ]0, \hbar_0]$, $\hbar_0 > 0$, *the spectrum of $\hat{H}$ is discrete and is a finite sequence of eigenvalues $E_1(\hbar) \leq E_2(\hbar) \leq \cdots \leq E_{N_I}(\hbar)$ where each eigenvalue is repeated according its multiplicity.*

*Moreover $N_I = O(\hbar^{-n})$ as $\hbar \searrow 0$.*

(ii) *For all $f \in C_0^\infty(I)$, $f(\hat{H})$ is a trace-class operator and we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big[f\big(\hat{H}\big)\big] \asymp \sum_{j \geq 0} \hbar^{j-d} \tau_j(f), \tag{2.78}$$

*where $\tau_j$ are distributions supported in $H_0^{-1}(I)$. In particular, we have*

$$\tau_0(f) = (2\pi)^{-d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} f\big(H_0(z)\big)\, dz, \tag{2.79}$$

$$\tau_1(f) = (2\pi)^{-d} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} f'\big(H_0(z)\big) H_1(z)\, dz. \tag{2.80}$$

An easy consequence of this is the following Weyl asymptotic formula:

**Corollary 6** *If $I = [\lambda_-, \lambda_+]$ such that $\lambda_\pm$ are non critical values for $H_0$*[3] *then we have*

$$\lim_{\hbar \to 0} (2\pi\hbar)^n N_I = \int_{[H_0(q,p) \in I]} dq\, dp. \tag{2.81}$$

*Remark 8* Formula (2.81) is very well known and can be proved in many ways, under much weaker assumptions.

For a proof using the functional calculus see [163, pp. 283–287].

[3] That $\lambda$ is a non-critical value for $H$ means that $\nabla H(z) \neq 0$ if $H(z) = \lambda$.

Under our assumptions we shall see in Chap. 4 that we have a Weyl asymptotic with an accurate remainder estimate:

$$N_I = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{[H(q,p)\in I]} dq\, dp + O\big(\hbar^{1-n}\big),$$

using a time dependent method due to Hörmander and Levitan ([116] and its bibliography). For more accurate results about spectral asymptotics see [122].

### 2.4.3 Propagation of Observables

Now we come to the main application of the results of this section. We shall give a proof of the correspondence (in the sense of Bohr) between quantum and classical dynamics. As we shall see this theorem is a useful tool for semi-classical analysis although its proof is an easy application of Weyl calculus rules stated above. The microlocal version of the following result is originally due to Egorov [73]. R. Beals [18] found a nice simple proof.

**Theorem 12** (The Semi-classical Propagation Theorem) *Let us consider a time dependent Hamiltonian $H(t) \in \Sigma^2_{sc}$ satisfying*:

$$\big|\partial_z^\gamma H_j(t,z)\big| \le C_\gamma, \quad \text{for } |\gamma| + j \ge 2; \tag{2.82}$$

$$\hbar^{-2}\big(H(t) - H_0(t) - \hbar H_1(t)\big) \in \Sigma^0_{sc}. \tag{2.83}$$

*We assume that $H(t,z)$ is continuous for $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and that all the estimates are uniform in $t$ for $t \in [-T,T]$.*

*Let us introduce an observable $A \in \Sigma^1$, such that $\partial_X^\gamma A \in \Sigma^0$ if $|\gamma| \ge 1$. Then we have the following.*

(a) *For $\hbar$ small enough and for every $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, the Schrödinger equation*

$$i\hbar\partial_t\psi_t = \hat{H}(t)\psi_t, \quad \psi_{t=s} = \psi \tag{2.84}$$

*has a unique solution which we denote $\psi_t = \hat{U}(t,s)\psi$. Moreover $\hat{U}(t,s)$ can be extended as a unitary operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$.*

(b) *The time evolution $\hat{A}(t,s)$ of $\hat{A}$, from the initial time $s$ is $\hat{A}(t,s) = \hat{U}(s,t)\hat{A} \times \hat{U}(t,s)$ and has a semi-classical Weyl symbol $A_\hbar(t,s)$ such that $A_\hbar(t,s) \in \Sigma^1_{sc}$. More precisely we have $A(t,s) \asymp \sum_{j\ge 0} \hbar^j A_j(t,s)$, in $\Sigma^0_{sc}$, which is uniform in $t,s$, for $t,s \in [-T,T]$. Moreover $A_j(t,s)$ can be computed by the following formulas*:

$$A_0(t,s;z) = A\big(\Phi^{t,s}(z)\big), \tag{2.85}$$

$$A_1(t,s;,z) = \int_s^t \big\{A\big(\Phi^{\tau,t}\big), H_1(\tau)\big\}\big(\Phi^{t,\tau}(z)\big)\, d\tau \tag{2.86}$$

*and for $j \ge 2$, $A_j(t,s;z)$ can be computed by induction on $j$.*

*Proof* Property (a) will be proved later. It is easier to prove it if $H$ is time independent because we can prove in this case that $\hat{H}$ is essentially self-adjoint (for a proof see [163]). Then we have

$$\hat{U}(t) := \hat{U}(t,0) = \exp\left(-\frac{it}{\hbar}\hat{H}\right).$$

Let us remark that, under the assumption of the theorem, the classical flow for $H_0$ exists globally. Indeed, the Hamiltonian vector field $(\partial_\xi H_0, -\partial_x H_0)$ has a sublinear growing at infinity so, no classical trajectory can blow up in a finite time. Moreover, using usual methods in non linear O.D.E. (variation equation) we can prove that $A(\Phi^{t,s}) \in \Sigma(1)$ with semi-norm uniformly bounded for $t, s$ bounded.

Now, from the Heisenberg equation and the classical equations of motion we get

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau}\hat{U}(s,\tau)\widehat{A_0}(t,\tau)\hat{U}(\tau,s)\\&\quad = \hat{U}(s;\tau)\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\big[\hat{H}(\tau), \widehat{A_0}(t,\tau)\big] - \big\{\widehat{H(\tau), A_0}\big\}\big(\Phi^{t,\tau}\big)\right\}\hat{U}(\tau,s),\end{aligned} \tag{2.87}$$

where $A_0(t,s) = A(\Phi^{t,s})$. But, from the corollary of the product rule, the principal symbol of

$$\frac{i}{\hbar}\Big(\big[\hat{H}(\tau), \widehat{A_0(t,\tau)}\big] - \big\{\widehat{H(\tau), A_0}\big\}\Big)\big(\Phi^{t,\tau}\big)$$

vanishes. So, in the first step, using the product rule formula, we get the approximation

$$\begin{aligned}&\hat{U}(s,t)\hat{A}\hat{U}(t,s) - \widehat{A_0(t,s)}\\&\quad = \int_s^t \hat{U}(s,\tau)\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\big[\hat{H}(\tau), \widehat{A_0(t,\tau)}\big] - \big\{\widehat{\hat{H}(\tau), A_0}\big\}\Phi^{t,\tau}\right)\hat{U}(\tau,s)\,d\tau.\end{aligned} \tag{2.88}$$

Now, it is not difficult to obtain, by induction, the full asymptotics in $\hbar$. For $j \geq 2$,

$$A_j(t,s;z) = \sum_{\substack{|(\alpha,\beta)|+k=j+1\\ 0\le\ell\le j-1}} \Gamma(\alpha,\beta)\int_s^t \big[\big(\partial_\xi^\alpha\partial_x^\beta H_k(\tau)\big)\cdot\big(\partial_\xi{}^\alpha\partial_x{}^\beta A_\ell\big)\big]\big(\Phi^{t,\tau}(z)\big)\,d\tau, \tag{2.89}$$

with

$$\Gamma(\alpha,\beta) = \frac{(-1)^{|\beta|} - (-1)^{|\alpha|}}{\alpha!\beta!2^{|\alpha|+|\beta|}}i^{-1-|(\alpha,\beta)|}.$$

The main technical point is to estimate the remainder terms. For a proof with more details see [31] where the authors get a uniform estimate up to Ehrenfest time (of order $\log\hbar^{-1}$). We give in Appendix B the necessary details for uniform estimates on finite times intervals. □

*Remark 9* If $H(t) = H_0(t)$ is a polynomial function of degree $\le 2$ in $z$ on the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ then the propagation theorem assumes a simpler form: $A(t,s) = A(\Phi^{t,s})$ and the remainder term is null. This is a consequence of the following exact formula:

$$\frac{i}{\hbar}\big[\hat{H}, \hat{B}\big] = \widehat{\{H, B\}}, \tag{2.90}$$

where $B \in \Sigma^{+\infty}$.

Now we give an application of the propagation theorem and coherent states in semi-classical analysis: we recover the classical evolution from the quantum evolution, in the classical limit $\hbar \searrow 0$.

**Corollary 7** *For every observable $A \in \Sigma^0$ and every $z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, we have*

$$\lim_{\hbar \searrow 0} \big\langle \hat{U}(t,s)\varphi_z, \hat{A}\hat{U}(t,s)\varphi_z \big\rangle = A\big(\Phi^{t,s}(z)\big) \tag{2.91}$$

*and the limit is uniform in $(t,s;z)$ on every bounded set of $\mathbb{R}_t \times \mathbb{R}_s \times \mathbb{R}^{2n}_z$.*

*Proof*

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle \hat{U}(t,s)\varphi_z, \hat{A}\hat{U}(t,s)\varphi_z \big\rangle &= \big\langle \varphi_z, \hat{U}(s,t)\hat{A}\hat{U}(t,s)\varphi_z \big\rangle \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(t,s;X)\mathcal{W}_{z,z}(X)\,dX \\ &= (\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(t,s;X)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|X-z|^2}{\hbar}}\,dX. \end{aligned} \tag{2.92}$$

So by the propagation theorem we know that $A(t,s;X) = A(\Phi^{t,s}(X)) + \mathcal{O}(\hbar)$. Hence the corollary follows. □

*Remark 10* The last result has a long history beginning with Ehrenfest [74] and continuing with Hepp [113], Bouzouina–Robert [31]. In this last paper it is proved that the corollary is still valid for times smaller than the Ehrenfest time $T_E := \gamma_E |\log \hbar|$, for some constant $\gamma_E > 0$.

### *2.4.4 Return to Symplectic Invariance of Weyl Quantization*

Let us give now a first construction of metaplectic transformations. Other equivalent constructions and more properties will be given later (chapter on quadratic hamiltonians).

**Lemma 17** *For every $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$ we can find a $C^1$-smooth curve $F_t$, $t \in [0,1]$, in $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$, such that $F_0 = \mathbb{1}$ and $F_1 = F$.*

*Proof* An explicit way to do that is to use the polar decomposition of $F$, $F = V|F|$ where $V$ is a symplectic orthogonal matrix and $|F| = \sqrt{F^t F}$ is positive symplectic matrix. Each of these matrices have a logarithm, so $F = \mathrm{e}^K \mathrm{e}^L$ with $K, L$ Hamiltonian matrices, and we can choose $F_t = \mathrm{e}^{tK}\mathrm{e}^{tL}$. $F_t$ is clearly the linear flow defined by the quadratic Hamiltonian $H_t(z) = \frac{1}{2} S_t z \cdot z$ where $S_t = -J \dot{F}_t F_t^{-1}$. □

Now we use the (exact) propagation theorem. $\hat{U}(t,s)$ denotes the propagator defined by the quadratic Hamiltonian built in the proof of Lemma 17 and Theorem 12. Then *we define* $\hat{R}(F) = \hat{U}(1,0)$. Recall that $\hat{U}(t,0)$ is the solution of the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt}\hat{U}(t,0) = \hat{H}(t)\hat{U}(t,0), \quad \hat{U}(0,0) = \mathbb{1}. \tag{2.93}$$

The following theorem translates the symplectic invariance of the Weyl quantization.

**Theorem 13** *For every linear symplectic transformation* $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$ *and every symbol* $A \in \Sigma(1)$ *we have*

$$\hat{R}(F)^{-1}\hat{A}\hat{R}(F) = \widehat{A \cdot F}. \tag{2.94}$$

*Proof* This is a direct consequence of the exact propagation formula for quadratic Hamiltonians

$$\hat{U}(0,t)\hat{A}\hat{U}(t,0) = \widehat{A\Phi^{t,0}}. \tag{2.95}$$

□

We can get another proof of the following result (see formulas (2.27)).

**Corollary 8** *Let* $\psi, \eta \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. *For every linear symplectic transformation* $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$, *we have the following transformation formula for the Wigner function*:

$$\mathcal{W}_{\hat{R}(F)\psi,\hat{R}(F)\eta}(z) = \mathcal{W}_{\psi,\eta}\big(F^{-1}(z)\big), \quad \forall z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}. \tag{2.96}$$

*Proof* For every $A \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle \hat{R}(F)\eta, \hat{A}\hat{R}(F)\psi\big\rangle &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(z)\mathcal{W}\big(\hat{R}(F)\psi, \hat{R}(F)\eta\big)(z)\,dz \\ &= \big\langle \eta, \hat{R}(F)^{-1}\hat{A}\hat{R}(F)\psi\big\rangle \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(F\cdot z)\mathcal{W}_{\psi,\eta}(z)\,dz.\end{aligned} \tag{2.97}$$

The corollary follows. □

We have the following uniqueness result.

**Proposition 20** *Given the linear symplectic transformation* $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$, *there exists a unique transformation* $\hat{R}(F)$, *up to a complex number of modulus* 1, *satisfying* (2.18).

*Proof* If $\hat{V}$ satisfies $\hat{V}^{-1}\hat{A}\hat{V} = \widehat{A \cdot F}$ then if $\hat{B} = \hat{V}^{-1} \cdot \hat{R}(F)$, we see that $\hat{B}$ commutes with every $\hat{A}$, $A \in \Sigma(1)$. In particular $\hat{B}$ commutes with the Heisenberg–Weyl translations $\hat{T}(z)$, hence $\hat{T}(z)^{-1}\hat{B}\hat{T}(z) = \hat{B}$. But we knows that $\hat{T}(z)^{-1}\hat{B}\hat{T}(z) = \widehat{B(\cdot + z)}$. So the Weyl symbol of $\hat{B}$ (it is a temperate distribution) is a constant complex number $\lambda$. But here $\hat{B}$ is unitary, so $|\lambda| = 1$. □

## 2.5 Husimi Functions, Frequency Sets and Propagation

### *2.5.1 Frequency Sets*

The Husimi transform of some temperate distributions $u \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is defined as follows:

**Definition 8** The Husimi transform of $u \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the function $\mathcal{H}_u(z)$ defined on the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ by

$$\mathcal{H}_u(z) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \left|\langle u, \varphi_z \rangle\right|^2, \quad z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}. \tag{2.98}$$

The Husimi transform in contrast with the Wigner transform is always non-negative. We shall see below that the Husimi distribution is a "regularization" of the Wigner distribution.

**Proposition 21** *For every* $\varphi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ *we have*

$$\mathcal{H}_\varphi = \mathcal{W}_\varphi * G_0,$$

*where* $G_0$ *is a gaussian function in phase space namely*

$$G_0(z) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n} \mathrm{e}^{-|z|^2/\hbar}.$$

*One has* $\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} G_0(z)\,dz = 1$. *This means that the Husimi distribution is a "regularization" of the Wigner distribution.*

*Proof* According to the Proposition 17(iii) we have

$$\mathcal{H}_\varphi(z) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \langle \mathcal{W}_{\varphi_z}, \mathcal{W}_\varphi \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n})}.$$

But we know that

$$\mathcal{W}_{\varphi_z}(X) = \mathcal{W}_{\varphi_0}(X - z).$$

We use Proposition 16:

$$\langle \mathcal{W}_{\varphi_z}, \mathcal{W}_{\varphi}\rangle = 2^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \exp\left(-\frac{|X-z|^2}{\hbar}\right)\mathcal{W}_{\varphi}(X)\,dX.$$

This yields the result. □

In semi-classical analysis (or in high frequency analysis) it is important to understand what is the region of the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ where some states $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ depending on $\hbar$, essentially lives when $\hbar$ is small. For that purpose let us introduce the *frequency set* of $\psi$.

**Definition 9** Let $\psi_\hbar \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$, depending on $\hbar$, such that $\|\psi_\hbar\| \le 1$. We say that $\psi_\hbar$ is negligible near a point $X_0 \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, if there exists a neighborhood $\mathcal{V}_{X_0}$ such that

$$\mathcal{H}_{\psi_\hbar}(z) = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^\infty\big), \quad \forall z \in \mathcal{V}_{X_0}. \tag{2.99}$$

Let us denote $\mathcal{N}[\psi_\hbar]$ the set $\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n},\ \psi_\hbar$ is negligible near $X\}$. The frequency set $\mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$ is defined as the complement of $\mathcal{N}[\psi_\hbar]$ in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$.

*Example 1*

- If $\psi_\hbar = \varphi_z$ then $\mathrm{FS}[\varphi_z] = \{z\}$.
- Let $\psi = a(x)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{\hbar}S(x)}$ where $a$ and $S$ are smooth functions, $a \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, $S$ real. Then we have the inclusion

$$\mathrm{FS}[\psi] \subseteq \big\{(x,\xi) | \xi = \nabla S(x)\big\}. \tag{2.100}$$

There are several equivalent definitions of the frequency set that we now give.

**Proposition 22** *Let $\psi_\hbar$ be such that $\|\psi_\hbar\| \le 1$ and $X_0 = (x_0, \xi_0) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. The following properties are equivalent*:

(i)

$$\mathcal{H}_{\psi_\hbar}(X) = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{+\infty}\big), \quad \forall X \in \mathcal{V}_{X_0}.$$

(ii) *There exists $A \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$, such that $A(X_0) = 1$ and*

$$\big\|\hat{A}\psi_\hbar\big\| = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{+\infty}\big). \tag{2.101}$$

(iii) *There exists a neighborhood $\mathcal{V}_{X_0}$ of $X_0$ such that for all $A \in C_0^\infty(\mathcal{V}_{X_0})$,*

$$\big\|\hat{A}\psi_\hbar\big\| = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{+\infty}\big). \tag{2.102}$$

(iv) *There exist $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ such that $\chi(x_0) = 1$ and a neighborhood $V_{\xi_0}$ of $\xi_0$ such that*

$$\big\langle \chi(x)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{\hbar}x\cdot\xi}, \psi_\hbar\big\rangle = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{+\infty}\big) \tag{2.103}$$

*for all $\xi \in V_{\xi_0}$.*

*Proof* Let us assume (i). Then we have

$$\mathcal{H}_{\psi_\hbar}(z) = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^\infty\big), \quad |z - X_0| < r_0. \tag{2.104}$$

Using Lemma 15 we have

$$\big\|\hat{A}\varphi_z\big\| \le C_N \hbar^{N/2}\langle z\rangle^{-N}, \quad \text{if } |z - X_0| > r_0/2. \tag{2.105}$$

We have, using linearity of integration,

$$\hat{A}\psi_\hbar = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int dz \langle\varphi_z, \psi_\hbar\rangle \hat{A}\varphi_z.$$

From the triangle inequality, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\big\|\hat{A}\psi_\hbar\big\| &\le (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int dz \big|\langle\psi_\hbar, \varphi_z\rangle\big|\big\|\hat{A}\varphi_z\big\| \\ &\le (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\left(\int_{[|z-X_0|<r_0]} dz + \int_{[|z-X_0|\ge r_0]} dz\right).\end{aligned} \tag{2.106}$$

Then we get (iii):

$$\big\|\hat{A}\psi_\hbar\big\|^2 = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{+\infty}\big).$$

Let us now assume (iii); we want to prove (i).

Let us introduce $\chi \in C_0^\infty(B(X_0, r_0))$, $\chi(X) = 1$ if $|X - X_0| \le r_0/2$. Using Theorem 9 we have $\hat{B}\hat{A} = \hat{\chi} + \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{+\infty})$. Hence $\hat{\chi}\psi_\hbar = \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{+\infty})$. But using Lemma 15 we have $\langle(1 - \hat{\chi})\psi, \varphi_z\rangle = \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{+\infty})$ for $|z - X_0| \le r_0/4$. So we have proved $\langle\psi_\hbar, \varphi_z\rangle = \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{+\infty})$ for $|z - X_0| \le r_0/4$. □

A consequence of this proposition is that Weyl quantization does not increase the frequency set.

**Corollary 9** *Let $\psi_\hbar$ be such that $\|\psi_\hbar\| \le 1$, $A \in \Sigma(1)$, then we have*

$$\mathrm{FS}\big[\hat{A}(\psi_\hbar)\big] \subseteq \mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]. \tag{2.107}$$

*Moreover if $A$ is elliptic at $X_0$ then we have*

$$X_0 \in \mathrm{FS}\big[\hat{A}(\psi_\hbar)\big] \iff X_0 \in \mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]. \tag{2.108}$$

*Proof* Let us assume that $X_0 \notin \mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$. If $\chi$ is like in the proof of the proposition, we have $\widehat{\chi A}\psi_\hbar = \mathcal{O}(\hbar^\infty)$. Applying Lemma 15 we have, for $z$ near $X_0$,

$$\big\langle\varphi_z, (\widehat{1-\chi)A}\psi_\hbar\big\rangle = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^\infty\big)$$

so we get, $z$ near $X_0$,

$$\big\langle\varphi_z, \widehat{\chi A}\psi_\hbar\big\rangle = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^\infty\big).$$

□

### 2.5.2 About Frequency Set of Eigenstates

Let us consider a quantum Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$. Assume that $H \in \Sigma(m)$. Let us consider the stationary Schrödinger equation

$$\hat{H}\psi_\hbar = E_\hbar \psi_\hbar, \tag{2.109}$$

where $\|\Psi_\hbar\| = 1$, $\lim_{\hbar\to 0} E_\hbar = E$.

**Proposition 23** *The frequency set of $\psi_\hbar$ is in the energy level set $S_E = \{X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n},\ H(X) = E\}$.*

*Proof* Let $X_0 \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ such that $H(X_0) \neq E$. There exist $\delta > 0$, $r_0 > 0$ such that $|H(X) - E| \geq \delta$, for every $X \in B(X_0, r_0)$. Let us choose some $\chi \in C_0^\infty(B(X_0, r_0))$, $\chi(X_0) = 1$. Using theorem 9 and the remark following this theorem (here at the end $\varepsilon = \hbar$), we can find $B$ such that

$$\hat{B}\big(\hat{H} - E_\hbar\big) = \hat{\chi} + \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{+\infty}\big), \tag{2.110}$$

so we get $\hat{\chi}\psi_\hbar = \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{+\infty})$ hence $X_0 \notin \mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$. □

Assume now that $\hat{H}$ satisfies the assumptions of the Propagation theorem and $\psi_\hbar$ satisfies the Schrödinger equation (2.109).

**Proposition 24** *The frequency set* $\mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$ *is invariant under the classical flow $\Phi^t$, for every $t \in \mathbb{R}$.*

*Proof* Let $X_0 \notin \mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$. There exists a compact support symbol $A$ elliptic at $X_0$ such that $\hat{A}\psi_\hbar = \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{+\infty})$.

For every $t$ we have

$$\hat{U}(-t)\hat{A}\psi_\hbar = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{+\infty}\big) = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{itE_\hbar}{\hbar}}\hat{A}(t)\psi_\hbar.$$

Recall that the principal symbol of $\hat{A}(t)$ is $A \cdot \Phi^t$. So we find that if $z$ is near $\Phi^{-t}(X_0)$, then $\hat{A}(t)\psi_\hbar = \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{+\infty})$, hence $\Phi^{-t}X_0 \notin \mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$. So we see that $\mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$ is invariant. □

## 2.6 Wick Quantization

### 2.6.1 General Properties

Following Berezin–Shubin [23] we start with the following general setting.

Let $M$ be a locally compact metric space, with a positive Radon measure $\mu$ and $\mathcal{H}$ an Hilbert space. For each $m \in M$ we associate a unit vector $e_m \in \mathcal{H}$ such that the map $m \mapsto e_m$ is strongly continuous from $M$ into $\mathcal{H}$. Moreover we assume that the following Plancherel formula is satisfied, for all $\psi \in \mathcal{H}$,

$$\|\psi\|^2 = \int_M \left|\langle e_m, \psi\rangle\right|^2 d\mu(m). \tag{2.111}$$

Let us denote $\psi^{\#}(m) = \langle e_m, \psi\rangle$. The map $\psi \mapsto \psi^{\#}(m) := \mathcal{I}\psi(m)$ is an isometry from $\mathcal{H}$ into $L^2(M)$. The canonical coherent states introduced in Chap. 1 are examples of this setting where $M = \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$, $z \mapsto \varphi_z$, with the measure $d\mu(z) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\, dq\, dp$, $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$.

**Definition 10** Let $\hat{A} \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H})$.

(i) The covariant symbol of $\hat{A}$ is the function on $M$ defined by $A_c(m) = \langle e_m, \hat{A}e_m\rangle$.
(ii) The contravariant symbol of $\hat{A}$ is the function on $M$, if it exists, such that

$$\hat{A}\psi = \int_M A^c(m)\Pi_m\psi\, dm, \quad \psi \in \mathcal{H}. \tag{2.112}$$

For the standard coherent states example, the covariant symbol is called Wick symbol and the contravariant symbol the anti-Wick symbol.

The covariant symbol satisfies the equality $A_c(m) = \mathrm{Tr}(\hat{A}\Pi_m)$.

Let us compute the anti-Wick symbol of some operator $\hat{A}$ with Weyl symbol $A$.

We know that the $\hbar$-Weyl symbol of the projector $\Pi_z$ is the Gaussian $(\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|X-z|^2}{\hbar}}$. So we find that the Weyl symbol of $\hat{A}$ is the convolution of its anti-Wick symbol and a standard Gaussian function:

$$A(X) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A^c(X)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|X-z|^2}{\hbar}}\, dz. \tag{2.113}$$

This formula shows that if $\hat{A}$ has a bounded anti-Wick symbol ($A^c \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$) then its Weyl symbol is an entire function in $\mathbb{C}^{2n}$, which is a restriction for a given operator to have an anti-Wick symbol.

Let us remark that the Wick symbol is an inverse formula associated with (2.113):

$$A_c(z) = 2^n\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(X)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|X-z|^2}{\hbar}}\, dX. \tag{2.114}$$

Now we give another interpretation of the contravariant symbol. Let us first remark that we have

$$\mathcal{I}^* \cdot \mathcal{I} = \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{H}}, \tag{2.115}$$

$$\mathcal{I} \cdot \mathcal{I}^* = \Pi_{\mathcal{H}}, \tag{2.116}$$

where $\Pi_{\mathcal{H}}$ is the orthogonal projector in $L^2(M)$ on $\mathcal{H}$ identified with $\mathcal{I}(\mathcal{H})$.

**Proposition 25** *Let us assume that $\hat{A}$ has a contravariant symbol $A^c$ such that $A^c \in L^\infty(M)$. Then we have*

$$\hat{A} = \mathcal{I}^* \cdot A^c \cdot \mathcal{I}, \tag{2.117}$$

*where $A^c$ is here the multiplication operator in $L^2(M)$.*

*Proof* For every $\psi, \eta \in \mathcal{H}$ we have

$$\langle \eta, \hat{A}\psi \rangle = \int_M \langle \eta, e_m \rangle \langle e_m, \hat{A}\psi \rangle \, d\mu(m) \tag{2.118}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \langle e_m, \hat{A}\psi \rangle &= \int_M A^c(m') \langle e_m, \Pi_{m'}\psi \rangle \, d\mu(m') \\ &= \int_M A^c(m') \langle \Pi_{m'} e_m, \Pi_{m'}\psi \rangle \, d\mu(m'). \end{aligned} \tag{2.119}$$

So we get

$$\langle \eta, \hat{A}\psi \rangle = \iint_{M\times M} A^c(m') \langle \Pi_{m'} e_m, \Pi_{m'}\psi \rangle \langle \eta, e_m \rangle \, d\mu(m') \, d\mu(m). \tag{2.120}$$

We get the conclusion using the equality

$$\langle \eta, e_{m'} \rangle = \int_M \langle e_{m'}, e_m \rangle \langle \eta, e_m \rangle \, d\mu(m). \tag{2.121}$$

□

Estimates on operators with covariant and contravariant symbols are easier to prove than for Weyl symbols. Moreover they can be used as a first step to get estimates in the setting of Weyl quantization as we shall see for positivity. The following proposition is easy to prove.

**Proposition 26** *Let $\hat{A}$ be an operator in $\mathcal{H}$ with a contravariant symbol $A^c$. Suppose that $A^c \in L^\infty(M)$. Then $\hat{A}$ is bounded in $\mathcal{H}$ and we have*

$$\|A_c\|_\infty \le \|\hat{A}\| \le \|A^c\|_\infty. \tag{2.122}$$

*Moreover $\hat{A}$ is self-adjoint if and only if $A^c$ is real and $\hat{A}$ is non-negative if $A^c$ is $\mu$-almost everywhere non-negative on $M$.*

For our basic example $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$, it is convenient to use the following notation. If $A$ is a classical observable, $A \in \Sigma(1)$, $\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(A)$ denotes the Weyl quantization of $A$ and $\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{aw}(A)$ denotes the anti-Wick quantization of $A$. In other words $\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{aw}(A)$ admits $A$ as an anti-Wick symbol. The following proposition is an easy consequence of the above results.

**Proposition 27** *Let $A \in \Sigma(1)$ (more general symbols could be considered). Then we have*

$$\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{aw}(A) = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{w}(A * G), \quad \text{where } G(X) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|X|^2}{\hbar}}, \tag{2.123}$$

$$\langle \psi, \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{aw}(A)\psi \rangle = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A(z)\mathcal{H}_\psi(z)\,dz, \tag{2.124}$$

*where $\mathcal{H}_\psi(z)$ is the Husimi function of $\psi$.*

We get now the following useful consequence for Weyl quantization.

**Proposition 28** (Semi-classical Garding inequality) *Let $A \in \Sigma(1)$, $A \geq 0$ on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. Then there exists $C \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for every $\hbar \in ]0, 1]$ we have*

$$\langle \psi, \hat{A}\psi \rangle \geq C\hbar, \quad \forall \psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n). \tag{2.125}$$

*Proof* We know that $\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(A * G)$ is a non-negative bounded operator. So the proposition will be proved if

$$\| \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(A * G - A) \| = \mathcal{O}(\hbar). \tag{2.126}$$

Using a standard argument for smoothing with convolution, we get $\hbar^{-1}(A * G - A) \in \Sigma(1)$, with uniform estimates in $\hbar \in ]0, 1]$. Hence we get (2.126) as a consequence of the Calderon–Vaillancourt theorem. □

These results are useful to study the matrix elements $\langle \psi_\hbar, \hat{A}\psi_\hbar \rangle$, for a family $\{\psi_\hbar\}_\hbar$ in the semi-classical regime [106]. This subject is related with an efficient tool introduced by Lions–Paul [137] and P. Gérard [82] (see also [35]): the semi-classical measures. This is an application of anti-Wick quantization as we shall see now.

### *2.6.2 Application to Semi-classical Measures*

Semi-classical measures were introduced to describe localization and oscillations of families of states $\{\psi_\hbar\}_\hbar$, $\|\psi_\hbar\| = 1$ (or at least bounded in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$).

Let us first remark that

$$A \mapsto \langle \psi, \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{aw} A\psi \rangle$$

is a probability measure $\mu^\hbar$ in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. Moreover this probability measure has a density given by the Husimi function of $\psi_\hbar$,

$$d\mu^\hbar = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathcal{H}_{\psi_\hbar}(z)\,dz.$$

In particular we have

$$\left|\langle \psi, \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{aw} A\psi\rangle\right| \le \|A\|_\infty$$

for every $A \in C_b(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ (space of continuous, bounded functions on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$).

**Definition 11** A semi-classical measure for the family of normalized states $\{\psi_\hbar\}_\hbar$ is a probability measure $\mu$ on the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ for which there exists at least one sequence $\{\hbar_k\}$, $\lim\limits_{k\to+\infty} \hbar_k = 0$ such that for every $A \in \Sigma(1)$, we have

$$\lim_{k\to+\infty} \langle \psi_{\hbar_k} \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar_k}{}^{aw} A \psi_{\hbar_k}\rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A\, d\mu. \tag{2.127}$$

In other words, the measure sequence $\mu^{\hbar_k}$ weakly converges toward the measure $\mu$.

*Remark 11* Semi-classical measures can also be defined for states $\psi_\hbar \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathcal{K})$ where $\mathcal{K}$ is an Hilbert space. By the way in this setting Weyl symbols and anti-Wick symbols are operators in $\mathcal{K}$.

We can also define semi-classical measures for statistical mixed states $\hat{\rho}$, where $\hat{\rho}$ is a non-negative operator such that $\mathrm{Tr}\,\hat{\rho} = 1$.

For more applications and properties of these extensions see the huge literature on this subject; for example see [135].

The following proposition is a straightforward application of the properties of the Husimi function.

**Proposition 29** *Let $\mu$ be a semi-classical measure for $\{\psi_\hbar\}_\hbar$. Then the support* $\mathrm{supp}(\mu)$ *of the measure $\mu$ is included in the frequency set* $\mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$, $\mathrm{supp}(\mu) \subseteq \mathrm{FS}[\psi_\hbar]$.

*Example 2*

(i) Let $\psi_\hbar = \varphi_z$, a standard coherent state. Then this family has one semi-classical measure, $\mu = \delta_z$ (Dirac probability).

(ii) Let us assume that the states family $\{\psi_\hbar\}_\hbar$ is tight in the following sense. There exists a smooth symbol $\chi$, with compact support, such that $\hat{\chi}\psi_\hbar = \psi_\hbar + \mathcal{O}(\hbar)$. Then using Lemma 15, we can see that the family of probabilities $\{\mu^\hbar\}$ is tight, so applying the Prokhorov compacity theorem, there exists at least one semi-classical measure. One of a challenging problem in quantum mechanics is to compute these semi-classical measures for family of bound states satisfying (2.109). If for some $\varepsilon > 0$, $H^{-1}[E-\varepsilon, E+\varepsilon]$ is a bounded set, this family is tight. For classically ergodic systems it is conjectured that there exists only one semi-classical measure, which is the Liouville measure [106].

One important property of semi-classical measures is the following propagation result.

Let us consider the time dependent Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar\partial_t\psi_\hbar(t) = \hat{H}\psi_\hbar(t), \quad \psi_\hbar(0) = \psi_\hbar, \tag{2.128}$$

where $H$ is a time independent Hamiltonian. We assume that $H$ is real, subquadratic and $\hbar$ independent (for simplicity).

$$\partial_X^\gamma H \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n}), \quad \text{for all } \gamma \text{ such that } |\gamma| \geq 2. \tag{2.129}$$

Let $\mu$ be a semi-classical measure for $\{\psi_\hbar\}$.

**Theorem 14** *For every $t \in \mathbb{R}$, $\{\psi_\hbar(t)\}$ has a semi-classical measure $d\mu_t$ for the same subsequence $\hbar_k$ given by the transport of $d\mu$ by the classical flow: $\Phi^t$, $\mu(t) = (\Phi^t)^*\mu$.*

*Proof* For every $A \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$, the semi-classical Egorov theorem and comparison between anti-Wick and Weyl quantization give

$$\langle\psi_\hbar(t), \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^{aw}(A)\psi_\hbar(t)\rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} A \cdot \Phi^t \, d\mu_{\psi_\hbar} + \mathcal{O}(\hbar). \tag{2.130}$$

Hence we get the result going to the limit for the sequence $\hbar_k$. □

We have the following consequence for the stationary Schrödinger equation.

**Corollary 10** *Let $\mu$ be semi-classical measure for a family of bound states $\{\psi_\hbar\}$, satisfying $\hat{H}\psi_\hbar = E_\hbar\psi_\hbar$. Then $\mu$ is invariant by the classical flow $\Phi^t$ for every $t \in \mathbb{R}$.*

*Proof* $\psi_\hbar(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{it}{\hbar}E_\hbar}\psi_\hbar$ satisfies the time dependent Schrödinger equation so using the Theorem we get $(\Phi^t)^*\mu = \mu$. □

Now we illustrate Corollary 10 on Hermite bound states of the harmonic oscillator.

We assume $n = 1$. We can easily compute Husimi function $\mathcal{H}_j$ of the Hermite function $\phi_j$.

$$\mathcal{H}_j(q, p) = |\langle\varphi_X, \phi_j\rangle|^2 = \frac{(q^2 + p^2)^j}{2^j j!}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2\hbar}(q^2+p^2)}. \tag{2.131}$$

We want to study the quantum measures $d\mu_j = (2\pi\hbar)^{-1}\mathcal{H}_j(q, p)\,dq\,dp$ when the energies $E_j = (j + \frac{1}{2})\hbar$ have a limit $E > 0$. So we have $\hbar \to 0$ and $j \to +\infty$. For simplicity we fix $E > 0$ and choose $\hbar = \hbar_j = \frac{E}{j}$.

Let $f$ be in the Schwartz class $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^2)$. We have to compute the limit of $\int f(X)\,d\mu_j(X)$ for $j \to +\infty$. Using polar coordinates and a change of variables we have to study the large $k$ limit for the Laplace integral

$$I(j) := \frac{1}{(j+1)!}\int_0^\infty u^j \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{j}{E}u} f\big(\sqrt{2u}\cos\theta, \sqrt{2u}\sin\theta\big)\, du, \quad \theta \in [0, 2\pi[.$$

We can assume that $f$ has a bounded support and $(0,0)$ is not in the support of $f$.

Using the Laplace method we get

$$\lim_{j\to+\infty} I(j) = f\big(\sqrt{2E}(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)\big). \tag{2.132}$$

So, we have

$$\lim_{j\to+\infty}\int f(X)\, d\mu_j(X) = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{2E}}\int_0^{2\pi} f\big(\sqrt{2E}(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)\big)\, d\theta. \tag{2.133}$$

On the r.h.s. of (2.133) we recognize the uniform probability measure on the circle of radius $\sqrt{2E}$. This measure is a semi-classical measure for the quantum harmonic oscillator. Let us remark that the classical oscillator of energy $\sqrt{2E}$ moves on the circle of radius $\sqrt{2E}$ in the phase space.

# Chapter 3
# The Quadratic Hamiltonians

**Abstract** The aim of this chapter is to construct the quantum unitary propagator for Hamiltonians which are quadratic in position and momentum with time-dependent coefficients. We show that the quantum evolution is exactly solvable in terms of the classical flow which is linear. This allows to construct the metaplectic transformations which are unitary operators in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ corresponding to symplectic transformations. Simple examples of such metaplectic transformations are the Fourier transform, which corresponds to the symplectic matrix $J$ defined in (3.4) and the propagator of the harmonic oscillator, corresponding to rotations in the phase space.

The main results of this chapter are computations of the quantum evolution operators for quadratic Hamiltonians acting on coherent states. We show that the time evolved coherent states are still Gaussian states which are recognized to be squeezed states centered at the classical phase space point (see Chap. 8). From these computations we can deduce most of properties concerning quantum quadratic Hamiltonians. In particular we get the explicit form of the Weyl symbols of the metaplectic transformations. These formulas are generalizations of the Mehler formula for the harmonic oscillator.

Quadratic Hamiltonians are very important in quantum mechanics because more general Hamiltonians can be considered as non-trivial perturbations of time-dependent quadratic ones as we shall see in Chap. 4.

## 3.1 The Propagator of Quadratic Quantum Hamiltonians

A classical quadratic Hamiltonian $H$ is a quadratic form defined in the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. We assume that this quadratic form is time dependent, so we have

$$H(t,z) = \sum_{1\le j,k\le n} c_{j,k}(t) z_j z_k$$

where $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ is the phase space variable and the real coefficients $c_{j,k}(t)$ are continuous functions of time $t \in \mathbb{R}$. It can be rewritten as

$$H(t,q,p) = \frac{1}{2}(q,p)S(t)\begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.1}$$

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_3, 

where $S(t)$ is a $2n \times 2n$ real symmetric matrix of the block form

$$S(t) = \begin{pmatrix} G_t & L_t^T \\ L_t & K_t \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.2}$$

$G_t, L_t, K_t$ are $n \times n$ real matrices with $G_t, K_t$ being symmetric, and $L_t^T$ denotes the transpose of $L_t$. The classical equations of motion for this Hamiltonian are linear and can be written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \dot{q} \\ \dot{p} \end{pmatrix} = J S(t) \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.3}$$

where $J$ is the symplectic matrix

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbb{1}_n \\ -\mathbb{1}_n & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.4}$$

Let $F(t)$ be the classical flow for the Hamiltonian $H(t)$. It means that it is a symplectic $2n \times 2n$ matrix obeying

$$\dot{F}(t) = J S(t) F(t) \tag{3.5}$$

with $F(0) = \mathbb{1}$. Then the solution of (3.3) with $q(0) = q$, $p(0) = p$ is simply

$$\begin{pmatrix} q(t) \\ p(t) \end{pmatrix} = F(t) \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix}$$

We now consider the quantum Hamiltonian

$$\widehat{H}(t) = \left(\widehat{Q}, \widehat{P}\right) \cdot S(t) \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q} \\ \widehat{P} \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.6}$$

The quantum evolution operator $\widehat{U}(t)$[1] is solution of the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \widehat{U}(t) = \widehat{H}(t) \widehat{U}(t) \tag{3.7}$$

with $\widehat{U}(0) = \mathbb{1}$. The following result was already proved in Chap. 2 as a particular case of a more general result. We shall give here a simple direct proof.

**Theorem 15** *One has for all times t*

$$\widehat{U}(t)^* \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q} \\ \widehat{P} \end{pmatrix} \widehat{U}(t) = F(t) \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q} \\ \widehat{P} \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.8}$$

[1] We shall explain later why this quantum propagator is a well defined unitary operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

*Proof* Define $\widehat{Q}_t = \widehat{U}(t)^* \widehat{Q} \widehat{U}(t)$, and similarly for $\widehat{P}$ (Heisenberg observables). Using the Schrödinger equation one has

$$-i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q}_t \\ \widehat{P}_t \end{pmatrix} = \widehat{U}(t)^* \left[ \widehat{H}(t), \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q} \\ \widehat{P} \end{pmatrix} \right] \widehat{U}(t)$$

But

$$\left[ \widehat{H}(t), \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q} \\ \widehat{P} \end{pmatrix} \right] = -i\hbar J S(t) \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q} \\ \widehat{P} \end{pmatrix}$$

This means that $\widehat{Q}_t$, $\widehat{P}_t$ must satisfy the linear equation

$$\frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q}_t \\ \widehat{P}_t \end{pmatrix} = J S(t) \begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q}_t \\ \widehat{P}_t \end{pmatrix}$$

which is trivially solved by (3.8). □

## 3.2 The Propagation of Coherent States

In this section we give the explicit form of the time evolved coherent states in terms of the classical flow $F(t)$ given by the $2n \times 2n$ block matrix form:

$$F(t) = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ C_t & D_t \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.9}$$

It will be shown that the complex $n \times n$ matrix $A_t + iB_t$ is always non-singular. Then we establish the following result:

$$\widehat{U}_t \varphi_z = (\pi\hbar)^{-n/4} \widehat{T}(z_t) \big(\det(A_t + iB_t)\big)^{-1/2} \exp\left( \frac{i}{2\hbar} (C_t + iD_t)(A_t + iB_t)^{-1} x \cdot x \right) \tag{3.10}$$

where $z_t = F(t)z$ is the phase space point of the classical trajectory and $\widehat{T}(z)$ is the Weyl–Heisenberg translation operator by the vector $z = (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$:

$$\widehat{T}(z) = \exp\left[ \frac{i}{\hbar} \big(\xi \cdot \widehat{Q} - x \cdot \widehat{P}\big) \right] \tag{3.11}$$

This means that $\widehat{U}_t \varphi_z$ is a squeezed state centered at the phase space point $z_t$, so the squeezed state moves on the classical trajectory.

We take $\hbar = 1$ for simplicity.

A simple example is the harmonic oscillator

$$\widehat{H}_{\text{os}} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{2} x^2 \tag{3.12}$$

It is well known that for $t \neq k\pi,\ k \in \mathbb{Z}$ the quantum propagator $\mathrm{e}^{-it\widehat{H}_{\mathrm{os}}}$ has an explicit Schwartz kernel $K(t; x, y)$ (Mehler formula, Chap. 1).

It is easier to compute directly with the coherent states $\varphi_z$. $\varphi_0$ is the ground state of $\widehat{H}_{\mathrm{os}}$, so we have

$$\mathrm{e}^{-it\widehat{H}}\varphi_0 = \mathrm{e}^{-it/2}\varphi_0 \tag{3.13}$$

Let us compute $\mathrm{e}^{-it\widehat{H}}\varphi_z$, $\forall z \in \mathbb{R}^2$, with the following ansatz:

$$\mathrm{e}^{-it\widehat{H}}\varphi_z = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t(z)}\widehat{T}(z_t)\mathrm{e}^{-it/2}\varphi_0 \tag{3.14}$$

where $z_t = (q_t, p_t)$ is the generic point on the classical trajectory (a circle here), coming from $z$ at time $t = 0$. Let $\psi_{t,z}$ be the state equal to the r.h.s. in (3.14), and let us compute $\delta_t(z)$ such that $\psi_{t,z}$ satisfies the equation $i\frac{d}{dt}\varphi = \widehat{H}\varphi$, $\varphi|_{t=0} = \psi_{0,z}$. We have

$$\widehat{T}(z_t)u(x) = \mathrm{e}^{i(p_t x - q_t p_t/2)}u(x - q_t)$$

and

$$\psi_{t,z}(x) = \mathrm{e}^{i(\delta_t(z) - t/2 + p_t x - q_t p_t/2)}\varphi_0(x - q_t) \tag{3.15}$$

So, after some computations left to the reader, using properties of the classical trajectories

$$\dot{q}_t = p_t, \qquad \dot{p}_t = -q_t, \qquad p_t^2 + q_t^2 = p^2 + q^2$$

the equation

$$i\frac{d}{dt}\psi_{t,z}(x) = \frac{1}{2}\big(D_x^2 + x^2\big)\psi_{t,z}(x) \tag{3.16}$$

is satisfied if and only if

$$\delta_t(z) = \frac{1}{2}(p_t q_t - pq) \tag{3.17}$$

Let us now introduce the following general notations for later use.

$F_t$ is the classical flow with initial time $t_0 = 0$ and final time $t$. It is represented as a $2n \times 2n$ matrix which can be written as four $n \times n$ blocks:

$$F_t = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ C_t & D_t \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.18}$$

Let us introduce the following squeezed states: $\varphi^{\Gamma}$ defined as follows:

$$\varphi^{\Gamma}(x) = a_{\Gamma}\exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}\Gamma x \cdot x\right) \tag{3.19}$$

where $\Gamma \in \Sigma_n$, $\Sigma_n$ is the Siegel space of complex, symmetric matrices $\Gamma$ such that $\Im(\Gamma)$ is positive and non-degenerate and $a_{\Gamma} \in \mathbb{C}$ is such that the $L^2$-norm of $\varphi^{\Gamma}$ is one.

We also denote $\varphi_z^{\Gamma} = \widehat{T}(z)\varphi^{\Gamma}$.

For $\Gamma = i\mathbb{1}$, we denote $\varphi = \varphi^{i\mathbb{1}}$.

**Theorem 16** *We have the following formulas, for every* $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ *and* $z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$,

$$\widehat{U}_t \varphi^{\Gamma}(x) = \varphi^{\Gamma_t}(x) \tag{3.20}$$

$$\widehat{U}_t \varphi_z^{\Gamma}(x) = \widehat{T}(F_t z)\varphi^{\Gamma_t}(x) \tag{3.21}$$

*where* $\Gamma_t = (C_t + D_t\Gamma)(A_t + B_t\Gamma)^{-1}$ *and* $a_{\Gamma_t} = a_\Gamma(\det(A_t + B_t\Gamma))^{-1/2}$.

**Beginning of the Proof** The first formula can be proven by the ansatz

$$\widehat{U}_t\varphi_0(x) = a(t)\exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}\Gamma_t x \cdot x\right)$$

where $\Gamma_t \in \Sigma_n$ and $a(t)$ is a complex values time-dependent function. We get first a Riccati equation to compute $\Gamma_t$ and a linear equation to compute $a(t)$.

The second formula is easy to prove from the first, using the Weyl translation operators and the following known property

$$\widehat{U}_t\widehat{T}(z)\widehat{U}_t^* = \widehat{T}(F_t z)$$

Let us now give the details of the proof for $z = 0$.

We begin by computing the action of a quadratic Hamiltonian on a Gaussian ($\hbar = 1$).

**Lemma 18**

$$Lx \cdot D_x \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x} = \left(L^T x \cdot \Gamma x - \frac{i}{2}\operatorname{Tr} L\right)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x}$$

*Proof* This is a straightforward computation, using

$$Lx \cdot D_x = \frac{1}{i}\sum_{1\le j,k\le n} L_{jk}\frac{x_j D_k + D_k x_j}{2}$$

and, for $\omega \in \mathbb{R}^n$,

$$(\omega \cdot D_x)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x} = (\Gamma x \cdot \omega)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x}$$

□

**Lemma 19**

$$(GD_x \cdot D_x)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x} = \big(G\Gamma x \cdot \Gamma x - i\operatorname{Tr}(G\Gamma)\big)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x}$$

*Proof* As above, we get

$$\widehat{H}\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x} = \left(\frac{1}{2}Kx\cdot x + x\cdot L\Gamma x + \frac{1}{2}G\Gamma x\cdot\Gamma x - \frac{i}{2}\operatorname{Tr}(L + G\Gamma)\right)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma x\cdot x} \tag{3.22}$$

□

We are now ready to solve the equation

$$i\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\psi = \widehat{H}\psi \tag{3.23}$$

with

$$\psi|_{t=0}(x) = g(x) := \pi^{-n/4}\mathrm{e}^{-x^2/2}$$

For simplicity we assume here that $\Gamma = i\mathbb{1}$, the proof can be easily generalized to $\Gamma \in \Sigma_n$.

We try the ansatz

$$\psi(t,x) = a(t)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}\Gamma_t x\cdot x} \tag{3.24}$$

which gives the equations

$$\dot{\Gamma}_t = -K - 2\Gamma_t^T L - \Gamma_t G \Gamma_t \tag{3.25}$$

$$\dot{a}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}\big(\mathrm{Tr}(L + G\Gamma_t)\big)a(t) \tag{3.26}$$

with the initial conditions

$$\Gamma_0 = i\mathbb{1}, \qquad a(0) = (\pi)^{-n/4}$$

We note that $\Gamma^T L$ et $L\Gamma$ determine the same quadratic forms. So the first equation is a Ricatti equation and can be written as

$$\dot{\Gamma}_t = -K - \Gamma_t L^T - L\Gamma_t - \Gamma_t G \Gamma_t \tag{3.27}$$

where $L^T$ denotes the transposed matrix for $L$. We shall now see that (3.27) can be solved using Hamilton equation

$$\dot{F}_t = J\begin{pmatrix} K & L \\ L^T & G \end{pmatrix} F_t \tag{3.28}$$

$$F_0 = \mathbb{1} \tag{3.29}$$

We know that

$$F_t = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ C_t & D_t \end{pmatrix}$$

is a symplectic matrix $\forall t$. So using the next lemma, we have $\det(A_t + iB_t) \neq 0\ \forall t$. Let us denote

$$M_t = A_t + iB_t, \qquad N_t = C_t + iD_t \tag{3.30}$$

We shall prove that $\Gamma_t = N_t M_t^{-1}$. By an easy computation, we get

$$\dot{M}_t = L^T M_t + G N_t$$
$$\dot{N}_t = -K M_t - L N_t \tag{3.31}$$

Now, compute

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(N_t M_t^{-1}\right) = \dot{N} M^{-1} - N M^{-1} \dot{M} M^{-1}$$
$$= -K - LNM^{-1} - NM^{-1}\left(L^T M + GN\right)M^{-1}$$
$$= -K - LNM^{-1} - NM^{-1}L^T - NM^{-1}GNM^{-1} \tag{3.32}$$

which is exactly (3.27).

Now we compute $a(t)$, using the following equality:

$$\mathrm{Tr}\left(L^T + G(C + iD)(A + iB)^{-1}\right) = \mathrm{Tr}(\dot{M})M^{-1} = \mathrm{Tr}(L + G\Gamma_t)$$

using $\mathrm{Tr}\, L = \mathrm{Tr}\, L^T$. Let us recall the Liouville formula

$$\frac{d}{dt}\log(\det M_t) = \mathrm{Tr}\left(\dot{M}_t M_t^{-1}\right) \tag{3.33}$$

which gives directly

$$a(t) = (\pi)^{-n/4}\left(\det(A_t + iB_t)\right)^{-1/2} \tag{3.34}$$

To complete the proof, we need to prove the following.

**Lemma 20** *Let $F$ be a symplectic matrix.*

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix}$$

*Then* $\det(A + iB) \neq 0$ *and* $\Im(C + iD)(A + iB)^{-1}$ *is positive definite.*

We shall prove a more general result concerning the Siegel space $\Sigma_n$.

**Lemma 21** *If*

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix}$$

*is a symplectic matrix and $Z \in \Sigma_n$ then $A + BZ$ and $C + DZ$ are non-singular and $(C + DZ)(A + BZ)^{-1} \in \Sigma_n$*

*Proof* Let us denote $M := A + BZ$, $N := C + DZ$. $F$ is symplectic, so we have $F^T J F = J$. Using

$$\begin{pmatrix} M \\ N \end{pmatrix} = F \begin{pmatrix} I \\ Z \end{pmatrix}$$

we get

$$\left(M^T, N^T\right) J \begin{pmatrix} M \\ N \end{pmatrix} = (I, Z) J \begin{pmatrix} I \\ Z \end{pmatrix} = 0 \tag{3.35}$$

which gives

$$M^T N = N^T M$$

In the same way, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2i}\left(M^T, N^T\right) J \begin{pmatrix} \bar{M} \\ \bar{N} \end{pmatrix} &= \frac{1}{2i}(I, Z) F^T J F \begin{pmatrix} I \\ \bar{Z} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{2i}(I, Z) J \begin{pmatrix} I \\ \bar{Z} \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2i}\left(\bar{Z} - Z\right) = -\Im Z \end{aligned} \tag{3.36}$$

We get the following equation:

$$N^T \bar{M} - M^T \bar{N} = 2i \Im Z \tag{3.37}$$

Because $\Im Z$ is non-degenerate, from (3.37), we see that $M$ and $N$ are injective. If $x \in \mathbb{C}^n, \; Ex = 0$, we have

$$\bar{M}\bar{x} = x^T M^T = 0$$

hence

$$x^T \Im Z \bar{x} = 0$$

then $x = 0$.

So, we can define

$$\alpha(F)(Z) = (C + DZ)(A + BZ)^{-1} \tag{3.38}$$

Let us prove that $\alpha(F)Z \in \Sigma_n$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} &\alpha(F)Z = NM^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow \quad \left(\alpha(F)Z\right)^T = \left(M^{-1}\right)^T N^T = \left(M^{-1}\right)^T M^T N M^{-1} = NM^{-1} = \alpha(F)Z \end{aligned}$$

We have also:

$$M^T \frac{NM^{-1} - \bar{N}\bar{M}^{-1}}{2i} \bar{M} = \frac{N^T \bar{M} - M^T \bar{N}}{2i} = \Im Z$$

and this proves that $\Im(\alpha(F)(Z))$ is positive and non-degenerate.

This finishes the proof of the Theorem for $z = 0$. □

The map $F \mapsto \alpha(F)$ defines a representation of the symplectic group $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ in the Siegel space $\Sigma_n$. For later use it is useful to introduce the determinant: $\delta(F, Z) = \det(A + BZ), \; F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n), \; Z \in \Sigma_n$. The following results are easy algebraic computations.

**Proposition 30** *We have, for every* $F_1, F_2 \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$,

(i) $\alpha(F_1 F_2) = \alpha(F_1)\alpha(F_2)$.
(ii) $\delta(F_1 F_2, Z) = \delta(F_1, \alpha(F_2)(Z))\delta(F_2, Z)$.
(iii) *For every* $Z_1, Z_2 \in \Sigma_n$ *there exists* $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$ *such that* $\alpha(F)(Z_1) = Z_2$. *In other words the representation* $\alpha$ *is transitive in* $\Sigma_n$.

Many other properties of the representation $\alpha$ are studied in [139] and [77].
For completeness, we state the following.

**Corollary 11** *The propagator* $\widehat{U}_t$ *is well defined and it is a unitary operator in* $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

*Proof* For every coherent state $\varphi_z$, $\widehat{U}_t\varphi_z$ is solution of the Schrödinger equation. As we have seen in Chap. 1, the family $\{\varphi_z\}_{z\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}}$ is overcomplete in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. So formula (3.20) wholly determines the unitary group $\widehat{U}_t$. In a preliminary step we can see that $\widehat{U}_t\psi$ is well defined for $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ using inverse Fourier–Bargmann transform, that $\widehat{U}_t\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, and that $\|\widehat{U}_t\psi\| = \|\psi\|$. So we can extend $\widehat{U}_t$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

In particular it results that $\widehat{U}_t$ is a unitary operator and that $\widehat{H}_t$ has a unique self-adjoint extension in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. □

It will be useful to compute the Fourier–Bargmann transform of $\widehat{U}_t\varphi_z$.

Recall that $\widehat{U}(t) = \widehat{R}(F_t)$ where $\widehat{R}(F)$ is the metaplectic operator corresponding to the symplectic $2n \times 2n$ matrix $F$ and that $F_t$ has a four blocks decomposition

$$F_t = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ C_t & D_t \end{pmatrix}$$

Now we define $n \times n$ complex matrices $Y_t$, $Z_t$ as follows:

$$Y_t = A_t + iB_t - i(C_t + iD_t), \qquad Z_t = A_t + iB_t + i(C_t + iD_t)$$

One has the following property, using the symplecticity of $F_t$:

**Lemma 22**

$$Z^*Z = Y^*Y - 4\mathbb{1}$$

$Y_t$ *is invertible.*

One can define the matrix $W_t$ as follows:

$$W_t = Z_t Y_t^{-1}$$

which satisfies the following property.

**Lemma 23**

(i)

$$W_0 = 0$$

(ii)

$$W_t^* W_t < \mathbb{1}$$

(iii)

$$(\Gamma + i\mathbb{1})^{-1} = \frac{1}{2i}(\mathbb{1} + W)$$

*In particular* $W$ *is a symmetric matrix.*

*Proof*

(i) Is an easy consequence of the fact that $F_0 = \mathbb{1}$, hence $Y_0 = 2\mathbb{1}$, $Z_0 = 0$.

(ii) We have

$$W^*W = \big(Y^*\big)^{-1} Z^* Z Y^{-1} = \big(Y^*\big)^{-1}\big(Y^*Y - 4\mathbb{1}\big)Y^{-1} = \mathbb{1} - 4\big(YY^*\big)^{-1}.$$

(iii) Is a simple algebraic computation. □

**Theorem 17** *The matrix elements* $\langle \varphi_z, \widehat{U}_t \varphi_{z'} \rangle$ *are given by the following formula*:

$$\big\langle \varphi_z, \widehat{U}_t \varphi_{z'} \big\rangle = 2^{n/2} \det{}^{-1/2}\big(A_t + D_t + i(B_t - C_t)\big) \times \mathrm{e}^{-i/2\sigma(F_t z', z)} \mathrm{e}^{-(x^2+\xi^2)/4} \mathrm{e}^{-W(\xi+ix)\cdot(\xi+ix)/4} \tag{3.39}$$

*where* $z - F_t z' = (x, \xi)$ *and*

$$W_t = \big(A_t - D_t + i(B_t + C_t)\big)\big(A_t + D_t + i(B_t - C_t)\big)^{-1}$$

*Proof* For simplicity we forget the time index $t$ everywhere.

It is enough to assume that $z' = 0$. From the metaplectic invariance, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle \varphi_z, \widehat{U} \varphi_{z'} \big\rangle &= \big\langle \varphi_z, \widehat{T}\big(F z'\big) \varphi^{(\Gamma)} \big\rangle \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-i\sigma(Fz', z)/2} \big\langle \varphi_{z - Fz'}, \varphi^{(\Gamma)} \big\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{3.40}$$

So we have to compute $\langle \varphi_X, \varphi^{(\Gamma)} \rangle$.

We have

$$\big\langle \varphi_X, \varphi^{(\Gamma)} \big\rangle = \pi^{-n/2} \det{}^{-1/2}(A + iB) \mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(ip\cdot q - q^2)} \times \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{2}(\Gamma + i)x\cdot x} \mathrm{e}^{-ix\cdot(p+iq)}\, dx \tag{3.41}$$

So the result follows from computation of the Fourier transform of a generalized Gaussian (or squeezed state). □

## 3.3 The Metaplectic Transformations

Recall that a metaplectic transformation associated with a linear symplectic transformation $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$ in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, is a unitary operator $\widehat{R}(F)$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ satisfying one of the following equivalent conditions

$$\widehat{R}(F)^*\widehat{A}\widehat{R}(F) = \widehat{A \circ F}, \quad \forall A \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n}) \tag{3.42}$$

$$\widehat{R}(F)^*\widehat{T}(X)\widehat{R}(F) = \widehat{T}\big[F^{-1}(X)\big], \quad \forall X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} \tag{3.43}$$

$$\widehat{R}(F)^*\widehat{A}\widehat{R}(F) = \widehat{A \circ F},$$
$$\text{for } A(q,p) = q_j,\ 1 \le j \le n \text{ and } A(q,p) = p_k,\ 1 \le k \le n \tag{3.44}$$

$\widehat{A}$ is the Weyl quantization of the classical symbol $A(q,p)$ and we recall that the operator $\widehat{T}(X)$ is defined by

$$\widehat{T}(X) = \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\big(\xi \cdot \widehat{Q} - x \cdot \widehat{P}\big)\right) \tag{3.45}$$

when $X = (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$.

We shall prove below that for every $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n)$ there exists a metaplectic transformation $\widehat{R}(F)$. This transformation is unique up to a multiplication by a complex number of modulus 1.

**Lemma 24** *If $\widehat{R}_1(F)$ and $\widehat{R}_2(F)$ are two metaplectic operators associated to the same symplectic map $F$ then there exists $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, $|\lambda| = 1$, such that $\widehat{R}_1(F) = \lambda\widehat{R}_2(F)$.*

*Proof* Denote $\widehat{R} = \widehat{R}_1(F)\widehat{R}_2(F)^{-1}$. Then we have $\widehat{R}^*\widehat{T}(X)\widehat{R} = \widehat{T}(X)$ for all $X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. Applying the Schur lemma 10 we get $\widehat{R} = \lambda\mathbb{1}$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. But $\widehat{R}$ is unitary so that $|\lambda| = 1$. □

We shall prove here that $F \mapsto \widehat{R}(F)$ defines a projective representation of the real symplectic group $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ with sign indetermination only. More precisely, let us denote by $\mathrm{Mp}(n)$ the group of metaplectic transformations and $\pi_p$ the natural projection: $\mathrm{M_p} \to \mathrm{Sp}(2n)$ then the metaplectic representation is a group homomorphism $F \mapsto \widehat{R}(F)$, from $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ onto $\mathrm{Mp}(n)/\{\mathbb{1}, -\mathbb{1}\}$, such that $\pi_p[\widehat{R}(F)] = F$, $\forall F \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n)$ For more details about the metaplectic transformations see [133].

**Proposition 31** *For every $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$ we can find a $C^1$-smooth curve $F_t$, $t \in [0,1]$, in $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$, such that $F_0 = \mathbb{1}$ and $F_1 = F$.*

*Proof* An explicit way to do that is to use the polar decomposition of $F$, $F = V|F|$ where $V$ is a symplectic orthogonal matrix and $|F| = \sqrt{F^T F}$ is positive symplectic matrix. Each of these matrices have a logarithm, so $F = \mathrm{e}^K\mathrm{e}^L$ with $K, L$ Hamiltonian matrices, and we can choose $F_t = \mathrm{e}^{tK}\mathrm{e}^{tL}$. □

Let $F_t$ be as in Proposition 31. $F_t$ is the linear flow defined by the quadratic Hamiltonian $H_t(z) = \frac{1}{2} S_t z \cdot z$ where $S_t = -J\dot{F}_t F_t^{-1}$. So using above results, *we define* $\widehat{R}(F) = \widehat{U}_1$. Here $\widehat{U}_t$ is the solution of the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt}\widehat{U}_t = \widehat{H}(t)\widehat{U}_t \tag{3.46}$$

that obeys $\widehat{U}_0 = \mathbb{1}$. Namely it is the quantum propagator of the quadratic Hamiltonian $\widehat{H}(t)$. That the metaplectic operator so defined satisfies the required properties follows from Theorem 15.

**Proposition 32** *Let us consider two symplectic paths $F_t$ and $F'_t$ joining $\mathbb{1}$ $(t = 0)$ to $F$ $(t = 1)$. Then we have $\widehat{U}_1 = \pm \widehat{U}'_1$ (with obvious notation).*

*Moreover, if $F^1, F^2 \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n)$ then we have*

$$\widehat{R}\big(F^1\big)\widehat{R}\big(F^2\big) = \pm \widehat{R}\big(F^1 F^2\big) \tag{3.47}$$

*Proof* We first remark that the propagator of a quadratic Hamiltonian is determined by its action on squeezed states $\varphi^\Gamma$ and its classical flow. So using (3.20) we see that the phase shift between the two paths comes from variation of argument between 0 and 1 of the complex numbers $b(t) = \det(A_t + iB_t)$ and $b'(t) = \det(A'_t + iB'_t)$.

We have $\arg[b(t)] = \Im(\int_0^t \frac{\dot{b}(s)}{b(s)}\,ds)$ and by a complex analysis argument, we have

$$\Im\left(\int_0^1 \frac{\dot{b}(s)}{b(s)}\,ds\right) = \Im\left(\int_0^1 \frac{\dot{b}'(s)}{b'(s)}\,ds\right) + 2\pi N$$

with $N \in \mathbb{Z}$. So we get

$$b(1)^{-1/2} = \mathrm{e}^{iN\pi} b'(1)^{-1/2}$$

The second part of the proposition is an easy consequence of Theorem 16 concerning propagation of squeezed coherent states and Proposition 30. More precisely, the sign indetermination in (3.47) is a consequence of variations for the phase of $\det(A + iB)$ concerning $F = F^1$ and $F = F^2$. To compare with $F^1 F^2$ we apply Proposition 30. □

*Remark 12* A geometrical consequence of Proposition 30 is the following. The map $F \mapsto \widehat{R}(F)$ induces a group isomorphism between the symplectic group $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ and the quotient of the metaplectic group $\mathrm{Mp}(n)/\{-\mathbb{1}, 1\}$. In other words the group $\mathrm{Mp}(n)$ is a two-cover of $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$.

An interesting property of the metaplectic representation is the following.

**Proposition 33** *The metaplectic representation $\widehat{R}$ has two irreductible non-equivalent components in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. These components are the subspaces $L^2_{\mathrm{od}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of odd states and $L^2_{\mathrm{ev}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of even states.*

*Proof* Let us first remark that the subspaces $L^2_{\text{od, ev}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ are invariant for $\widehat{R}(F)$ because quadratic Hamiltonians commute with the parity operator $\Pi\psi(x) = \psi(-x)$.

Now we have to prove that $L^2_{\text{od, ev}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ are irreducible for $\widehat{R}$.

Let us begin by considering the subspace $L^2_{\text{ev}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$. Let $\widehat{B}$ be a bounded operator in $L^2_{\text{ev}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ such that $\widehat{R}(F)\widehat{B} = \widehat{B}\widehat{R}(F)$ for every $F \in \mathrm{Sp}(n)$. According to the Schur lemma, we have to prove that $\widehat{B} = \lambda \mathbb{1}$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.

In particular $\widehat{B}$ commutes with the propagator of the harmonic oscillator $U_t = \mathrm{e}^{it\widehat{H}_{\text{os}}}$. We can suppose that $\widehat{B}$ is Hermitian. So $\widehat{B}$ is diagonal in the Hermite basis $\phi_\alpha$ (see Chap. 1). We have $\widehat{B}\phi_\alpha = \lambda_\alpha \phi_\alpha$ for every $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^n$.

To conclude we have to prove that $\lambda_\alpha = \lambda_\beta$ if $|\alpha|$ and $|\beta|$ are even.

Assume for simplicity that $n = 1$ (the proof is also valid for $n \geq 2$).

Let us consider the metaplectic transformation $\widehat{R}_t = \mathrm{e}^{itx^2}$ associated to the symplectic transform $F_t = \exp\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & t \\ 0 & 0 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$.

We have

$$\widehat{R}_t \phi_k = \sum_{j \geq 0} c(t, k, j)\phi_j$$

Using that $\widehat{R}_t \widehat{B} = \widehat{B}\widehat{R}_t$ we get

$$c(t, k, j)\lambda_j = c(t, k, j)\lambda_k \tag{3.48}$$

Now we shall prove that if $k - j$ is even then $c(t, k, j) \neq 0$ for some $t$ hence $\lambda_j = \lambda_k$.

This a consequence of the following

$$c(t, k, j) = \int \mathrm{e}^{itx^2}\phi_k(x)\phi_j(x)\,dx$$

If $c(t, k, j) = 0$ for every $t$ then $\int_{\mathbb{R}} x^{2m}\phi_k(x)\phi_j(x)\,dx = 0$ for every $m \in \mathbb{N}$. But this is not possible if $k - j$ is even (see properties of Hermite functions).

So we have proved that $L^2_{\text{ev}}(\mathbb{R})$ is irreducible. With the same proof we also find that $L^2_{\text{od}}(\mathbb{R})$ is also irreducible.

Assume now that $\widehat{B}\widehat{R}(F) = \widehat{R}(F)\widehat{B}$ and that $\widehat{B}$ is a linear transformation from $L^2_{\text{ev}}(\mathbb{R})$ in $L^2_{\text{odd}}(\mathbb{R})$. We still have $\widehat{B}\phi_k = \lambda_k\phi_k$. But an Hermite function is odd or even so $\lambda_k = 0$ for all $k$ and $\widehat{B} = 0$. So these representations are non-equivalent. □

## 3.4 Representation of the Quantum Propagator in Terms of the Generator of Squeezed States

In this section our aim is to revisit some results obtained in [49] and [51].

Let us start with classical Hamiltonian mechanics in the complex model $\mathbb{C}^n$, $\zeta = \frac{q-ip}{\sqrt{2}}$. As above, $F$ is a classical flow for a quadratic, time-dependent Hamiltonian. Let us denote by $F^c$ the same flow in $\mathbb{C}^n$. We easily get

$$F^c\zeta = \frac{1}{2}\left(Y\zeta + \bar{Z}\bar{\zeta}\right) \tag{3.49}$$

where

$$Y = A + D + i(B - C), \qquad Z = A - D + i(B + C) \tag{3.50}$$

Recall that all these matrices are time dependent and $Y$ is invertible. So we have $Y = |Y|V$ (polar decomposition), where $|Y|^2 = YY^*$ and $V$ is a unitary transformation of $\mathbb{C}^n$ ($V \in \mathrm{SU}(n)$).

We already introduced $W = ZY^{-1}$ and we know that $0 \le W^*W < \mathbb{1}$. So we can factorize $F^c$ in the following way.

$$F^c = D^c \cdot S^c \tag{3.51}$$

$$S^c\zeta = V\zeta \tag{3.52}$$

$$D^c\zeta = \left(\mathbb{1} - W^*W\right)^{-1/2}\zeta + \left(\mathbb{1} - W^*W\right)^{-1/2}W^*\bar{\zeta} \tag{3.53}$$

Coming back to the real representation in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, $S$ is an orthogonal symplectic transformation (a rotation in the phase space). Let us compute $\widehat{R}(S)$. To do that, we write $V = \mathrm{e}^{iL}$ (this is possible locally in time). $L$ is an Hermitian complex matrix. $V$ is the flow at time 1[2] of the quadratic Hamiltonian

$$H_S^c(\zeta, \bar{\zeta}) = \frac{1}{2}\left(\zeta \cdot L^T\bar{\zeta} + \bar{\zeta} \cdot L\zeta\right)$$

Let $H$ be the real representation of $H^c$, then we have $\widehat{R}(S) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\widehat{H}_S}$. So $\widehat{R}(S)$ is a quantum rotation because we have, for every observable $O$,

$$\mathrm{e}^{i\widehat{H}_S}\widehat{O}\mathrm{e}^{-i\widehat{H}_S} = \widehat{O \cdot S}$$

It is more difficult to compute $\widehat{R}(D)$ (the dilation or squeezing part).

We write down the polar decomposition of $W$, $W = U|W|$, $|W|^2 = W^*W$, $U$ unitary transformation in $\mathbb{C}^n$. We are looking for a generator at (new) time 1 for the transformation $D$. Let us introduce a complex transformation $B$ in $\mathbb{C}^n$ with the polar decomposition $B = U|B|$ ($|B|^2 = B^*B$). After standard computations, we get

$$\exp\begin{pmatrix} 0 & B^* \\ B & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh|B| & -\sinh|B|U^* \\ U\sinh|B| & -U\cosh|B|U^* \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.54}$$

Comparing with previous computation of $D^c$, we get

$$\cosh|B| = \left(\mathbb{1} - W^*W\right)^{-1/2} \tag{3.55}$$

$$\sinh|B|U^* = \cosh|B|W^* \tag{3.56}$$

$$\sinh|B| = \cosh|B||W| \tag{3.57}$$

[2]This time is a new time, which has nothing to do with $t$.

We can solve the last equation:

$$|B| = \arg\tanh |W| \tag{3.58}$$

More explicitly we have

$$B = W \sum_{n\geq 0} \frac{(W^* W)^n}{2n+1} \tag{3.59}$$

In particular $B$ is a symmetric matrix ($B^T = B$) because $W$ is a symmetric matrix.

As for the rotation part, we can get now a dilation generator,

$$H_D^c = \frac{i}{2}\big(\zeta \cdot B\zeta - \bar{\zeta} \cdot B^*\bar{\zeta}\big)$$

such that the (complex) equation of motion is

$$\dot{\zeta} = B^*\bar{\zeta}$$

Finally we restore the time $t$. We have a decomposition $F_t = D(B_t)S(L_t)$ such that $\widehat{U}_t = \lambda_t \widehat{D}(B_t)\widehat{S}(L_t)$, where $\lambda_t$ is a complex number, $|\lambda_t| = 1$ and

$$D(B_t) = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a}^\dagger \cdot B_t \mathbf{a}^\dagger - \mathbf{a} \cdot B_t{}^* \mathbf{a})} \tag{3.60}$$

is the generator of squeezed states. More properties of $D(B)$ will be given at the end of this section. We can get now

**Proposition 34** *For every time $t$ we have*

$$\widehat{U}_t \varphi_0 = \det{}^{1/2}\, V_t \phi_{B_t} \tag{3.61}$$

*where $\phi_{B_t}$ is the squeezed state defined by*

$$\phi_{B_t} = \widehat{D}(B_t)\varphi_0 \tag{3.62}$$

*and* $\det V_t^{1/2}$ *is defined by continuity, starting from $t = 0$ ($V_0 = \mathbb{1}$).*

*Proof* It is enough to show that $\varphi_0$ is an eigenstate of $\widehat{S}(L)$ with eigenvalue $\gamma = \frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{Tr}(L)$. Clearly

$$\big(\mathbf{a}^\dagger \cdot L^t \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \cdot L\mathbf{a}^\dagger\big)\varphi_0 = \sum_{i,j}\big(L_{j,i}\mathbf{a}_j^\dagger \mathbf{a}_i + L_{i,j}\mathbf{a}_i\mathbf{a}_j^\dagger\big)\varphi_0 = \sum_i L_{i,i}\varphi_0$$

since $\mathbf{a}_i\varphi_0 = 0$, $\forall i = 1, \ldots, n$. We get the result by exponentiating. Let us remark here that even if $L$ is defined in a small time interval we can conclude because the prefactor of $\phi_{B_t}$ must be continuous in time $t$. □

We can also demonstrate that the quantum evolution of a coherent state $\varphi_z$ is simply a displaced along the classical motion of a squeezed state:

**Proposition 35** *Let $z_t = (q_t, p_t)$ be the phase space point of the classical flow at time $t$ starting with initial conditions $z = (q, p)$. Thus*

$$\begin{pmatrix} q_t \\ p_t \end{pmatrix} = F_t \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix}$$

*One has*

$$\widehat{U}(t)\varphi_z = \det V_t^{1/2} \widehat{T}(z_t)\Phi_{B_t}$$

*Proof* One uses the fact that, due to that $\widehat{U}(t) = \widehat{R}(F_t)$,

$$\widehat{U}(t)\varphi_z = \widehat{U}(t)\widehat{T}(z)\varphi_0 = \widehat{T}(z_t)\widehat{U}(t)\varphi_0$$ □

**More on $n$-Dimensional Squeezed States** Consider now any complex symmetric $n \times n$ matrix $W$ such that $W^* W < \mathbb{1}$. Take as before the polar decomposition of $W$ to be

$$W = U|W|, \quad |W| = \left(W^* W\right)^{1/2}$$

$U$ being unitary. We define the $n \times n$ complex symmetric matrix $B$ to be

$$B = U \arg\tanh |W|$$

More explicitly writing the Taylor expansion of $\arg\tanh u$ at 0 we find

$$B = W \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(W^* W)^n}{2n+1} \quad \text{and we have } |W| = \tanh |B| \tag{3.63}$$

Now we construct the unitary operator $D(B)$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ as

$$D(B) = \exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{a}^\dagger \cdot B\mathbf{a}^\dagger - \mathbf{a} \cdot B^*\mathbf{a}\right)\right)$$

We have

**Lemma 25**

(i) *$D(B)$ is unitary with inverse $D(-B)$.*
(ii)

$$D(B) \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{a} \\ \mathbf{a}^\dagger \end{pmatrix} D(-B) = \begin{pmatrix} (\mathbb{1} - WW^*)^{-1/2} & -W(\mathbb{1} - W^*W))^{-1/2} \\ -(\mathbb{1} - W^*W)^{-1/2} W^* & (\mathbb{1} - W^*W)^{-1/2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{a} \\ \mathbf{a}^\dagger \end{pmatrix}$$

*Proof* Let us denote

$$\mathbf{a}_B(t) = D(tB)\mathbf{a}D(-tB), \qquad \mathbf{a}_B^\dagger(t) = D(tB)\mathbf{a}^\dagger D(-tB)$$

Computing

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{a}_B(t) = D(tB)\left[\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{a}^\dagger \cdot B\mathbf{a}^\dagger - \mathbf{a} \cdot B^*\mathbf{a}\right), \mathbf{a}\right]D(-tB)$$

we get, using the commuting relations,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{a}_B(t) = -B\mathbf{a}_B(t)$$

and the same for $\mathbf{a}^\dagger$:

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{a}_B^\dagger(t) = B^*\mathbf{a}_B^*(t)$$

We get the result by computing $\exp\left(\begin{pmatrix} 0 & B^* \\ B & 0 \end{pmatrix}\right)$ as in (3.54). □

We define the $n$-dimensional squeezed state as

$$\psi^{(B)} = D(B)\varphi_0$$

where $\varphi_0$ is the standard Gaussian (ground state of the Harmonic oscillator).

We shall first compute $\psi^{(B)}$ in the Fock–Bargmann representation. We recall that in the Fock–Bargmann representation one has

$$\mathcal{B}[\varphi_0](\zeta) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2}$$

(independent of $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n$).

Then we try the following ansatz:

$$\mathcal{B}\left[\psi^{(B)}\right](\zeta) = a\exp\left(\frac{1}{2\hbar}\zeta \cdot M\zeta\right) \tag{3.64}$$

where $M$ is a complex symmetric matrix that we want to compute. From now on we assume $\hbar = 1$.

Let us consider the antihermitian Hamiltonian $H_B$ to be

$$H_B = \frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{a}^\dagger \cdot B\mathbf{a}^\dagger - \mathbf{a} \cdot B^*\mathbf{a}\right)$$

Take a fictitious time $t$ to vary between 0 and 1 and consider the evolution operator $U_B(t) = \mathrm{e}^{tH_B}$. Then $\psi^{(B)}(t) = U_B(t)\varphi_0$ satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}\psi^{(B)}(t) = H_B\psi^{(B)}(t)$$

with the following limiting values:

$$\psi^{(B)}(0) = \varphi_0, \qquad \psi^{(B)}(1) = \psi^{(B)}$$

In the Fock–Bargmann representation $H_B$ has the following form:

$$H_B(\zeta, \partial_\zeta) = \frac{1}{2}(\zeta \cdot B\zeta - \partial_\zeta \cdot B^* \partial_\zeta)$$

Using the ansatz (3.64) for $\psi^{(B)}(t)$ we see that one has

$$\left(\dot{a} + a\frac{1}{2}\zeta \cdot \dot{M}\zeta\right)\exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\zeta \cdot M\zeta\right) = a(t)H_B(\zeta, \partial_\zeta)\exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\zeta \cdot M\zeta\right)$$

Now we compute the right hand side using the convention of summation over repeated indices; we get

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{2}a(t)\left(\frac{1}{2}\zeta \cdot B\zeta - \frac{1}{2}\partial_{\zeta_j} {B^*}_{ij} M_{ik}\zeta_k - \frac{1}{2}B^*_{ij}\partial_{\zeta_j}\zeta_k M_{ki}\right)\exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\zeta \cdot M\zeta\right)\\ &= \frac{1}{2}a\big(\zeta \cdot B\zeta - \mathrm{Tr}(B^*M) - \zeta \cdot MB^*M\zeta\big)\exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\zeta \cdot M\zeta\right)\end{aligned}$$

Identifying we get

$$\dot{M} = B - MB^*M, \qquad \dot{a} = -\frac{1}{2}a\,\mathrm{Tr}(B^*M)$$

Let us solve the differential equation

$$\partial_t M = -MB^*M + B \tag{3.65}$$

with $M_{t=0} = 0$.

We consider $N$ such as

$$M = UN$$

with $U$ independent of $t$ given by the polar decomposition of $B$.

Then equation (3.65) becomes

$$U\partial_t N = -UN|B|N + U|B|$$

Thus it reduces to

$$\partial_t N = -N|B|N + |B|$$

At time $t = 0$, $N = 0$ thus the solution at time $t = 1$ is a function of $|B|$ (thus commuting with $|B|$) given by

$$N = \tanh|B|$$

This implies that

$$M = U\tanh|B| = U|W| = W$$

Now consider the differential equation satisfied by $a(t)$. We get

$$2\dot{a} = -a\,\mathrm{Tr}(B^*M) = -a\,\mathrm{Tr}\big(|B|U^*UN\big) = -a\,\mathrm{Tr}\big(|B|\tanh|B|\big)$$

Since $a(0) = (2\pi)^{-n/2}$ we get

$$\begin{aligned}
a(t) &= (2\pi)^{-n/2}\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\int_0^t ds\,\mathrm{Tr}\big(|B|\tanh s|B|\big)\right)\\
&= (2\pi)^{-n/2}\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{Tr}\log\cosh t|B|\right)\\
a(1) &= (2\pi)^{-n/2}\big(\det\cosh|B|\big)^{-1/2} = (2\pi)^{-n/2}\big(\det(\mathbb{1}-|W|^2)\big)^{1/4}
\end{aligned}$$

where we have used that $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{Tr}\,A} = \det \mathrm{e}^A$.

Thus the squeezed state $\psi^{(B)} = D(B)\varphi_0$ has the following Fock–Bargmann representation

$$\boxed{\psi^{(B)}(\zeta) = (2\pi)^{-n/2}\big(\det\cosh|B|\big)^{-1/2}\exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\zeta\cdot W\zeta\right)} \tag{3.66}$$

Now using the inverse Fock–Bargmann transform we go back to the coordinate representation of $\psi^{(B)}$. One has to compute the following integral:

$$\int dq\,dp\,\exp\left(-\left(\frac{x^2}{2} - x\sqrt{2}\bar{\zeta} + \frac{\bar{\zeta}^2}{2}\right) - \zeta\cdot\bar{\zeta} + \frac{1}{2}\zeta\cdot W\zeta\right) \tag{3.67}$$

The argument of the exponential can be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned}
&-\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{1}{4}q^2 - \frac{ip\cdot q}{2} + \frac{p^2}{4} + x\cdot(q+ip) - \frac{1}{2}\big(q^2+p^2\big)\\
&\qquad + \frac{1}{4}(q\cdot Wq - ip\cdot Wq - iq\cdot Wp - p\cdot Wp)\\
&\quad = -\frac{x^2}{2} + x(q+ip) - \frac{3}{4}q^2 - \frac{1}{4}p^2 + \frac{1}{4}(q\cdot Wq - ip\cdot Wq - iq\cdot Wp - p\cdot Wp)
\end{aligned}$$

Thus it appears a quadratic form in $q,\ p$ which can be written in matrix form as

$$-\frac{1}{2}(q,p)\mathcal{M}\begin{pmatrix} q\\ p\end{pmatrix}$$

with

$$\mathcal{M} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 3\mathbb{1}-W & -i(W+\mathbb{1})\\ -i(W+\mathbb{1}) & W+\mathbb{1}\end{pmatrix}$$

One has

$$\mathcal{M}^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{1} & i\\ i & (3\mathbb{1}-W)(\mathbb{1}+W)^{-1}\end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the integral over $q, p$ in (3.67) will be the exponential of the following quadratic form:

$$-\frac{1}{2}(x, ix)\mathcal{M}^{-1}\begin{pmatrix} x \\ ix \end{pmatrix} - \frac{x^2}{2} \tag{3.68}$$

with a phase which is exactly

$$\big(\det(\mathcal{M}/2\pi)\big)^{-1/2} = (2\pi)^{n/2}\big(\det(\mathbb{1} + W)\big)^{-1/2}$$

It is easy to compute the expression in (3.68). It gives

$$-\frac{1}{2}x \cdot (\mathbb{1} - W)(\mathbb{1} + W)^{-1}x$$

Thus restoring the $\hbar$ dependence and the factors $\pi$ we get the following result.

**Proposition 36** *The squeezed state $\psi^{(B)}$ is actually a Gaussian in the position representation given by*

$$\boxed{\psi^{(B)}(x) = a_\Gamma \exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}x \cdot \Gamma x\right)} \tag{3.69}$$

*with*

$$\Gamma = i(\mathbb{1} - W)(\mathbb{1} + W)^{-1}$$

*and*

$$a_\Gamma = (\pi\hbar)^{-n/2}\big(\det\big(\mathbb{1} - |W|^2\big)\big)^{-1/2}(\mathbb{1} + W)^{-1/2}$$

## 3.5 Representation of the Weyl Symbol of the Metaplectic Operators

See Chap. 2 for the definitions of covariant and contravariant Weyl symbols. We have shown that $\widehat{R}(F) = \widehat{U}_1$ where $\widehat{U}_t$ is the quantum propagator of the quadratic Hamiltonian,

$$H(t) = \frac{1}{2}\big(\widehat{Q}, \widehat{P}\big)M_t\begin{pmatrix} \widehat{Q} \\ \widehat{P} \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.70}$$

with $M_t = -J\dot{F}_t F_t^{-1}$, $F_t$ being a continuous path in the space $\mathrm{Sp}(n)$ joining $\mathbb{1}$ at $t = 0$ to $F$ at $t = 1$. In [52] the authors show the following result.

**Theorem 18**

(i) *If* $\det(\mathbb{1}+F)\neq 0$ *the contravariant Weyl symbol of* $\widehat{R}(F)$ *has the following form*:

$$R(F,X)=\mathrm{e}^{i\pi\nu}\left|\det(\mathbb{1}+F)\right|^{-1/2}\exp\bigl(-iJ(\mathbb{1}-F)(\mathbb{1}+F)^{-1}X\cdot X\bigr) \quad (3.71)$$

*where* $\nu\in\mathbb{Z}$ *if* $\det(\mathbb{1}+F)>0$ *and* $\nu\in\mathbb{Z}+1/2$ *if* $\det(\mathbb{1}+F)<0$.

(ii) *If* $\det(\mathbb{1}-F)\neq 0$ *the covariant Weyl symbol of* $\widehat{R}(F)$ *has the following form*:

$$R^{\#}(F,X)=\mathrm{e}^{i\pi\mu}\left|\det(\mathbb{1}-F)\right|^{-1/2}\exp\left(-\frac{i}{4}J(\mathbb{1}+F)(\mathbb{1}-F)^{-1}X\cdot X\right) \quad (3.72)$$

*where* $\mu=\bar{\nu}+\frac{n}{2}$ *and* $\bar{\nu}\in\mathbb{Z}$.

This formula has been heuristically proposed by Mehlig and Wilkinson [143] without the computation of the phase. See also [61].

We can restore the $\hbar$ dependence of $R(F,X)$ and $R^{\#}(F,X)$ by putting a factor $\hbar^{-1}$ in the argument of the exponentials.

*Proof* Let us state the following proposition which is a direct consequence of (3.39) after algebraic computations.

**Proposition 37** *The matrix elements of* $\widehat{R}(F)$ *on coherent states* $\varphi_z$, *are given by the following formula*:

$$\begin{aligned}\langle\varphi_{z+X}|\widehat{R}(F)\varphi_z\rangle &= 2^n\bigl(\det\bigl(\mathbb{1}+F+iJ(\mathbb{1}-F)\bigr)\bigr)^{-1/2}\\ &\quad\times\exp\left(-\left|z+\frac{X}{2}\right|^2+\frac{1}{2}i\sigma(X,z)+K_F\left(z+\frac{X-iJX}{2}\right)\right.\\ &\quad\left.\times\left(z+\frac{X-iJX}{2}\right)\right) \quad (3.73)\end{aligned}$$

*where*

$$K_F=(\mathbb{1}+F)\bigl(\mathbb{1}+F+iJ(\mathbb{1}-F)\bigr)^{-1} \quad (3.74)$$

Now we can compute the distribution covariant symbol of $\widehat{R}(F)$ by plugging formula (3.73) into formula (2.29).

Let us begin with the regular case $\det(\mathbb{1}-F)\neq 0$ and compute the covariant symbol.

Using Proposition 37 and formula (3.39), we have to compute a Gaussian integral with a complex, quadratic, non-degenerate covariance matrix (see [117]).

This covariance matrix is $K_F-\mathbb{1}$ and we have clearly

$$K_F-\mathbb{1}=-iJ(\mathbb{1}-F)\bigl(\mathbb{1}+F+iJ(\mathbb{1}-F)\bigr)^{-1}=-(\mathbb{1}-i\Lambda)^{-1}$$

where $\Lambda = (\mathbb{1} + F)(\mathbb{1} - F)^{-1} J$ is a real symmetric matrix. So we have

$$\Re(K_F - \mathbb{1}) = -\big(\mathbb{1} + \Lambda^2\big)^{-1}, \qquad \Im(K_F - \mathbb{1}) = -\Lambda\big(\mathbb{1} + \Lambda^2\big)^{-1} \tag{3.75}$$

So that $\mathbb{1} - K_F$ is in the Siegel space $\Sigma_{2n}$ and Theorem 7.6.1 of [117] can be applied. The only serious problem is to compute the index $\mu$.

Let us define a path of $2n \times 2n$ symplectic matrices as follows: $G_t = \mathrm{e}^{t\pi J_{2n}}$ if $\det(\mathbb{1} - F) > 0$, and $G_t = G_t^2 \otimes \mathrm{e}^{t\pi J_{2n-2}}$ if $\det(\mathbb{1} - F) < 0$, where

$$G^2 = \begin{pmatrix} \eta(t) & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\eta(t)} \end{pmatrix}$$

where $\eta$ is a smooth function on $[0, 1]$ such that $\eta(0) = 1$, $\eta(t) > 1$ on $]0, 1]$ and where $J_{2n}$ is the $2n \times 2n$ matrix defining the symplectic matrix on the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$.

$G_1$ and $F$ are in the same connected component of $\mathrm{Sp}_\star(2n)$ where $\mathrm{Sp}_\star(2n) = \{F \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n), \det(\mathbb{1} - F) \neq 0\}$. So we can consider a path $s \mapsto F'_s$ in $\mathrm{Sp}_\star(2n)$ such that $F'_0 = G_1$ and $F'_1 = F$.

Let us consider the following "argument of determinant" functions for families of complex matrices:

$$\theta[F_t] = \arg_c\big[\det\big(\mathbb{1} + F_t + iJ(\mathbb{1} - F_t)\big)\big] \tag{3.76}$$

$$\beta[F] = \arg_+\big[\det(\mathbb{1} - K_F)^{-1}\big] \tag{3.77}$$

where $\arg_c$ means that $t \mapsto \theta[F_t]$ is continuous in $t$ and $\theta[\mathbb{1}] = 0$ ($F_0 = \mathbb{1}$), and $S \mapsto \arg_+[\det(S)]$ is the analytic determination defined on the Siegel space $\Sigma_{2n}$ such that $\arg_+[\det(S)] = 0$ if $S$ is real (see [117], vol. 1, Sect. 3.4).

With these notations we have

$$\mu = \frac{\beta[F] - \theta[F]}{2\pi} \tag{3.78}$$

Let us consider first the case $\det(\mathbb{1} - F) > 0$.

Using that $J$ has the spectrum $\pm i$, we get $\det(\mathbb{1} + G_t + iJ(\mathbb{1} - G_t)) = 4^n \mathrm{e}^{nt\pi i}$ and $\mathbb{1} - K_{G_1} = \mathbb{1}$.

Let us remark that $\det(\mathbb{1} - K_F)^{-1} = \det(\mathbb{1} - F)^{-1}\det(\mathbb{1} - F + iJ(\mathbb{1} + F))$. Let us introduce $\triangle(E, \mathcal{M}) = \det(\mathbb{1} - E + \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{1} + E))$ for $E \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n)$ and $\mathcal{M} \in \mathrm{sp}_+(2n, \mathbb{C})$. Let consider the closed path $\mathcal{C}$ in $\mathrm{Sp}(2n)$ defined by adding $\{G_t\}_{0 \le t \le 1}$ and $\{F'_s\}_{0 \le s \le 1}$. We denote by $2\pi\bar{\nu}$ the variation of the argument for $\triangle(\bullet, \mathcal{M})$ along $\mathcal{C}$. Then we get easily

$$\beta(F) = \theta[F] + 2\pi\bar{\nu} + n\pi, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z} \tag{3.79}$$

When $\det(\mathbb{1} - F) < 0$, by an explicit computation, we find $\arg_+[\det(\mathbb{1} - K_{G_1})] = 0$. So we can conclude as above.

The formula for the contravariant symbol can be easily deduced from the covariant formula using a symplectic Fourier transform. □

*Remark 13* When the quadratic Hamiltonian $H$ is time independent then $F_t = \mathrm{e}^{tJS}$, $S$ is a symmetric matrix. So if $\det(\mathrm{e}^{tJS} + 1) \neq 0$, then we get applying (3.71),

$$R\big(\mathrm{e}^{tJS}, X\big) = \mathrm{e}^{i\pi\nu}\left|\det\left[\cosh\left(\frac{t}{2}JS\right)\right]\right|^{-1/2}\exp\left(i\sigma\left(\tanh\left(\frac{t}{2}JS\right)X\cdot X\right)\right) \quad (3.80)$$

This formula was obtained in [118]. In particular the Mehler formula for the Harmonic oscillator is obtained with $S = \mathbb{1}$.

In [61] the author discuss the Maslov index related with the metaplectic representation.

*Remark 14* In the paper [52] the authors give a different method to compute the contravariant Weyl symbol $R(F, X)$ inspired by [76]. They consider a smooth family $F_t$ of linear symplectic transformations associated with a family of time-dependent quadratic Hamiltonians $H_t$. After quantization we have a quantum propagator $\widehat{U}_t$ with its contravariant Weyl symbol $U_t^w(X)$. We make the ansatz $U_t^w(X) = \alpha_t \mathrm{e}^{X\cdot M_t X}$ where $\alpha_t$ is a complex number, $M_t$ is a symmetric matrix. Using the Schrödinger equation $\partial_t U_t^w = H_t \circledast U_t^w$, and the Moyal product, we find for $M_t$ a Riccati equation which is solved with the classical motion. Afterwards, $\alpha_t$ is found by solving a Liouville equation hence we recover the previous results (see [52] for details).

This approach will be adapted later in this book in the fermionic setting.

## 3.6 Traps

We now give an application in physics of our computations concerning quadratic Hamiltonians.

The quantum motion of an ion in a quadrupolar radio-frequency trap is solved exactly in terms of the classical trajectories. It is proven that the quantum stability regions coincide with the stability regions of the associated Mathieu equation. By quantum stability we mean that the quantum evolution over one period (the so-called Floquet operator) has only pure-point spectrum. Thus the quantum motion is “trapped” in a suitable sense. We exhibit the set of eigenstates of the Floquet operator.

### *3.6.1 The Classical Motion*

Let us consider a three-dimensional Hamiltonian of the following form:

$$H(t) = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} + \frac{e}{r_0^2}\left(z^2 - \frac{1}{2}\big(x^2 + y^2\big)\right)\big(V_1 - V_0\cos(\omega t)\big) \quad (3.81)$$

Here $\mathbf{p} = (p_x, p_y, p_z)$ is the three-dimensional momentum, $m$ the mass of the ion, and $\mathbf{r} = (x, y, z)$ is the three-dimensional position. $r_0$ is the size of the trap and $e$

the charge of the electron. $V_1$ (resp. $V_0$) is the constant (resp. alternating) voltage. Such time-periodic Hamiltonians are realized by using traps that are hyperboloids of revolution along the $z$-axis that are submitted to a direct current plus an alternating current voltage. Also known as Paul traps they allow to confine isolated ions like cesium for rather long times, and also a few ions together in the same trap.

It is obvious to see that this Hamiltonian is purely quadratic and that it decouples into three one-dimensional Hamiltonians:

$$H(t) = h_x(t) \otimes \mathbb{1} \otimes \mathbb{1} + \mathbb{1} \otimes h_y(t) \otimes \mathbb{1} + \mathbb{1} \otimes \mathbb{1} \otimes h_z(t)$$

where $h_x(t) = h_y(t) = \frac{p_x^2}{2m} - \frac{x^2}{2}(\alpha - \beta\cos(\omega t))$, $h_z(t) = \frac{p_z^2}{2m} + z^2(\alpha - \beta\cos(\omega t))$ with $\alpha = \frac{e}{r_0^2}V_1$, $\beta = \frac{e}{r_0^2}V_0$.

Thus $x(t), y(t), z(t)$ evolve according to the Mathieu equations:

$$\ddot{x}(t) - x(t)\big(\alpha/m - \cos(\omega t)\beta/m\big) = 0, \qquad \ddot{z}(t) + z(t)\big(2\alpha/m - \cos(\omega t)2\beta/m\big) = 0 \tag{3.82}$$

It is known that each of these equations have stability regions parametrized by $(\alpha, \beta, \omega)$, in which the motion remains bounded. Furthermore it can be shown that it is quasiperiodic with Floquet exponent $\rho$. See [142].

**Theorem 19** *There exist $\rho, \rho' \in \mathbb{R}$ and rapidly converging sequences $c_n, c'_n \in \mathbb{R}$ depending on $a = 4\alpha/m\omega^2$, $b = 2\beta/m\omega^2$ such that the solution of (3.82) with $x(0) = u$, $\dot{x}(t) = v/m$, $z(0) = u'$, $\dot{z}(0) = v'/m$ are given by*

$$x(t, u, v) = \frac{u}{c}\sum_{-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n \cos\left((2n+\rho)\frac{\omega t}{2}\right) + \frac{2v}{m\omega d}\sum_{-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n \sin\left((2n+\rho)\frac{\omega t}{2}\right)$$

$$z(t, u', v') = \frac{u'}{c'}\sum_{-\infty}^{+\infty} c'_n \cos\left((2n+\rho')\frac{\omega t}{2}\right) + \frac{2v'}{m\omega d'}\sum_{-\infty}^{+\infty} c'_n \sin\left((2n+\rho')\frac{\omega t}{2}\right)$$

*where $c = \sum_{\mathbb{Z}} c_n$, $d = \sum_{\mathbb{Z}}(2n+\rho)c_n$, and similarly for $c', d'$. Note that the Floquet exponent $\rho$ is the same for $x, y$ but $\rho' \neq \rho$.*

The proof depends heavily on the linearity of Mathieu's equations. Note that the stability regions are delimited by the curves $C_j$ for which (3.82) has periodic solutions, i.e. for which $\rho = j \in \mathbb{N}$. For given $\alpha, \beta$, there exists $\omega_1, \omega_2 \in \mathbb{R}^+$ such that for any $\omega \in ]\omega_1, \omega_2[$ the classical equations of motion (3.82) have stable solutions. $\omega_1$ has to be large enough hence the name "radio-frequency traps".

## 3.7 The Quantum Evolution

Since ions are actually quantum objects it is relevant to consider now the quantum problem. As known from the general considerations of this Chapter on quadratic

Hamiltonians the quantum evolution for Hamiltonians of the form (3.81) is completely determined by the quantum motion. The Hilbert space of quantum states is $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$. One thus finds that the time-periodic Hamiltonian

$$\widehat{H}(t) := -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\Delta + \big(\alpha - \beta\cos(\omega t)\big)\left(z^2 - \frac{x^2+y^2}{2}\right)$$

where $\Delta$ is the 3-dimensional Laplacian and generates an unitary operator $\widehat{U}(t,s)$ that evolves a quantum state from time $s$ to time $t$. The Floquet operator is the operator on time evolution over one period $T = 2\pi/\omega$:

$$\widehat{U}(T,0) = \widehat{U}_x(T,0)\widehat{U}_y(T,0)\widehat{U}_z(T,0)$$

We shall denote by $\widehat{U}_F$ (resp. $\widehat{U}'_F$) the operator $\widehat{U}_x(T,0)$ (resp. $\widehat{U}_z(T,0)$). Then one has the following results:

**Theorem 20**

(i) *Given $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$ there exists $\omega_1, \omega_2 \in \mathbb{R}^+$ as in the previous section such that for any $\psi \in \mathcal{H}$ and any $\epsilon > 0$ there exists $R \in \mathbb{R}^+$ such that*

$$\sup_t \big\| F\big(|\mathbf{r}| > R\big)\widehat{U}(t,s)\psi \big\| < \epsilon$$

*$F(|\mathbf{r}| > R)$ being the characteristic function of the exterior of the ball $|\mathbf{r}| \leq R$.*

(ii) *For $\alpha, \beta, \omega$ as above, $\widehat{U}_F$ has pure-point spectrum of the form $\{\exp(-i\rho\pi(k+1/2))\}_{k\in\mathbb{N}}$ where $\rho$ is as in the preceding section the classical Floquet exponent. Similarly for $\widehat{U}'_F$.*

*Remark 15* A complete proof can be seen in [47].

(i) says that the time evolution of any quantum state remains essentially localized along the quantum evolution.

*Proof* To prove (i) it is enough to state the result in one dimension, and to assume $m = \hbar = 1$. We establish the result for $\psi \in \mathcal{C}_0^\infty$ which is a dense set. Let $W(-2x, \xi, t)$ be the Wigner function of the state $\psi(t) := \widehat{U}(t,0)\psi$. Then $W(x, ., t) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, $\forall t \in \mathbb{R}$, $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$. Furthermore we have

$$\left|\psi\left(t, -\frac{x}{2}\right)\right|^2 = \int d\xi\, W(x,\xi,t)$$

It follows that

$$\big\|F\big(|x| > R\big)\psi(t)\big\|^2 = \int_{|x|>2R} dx\,d\xi\, W(x,\xi,t) = \int_{|x|>2R} dx\,d\xi\, W\big(x(t), \dot{x}(t), 0\big)$$

where $x(t)$ is a solution of (3.82) with $x(0) = x$, $\dot{x}(0) = \xi$. Then we perform a change of variables with uniform (in $t$) Jacobian, the linearity of Mathieu's equation and the boundedness in time of its solution in the stable region, together with the fact that $W(x, \xi, t) \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^2)$ to conclude. □

An extension of Theorem 20 to Hermite-like wavefunctions is the following: define

$$\Phi_k(t,x) = (L_t)^{-1/2}\left(\frac{L_t^*}{L_t}\right)^{k/2} H_k\big(x/\sqrt{\hbar}|L_t|\big)\exp\left(\frac{iN_t x^2}{2\hbar L_t}\right)$$

where $H_k$ are the normalized Hermite polynomials and the determination of the square-root is followed by continuity from $t = 0$. We have

$$\widehat{U}(t,0)\Phi_k(0,.) = \Phi_k(t,.), \quad \forall t \in \mathbb{R}$$

This can be proven by using the Trotter product formula, a steplike approximation $f_N(t)$ of the function $f(t) = \alpha - \beta\cos(\omega t)$ and the continuity of solutions of (3.82) when $f_N \to f$. See [47] and [99, 100] for details.

The normalized eigenstates of $\widehat{U}_F$ are generalized squeezed states. Let us assume $m = 1$ for simplicity. Let $F(t)$ be the symplectic $2 \times 2$ matrix solution of

$$\dot{F} = JMF$$

where

$$M(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & f(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

$f(t) = \alpha - \beta\cos(\omega t)$

$$F(t) = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ C_t & D_t \end{pmatrix}$$

We choose suitable initial data $F(0) = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} g & 0 \\ 0 & g^{-1} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ with

$$g = \left(\frac{\omega d}{2c}\right)^{-1/2}$$

We define $L_t = A_t + iB_t,\ N_t = C_t + iD_t$. For these initial data, we have

$$L_t = \frac{g}{c}\mathrm{e}^{i\rho\omega t/2}\sum_{-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n \mathrm{e}^{in\omega t}, \qquad N_t = \frac{1}{gd}\mathrm{e}^{i\rho\omega t/2}\sum_{-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n \mathrm{e}^{in\omega t}$$

It is clear that $|L_t|$, $\frac{N_t}{L_t}$ are $T$-periodic where $T = 2\pi/\omega$, and furthermore

$$\mathrm{e}^{i(k+1/2)\frac{\rho\omega t}{2}}(L_t)^{-1/2}\left(\frac{L_t^*}{L_t}\right)^{k/2}$$

is also $T$-periodic. Then we introduce the self-adjoint quasi-energy operator

$$K = -i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + h_x(t)$$

acting in the Hilbert space

$$\mathcal{K} = L^2(\mathbb{R}) \otimes L^2(\mathbb{T}_\omega)$$

of functions depending on both $x$ and $t$, $T$-periodic in $t$. This formalism has been introduced by Howland [119] and Yajima [204]. $K$ is closely related to the quantum evolution operator. We have the following result:

**Lemma 26**

(i) *Assume $\Psi \in \mathcal{K}$ is an eigenstate of $K$ with eigenvalue $\lambda$. Then for any $t \in \mathbb{T}_\omega$, $\Psi(t, .) \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ and satisfies*

$$\widehat{U}(t+T, t)\Psi(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\lambda T/\hbar}\Psi(t)$$

(ii) *Conversely let $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ satisfy*

$$\widehat{U}(T, 0)\psi = \mathrm{e}^{-iT\lambda/\hbar}\psi$$

*Then $\Psi = \mathrm{e}^{i\lambda t/\hbar}\widehat{U}(t, 0)\psi \in \mathcal{K}$ and satisfies*

$$K\Psi = \lambda\Psi$$

*Proof* Define

$$\Psi_k(t, x) = \mathrm{e}^{(k+1/2)\rho\omega t/2}\Phi_k(x)$$

Then using the periodicity properties we have $\Psi_k \in \mathcal{K}$ and

$$\widehat{U}(T, 0)\Phi_k(0, .) = \exp\left(-i\pi\rho\left(k + \frac{1}{2}\right)\right)\Phi_k(0, .)$$

and thus

$$K\Psi_k = \left(k + \frac{1}{2}\right)\frac{\hbar\rho\omega}{2}\Psi_k \qquad \square$$

# Chapter 4
# The Semiclassical Evolution of Gaussian Coherent States

**Abstract** In this Chapter we consider semiclassical asymptotics of the quantum evolution of coherent states at any order in the Planck constant. We consider a control in time of the remainder term depending explicitly on $\hbar$ and on the stability matrix. We find that the quantum evolved coherent state is in $L^2$-norm well approximated by a squeezed state located around the phase-space point $z_t$ of the classical flow reached at time $t$, with a dispersion controlled by the stability matrix at point $z_t$. The idea goes back to Hepp (Commun. Math. Phys. 35:265–277, 1974) and was further developed by G. Hagedorn (Ann. Phys. 135:58–70, 1981; Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré 42:363–374, 1985). The method that we develop here follows the paper (Combescure and Robert in Asymptot. Anal. 14:377–404, 1997) where we consider general time-dependent Hamiltonians and use the squeezed states formalism and the metaplectic transformation (see Chap. 3). The difference between the exact and the semiclassical evolution is estimated in time $t$ and in the semiclassical parameter $\hbar$ giving in particular the well known Ehrenfest time of order $\log(\hbar^{-1})$.

We then provide two applications of the semiclassical estimates: the first one concerns the semiclassical estimate of the spreading of quantum wave packets which are coherent states in terms of the Lyapunov exponents of the classical flow. The second application is to the scattering theory for general short range interactions: then the large time asymptotics can be controlled and the quantum scattering operator acts on coherent states following the classical scattering theory with good estimates in $\hbar$. More accurate estimates can be obtained using the Fourier–Bargmann transform (Robert in Partial Differential Equations and Applications, 2007). We consider Gevrey type estimates for the semiclassical coefficients and $\hbar$-exponentially small remainder estimates in Sobolev norms for solutions of time-dependent Schrödinger equations.

## 4.1 General Results and Assumptions

We shall consider the quantum Hamiltonian $\hat{H}(t)$ of a possibly time-dependent problem. We assume that the corresponding time-dependent Schrödinger equation defines a unique quantum unitary propagator $U(t, s)$. Then we consider the canonical Gaussian coherent states $\varphi_z$ where $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ is a phase-space point. Then we let it evolve with the quantum propagator that is we consider the quantum state

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_4, 

at time $t$ defined by

$$\Psi_z(t) := U(t,0)\varphi_z$$

Semiclassically (when $\hbar$ is small) $\Psi(z,t,\hbar)$ is well approximated in $L^2$-norm by a superposition of "squeezed states" centered around the phase-space point $z_t = \Phi(t)z$ of the classical flow. This study goes back in the pioneering paper by Hepp [113] and was later developed by G. Hagedorn in a series of papers [99, 100]. In [49] an approach is developed connecting the semiclassical propagation of coherent states to the so-called squeezed states. We develop here a generalization of these results, following the paper [51], allowing general time-dependent Hamiltonians and estimating the error term with respect to time $t$, to $z$ and to $\hbar$.

The knowledge of the time evolution for any Gaussian $\varphi_z$ is a way to get many properties for the full propagator $U(t,0)$ (we can always assume that the initial time is 0). This is easy to understand using that the family $\{\varphi_z,\ z\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}\}$ is overcomplete (Chap. 1). Let us denote by $K_t(x,y)$ the Schwartz-distribution kernel of $U(t,0)$. From overcompleteness we get the following formula:

$$K_t(x,y) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} dz\big[U(t,0)\varphi_z\big](x)\overline{\varphi_z(y)} \tag{4.1}$$

This equality holds as Schwartz distributions on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ and explains why it is very useful to solve the Schrödinger equation with coherent state $\varphi_z$ as initial state:

$$i\hbar\partial_t\Psi_z(t) = \hat{H}(t)\Psi_z(t), \quad \Psi_z(0) = \varphi_z \tag{4.2}$$

Several applications will be given later as well for time-dependent and time-independent Schrödinger equations type.

### *4.1.1 Assumptions and Notations*

Let $\hat{H}(t)$ be a self-adjoint Schrödinger Hamiltonian in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ obtained by quantizing a general time-dependent symbol $H(x,\xi,t)$ called classical Hamiltonian. We use the $\hbar$- Weyl quantization (see Chap. 2). $H$ is assumed to be a $\mathcal{C}^\infty$-smooth function for $x\in\mathbb{R}^n$, $\xi\in\mathbb{R}^n$, $t\in\,]-T,T[\,0\le T\le+\infty$ satisfying a global estimate:

(A.0) There exist some nonnegative constants $m$, $M$, $K_{H,T}$ such that

$$\big(1+|x|^2+|\xi|^2\big)^{-M/2}\big|\partial_x^\gamma\partial_\xi^{\gamma'}H(x,\xi,t)\big| \le K_{H,T}$$

uniformly in $(x,\xi)\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, $t\in\,]-T,T[$ for $|\gamma|+|\gamma'|\ge m$. So $H$ may be a very general Hamiltonian including time-dependent magnetic fields or non Euclidean metrics. We furthermore assume $H(x,\xi,t)$ to be such that the classical and quantum evolutions exist from time 0 to time $t$ for $t$ in some interval $]-T,T[$ where $T<+\infty$ or $T=+\infty$. More precisely:

(A.1) Given some $z=(q_0,p_0)\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ there exists a positive $T$ such that the Hamilton equations

$$\dot{q}_t=\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(q_t,p_t,t),\qquad \dot{p}_t=-\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(q_t,p_t,t)$$

have a unique solution for any $t\in]-T,T[$ starting from initial data $z:=(q_0,p_0)$. We denote $z_t=(q_t,p_t):=\Phi(t)z$ the phase-space point reached at time $t$ starting by $z$ at time 0.

(A.2) There exists a unique quantum propagator $U(t,s)$, $(t,s)\in\mathbb{R}^2$ with the following properties:

(i) $U(t,s)$ is unitary in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ with

$$U(t,s)=U(t,r)U(r,s),\quad \forall(r,s,t)\in\mathbb{R}^3$$

(ii) $U(.,.)$ is a strongly continuous operator-valued function for the operator norm topology in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. The usual norm in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is denoted by $\|.\|$.

(iii) Let

$$\mathcal{B}(k)=\left\{u\in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n):\sum_{|\alpha|+|\beta|\le k}\left\|x^\beta\partial_x^\alpha u\right\|^2:=\|u\|^2_{\mathcal{B}(k)}<\infty\right\}$$

and let $\mathcal{B}(-k)$ be the standard dual space of $\mathcal{B}(k)$.

Then we assume that there exists some $k\in\mathbb{N}$ such that for any $\psi\in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and any $s\in[-T,T]$ $U(t,s)\psi$ is $\mathcal{B}(-k)$-valued absolutely continuous in $t$ and satisfies the time-dependent Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U(t,s)\psi=\hat{H}(t)U(t,s)\psi$$

in $\mathcal{B}(-k)$ at almost every $t\in]-T,T[$.

If $H$ is independent on time $t$ satisfying (A.0), (A.1) is satisfied if the trajectory is on a compact energy level: $H(q_t,p_t)=E$ with $H^{-1}(E)$ bounded in $\mathbb{R}^n_q\times\mathbb{R}^n_p$ and (A.2) is satisfied if $\hat{H}$ is self-adjoint. But if $H$ depends on time $t$, no general conditions are known that ensure properties (A.1), (A.2) to be true. However, we shall indicate in the usual Schrödinger case with time-dependent potentials or in the Schrödinger case with time-dependent electric and magnetic fields some general technical conditions provided by Yajima [202, 205] such that (A.2) holds true for $k=2$:

(1) Let $H(x,\xi,t)=\frac{1}{2}\xi^2+V(t,x)$, $\quad I_T:=[-T,T]$ and

$$V\in\mathcal{C}\big(I_T,L^{p_2}(\mathbb{R}^n)\big)+\mathcal{C}\big(I_T,L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)\big),\quad \frac{\partial V}{\partial t}\in L^{p_1,\alpha_1}(I_T)+L^{\infty,\beta}(I_T)$$

where $\beta>1$, $p_2=\mathrm{Max}(p,2)$, $p_1=2np/(n+4p)$ if $n\ge5$, $p_1>2p(p+1)$ if $p=4$ and $p_1=2p/(p+1)$ if $n\le3$, $\alpha_1>4p/(4p-n)$ and

$$L^{m,p}(I)=\left\{u:\int_I dt\left[\int_{\mathbb{R}^n}dx\left|u(t,x)\right|^m\right]^{p/m}<\infty\right\}$$

(Note that $V(t,x)$ can be less regular in the time variable if it is more regular in the space variables.) Then property (A.2) is satisfied for $s,t \in I_T \times I_T$ and for any quantization of $H(t)$.

(2) Let $H(x,\xi,t) = \frac{1}{2}(\xi - A(t,x))^2 + V(t,x)$ where $V(t,x)$ and $A(t,x) = \{A_j(t,x)\}_{j=1,\dots,n}$ are the electric and magnetic vector potentials. If $B(t,x)$ is the strength tensor of the magnetic field i.e. the skew-symmetric matrix

$$B_{j,k} = \frac{\partial A_k}{\partial x_j} - \frac{\partial A_j}{\partial x_k}$$

we assume the following:

(i) $A_j : \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \to \mathbb{R}$ is such that for any multiindex $\alpha$, $\partial_x^\alpha A_j$ is $\mathcal{C}^1$ in $(t,x) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$.

(ii) There exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that

$$\left|\partial_x^\alpha B(t,x)\right| \le C_\alpha \bigl(1+|x|\bigr)^{-1-\varepsilon}, \quad |\alpha| \ge 1$$

$$\left|\partial_x^\alpha A(t,x)\right| + \left|\partial_x^\alpha \partial_t A(t,x)\right| \le C_\alpha, \quad |\alpha| \ge 1,\ (t,x) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$$

(iii) $V : \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \to \mathbb{R}$ belongs to $L^{p,\alpha}(\mathbb{R}) + L^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ for some $p > n/2$ with $p \ge 1$ and $\alpha = 2p/(2p-n)$.

In Chap. 1 we have described the construction of standard coherent states by applying the Weyl–Heisenberg operator to the ground state $\Psi_0$ of the $n$-dimensional harmonic oscillator with Hamiltonian

$$\begin{aligned} K_0 &:= \frac{1}{2}\bigl(\hat{P}^2 + \hat{Q}^2\bigr) \\ \varphi_z &= \hat{T}(z)\Psi_0 \end{aligned} \tag{4.3}$$

In Chap. 3 we have computed an explicit formula for the time evolution of coherent states driven by any quadratic Hamiltonian in $(q,p)$.

We shall now define generalized coherent states by applying $\hat{T}(z)$ to the excited states $\Psi_\nu$ of the $n$-dimensional harmonic oscillator; given a multiindex $\nu = (\nu_1,\dots,\nu_n)$, $\Psi_\nu$ is the normalized eigenstate of (4.3) with eigenvalue $|\nu| + n/2$. We recall the notation

$$|\nu| = \sum_{j=1}^n \nu_j$$

We thus define

$$\Psi_z^{(\nu)} = \hat{T}(z)\Psi_\nu$$

and $\varphi_z$ is simply $\Psi_z^{(0)}$.

Similarly we define generalized squeezed states $\Phi_{z,B}^{(\nu)}$ centered around the phase-space point $z$. Let $W$ be a symmetric $n \times n$ matrix with polar decomposition $W = U|W|$ where $|W| = (W^*W)^{1/2}$ and $U$ a unitary $n \times n$ matrix. We assume that

$$W^*W \le \mathbb{1}$$

and define

$$B := U \,\mathrm{Argtanh}|W| \tag{4.4}$$

Now as in Chap. 3 we construct the unitary operator $\hat{D}(B)$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ as

$$\hat{D}(B) = \exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\big(\mathbf{a}^* \cdot B\mathbf{a}^* - \mathbf{a} \cdot B^*\mathbf{a}\big)\right)$$

$\mathbf{a}^*$ and $\mathbf{a}$ being the creation and annihilation operators. We define

$$\Phi^{(\nu)}_{z,B} := \hat{T}(z)\hat{D}(B)\Psi_\nu$$

Of course we have

$$\Phi^{(\nu)}_{0,B} = \psi^{(B)}$$

where $\psi^{(B)}$ is the standard squeezed state, using the notations of Chap. 2 and

$$\Phi^{(0)}_{z,0} = \varphi_z$$

using the notation of Chap. 1.

### 4.1.2 The Semiclassical Evolution of Generalized Coherent States

In this section we consider the quantum evolution of superpositions of generalized coherent states of the form $\Psi^{(\nu)}_z$ and prove under the above assumptions that, up to an error term which can be controlled in $t, z, \hbar$, it is close in $L^2$-norm to a superposition of squeezed states of the form $\Phi^{(\nu)}_{z_t,B_t}$ where $z_t := \Phi(t)z$ is the phase-space point reached at time $t$ by the classical flow $\Phi(t)$ of $H(t)$, and $B_t$ is well-defined through the linear stability problem at point $z_t$. We follow the approach developed in [51] where we use:

- the algebra of the generators of coherent and squeezed states
- the so-called Duhamel principle, which is nothing but the following identity:

$$U_1(t,s) - U_2(t,s) = \frac{1}{i\hbar}\int_s^t d\tau\, U_1(t,\tau)\big(\hat{H}_1(\tau) - \hat{H}_2(\tau)\big)U_2(\tau,s) \tag{4.5}$$

  where $U_i(t,s)$ is the quantum propagator generated by the time-dependent Hamiltonian $\hat{H}_i(t)$, $i = 1,2$. We take $\hat{H}_1(t) = \hat{H}(t)$ and $\hat{H}_2(t)$ to be the "Taylor expansion up to order 2" of $\hat{H}(t)$ around the classical path $z_t$. More precisely:

$$\hat{H}_2(t) = H(q_t,p_t,t) + \big(\hat{Q} - q_t\big)\cdot\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(q_t,p_t,t) + \big(\hat{P} - p_t\big)\cdot\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(q_t,p_t,t)$$
$$+ \frac{1}{2}\big(\hat{Q} - q_t, \hat{P} - p_t\big)M_t\begin{pmatrix}\hat{Q} - q_t\\ \hat{P} - p_t\end{pmatrix} \tag{4.6}$$

$M_t$ being the Hessian of $H(t)$ computed at point $z_t = (q_t, p_t)$:

$$M_t = \left(\frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial z^2}\right)\bigg|_{z=z_t} \tag{4.7}$$

The interesting point is that since $\hat{H}_2(t)$ is at most quadratic, its quantum propagator is written uniquely through the generators of coherent and squeezed states. In Chap. 3 we have shown the link between the quantum propagator of purely quadratic Hamiltonians and the metaplectic transformations. It is shown that the quantum propagator of purely quadratic Hamiltonians can be decomposed into a quantum rotation times a squeezing generator. Let us be more explicit: Let $\hat{H}_Q(t)$ be a purely quadratic quantum Hamiltonian of the form

$$\hat{H}_Q(t) = (\hat{Q}, \hat{P})S(t)\begin{pmatrix}\hat{Q}\\ \hat{P}\end{pmatrix}$$

with $S(t)$ a $2n \times 2n$ symmetric matrix of the form

$$S(t) = \begin{pmatrix} G_t & \tilde{L}_t \\ L_t & K_t \end{pmatrix}$$

where $G_t$, $K_t$ are symmetric and $\tilde{L}$ denotes the transpose of $L$. In what follows $S(t)$ will be simply $M_t$. Let $F(t)$ be the symplectic matrix solution of

$$\dot{F}(t) = JM_tF(t) \tag{4.8}$$

with initial data $F_0 = \mathbb{1}$, where

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbb{1} \\ -\mathbb{1} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

It has the four-block decomposition

$$F(t) = \begin{pmatrix} A(t) & B(t) \\ C(t) & D(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

In Chap. 3 it has been established that the quantum propagator $U_q(t,0)$ of $\hat{H}_Q(t)$ is nothing but the metaplectic operator $\hat{R}(F(t))$ associated to the symplectic matrix $F(t)$. It implies that the Heisenberg observables $\hat{Q}(t)$, $\hat{P}(t)$ obey the classical Newton equations for the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}_Q(t)$ as expected. Therefore we have

**Lemma 27**

$$U_q(0,t)\begin{pmatrix}\hat{Q}\\ \hat{P}\end{pmatrix}U_q(t,0) = F(t)\begin{pmatrix}\hat{Q}\\ \hat{P}\end{pmatrix}$$

Passing from the $(\hat{Q}, \hat{P})$ representation to the $(\mathbf{a}^*, \mathbf{a})$ representation we easily get

**Lemma 28**

$$U_q(t)^{-1}\begin{pmatrix}\mathbf{a}^*\\ \mathbf{a}\end{pmatrix}U_q(t)=\frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix}Y_t & \bar{Z}_t\\ Z_t & \bar{Y}_t\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\mathbf{a}^*\\ \mathbf{a}\end{pmatrix}$$

Furthermore one can show that $\hat{R}(F(t))$ decomposes into a product of a rotation part and a "squeezing" part. Defining the complex matrices:

$$Y_t = A(t)+iB(t)-i\big(C(t)+iD(t)\big), \qquad Z_t = A(t)+iB(t)+i\big(C(t)+iD(t)\big) \tag{4.9}$$

we have the following identity:

$$Z^*Z = Y^*Y - 4\mathbb{1}$$

and $Y_t$ is invertible. The matrix $W_t = Z_t Y_t^{-1}$ is such that

$$W_t^* W_t < \mathbb{1}, \quad W_0 = 0$$

Furthermore it has been shown in Chap. 3 (Lemmas 21 and 23) that it is a symmetric matrix. Thus one can define the matrix $B_t$ according to (4.4); note that $B_t$ is not to be confused with the matrix $B(t)$ of the four-block decomposition of $F(t)$. Introducing the polar decomposition of $Y_t$:

$$Y_t = |Y_t| V_t^*$$

where

$$|Y|^2 = YY^*$$

we see that $V_t$ is a smooth function of $t$ and we can define (at least locally in time) a smooth self-adjoint matrix $\Gamma_t$ by

$$V_t = \exp(i\Gamma_t)$$

Let $\hat{R}(t)$ be the following unitary operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ (metaplectic transformation):

$$\hat{R}(t) = \exp\left\{\frac{i}{2}(\mathbf{a}^*, \mathbf{a})\begin{pmatrix}0 & \tilde{\Gamma}_t\\ \Gamma_t & 0\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\mathbf{a}^*\\ \mathbf{a}\end{pmatrix}\right\}$$

It has the following property:

**Lemma 29**

$$\hat{R}(t)\begin{pmatrix}\mathbf{a}^*\\ \mathbf{a}\end{pmatrix}\hat{R}(t)^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix}V_t\mathbf{a}^*\\ (\tilde{V}_t)^*\mathbf{a}\end{pmatrix}$$

*Remark 16* $\hat{R}(t)$ will be the rotation part of the metaplectic transformation $U_q(t,0)$ while $\hat{D}(B_t)$ will be the squeezing part.

One has the following property:

**Proposition 38** *The quantum propagator solving the time-dependent Schrödinger equation*

$$i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}U_q(t,s) = \hat{H}_Q(t)U_q(t,s), \quad U(s,s) = \mathbb{1}$$

*is given by*

$$U_q(t,s) = \hat{D}(B_t)\hat{R}(t)\hat{R}(s)^{-1}\hat{D}(-B_s)$$

Due to the chain rule it is enough to show that

$$U_q(t,0) = \hat{D}(B_t)\hat{R}(t)$$

The detailed proof can be found in the paper [51].

Now we can derive an explicit formula for the quantum propagator of $\hat{H}_2(t)$. Let $S_t(z)$ be the classical action along the trajectory for the classical Hamiltonian $H(x,\xi,t)$ starting at phase-space point $z=(q,p)$ at time 0 and reaching $z_t=(q_t,p_t)$ at time $t$:

$$S_t(z) = \int_0^t ds\big[\dot{x}_s\cdot\xi_s - H(x_s,\xi_s,s)\big]$$

and define

$$\delta_t = S_t(z) - \frac{q_t\cdot p_t - q\cdot p}{2}$$

The following result holds true:

**Proposition 39** *Let $U_2(t,s)$ be the quantum propagator for the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}_2(t)$ given by* (4.6). *Then we have*

$$U_2(t,s) = \exp\big[i(\delta_t-\delta_s)/\hbar\big]\hat{T}(z_t)\hat{D}(B_t)\hat{R}(t)\hat{R}(s)^{-1}\hat{D}(-B_s)\hat{T}(-z_s) \tag{4.10}$$

*Proof* Here we use the notation $z := \frac{q+ip}{\sqrt{2\hbar}}$.

Using the Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula (and omitting the index $t$ in the following formulas) we get

$$\frac{d}{dt}\hat{T}(z) = \hat{T}(z)\left[\dot{\bar{z}}\cdot\mathbf{a}^* - \dot{z}\cdot\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\big(z\cdot\dot{\bar{z}} - \dot{z}\cdot\bar{z}\big)\right]$$

But

$$\frac{1}{2}\big(z\cdot\dot{\bar{z}} - \dot{z}\cdot\bar{z}\big) = \frac{i}{2\hbar}(\dot{p}\cdot q - \dot{q}\cdot p), \quad \text{and} \quad i\dot{\delta} = i\left[\dot{S} - \frac{1}{2}(p\cdot q + \dot{p}\cdot q)\right]$$

so that taking the derivative of (4.10) with respect to time $t$ we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
i\hbar\frac{\partial U_2}{\partial t} &= \Big[-\dot{S} + \frac{1}{2}(p\cdot\dot{q} + \dot{p}\cdot q) - \frac{1}{2}(\dot{p}\cdot q - \dot{q}\cdot p) \\
&\quad + \dot{q}\cdot\big(\hat{P}-p\big) - \dot{p}\cdot\big(\hat{Q}-q\big)\Big]U_2 + \hat{T}(z_t)H_q(t)\hat{T}(-z_t)U_2 \\
&= \Big\{\dot{q}\cdot p - \dot{S} + \dot{q}\cdot\big(\hat{P}-p\big) - \dot{p}\cdot\big(\hat{Q}-q\big) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}(\hat{Q}-q, \hat{P}-p)M_t\begin{pmatrix}\hat{Q}-q\\ \hat{P}-p\end{pmatrix}\Big\}U_2 \\
&= \hat{H}_2(t)U_2
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.11}
$$

where we have used that $\dot{q}\cdot p - \dot{S} = H(q,p,t)$. □

The important fact here will be that $U_2$ propagates coherent states into Weyl translated squeezed states so that using (4.5) we get a comparison between the quantum evolution of coherent states and the Weyl-displaced squeezed state centered around the phase-space point $z_t$. Consider as an initial state a coherent state $\Phi^{(0)}_{z,0} = \hat{T}(z)\Psi_0$. We get

$$
U_2(t,0)\Phi^{(0)}_{z,0} = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar}\hat{T}(z_t)\hat{D}(B_t)\hat{R}(t)\Psi_0 = \mathrm{e}^{i(\delta_t/\hbar+\gamma_t)}\Phi^{(0)}_{z_t,B_t}
$$

using the fact that

$$
\hat{R}(t)\Psi_0 = \exp(i\gamma_t)\Psi_0, \quad \text{where } \gamma_t = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{tr}(\Gamma_t)
$$

Therefore applying Duhamel's formula (4.5) to $\Phi^{(0)}_{z,0}$ we get

$$
U(t,0)\Phi^{(0)}_{z,0} - \mathrm{e}^{i(\delta_t/\hbar+\gamma_t)}\Phi^{(0)}_{z_t,B_t} = \frac{1}{i\hbar}\int_0^t ds\, U(t,s)\big[\hat{H}(s) - \hat{H}_2(s)\big]\mathrm{e}^{i(\delta_s/\hbar+\gamma_s)}\Phi^{(0)}_{z_s,B_s}
\tag{4.12}
$$

This will be the starting point of our semiclassical estimate. Taking an arbitrary multiindex $\mu = (\mu_1,\dots,\mu_n)$ we denote

$$
\Phi_\mu(t) := \hat{T}(z_t)\hat{D}(B_t)\hat{R}(t)\Psi_\mu
$$

Starting from (4.12) we deduce that for any integer $l \geq 1$ there exist indexed functions $c_\nu(t,\hbar)$ such that

$$
\left\| U(t,0)\Phi_0(0) - \sum_{|\nu|=0}^{3(l-1)} c_\nu(t,\hbar)\Phi_\nu(t)\mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar} \right\| \leq C_t\hbar^{l/2}
\tag{4.13}
$$

Furthermore the constant $C_t$ can be controlled in the time $t$ and in the center $z$ of the initial state. Let us now explicit the Taylor expansion of the Hamiltonian around the classical phase-space point at time $t$ $z_t$: we denote

$$\frac{f^{(\nu)}(\zeta)}{\nu!}\cdot\left(\zeta'\right)^{\nu}=\prod_{1}^{2n}\frac{1}{\nu_j!}\frac{\partial^{\nu_j}f(\zeta)}{\partial\zeta_j^{\nu_j}}\left(\zeta_j'\right)^{\nu_j},\qquad \nu=(\nu_1,\ldots,\nu_{2n})$$

for $f$ being a real function of $\zeta\in\mathbb{R}^{2n}$.

Taking for $\zeta$ the phase-space point $z$ we can write the Taylor expansion of $H(q,p,t)$ around the phase-space point $z_t=(q_t,p_t)$ at time $t$ as

$$\begin{aligned}H(\zeta,t)&=\sum_{|\nu|=0}^{l+1}\frac{H^{(\nu)}(z_t,t)}{\nu!}\cdot(\zeta-z_t)^{\nu}\\&\quad+\sum_{|\nu|=l+2}\int_0^1\frac{H^{(\nu)}(z_t+\theta(\zeta-z_t),t)}{(\nu-1)!}\cdot(\zeta-z_t)^{\nu}(1-\theta)^{l+1}\,d\theta\\&=\sum_{|\nu|=0}^{l+1}\frac{H^{(\nu)}(z_t,t)}{\nu!}\cdot(\zeta-z_t)^{\nu}+\sum_{|\nu|=l+2}r_{\nu,t}(\zeta-z_t,t)\cdot(\zeta-z_t)^{\nu}\end{aligned}\tag{4.14}$$

Now we perform the $\hbar$-quantization of (4.6) denoting $\Omega:=(\hat{Q},\hat{P})$; we get

$$\hat{H}(t)-\hat{H}_2(t)=\sum_{|\nu|=3}^{l+1}\frac{H^{\nu}(z_t,t)}{\nu!}\cdot(\Omega-z_t)^{\nu}+\sum_{|\nu|=l+2}R_{\nu}(t)\tag{4.15}$$

where

$$R_{\nu}(t)=\hat{T}(-z_t)\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^{w}\left[\zeta^{\nu}\cdot r_{\nu,t}(\zeta)\right]\hat{T}(z_t)$$

We now insert (4.15) into (4.12) and obtain the semiclassical estimate of order $\sqrt{\hbar}$ for the propagation of generalized coherent states, using in particular the Calderon–Vaillancourt estimate (Chap. 2). Let us introduce some notation: we consider only nonnegative time and define

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma(z,t)&:=\sup_{0\le s\le t}\left(1+|z_t|\right)\\\theta(z,t)&=\sup_{0\le s\le t}\left[\mathrm{tr}\left(F^*(s)F(s)\right)\right]^{1/2}\end{aligned}$$

where $F(t)$ is the symplectic matrix solution of (4.8). Let $M_1$ be any fixed integer not smaller than $(M+(m-2)_+)/2$. Let us define

$$\rho_l(z,t,\hbar)=\sigma(z,t)^{lM_1}\sum_{1\le j\le l}\left(\frac{|t|}{\hbar}\right)^{j}\left(\sqrt{\hbar}\theta(z,t)\right)^{2j+l}$$

(we recall that the constants $M, m, K_{H,T}$ were defined in Assumption (A.0)). Note that if (A.0) is satisfied with $m = 2$ and $M = 0$ ($H(t)$ is said to be subquadratic) then we have $M_1 = 0$. The result will be a generalization of (4.13) using as initial state a superposition of generalized coherent states (defined with higher order Hermite functions).

**Theorem 21** *Assume $H(x, \xi, t)$ and $z$ be such that* (A.0)–(A.2) *are satisfied. Then for any integers $l \geq 1$, $J \geq 1$ and any real number $\kappa > 0$ there exists a universal constant $\Gamma > 0$ such that for every family of complex numbers $\{c_\mu, \mu \in \mathbb{N}^n, |\mu| \leq J\}$ there exist $c_\nu(t, \hbar)$ for $\nu \in \mathbb{N}^n$, $|\nu| \leq 3(l-1) + J$, such that for $0 < \hbar + \sqrt{\hbar}\theta(t) < \kappa$ the following $L^2$-estimate holds*:

$$\left\| U(t,0)\left(\sum_{|j|=0}^{J} c_j \Phi_{z,0}^{(j)}\right) - \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar} \sum_{|\mu|=0}^{J+3(l-1)} c_\mu(t,\hbar)\Phi_\mu(t) \right\|$$

$$\leq \Gamma K_{H,T}\, \rho_l(z,\hbar,t) \left( \sum_{0\leq|\mu|\leq J} |c_\mu|^2 \right)^{1/2} \tag{4.16}$$

*Moreover the coefficients $c_\mu(t, \hbar)$ can be computed by the following formula*:

$$c_\mu(t,\hbar) - c_\mu$$

$$= \sum_{\substack{|\nu|\leq J \\ |\mu-\nu|\leq 3l-3}} \sum_{1\leq p\leq l-1} \left( \sum_{\substack{k_1+\cdots+k_p\leq 2p+l-1 \\ k_i\geq 3}} \hbar^{(k_1+\cdots+k_p)/2-p} a_{p,\mu,\nu}(t) \right) c_\nu \tag{4.17}$$

*where the entries $a_{p,\mu,\nu}(t)$ are given by the evolution of the classical system and are universal polynomials in $H^{(\gamma)}(z_t, t)$ for $|\gamma| \leq l + 2$ satisfying $a_{p,\mu,\nu}(0) = 0$.*

*Remark 17* (Comments on the error estimate and the Ehrenfest time) The error term seems accurate but not very explicit in our general setting. Let us assume for simplicity that $T = +\infty$ and that the classical trajectory $z_t$ is bounded and unstable with a Lyapunov exponent $\lambda > 0$. So there exists some constant $C > 0$ such that

$$\theta(z,t) \leq C\mathrm{e}^{\lambda t}, \quad \forall t \geq 0.$$

Then for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exist $C_\varepsilon$ and $h_\varepsilon > 0$ such that

$$0 < t \leq \frac{1-3\varepsilon}{6\lambda} \log\left(\frac{1}{\hbar}\right) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \rho_\ell(z,\hbar,t) \leq C_\varepsilon \hbar^{\varepsilon\ell} \tag{4.18}$$

for $0 < \hbar < h_\varepsilon$. So roughly speaking we can say that the semiclassical expansion (4.16) is still valid for times smaller than the Ehrenfest time $T_E := \frac{1}{6\lambda}\log(\frac{1}{\hbar})$. When the classical trajectory is stable ($\theta(z,t) \leq C(1 + |t|), \forall t \in \mathbb{R}$) then (4.16) is valid for much longer time interval: $0 \leq t \leq C_\varepsilon \hbar^{-\frac{1}{2}-\varepsilon}$.

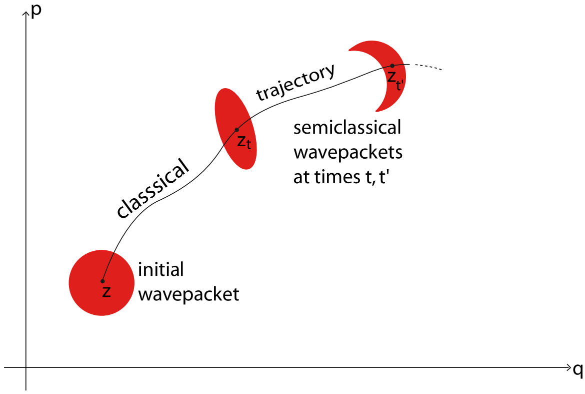



**Fig. 4.1** Time evolution of a coherent state

*Remark 18* Let us denote $\psi^{(l)}(t,x) = e^{i\delta_t/\hbar}\sum_{|\mu|=0}^{J+3(l-1)} c_\mu(t,\hbar)\Phi_\mu(t,x)$ and assume for simplicity that $\psi(0) = \varphi_z$ and denote $\psi_z(t) = U(t,0)\varphi_z$. $\psi^{(l)}(t,x)$ is clearly localized very close to the point $z_t$ of the classical path. Moreover the shape of $\psi^{(l)}(t,x)$ is close to a Gaussian shape with center at $z_t$ and with a complex covariance matrix $\Gamma_t$ depending on the stability matrix of the classical system. This shape evolves with time (see Fig. 4.1). It is exponentially small outside any ball $\{|x-q_t| \le \hbar^{\frac{1}{2}-\varepsilon}\}$, for any $\varepsilon$ and its $\hbar$-Fourier transform $\tilde{\psi}_z(t,\xi)$ exponentially small outside any ball $\{|\xi - p_t| \le \hbar^{\frac{1}{2}-\varepsilon}\}$. From (4.16) we get easily for the exact evolved state $\psi_z(t)$ the following probability estimates to be true outside of a narrow tube around the classical path:

$$\int_{|x-q_t|\ge\hbar^{\frac{1}{2}-\varepsilon}} dx\left|\psi_z(t,x)\right|^2 + \int_{|\xi-p_t|\ge\hbar^{\frac{1}{2}-\varepsilon}} d\xi\left|\tilde{\psi}_z(t,\xi)\right|^2 = O\left(\hbar^{+\infty}\right) \qquad (4.19)$$

*Proof* We only give here the strategy of the proof. For the technical details we refer the reader to [51] or to [164] for a different approach. The idea of the proof is to use repeatedly the Duhamel Formula to yield a Dyson series expansion of $U(t,0) - U_2(t,0)$ and to use (4.15) to calculate $\hat{H}(t) - \hat{H}_2(t)$. One thus has for every integer $p \ge 1$:

$$\begin{aligned} &U(t,0) - U_2(t,0)\\ &= \sum_{1\le j\le p} (i\hbar)^{-j}\int_0^t dt_1\int_{t_1}^t dt_2\cdots\int_{t_{j-1}}^t dt_{j-1}\, U_2(t,t_j)\big(\hat{H}(t_j) - \hat{H}_2(t_j)\big)\\ &\quad\times U_2(t_j,t_{j-1})\big(\hat{H}(t_{j-1}) - \hat{H}_2(t_{j-1})\big)\\ &\quad\times U_2(t_{j-1},t_{j-2})\cdots\big(\hat{H}(t_1) - \hat{H}_2(t_1)\big)U_2(t_1,0)\\ &\quad+ (i\hbar)^{-p-1}\int_0^t dt_1\int_{t_1}^t dt_2\cdots\int_{t_p}^t dt_{p+1}U(t,t_{p+1})\big(\hat{H}(t_{p+1}) - \hat{H}_2(t_{p+1})\big)\\ &\quad\times U_2(t_{p+1},t_p)\big(\hat{H}(t_p) - \hat{H}_2(t_p)\big)U_2(t_p,t_{p-1})\cdots\big(\hat{H}(t_1) - \hat{H}_2(t_1)\big)U_2(t_1,0) \end{aligned} \qquad (4.20)$$

We shall apply this formula with $p = l - 1$. It is convenient to introduce the following notation:

$$\Pi(t_1, \ldots, t_j; B_1, \ldots, B_j) = U_2(0, t_j) B_j U_2(t_j, t_{j-1}) \cdots U_2(t_2, t_1) B_1 U_2(t_1, 0)$$

where $B_k = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w b_k$ are quantum observables. By the chain rule we have

$$\Pi(t_1, \ldots, t_j; B_1, \ldots, B_j) = \prod_{1 \le k \le j} U_2(0, t_k) B_k U_2(t_k, 0)$$

where the product is ordered from the right to the left. Denoting

$$\hat{H}_k(t) := \sum_{|\nu|=k} \frac{H^{(\nu)}(z_t, t)}{\nu!} \cdot (\Omega - z_t)^\nu$$

we see that $\Pi(t_1, \ldots, t_p; \hat{H}_{k_1}, \ldots, \hat{H}_{k_p})$ is a homogeneous non-commutative polynomial in $\hat{Q}, \ \hat{P}$ of degree $k_1 + \cdots + k_p$ using Lemma 27. Therefore the last integral in (4.20) will yield the error term in the theorem. For the detailed proof we refer the reader to [51]. □

A more general result is obtained by taking as initial state a coherent state with arbitrary profile (see Chap. 1, Sect. 1.1.2): let $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to be the profile of a state. Define

$$(\Lambda_\hbar f)(x) = \hbar^{-n/4} f\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right) \tag{4.21}$$

Then for any $z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ we construct a coherent state centered at $z$ by

$$f_z := \hat{T}(z) \Lambda_\hbar f$$

One has the following result:

**Theorem 22** *There exists a family of differential operators with time-dependent coefficients,*

$$p_{kj}(x, D_x, t), \quad j \ge 1, \ k \ge 3$$

*depending only on the Hamiltonian along the classical path $z_s$, $0 \le s \le t$, $p_{jk}(x, \xi, t)$ being a polynomial in $(x, \xi)$ of degree $\le k$ such that for any real number $\kappa > 0$ and any integer $l \ge 1$ and any $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ there exists $\Gamma > 0$ such that the following $L^2$-norm estimate holds*:

$$\left\| U(t,0)\hat{T}(z)\Lambda_\hbar f - U_2(t,0)\Lambda_\hbar P_l(f,t,\hbar) \right\| \le \Gamma K_{H,t} \rho_l(z,t,\hbar) \tag{4.22}$$

*where $P_l(., t, \hbar)$ is the $(\hbar, t)$-dependent differential operator defined by*

$$P_l(f, t, \hbar) = f + \sum_{(k,j) \in I_l} \hbar^{k/2-j} p_{jk}(x, D_x, t) f$$

*with $I_l = \{(k, j) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} : \ 1 \le j \le l-1, \ k \ge 3j, \ 1 \le k - 2j \le l\}$.*

*Moreover the polynomials* $p_{kj}(x,\xi,t)$ *can be computed explicitly in terms of the Weyl symbol of the following differential operators defined above*

$$\int_0^t dt_l \int_0^{t_l} dt_{l-1} \cdots \int_0^{t_2} dt_1 \,\Pi(t_1,\ldots,t_l;k_1,\ldots,k_l)$$

*Remark 19* If we consider an $\hbar$-metaplectic transformation $V$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we consider the following object $\tilde{V} = \Lambda_\hbar^{-1} V \Lambda_\hbar$ (with no confusion with the notation for the transpose of a matrix). By definition since $V$ has a quadratic generator $\tilde{V}$ is $\hbar$-independent. So we find that $U_2(t,0)\Lambda_\hbar P_l(f,t,\hbar)$ is actually a coherent state centered at $z_t$ with profile $\tilde{D}(B_t)\tilde{R}(t)f$. More explicitly

$$U_2(t,0)\Lambda_\hbar P_l(f,t,\hbar) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar}\hat{T}(z_t)\Lambda_\hbar\Bigg(\sum_{0\le j\le l-1} \hbar^{j/2} p_j(x,D_x,t)\tilde{D}(B_t)\tilde{R}(t)f\Bigg)$$

where $p_j(x,D_x,t)$ are differential operators with polynomial coefficients depending smoothly on $t$ as long as the classical flow $z \to z_t$ exists.

### 4.1.3 Related Works and Other Results

In the physics literature the quantum propagation of coherent states has been considered by many authors, in particular by Heller [110, 111] and Littlejohn [138]. In the mathematical literature Gaussian wave packets have been introduced and studied in many respects, particularly under the name "Gaussian beams" (see [8, 159, 160]). Somewhat related to the subject of this Chapter is the study by Paul and Uribe [152, 153] of the $\hbar$-asymptotics of the inner products of the eigenfunctions of a Schrödinger type Hamiltonian with a coherent state and of "semiclassical trace formulas" (see Chap. 5). However, their approach differs from the one presented here by the use of Fourier-integral operators, which were introduced in connection with wave packets propagation in the classical paper by Cordoba and Fefferman [54].

## 4.2 Application to the Spreading of Quantum Wave Packets

In this section we give an application of the estimate of the preceding section to the spreading (in phase space) of a quantum wave packet which is, at time 0, localized in the neighborhood of a fixed point of the corresponding classical motion. Let $z = (q,p)$ be such a fixed point and take as an initial quantum state the coherent state $\varphi_z$. The quantum state at time $t$ is

$$\Psi(t) = U(t,0)\varphi_z$$

We have seen that we can approximate $\Psi(t)$ by a Gaussian wavepacket again localized around $z_t = z$ but with a spreading governed by the stability matrix $M_0$ of the corresponding classical motion (given by (4.7)). A way of measuring the spreading of wave packets around the point $z$ in phase space is to compute

$$S(t) = \left\langle \hat{T}(-z)\Psi(t), \sum_{j=1}^{n} \left(a_j^* a_j + a_j a_j^*\right) \hat{T}(-z)\Psi(t) \right\rangle$$
$$= \left\| \mathbf{a}\hat{T}(-z)\Psi(t) \right\|^2 + \left\| \mathbf{a}^* \hat{T}(-z)\Psi(t) \right\|^2 \tag{4.23}$$

The intuition behind this definition is the following. Let $\mathcal{W}_{z,t}$ be the Wigner function of the states $\Psi(t)$. According to the properties seen in Chap. 2, $(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathcal{W}_{z,t}(X)$ is a quasi-probability on the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}{}_X$ and we have

$$(2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int dX\, \mathcal{W}_{z,t}(X) A(X) = \langle \Psi(t), \hat{A}\Psi(t) \rangle.$$

Applying this relation to $\hat{A} = \hat{T}(z)(\mathbf{a}^* \cdot \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a}^*)\hat{\mathbf{T}}(-z)$ which has the Weyl-symbol $A(q,p) = |q - x|^2 + |p - \xi|^2$, we see that $S(t)$ is the variance of the quasi-probability $(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathcal{W}_{z,t}(X)$.

Let us notice that $S(t)$ is well defined if the estimate (4.13) holds in the Sobolev space $\Sigma(2)$ and with some more assumption on the quantum evolution $U(t,0)$ one can get the estimate (4.13) in $\Sigma_2$-norm as we shall see now. More refined estimates in other Sobolev norms will be given in the last section of this chapter.

Let us consider some symbol $g$ satisfying assumption (A.0) with $m = 0$, such that $\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(g)$ is invertible in the Schwartz space $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$. Let us assume that the following $L^2$-operator norm estimate holds:

$$\left\| \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w g U(t,0) \left[\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w g\right]^{-1} \right\| \le C_{t,g}$$

Then an estimate analogous to (4.13) holds true:

$$\left\| \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w g \left[ U(t,0)\hat{T}(z)\Lambda_\hbar f - U_2(t,0)\Lambda_\hbar P_l(f,t,\hbar) \right] \right\| \le C_{t,g} \Gamma K_{H,t,}\rho_l(z,t,\hbar)$$

Obviously $S(0) = n$ and we are interested in the difference

$$\Delta S(t) := S(t) - S(0)$$

Let us first calculate

$$T(t) := \left\langle \hat{T}(-z)\Phi(t), \sum_{j=1}^{n} \left(a_j^* a_j + a_j a_j^*\right) \hat{T}(-z)\Phi(t) \right\rangle$$

where $\Phi(t)$ is the approximant of $\Psi(t)$ given by

$$\Phi(t) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar} \hat{T}(z) U_0(t) \Psi_0$$

Then

$$T(t) = n + 2\left\| \mathbf{a} U_0(t)\Psi_0 \right\|^2 = n + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{tr}\left(Z_t^* Z_t\right)$$

where $Z_t$ is defined by (4.9) and we use Lemma 28. Therefore

$$T(t) - T(0) = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{tr}\big(Z_t^* Z_t\big)$$

We show now that this is the dominant behavior of $\Delta S(t)$ up to small correction terms that we can estimate.

Let us assume that the classical flow at phase-space point $z$ has finite Lyapunov exponents, with a greatest Lyapunov exponent $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ (for notions concerning the stability and Lyapunov exponents for ordinary differential equations we refer to [39]). Then by definition there exists some constant $C > 0$ such that $\|F(t)\| \le C\mathrm{e}^{\lambda t}$, $\forall t \ge 0$ where $C$ is independent of $t$. In what follows we denote by $C$ a generic constant independent of $t$, $\hbar$. Then under the above assumptions we get

$$\big\|\Psi(t) - \Phi(t)\big\|_{\Sigma(2)} \le C\sqrt{\hbar}t\mathrm{e}^{3\lambda t}, \quad \forall t \ge 0$$

We deduce the following result:

**Theorem 23** *Under the above assumptions we have the long time asymptotics* $\Delta S(t) = \Delta T(t) + O(\hbar^{\varepsilon})$ *if one of the two following conditions is fulfilled*:

(i) $\lambda \le 0$ (*"stable case"*) *and* $0 \le t \le \hbar^{\varepsilon - 1/2}$
(ii) $\lambda > 0$ (*"unstable case"*) *and* $\exists \varepsilon' > \varepsilon$ *such that*

$$0 \le t \le \big((1 - 2\varepsilon')/6\lambda\big)\log(1/\hbar)$$

In particular we have

**Corollary 12** *Let us assume that the Hamiltonian $H$ is time independent and that the greatest Lyapunov exponent is $\lambda > 0$. Then $S(t) - S(0)$ behaves like $\mathrm{e}^{2\lambda t}$ as $t \to +\infty$ and $\hbar \to 0$ as long as $t[\log(1/\hbar)]^{-1}$ stays small enough.*

(i) *More precisely there exists $C > 0$ such that*

$$\frac{\mathrm{e}^{2\lambda t}}{C} \le \Delta T(t) \le C\mathrm{e}^{2\lambda t}, \quad \forall t \ge 0$$

$$\Delta S(t) = \Delta T(t) + O\big(\hbar^{\varepsilon}\big), \quad \text{for } 0 \le t \le \frac{1 - 2\varepsilon'}{6\lambda}\log\frac{1}{\hbar} \text{ for some } \varepsilon' > \varepsilon$$

(ii) *In particular for $n = 1$ we have a more explicit result*:

$$\Delta S(t) = \frac{4b^2 + (a - c)^2}{2(b^2 - ac)}\sinh^2(\lambda t) + O\big(\hbar^{\varepsilon}\big) \tag{4.24}$$

*under the above condition for $t$ where $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ b & c \end{smallmatrix}\right) = M_0$ is the Hessian matrix of $H$ at $z$.*

*Proof* We get (i) using that the matrix $JM_0$ has at least one eigenvalue with real part $\lambda$. To prove (4.24) we compute explicitly the exponential of the matrix $tJM_0$ which gives $F(t)$. Its eigenvalues are $\lambda = \sqrt{b^2 - ac}$ and $1/\lambda$. So we get the formula

$$\exp(tJM_0) = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh(\lambda t) + \frac{b}{\lambda}\sinh(\lambda t) & \frac{c}{\lambda}\sinh(\lambda t) \\ -\frac{a}{\lambda}\sinh(\lambda t) & \cosh(\lambda t) - \frac{b}{\lambda}\sinh(\lambda t) \end{pmatrix}$$

hence we have

$$\Delta T(t) = \operatorname{tr}\bigl(Z_t^* Z_t\bigr) = \frac{4b^2 + (a-c)^2}{2(b^2 - ac)} \sinh^2(\lambda t). \qquad \square$$

## 4.3 Evolution of Coherent States and Bargmann Transform

In Sect. 4.1 we have studied the evolution of coherent states using the generators of coherent states and the Duhamel formula. Here we present a different approach following [164], working essentially on the Fourier–Bargmann side (see Chap. 1). This approach is useful to get estimates in several norms of Banach spaces of functions and also to get analytic type estimates.

We keep the notations of Sect. 4.1. We revisit now the algebraic computations of this section in a different presentation.

Recall that we want to solve the Cauchy problem

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi(t)}{\partial t} = \hat{H}(t)\psi(t), \quad \psi(0) = \varphi_z, \tag{4.25}$$

where $\varphi_z$ is a coherent state localized at a point $z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. Our first step is to transform this problem with suitable unitary transformations such that the singular perturbation problem in $\hbar$ becomes a regular perturbation problem.

### 4.3.1 Formal Computations

We rescale the evolved state $\psi_z(t)$ by defining $f_t$ such that $\psi_z(t) = \hat{T}(z_t)\Lambda_\hbar f_t$. Then $f_t$ satisfies the following equation:

$$i\hbar\partial_t f_t = \Lambda_\hbar^{-1}\hat{T}(z_t)^{-1}\bigl(\hat{H}(t)\hat{T}(z_t) - i\hbar\partial_t\hat{T}(z_t)\bigr)\Lambda_\hbar f_t \tag{4.26}$$

with the initial condition $f_{t=0} = g$ where $g(x) = \pi^{-n/4}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}|x|^2}$. We easily get the formula

$$\Lambda_\hbar^{-1}\hat{T}(z_t)^{-1}\hat{H}(t)\hat{T}(z_t)\Lambda_\hbar = \mathrm{Op}_1^w H\bigl(t, \sqrt{\hbar}x + q_t, \sqrt{\hbar}\xi + p_t\bigr) \tag{4.27}$$

Using the Taylor formula we get the formal expansion

$$\begin{aligned} H\bigl(t, \sqrt{\hbar}x + q_t, \sqrt{\hbar}\xi + p_t\bigr) &= H(t, z_t) + \sqrt{\hbar}\partial_q H(t, z_t)x + \sqrt{\hbar}\partial_p H(t, z_t)\xi \\ &\quad + \hbar K_2(t; x, \xi) + \hbar \sum_{j\ge 3} \hbar^{j/2-1} K_j(t; x, \xi) \end{aligned} \tag{4.28}$$

where $K_j(t)$ is the homogeneous Taylor polynomial of degree $j$ in $X = (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$.

$$K_j(t; X) = \sum_{|\gamma|=j} \frac{1}{\gamma!} \partial_X^\gamma H(t; z_t) X^\gamma$$

We shall use the following notation for the remainder term of order $k \geq 1$:

$$R_k(t; X) = \left( H\big(t, z_t + \sqrt{\hbar} X\big) - \sum_{j<k} \hbar^{j/2} K_j(t; X) \right) \tag{4.29}$$

It is clearly a term of order $\hbar^{k/2}$ from the Taylor formula. By a straightforward computation, the new function $f_t{}^{\#} = \exp(-i \frac{\delta_t}{\hbar}) f_t$ satisfies the following equation:

$$i \partial_t f_t^{\#} = \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[K_2(t)\big] f^{\#} + \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[R_z^{(3)}(t)\big] f^{\#}, \quad f_{t=t_0}^{\#} = g \tag{4.30}$$

In the r.h.s. of (4.30) the second term is a (formal) perturbation series in $\sqrt{\hbar}$. We change again the unknown function $f_t^{\#}$ by $b(t)g$ such that $f_t^{\#} = \hat{R}[F_t] b(t) g$. Let us recall that the metaplectic transformation $\hat{R}[F_t]$ is the quantum propagator associated with the Hamiltonian $K_2(t)$ (see Sect. 4.1). The new unknown function $b(t, x)$ satisfies the following differential equation which is now a regular perturbation differential equation in the small parameter $\hbar$:

$$\begin{aligned} i \partial_t b(t, x) g(x) &= \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[R_z^{(3)}\big(t, F_t(x, \xi)\big)\big]\big(b(t) g\big)(x) \\ b(0, x) &= 1 \end{aligned} \tag{4.31}$$

Now we can solve (4.31) semiclassically by the ansatz

$$b(t, x) = \sum_{j \geq 0} \hbar^{j/2} b_j(t, x)$$

Let us identify powers of $\hbar^{1/2}$, denoting

$$K_j^{\#}(t, X) = K_j\big(t, F_t(X)\big), \quad X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

we thus get that the $b_j(t, x)$ are uniquely defined by the following induction formula for $j \geq 1$, starting with $b_0(t, x) \equiv 1$,

$$\partial_t b_j(t, x) g(x) = \sum_{k+\ell=j+2,\ \ell \geq 3} \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[K_\ell^{\#}(t)\big]\big(b_k(t, \cdot) g\big)(x) \tag{4.32}$$

$$b_j(0, x) = 0 \tag{4.33}$$

Let us remark that $\mathrm{Op}_1^w[K_\ell^{\#}(t)]$ is a differential operator with polynomial symbols of degree $\ell$ in $(x, \xi)$. So it is not difficult to see, by induction on $j$, that $b_j(t)$ is a polynomial of degree $\leq 3j$ in variable $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ with complex time-dependent coefficient depending on the center $z$ of the Gaussian in the phase space. Moreover, coming back to the Schrödinger equation, using our construction of the $b_j(t,x)$, we easily get for every $N \geq 0$,

$$i\hbar\partial_t \psi_z^{(N)} = \hat{H}(t)\psi_z^{(N)} + R_z^{(N)}(t) \tag{4.34}$$

where

$$\psi_z^{(N)}(t) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar}\hat{T}(z_t)\Lambda_\hbar \hat{R}[F_t]\Big(\sum_{0\leq j\leq N} \hbar^{j/2} b_j(t) g\Big) \tag{4.35}$$

and

$$R_z^N(t,x) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar}\left(\hbar^{j/2} \sum_{\substack{j+k=N+3\\ k\geq 3}} \hat{T}(z_t)\Lambda_\hbar \hat{R}[F_t]\mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[R_k(t)\circ F_t\big]\big(b_j(t)g\big)\right) \tag{4.36}$$

Thus, we have an algorithm to build approximate solutions $\psi_z^{(N)}(t,x)$ of the Schrödinger equation (4.25) modulo the error term $R_z^{(N)}(t,x)$. Of course the hard mathematical work is to estimate accurately this error term.

Remark that all these computations use only existence of the classical trajectory.

We need some technical estimates concerning the Fourier–Bargmann transform to have a bridge between the Bargmann side and the usual configuration space. We refer to [164] for the proofs of the following subsection.

### *4.3.2 Weighted Estimates and Fourier–Bargmann Transform*

We restrict here our study to properties we need later. For other interesting properties of the Fourier–Bargmann transform the reader can see the book [141].

Recall that in Chap. 1, Sect. 1.2.3, the Fourier–Bargmann transform $\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}$ (here $\hbar = 1$) was defined as follows

$$\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}} v(X) =: v^\sharp(z) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2}\langle \varphi_z, v\rangle, \quad X = (q,p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

Let us begin with the following formulas, easy to prove by integration by parts. With the notations $X = (q,p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $u \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, we have

$$\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}(xu)(X) = i\left(\partial_p - \frac{i}{2}q\right)\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}(u)(X) \tag{4.37}$$

$$\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}(\partial_x u)(X) = \left(\frac{3}{2i}p - \partial_q\right)\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}(u)(X) \tag{4.38}$$

$$= \left(i(p-\partial_p) + \frac{q}{2}\right)\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}(u)(X) \tag{4.39}$$

Recall that $\mathrm{e}^{(p^2+q^2)/4}\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}(u)(q,p)$ is holomorphic in the complex variable $q - ip$ (see Chap. 1).

So, let us introduce the weighted Sobolev spaces, denoted $\mathcal{K}_m(n)$, $m \in \mathbb{N}$. $u \in \mathcal{K}_m(n)$ means that $u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and $x^\alpha \partial_x^\beta u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ for every multiindex $\alpha$, $\beta$ such that $|\alpha + \beta| \leq m$, with its natural norm. Then we have easily

**Proposition 40** *The Fourier–Bargmann transform is a linear continuous function from $\mathcal{K}_m(n)$ into $\mathcal{K}_m(2n)$ for every $m \in \mathbb{N}$.*

Now we shall give an estimate in exponential weighted Lebesgue spaces.

**Proposition 41** *For every $p \in [1, +\infty]$, for every $a \geq 0$ and every $b > a\sqrt{2}$ there exists $C > 0$ such that for all $u \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we have*

$$\left\| \mathrm{e}^{a|x|} u(x) \right\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^n_x)} \leq C \left\| \mathrm{e}^{b|X|} \mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}} u(X) \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n}_X)} \tag{4.40}$$

*More generally, for every $a \geq 0$ and every $b > a\frac{\sqrt{2}}{|S|}$ there exists $C > 0$ such that for all $u \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and all $S \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n)$ we have*

$$\left\| \mathrm{e}^{a|x|} \left[ \hat{R}(S) u \right](x) \right\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^n_x)} \leq C \left\| \mathrm{e}^{b|X|} \mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}} u(X) \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n}_X)} \tag{4.41}$$

We need to control the norms of Hermite functions (see Chap. 1) in some weighted Lebesgue spaces. Let $\mu$ be a $C^\infty$-smooth and positive function on $\mathbb{R}^m$ such that

$$\lim_{|x| \to +\infty} \mu(x) = +\infty \tag{4.42}$$

$$\left| \partial^\gamma \mu(x) \right| \leq \theta |x|^2, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^m, |x| \geq R_\gamma \tag{4.43}$$

for some $R_\gamma > 0$ and $\theta < 1$.

**Lemma 30** *For every real $p \in [1, +\infty]$, for every $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $C > 0$ such that for every $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^m$ we have*

$$\left\| \mathrm{e}^{\mu(x)} x^\alpha \partial_x^\beta \left( \mathrm{e}^{-|x|^2} \right) \right\|_{\ell,p} \leq C^{|\alpha+\beta|+1} \Gamma\left( \frac{|\alpha + \beta|}{2} \right) \tag{4.44}$$

*where $\| \bullet \|_{\ell,p}$ is the norm on the Sobolev space*[1] $W^{\ell,p}$, $\Gamma$ *is the Euler Gamma function.*[2]

*More generally, for every real $p \in [1, +\infty]$, for every $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $C > 0$ such that*

$$\begin{aligned} &\left\| \mathrm{e}^{\mu(\Im(\Gamma)^{-1/2} x)} x^\alpha \partial^\beta \left( \mathrm{e}^{-|x|^2} \right) \right\|_{\ell,p} \\ &\quad \leq C^{|\alpha+\beta|+1} \left( \left| \Im(\Gamma)^{1/2} \right| + \left| \Im(\Gamma)^{-1/2} \right| \Gamma\left( \frac{|\alpha + \beta|}{2} \right) \right) \end{aligned} \tag{4.45}$$

---

[1] Recall that $u \in W^{\ell,p}$ means that $\partial_x^\alpha u \in L^p$ for every $|\alpha| \leq \ell$.

[2] The Euler classical Gamma function $\Gamma$ must be not confused with the covariance matrix $\Gamma_t$.

### 4.3.3 Large Time Estimates and Fourier–Bargmann Analysis

In this section we try to control the semi-classical error term $R_z^{(N)}(t,x)$, for large time, in the Fourier–Bargmann representation. This is also a preparation to control the remainder of order $N$ in $\hbar$, $N$ for analytic Hamiltonians considered in the following subsection.

Let us introduce the Fourier–Bargmann transform of $b_j(t)g$,

$$B_j(t,X) = \mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}\big[b_j(t)g\big](X) = \langle b_j(t)g, g_X\rangle, \quad \text{for } X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}.$$

The induction equation (4.32) becomes, for $j \geq 1$,

$$\partial_t B_j(t,X) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \left( \sum_{\substack{k+\ell=j+2 \\ \ell\geq 3}} \langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[K_\ell^\#(t)\big] g_{X'}, g_X\rangle \right) B_k\big(t,X'\big)\, dX' \tag{4.46}$$

with initial condition $B_j(0,X)=0$ for $j\geq 1$ and with $B_0(t,X)=\exp(-\frac{|X|^2}{4})$.

We have seen in Sect. 4.1 that we have

$$\langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[K_\ell^\sharp(t)\big] g_{X'}, g_X\rangle = (2\pi)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} K_\ell^\sharp(t,Y)\mathcal{W}_{X,X'}(Y)\, dY, \tag{4.47}$$

where $\mathcal{W}_{X,X'}$ is the Wigner function of the pair $(g_{X'}, g_X)$. Let us now compute the remainder term in the Fourier–Bargmann representation. Using that $\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}$ is an isometry we get

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}\big[\mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[R_\ell(t)\circ F_{t,t_0}\big]\big(b_j(t)g\big)\big](X) \\ &\quad = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} B_j\big(t,X'\big)\langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[R_\ell(t)\circ F_{t,t_0}\big] g_{X'}, g_X\rangle\, dX' \end{aligned} \tag{4.48}$$

where $R_\ell(t)$ is given by the Taylor integral formula (4.49):

$$R_\ell(t,X) = \frac{\hbar^{\ell/2-1}}{k!}\sum_{|\gamma|=\ell}\int_0^1 \partial_X^\gamma H\big(t, z_t+\theta\sqrt{\hbar}X\big)X^\gamma(1-\theta)^{\ell-1}d\theta \tag{4.49}$$

We shall use (4.48) to estimate the remainder term $R_z^{(N)}$, using estimates (4.40) and (4.41).

Now we shall consider long time estimates for $B_j(t,X)$.

**Lemma 31** *For every $j\geq 0$, every $s\in\mathbb{N}$, $r\geq 1$, there exists $C(j,\alpha,\beta)$ such that for $|t|\leq T$, we have*

$$\big\| \mathrm{e}^{\mu(X/4)} X^\alpha \partial_X^\beta B_j(t,X)\big\|_{s,r} \leq C(j,\alpha,\beta)\sigma(t,z)^{NM_1}|F|_T^{3j}(1+T)^j \tag{4.50}$$

*where* $|F|_T = \sup_{|t|\le T} |F_t|$. $M_1$ *and* $\sigma(t,z)$ *were defined in Sect.* 4.1, $M_1$ *depends on assumption* (A.0) *on* $H(X,t)$. $\|\bullet\|_{s,r}$ *is the norm in the Sobolev space* $W^{s,r}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$[3]

*Proof* The main idea of the proof is as follows (see [164] for details). We proceed by induction on $j$. For $j=0$ (4.50) results from (4.44).

Let us assume inequality proved up to $j-1$. We have the induction formula ($j\ge 1$)

$$\partial_t B_j(t,X) = \sum_{\substack{k+\ell=j+2\\ \ell\ge 3}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} K_\ell\big(t,X,X'\big) B_k\big(t,X'\big)\,dX' \tag{4.51}$$

where

$$K_\ell\big(t,X,X'\big) = \sum_{|\gamma|=\ell} \frac{1}{\gamma!}\partial_X^\gamma H(t,z_t)\big\langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w(F_tY)^\gamma g_{X'}, g_X\big\rangle, \quad \text{and} \tag{4.52}$$

$$\big\langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w(F_tY)^\gamma g_{X'}, g_X\big\rangle = 2^{2n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} (F_tY)^\gamma \mathcal{W}_{X,X'}(Y)\,dY \tag{4.53}$$

By a Fourier transform computation on Gaussian functions, we get the following more explicit expression:

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w(F_tY)^\gamma g_{X'}, g_X\big\rangle &= \sum_{\beta\le\gamma} C_\beta^\gamma 2^{-|\beta|}\left(F_t\left(\frac{X+X'}{2}\right)\right)^{\gamma-\beta}\\ &\quad\times H_\beta\left(F_t\left(\frac{J(X-X')}{2}\right)\right)\mathrm{e}^{-|X-X'|^2/4}\mathrm{e}^{-(i/2)\sigma(X',X)}\end{aligned} \tag{4.54}$$

Estimate (4.50) follows easily. □

Now we have to estimate the remainder term. Let us compute the Fourier–Bargmann transform of the error term:

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde R_z^{(N+1)}(t,X) &= \mathcal{F}^{\mathcal{B}}\left[\hbar^{j/2}\sum_{\substack{j+k=N+3\\ k\ge 3}} \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[R_k(t)\circ F_t\big]\big(b_j(t)g\big)\right](X)\\ &= \sum_{\substack{j+k=N+3\\ k\ge 3}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} B_j\big(t,X'\big)\big\langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[R_k(t)\circ F_t\big]g_{X'}, g_X\big\rangle\,dX'\end{aligned}$$

Using estimates on the $B_j$ we get the following estimate for the error term:

[3]The Sobolev norm is defined here as $\|f\|_{s,r} = (\sum_{|\alpha|\le s}\int dx\,|f(x)|^r)^{1/r}$ for $s\in\mathbb{N}$, $r\ge 1$.

**Lemma 32** *For every $\kappa > 0$, for every $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, $s \ge 0$, $r \ge 1$, there exists $C_{N,\ell}$ such that for all $T$ and $t$, $|t| \le T$, we have*

$$\left\| X^\alpha \partial_X^\beta \tilde{R}_z^{(N+1)}(t,X) \right\|_{s,r} \le C_{N,\ell} M_{N,\ell}(T,z) |F|_T^{3N+3} (1+T)^{N+1} \hbar^{\frac{N+3}{2}} \tag{4.55}$$

*for $\sqrt{\hbar}|F|_T \le \kappa$, $|\alpha| + |\beta| \le \ell$, where $M_{N,\ell}(T,z)$ is a continuous function of* $\sup_{\substack{|t-t_0|\le T\\ 3\le|\gamma|\le N_\ell}} |\partial_X^\gamma H(t,z_t)|$.

*Proof* As above for estimation of the $B_j(t,X)$, let us consider the integral kernels

$$N_k(t,X,X') = \langle \mathrm{Op}_1^w [R_k(t) \circ F_t] g_{X'}, g_X \rangle \tag{4.56}$$

We have

$$N_k(t,X,X') = \hbar^{(k+1)/2} \sum_{|\gamma|=k+1} \frac{1}{k!} \int_0^1 (1-\theta)^k \\ \times \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \partial_Y^\gamma H(t, z_t + \theta\sqrt{\hbar} F_t Y)(F_t Y)^\gamma \cdot \mathcal{W}_{X',X}(Y)\, dY \right) d\theta \tag{4.57}$$

Let us denote by $N_{k,t}$ the operator with the kernel $N_k(t,X,X')$. Using the change of variable $Z = Y - \frac{X+X'}{2}$ and integrations by parts in $X'$ as above, we can estimate $N_{k,t}[B_j(t,\bullet)](X)$. Then using the estimates on the $B_j(t,X)$ we get estimate (4.55). □

Now, it is not difficult to convert these results in the configuration space, using (4.40). Let us define $\lambda_{\hbar,t}(x) = (\frac{|x-q_t|^2+1}{\hbar|F_t|^2})^{1/2}$.

**Theorem 24** *Let us assume that* (A.0) *is satisfied. Then we have for the remainder term,*

$$R_z^{(N)}(t,x) = i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi_z^{(N)}(t,x) - \hat{H}(t)\psi_z^{(N)}(t,x)$$

*the following estimate. For every $\kappa > 0$, for every $\ell, M \in \mathbb{N}$, $r \ge 1$ there exist $C_{N,M,\ell}$ and $N_\ell$ such that for all $T$ and $t$, $|t| \le T$, we have*

$$\left\| \lambda_{\hbar,t}^M R_z^{(N)}(t) \right\|_{\ell,r} \le C_{N,\ell} \hbar^{(N+3-\ell)/2} \sigma(z,t)^{NM_1} |F|_T^{3N+3} (1+T)^{N+1} \tag{4.58}$$

*for every $\hbar \in ]0,1]$, $\sqrt{\hbar}|F_t| \le \kappa$.*

*Moreover, if $\hat{H}(t)$ admits a unitary propagator* (*see condition* (A.2)), *then under the same conditions as above, we have*

$$\left\| U_t \varphi_z - \psi_z^{(N)}(t) \right\|_2 \le C_{N,\ell} \sigma(z,t)^{NM_1} |F|_T^{3N+3} (1+T)^{N+2} \hbar^{(N+1)/2} \tag{4.59}$$

*Proof* Using the inverse Fourier–Bargmann transform, we have

$$R_z^{(N)}(t,x) = \hat{T}(z_t)\Lambda_\hbar\left(\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \big(\hat{R}[F_t]\varphi_X\big)(x)\tilde{R}_z^{(N)}(t,X)\,dX\right)$$

Let us remark that using estimates on the $b_j(t,x)$, we can assume that $N$ is arbitrary large. We can apply previous results on the Fourier–Bargmann estimates to get (4.58). The second part is a consequence of the first part and of the Duhamel principle. □

We see that the estimate (4.58) is much more accurate in norm than estimate (4.59), we have lost much information applying the propagator $U_t$. The reason is that in general we only know that the propagator is bounded on $L^2$ and no more. Sometimes it is possible to improve (4.59) if we know that $U_t$ is bounded on some weighted Sobolev spaces. Let us give here the following example.

Let $\hat{H} = -\hbar^2\triangle + V(x)$. Assume that $V$ satisfies:

$$V \in C^\infty\big(\mathbb{R}^n\big), \quad \big|\partial^\alpha V(x)\big| \le C_\alpha V(x),$$
$$V \ge 1, \quad \big|V(x) - V(y)\big| \le C\big(1 + |x-y|\big)^M$$

for some $M \in \mathbb{R}$. So the time-dependent Schrödinger equation for $\hat{H}$ has a unitary propagator $U_t = \mathrm{e}^{it\hbar^{-1}\hat{H}}$. The domain of $\hat{H}^m$ can be determined for every $m \in \mathbb{N}$ (see for example [163]).

$$D\big(\hat{H}^m\big) = \big\{u \in W^{2m,2}\big(\mathbb{R}^n\big), V^m u \in L^2\big(\mathbb{R}^n\big)\big\}$$

It is an Hilbert space with the norm defined by

$$\|u\|_{2m,V}^2 = \sum_{|\alpha|\le 2m} \big\|\hbar^{|\alpha|}\partial^\alpha u\big\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)}^2 + \|Vu\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)}^2$$

Using the Sobolev theorem we get the supremum norm estimate for the error:

$$\sup_{x\in\mathbb{R}^n} \big|(U_t\varphi_z)(x) - \psi_z^{(N)}(t,x)\big| \le C_{N,\ell}\sigma(z,t)^{NM_1}|F|_T^{3N+3}(1+T)^{N+2}\hbar^{(N-n/2)/2} \tag{4.60}$$

### 4.3.4 *Exponentially Small Estimates*

Up to now the order $N$ of the semi-classical approximations was fixed, even arbitrary large, but the error term was not controlled for $N$ large. Here we shall give estimates with a control for large $N$. The method is the same as on the previous section, using systematically the Fourier–Bargmann transform. The proof are not given here, we refer to [164] for more details. For a different approach see [101, 102]. To get exponentially small estimates for asymptotic expansions in small $\hbar$ it is quite natural to assume that the classical Hamiltonian $H(t, X)$ is analytic in $X$, where $X = (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$. This problem was studied in a different context in [87] concerning Borel summability for semi-classical expansions for bosons systems.

So, in what follows we introduce suitable assumptions on $H(t, X)$. As before we assume that $H(t, X)$ is continuous in time $t$ and $C^\infty$ in $X$ and that the quantum and classical dynamics are well defined.

Let us define a complex neighborhood of $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ in $\mathbb{C}^{2n}$,

$$\Omega_\rho = \left\{X \in \mathbb{C}^{2n}, |\Im X| < \rho\right\} \tag{4.61}$$

where $\Im X = (\Im X_1, \dots, \Im X_{2n})$ and $|\cdot|$ is the Euclidean norm in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ or the Hermitian norm in $\mathbb{C}^{2n}$. Our main assumptions are the following.

($\mathbf{A}_\omega$) (Analytic assumption) There exists $\rho > 0$, $T \in ]0, +\infty]$, $C > 0$, $\nu \geq 0$, such that $H(t)$ is holomorphic in $\Omega_\rho$ and for $t \in I_T$, $X \in \Omega_\rho$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left|H(t, X)\right| &\leq C\mathrm{e}^{\nu|X|}, \quad \text{and} \\ \left|\partial_X^\gamma H(t, z_t + Y)\right| &\leq R^\gamma \gamma! \mathrm{e}^{\nu|Y|}, \quad \forall t \in \mathbb{R},\ Y \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} \end{aligned} \tag{4.62}$$

for some $R > 0$ and all $\gamma$, $|\gamma| \geq 3$.

We begin by giving the results on the Fourier–Bargmann side. It is the main step and gives accurate estimates for the propagation of Gaussian coherent states in the phase space. We have seen that it is not difficult to transfer these estimates in the configuration space to get approximations of the solution of the Schrödinger equation, by applying the inverse Fourier–Bargmann transform as we did in the $C^\infty$ case.

The main results are stated in the following theorem.

**Theorem 25** *Let us assume that conditions* ($\mathrm{A}_0$) *and* ($\mathrm{A}_\omega$) *are satisfied. Then the following uniform estimates hold.*

$$\begin{aligned} &\left\|X^\alpha \partial_X^\beta B_j(t, X)\right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2d}, \mathrm{e}^{\lambda|X|}dX)} \\ &\quad \leq C_{\lambda,T}^{3j+1+|\alpha|+|\beta|} |F|_T^{3j} \left(1 + |t - t_0|\right)^j j^{-j} \left(3j + |\alpha| + |\beta|\right)^{\frac{3j+|\alpha|+|\beta|}{2}} \end{aligned} \tag{4.63}$$

*where $C_\lambda > 0$ depends only on $\lambda \geq 0$ and is independent on $j \in \mathbb{N}$, $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^{2n}$ and $|t| \leq T$.*

*Concerning the remainder term estimate we have*

$$\begin{aligned} &\left\|X^\alpha \partial_X^\beta \tilde{R}_z^{(N)}(t, X)\right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{2n}, \mathrm{e}^{\lambda|X|}dX)} \\ &\quad \leq \hbar^{(N+3)/2} (1 + |t|)^{N+1} |F|_T^{3N+3} \left(C'_\lambda\right)^{3N+3+|\alpha|+|\beta|} (N+1)^{-N-1} \\ &\qquad \times \left(3N + 3 + |\alpha| + |\beta|\right)^{\frac{3N+3+|\alpha|+|\beta|}{2}} \end{aligned} \tag{4.64}$$

*where $\lambda < \rho$, $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}^{2n}$, $N \geq 1$, $\nu\sqrt{\hbar}|F|_T \leq 2(\rho - \lambda)$, $C'_\lambda$ depends on $\lambda$ and is independent on the other parameters* $(\hbar, T, N, \alpha, \beta)$.

From Theorem 25 we easily get weighted estimates for approximate solutions and remainder term for the time-dependent Schrödinger equation. Let us recall the Sobolev norms in the Sobolev space $W^{m,r}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

$$\|u\|_{r,m,\hbar} = \left( \sum_{|\alpha| \le m} \hbar^{|\alpha|/2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left| \partial_x^\alpha u(x) \right|^r dx \right)^{1/r}$$

and a function $\mu \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ such that $\mu(x) = |x|$ for $|x| \ge 1$.

**Proposition 42** *For every $m \in \mathbb{N}$, $r \in [1, +\infty]$, $\lambda > 0$ and $\varepsilon \le \min\{1, \frac{\lambda}{|F|_T}\}$, there exists $C_{r,m,\lambda,\varepsilon} > 0$ such that for every $j \ge 0$ and every $t \in I_T$ we have*

$$\left\| \hat{R}[F_t] b_j(t) g \mathrm{e}^{\varepsilon\mu} \right\|_{r,m,1} \le (C_{r,m,\lambda,\varepsilon})^{j+1} \big(1 + |F|_T\big)^{3j+2d} j^{j/2} \big(1 + |t|\big)^j \tag{4.65}$$

**Theorem 26** *With the above notations and under the assumptions of Theorem 25, $\psi_z^{(N)}(t,x)$ satisfies the Schrödinger equation*

$$i\hbar\partial_t \psi_z^{(N)}(t,x) = \hat{H}(t)\psi_z^{(N)}(t,x) + R_z^{(N)}(t,x), \quad \text{where} \tag{4.66}$$

$$\psi_z^{(N)}(t,x) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_t/\hbar} \hat{T}(z_t) \Lambda_\hbar \hat{R}[F_t] \Bigg( \sum_{0 \le j \le N} \hbar^{j/2} b_j(t) g \Bigg) \tag{4.67}$$

*is estimated in Proposition 42 and the remainder term is controlled with the following weighted estimates*:

$$\begin{aligned} &\left\| R_z^{(N)}(t) \mathrm{e}^{\varepsilon\mu_{\hbar,t}} \right\|_{r,m,\hbar} \\ &\quad \le C^{N+1} (N+1)^{(N+1)/2} \big(\sqrt{\hbar}|F|_T^3\big)^{N+3} \hbar^{-m'} \big(1 + |t|\big)^{N+1} \end{aligned} \tag{4.68}$$

*where $C$ depends only on $m, r, \varepsilon$ and not on $N \ge 0$, $|t| \le T$ and $\hbar > 0$, with the condition $\sqrt{\hbar}|F|_T \le \kappa$. The exponential weight is defined by $\mu_{\hbar,t}(x) = \mu(\frac{x - q_t}{\sqrt{\hbar}})$. $m' \ge 0$ and $h_\varepsilon < \min\{1, \frac{\rho}{|F|_T}\}$.*

*Remark 20* We see that the order in $j$ of the coefficient $b_j(t)g$ in the asymptotic expansion in $\hbar^{j/2}$ is $C^j j^{j/2}$ or using Stirling formula $C'^j \Gamma(j)^{1/2}$ for some constant $C > 0, C' > 0$. So we have found that the renormalized evolved state $b(t,x)g(x)$ obtained from $\psi_z(t,x)$ has a Gevrey-2 asymptotic expansion in $\hbar^{1/2}$. Recall that a formal complex series $\sum_{j \ge 0} c_j \kappa^j$ is a Gevrey series of index $\mu > 0$ if there exist constants $C_0 > 0, C > 0$ such that

$$|c_j| \le C_0 C^j \Gamma(j)^{1/\mu}, \quad \forall j \ge 1.$$

Any holomorphic function $f(\kappa)$ in a complex neighborhood of 0 has a convergent Gevrey-1 Taylor series. But in many physical examples we have a non-convergent Gevrey asymptotic series $f[\kappa]$ for a function $f$ holomorphic in some sector with apex 0. Under some technical conditions on $f$ it is possible to define the Borel sum

$B_f(\tau)$ for the formal power series $f[\kappa]$ and to recover $f(\kappa)$ from its Borel sum performing a Laplace transform on $B_f(\tau)$ (see [180] for details and bibliography).

When it is not possible to apply Borel summability, there exists a well known method to minimize the error between $\sum_{1\le j\le N} c_j\kappa^j$ and $f(\kappa)$. It is called the astronomers method and consists of stopping the expansion after the smallest term of the series (it is also called "the least term truncation method" for a series). Concerning the semiclassical expansion found for $b(t,x)g(x)$ it is not clear that it is Borel summable or summable in some weaker sense. A sufficient condition for that would be that the propagator $U_t$ can be extended holomorphically in $\kappa := \hbar^{1/2}$ in a (small) sector $\{re^{i\theta},\ 0<r<r_0,\ |\theta|<\varepsilon\}$. In a different context (quantum field theory for bosons), Borel summability was proved in [87].

Using the astronomers method Theorem 26 we easily get the following consequences.

**Corollary 13** (Finite Time, Large $N$) *Let us assume here that $T<+\infty$. There exist $c>0$, $\hbar_0>0$, $a>0$, $\varepsilon>0$, such that if we choose $N_\hbar=[\frac{a}{\hbar}]-1$ we have*

$$\left\| R_z^{(N_\hbar)}(t)\mathrm{e}^{\varepsilon\mu_{\hbar,t}} \right\|_{L^2} \le \exp\left(-\frac{c}{\hbar}\right) \tag{4.69}$$

*for every $|t|\le T$, $\hbar\in ]0,\hbar_0]$. Moreover, we have*

$$\left\| \psi_z^{(N_\hbar)}(t) - U(t,t_0)\varphi_z \right\|_{L^2} \le \exp\left(-\frac{c}{\hbar}\right) \tag{4.70}$$

Also we have the following.

**Corollary 14** (Large Time, Large $N$) *Let us assume that $T=+\infty$ and there exist $\gamma\ge 0$, $\delta\ge 0$, $C_1\ge 0$, such that $|F_{t,t_0}|\le \exp(\gamma|t|)$, $|z_t|\le\exp(\delta|t|)$ for every $\theta\in ]0,1[$ there exists $a_\theta>0$ such that if we choose $N_{\hbar,\theta}=[\frac{a_\theta}{\hbar^\theta}]-1$ there exist $c_\theta>0$, $\eta_\theta>0$ such that*

$$\left\| \hbar^{(N_{\hbar,\theta}+2)/2} R_z^{(N_{\hbar,\theta}+1)}(t)\mathrm{e}^{\varepsilon\mu_{\hbar,t}} \right\|_{L^2} \le \exp\left(-\frac{c_\theta}{\hbar^\theta}\right) \tag{4.71}$$

*for every $|t|\le \frac{1-\theta}{6\gamma}\log(\hbar^{-1})$, $\forall\hbar\in\hbar\in ]0,\eta_\theta]$. Moreover we have*

$$\left\| \psi_z^{(N_{\hbar,\theta})}(t) - U(t,t_0)\varphi_z \right\|_{L^2} \le \exp\left(-\frac{c_\theta}{\hbar^\theta}\right) \tag{4.72}$$

*under the conditions of* (4.71).

*Remark 21* We have considered here standard Gaussian. All the results are true and proved in the same way for Gaussian coherent states defined by $g^\Gamma$, for any $\Gamma\in\Sigma_n^+$. These results have been proved in [164] and in [101, 102] using different methods.

All the results in this subsection can easily be deduced from Theorem 25. Proposition 42 and Theorem 26 are easily proved using the estimates of Sect. 2.2. The proof of the corollaries are consequences of Theorem 26 and the Stirling formula for the Euler Gamma function.

## 4.4 Application to the Scattering Theory

In this section we assume that the interaction satisfies a short range assumption and we shall prove results for the action of the scattering operator acting on the squeezed states. One gets a semiclassical asymptotics for the action of the scattering operator on a squeezed state located at point $z_-$ in terms of a squeezed state located at point $z_+$ where $z_+ = S^{cl}(z_-)$, $S^{cl}$ being the classical scattering matrix. For the basic classical and quantum scattering theories we refer the reader to [66, 162]. Let us first recall some basic facts on classical and quantum scattering theory. We consider a classical Hamiltonian $H$ for a particle moving in a curved space and in an electromagnetic field:

$$H(q,p) = \frac{1}{2}g(q)p\cdot p + a(q)\cdot p + V(q), \quad q \in \mathbb{R}^n,\ p \in \mathbb{R}^n \tag{4.73}$$

$g(q)$ is a smooth positive definite matrix and there exist $c > 0$, $C > 0$ such that

$$c|p|^2 \le g(q)p\cdot p \le C|p|^2, \quad \forall (q,p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

$a(q)$ is a smooth linear form on $\mathbb{R}^n$ and $V(q)$ a smooth scalar potential. In what follows it will be assumed that $H(q,p)$ is a short range perturbation of $H^{(0)} = \frac{p^2}{2}$ in the following sense: there exist $\rho > 1$, and $C_\alpha$, for $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^n$ such that

$$\left|\partial_q^\alpha\big(\mathbb{1} - g(q)\big)\right| + \left|\partial_q^\alpha a(q)\right| + \left|\partial_q^\alpha V(q)\right| \le C_\alpha \langle q\rangle^{-\rho-|\alpha|}, \quad \forall q \in \mathbb{R}^n \tag{4.74}$$

$H$ and $H^{(0)}$ define two Hamiltonian flows $\Phi^t$, $\Phi_0^t$ on the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$. The classical scattering theory establishes a comparison of the two dynamics $\Phi^t$, $\Phi_0^t$ in the large time limit. Note that the free dynamics is explicit:

$$\Phi_0^t(q,p) = (q + tp, p)$$

The methods of [66, 162] can be used to prove the existence of the classical wave operators defined by

$$\Omega_\pm^{cl} X = \lim_{t\to\pm\infty} \Phi^{-t}\big(\Phi_0^t X\big) \tag{4.75}$$

This limit exists for every $X \in \mathcal{Z}_0$ where $\mathcal{Z}_0 = \{(q,p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}, p \neq 0\}$ and is uniform on every compact of $\mathcal{Z}_0$. We also have for all $X \in \mathcal{Z}_0$

$$\lim_{t\to\pm\infty}\big(\Phi^t\Omega_\pm^{cl}(X) - \Phi_0^t(X)\big) = 0$$

Moreover, $\Omega_\pm^{cl}$ are $\mathcal{C}^\infty$-smooth symplectic transformations. They intertwine the free and the interacting dynamics:

$$H \circ \Omega_\pm^{cl} X = \Omega_\pm^{cl} \circ H^{(0)}(X), \quad \forall X \in \mathcal{Z}_0, \quad \text{and} \quad \Phi^t \circ \Omega_\pm^{cl} = \Omega_\pm^{cl} \circ \Phi_0^t$$

Then the classical scattering matrix $S^{cl}$ is defined by

$$S^{cl} = \left(\Omega_+^{cl}\right)^{-1} \Omega_-^{cl}$$

This definition makes sense since one can prove (see [162]) that modulo a closed set $\mathcal{N}_0$ of Lebesgue measure zero in $\mathcal{Z}$ ($\mathcal{Z} \setminus \mathcal{Z}_0 \subseteq \mathcal{N}_0$) one has

$$\Omega_+^{cl}(\mathcal{Z}_0) = \Omega_-^{cl}(\mathcal{Z}_0)$$

Moreover $S^{cl}$ is smooth in $\mathcal{Z} \setminus \mathcal{N}_0$ and commutes with the free evolution:

$$S^{cl} \Phi_0^t = \Phi_0^t S^{cl}$$

The scattering operator has the following kinematic interpretation: let us consider $X_- \in \mathcal{Z}_0$ and its free evolution $\Phi_0^t X_-$. There exists a unique interacting evolution $\Phi^t(X)$ which is close to $\Phi_0^t(X_-)$ for $t \searrow -\infty$. Moreover there exists a unique point $X_+ \in \mathcal{Z}_0$ such that $\Phi^t(X)$ is close to $\Phi_0^t(X_+)$ for $t \nearrow +\infty$. $X$, $X_+$ are given by

$$X = \Omega_-^{cl} X_- \quad \text{and} \quad X_+ = S^{cl} X_-$$

Using [66] we can get a more precise result. Let $I$ be an open interval of $\mathbb{R}$ and assume that $I$ is "non trapping" for $H$ which means that for every $X$ such that $H(X) \in I$ we have $\lim_{t\to\pm\infty} |\Phi^t(X)| = +\infty$. Then we have

**Proposition 43** *If $I$ is a non trapping interval for $H$ then $S^{cl}$ is defined everywhere in $H^{-1}(I)$ and is a $\mathcal{C}^\infty$ smooth symplectic map.*

On the quantum side one can define the wave operators and the scattering operator in a similar way. Let us note that the quantization $\hat{H}$ of $H$ is essentially self-adjoint so that the unitary group $U(t) = \exp(-\frac{it}{\hbar}\hat{H})$ is well defined in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. The free evolution $U_0(t) := \exp(-\frac{it}{\hbar}\hat{H}^{(0)})$ is explicit:

$$\big(U_0(t)\psi\big)(x) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(-t\frac{\xi^2}{2} + (x-y)\cdot\xi\right)\right)\psi(y)\,dy\,d\xi \quad (4.76)$$

The assumption (4.74) implies that we can define the wave operators $\Omega_\pm$ and the scattering operator $S^{(\hbar)} = (\Omega_+)^* \Omega_-$ (see [66, 162]). Recall that

$$\Omega_\pm = \lim_{t\to\pm\infty} U(-t)U_0(t)$$

The ranges of $\Omega_\pm$ are equal to the absolutely continuous subspace of $\hat{H}$ and we have

$$\Omega_\pm U_0(t) = U(t)\Omega_\pm, \qquad S^{(\hbar)} U_0(t) = U_0(t) S^{(\hbar)} \quad (4.77)$$

One wants to obtain a correspondence between $\lim_{\hbar\to 0} S^{(\hbar)}$ and $S^{cl}$. There are many works on the subject (see [99, 102, 165, 203]). Here we want to check this classical limit using the coherent states approach like in [99, 102].We present here a different technical approach extending these results to more general perturbations of the Laplace operator.

We recall some notations of Chap. 3: $\Sigma_n$ is the Siegel space namely the space of complex symmetric $n \times n$ matrices $\Gamma$ such that $\Im\Gamma$ is positive and non degenerate. Given $F$ any $2n \times 2n$ symplectic matrix the unitary operator $\hat{R}(F)$ is the metaplectic transformation associated to $F$. $g^\Gamma$ is the Gaussian function of $L^2$ norm 1 defined by

$$g^\Gamma(x) = a_\Gamma \exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}\Gamma x \cdot x\right) \tag{4.78}$$

and we denote

$$\varphi_z^\Gamma = \hat{T}(z) g^\Gamma$$

Finally $\Lambda_\hbar$ is the unitary operator defined in (4.21).

The main result of this section states a relationship between the quantum scattering and the classical scattering.

**Theorem 27** *For every $N \geq 1$, every $z_- \in \mathcal{Z} \setminus \mathcal{N}_0$ and every $\Gamma_- \in \Sigma_n$ we have the following semiclassical approximation for the scattering operator $S^{(\hbar)}$ acting on the Gaussian coherent state $\varphi_{z_-}^{\Gamma_-}$:*

$$S^{(\hbar)}\varphi_{z_-}^{\Gamma_-} = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_+/\hbar}\hat{T}(z_+)\Lambda_\hbar \hat{R}(G_+)\left(\sum_{0\leq j\leq N} \hbar^{j/2} b_j g^{\Gamma_-}\right) + \mathcal{O}\left(\hbar^{(N+1)/2}\right) \tag{4.79}$$

*where we define*

$$z_+ = S^{cl} z_-, \qquad z_\pm = (q_\pm, p_\pm)$$

*$z_t = (q_t, p_t)$ is the interacting scattering trajectory $z_t = \Phi^t(\Omega_-^{cl} z_-)$, $\delta_+ = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty}(p_t \dot{q}_t - H(z_t))\, dt - \frac{q_+p_+ - q_-p_-}{2}$, $G_+ = \frac{\partial z_+}{\partial z_-}$, $b_j$ is a polynomial of degree $\leq 3j$, $b_0 = 1$. The error term $\mathcal{O}(\hbar^{(N+1)/2})$ is estimated in the $L^2$-norm.*

Let us denote

$$\psi_- = \varphi_{z_-}^{\Gamma_-}, \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_+ := S^{(\hbar)}\psi_-$$

Using the definition of $S^{(\hbar)}$ we have

$$\psi_+ = \lim_{t\to+\infty}\left(\lim_{s\to-\infty} U_0(t)U(t-s)U_0(s)\right)\psi_- \tag{4.80}$$

The strategy of the proof consists of applying the estimate (4.13) at fixed time $t$ to $U(t-s)$ in (4.80) and then to see what happens in the limits $s \to -\infty$, $t \to +\infty$.

Let us denote by $F_t^0$ the Jacobi stability matrix for the free evolution and by $F_t(z)$ the Jacobi stability matrix along the trajectory $\Phi^t(z)$. We have

$$F_t^0 = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{1}_n & t\mathbb{1}_n \\ 0 & \mathbb{1}_n \end{pmatrix}$$

We need large time estimates concerning classical scattering trajectories and their Jacobi stability matrices.

**Proposition 44** *Under the assumptions of Theorem 27 there exists a unique scattering solution of the Hamilton equation $\dot{z}_t = J\nabla H(z_t)$ such that*

$$\dot{z}_t - \partial_t \Phi_0^t z_+ = \mathcal{O}\big(\langle t\rangle^{-\rho}\big), \quad \text{for } t \to +\infty$$
$$\dot{z}_t - \partial_t \Phi_0^t z_- = \mathcal{O}\big(\langle t\rangle^{-\rho}\big), \quad \text{for } t \to -\infty$$

**Proposition 45** *Let us denote*

$$G_{t,s} := F_{t-s}\big(\Phi_0^s z_-\big) F_s^0$$

*Then we have*

(i) $\lim_{s\to-\infty} G_{t,s} = G_t$ *exists*, $\forall t \geq 0$
(ii) $\lim_{t\to+\infty} F_0^{-t} G_t = G_+$ *exists*
(iii) $G_t = \frac{\partial z_t}{\partial z_-}$, *and* $G_+ = \frac{\partial z_+}{\partial z_-}$

These two propositions will be proven later together with the following one. The main step in the proof of Theorem 27 will be to solve the following asymptotic Cauchy problem for the Schrödinger equation with data given at time $t = +\infty$:

$$\begin{aligned} i\hbar\partial_s \psi_{z_-}^{N)} &= \hat{H}\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(s) + \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{(N+3)/2} f_N(s)\big) \\ \lim_{s\to-\infty} U_0(-s)\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(s) &= \varphi_{z_-}^{\Gamma_-} \end{aligned} \tag{4.81}$$

where $f_N \in L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ is independent of $\hbar$. The following result is an extension for infinite times of results proven in Sect. 4.1 for finite times.

**Proposition 46** *The problem* (4.81) *has a solution which can be computed in the following way*:

$$\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t,x) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta(z_t)/\hbar}\hat{T}(z_-)\Lambda_\hbar \hat{R}(G_t)\Bigg(\sum_{0\leq j\leq N} \hbar^{j/2} b_j(t,z_-) g^{\Gamma_-}\Bigg)$$

*The $b_j(t,z_-,x)$ are uniquely defined by the following induction formula for $j \geq 1$ starting with $b_0(t,x) \equiv 1$:*

$$\partial_t b_j(t,z_-,x)g(x) = \sum_{k+l=j+2,\ l\geq 3} \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[K_l^\sharp(t)\big]\big(b_k(t,.)g\big)(x) \tag{4.82}$$

$$\lim_{t\to-\infty} b_j(t,z_-,x) = 0 \tag{4.83}$$

*with*

$$K_j^\sharp(t, X) = K_j\big(t, G_t(X)\big) = \sum_{|\gamma|=j} \frac{1}{\gamma!} \partial_X^\gamma H(z_t)(G_t X)^\gamma, \quad X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

*$b_j(t, z_-, x)$ is a polynomial of degree $\le 3j$ in variable $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ with complex time-dependent coefficients depending on the scattering trajectory $z_t$ starting from $z_-$ at time $t = -\infty$. Moreover we have the remainder uniform estimate*

$$i\hbar\partial_t \psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t) = \hat{H}\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t) + \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{(N+3)/2}\langle t\rangle^{-\rho}\big) \tag{4.84}$$

*uniformly in $\hbar \in ]0, 1]$, and $t \ge 0$.*

*Proof of Theorem 27* Without going into the details which are similar to the finite time case, we remark that in the induction formula (4.82) we can use the following estimates to get uniform decrease in time estimates for $b_j(t, z_-, x)$. First there exist $c > 0$ and $T_0 > 0$ such that for $t \ge T_0$ we have $|q_t| \ge ct$. Using the short range assumption and conservation of the classical energy we see that for $|\gamma| \ge 3$ there exists $C_\gamma > 0$ such that

$$\left|\partial_X^\gamma H(z_t)\right| \le C_\gamma \langle t\rangle^{-\rho-1} \tag{4.85}$$

Therefore we deduce (4.84) from (4.82) and (4.85).

Using Proposition 46 and Duhamel's formula we get

$$U(t)\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(s) = \psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t+s) + \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{(N+1)/2}\big)$$

uniformly in $t, s \in \mathbb{R}$. But we have

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\|\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t) - U(t-s)U_0(s)\psi_-\right\| \\ &\quad \le \left\|\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t) - U(t-s)\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(s)\right\| + \left\|U_0(s)\psi_- - \psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(s)\right\|\end{aligned}$$

We know that

$$\lim_{s\to-\infty} \left\|U_0(s)\psi_- - \psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(s)\right\| = 0$$

Then going to the limit $s \to -\infty$ we get uniformly in $t \ge 0$

$$\left\|\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t) - U(t)\Omega_-\psi_-\right\| = \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^{(N+1)/2}\big)$$

Then we can compute $U_0(-t)\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t)$ in the limit $t \to +\infty$ and we find out that $S^{(\hbar)}\psi_- = \psi_+^{(N)} + \mathcal{O}(\hbar^{(N+1)/2})$ where

$$\psi_+^{(N)} = \lim_{t\to+\infty} U_0(-t)\psi_{z_-}^{(N)}(t)$$

So we have proved Theorem 27. □

Let us now prove Proposition 44 following the book [162].

*Proof* Let us denote $u(t) := z_t - \Phi_t^0 z_-$. We have to solve the integral equation

$$u(t) = \Phi_t^0(z_-) + \int_{-\infty}^{t} \big(J\nabla H\big(u(s)\big) + \Phi_s^0(z_-)\big)\, ds$$

We can choose $T_1 < 0$ such that the map $K$ defined by

$$Ku(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t} \big(J\nabla H\big(u(s)\big) + \Phi_s^0(z_-)\big)\, ds$$

is a contraction in the complete metric space $\mathcal{C}_{T_1}$ of continuous functions $u$ from $]-\infty, T_1]$ into $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ such that $\sup_{t\le T_1} |u(t)| \le 1$, with the natural distance. So we can apply the fixed point theorem to prove Proposition 44 using standard technics. □

Proposition 45 can be proved by the same method.
Let us now prove Proposition 46.

*Proof* Let us denote $z_s^0 := \Phi_s^0(z_-)$. Furthermore if $S$ is a symplectic matrix

$$S = \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix}$$

and $\Gamma \in \Sigma_n$ ($\Sigma_n$ is the Siegel space) we define

$$\Sigma_S(\Gamma) = (C + D\Gamma)(A + B\Gamma)^{-1} \in \Sigma_n$$

Then let

$$\Gamma_s^0 = \Sigma_{F_s^0}(\Gamma_-)$$

One has for every $N \ge 0$:

$$i\hbar\partial_t \psi_z^{(N)}(t,s,x) = \hat{H}(t)\psi_z^{(N)}(t,s,x) + R_z^{(N)}(t,s,x)$$

where

$$\psi_z^{(N)}(t,s,x) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_s s,t/\hbar} \hat{T}(z_t)\Lambda_\hbar \hat{R}\big(F_{t,s}F_s^0\big)\Bigg(\sum_{0\le j\le N} \hbar^{j/2} b_j(t,s) g^{\Gamma_-}\Bigg) \tag{4.86}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} R_{z_-}^{(N)}(t,s,x) = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_{s,t}/\hbar}\hbar^{(N+3)/2} \\ \times \Bigg(\sum_{j+k=N+2,\ k\ge 3} \hat{T}(z_-)\Lambda_\hbar \hat{R}\big(F_{t,s}F_s^0\big) \\ \times \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big(R_k(t,s)\circ\big[F_{t,s}F_s^0\big]\big)\big(b_j(t,s)g^{\Gamma_-}\big)\Bigg) \end{aligned} \tag{4.87}$$

One denotes $F_{t,s} = F_{t-s}(\Phi_0^s z_-)$ the stability matrix at $\Phi_{t-s}(\Phi_s^0(z_-))$. Moreover the polynomials $b_j(t,s,x)$ are uniquely defined by the following induction formula for $j \geq 1$ starting with $b_0(s,s,x) \equiv 1$:

$$\partial_t b_j(t,s,x) = \sum_{k+l=j+2,\ l\geq 3} \mathrm{Op}_1^w\big[K_l^\sharp(t,s)\big]\big(b_k(t,.)g^{\Gamma_-}\big)(x)$$

$$b_j(s,s,x) = 0$$

where

$$K_l^\sharp(t,s,X) = \sum_{|\gamma|=l} \frac{1}{\gamma!}\partial_X^\gamma H\big(\Phi^{t-s}\big(\Phi_s^0 z_-\big)\big)\big(F_{t-s}F_s^0 X\big)^\gamma, \quad X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

So using Propositions 44 and 45 we can control the limit $s \to -\infty$ in (4.86) and (4.87) and we get the proof of the Proposition 46. □

The following corollary is an immediate consequence of Theorem 27 and of the properties of the metaplectic transformation:

**Corollary 15** *For every $N \in \mathbb{N}$ we have*

$$S^{(\hbar)}\varphi_{z_-}^{\Gamma_-} = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_+/\hbar}\sum_{0\leq j\leq N}\hbar^{j/2}\pi_j\left(\frac{x-q_+}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right)\varphi_{z_+}^{\Gamma_+}(x) + \mathcal{O}\big(\hbar^\infty\big)$$

*where $z_+ = S^{cl}(z_-)$, $\Gamma_+ = \Sigma_{G_+}(\Gamma_-)$, $\pi_j(y)$ are polynomials of degree $\leq 3j$ in $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$. In particular $\pi_0 = 1$.*

Recall that $\Sigma^m$ is the space of smooth classical observables $L$ such that for every $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ there exists $C_\gamma \geq 0$ such that

$$\big|\partial_X^\gamma L(X)\big| \leq C_\gamma \langle X\rangle^m, \quad \forall X \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

The Weyl quantization $\hat{L}$ of $L$ is well defined (see Chap. 2). One has the following result:

**Corollary 16** *For any symbol $L \in \Sigma(m)$, $m \in \mathbb{R}$, we have*

$$\big\langle S^{(\hbar)}\varphi_{z_-}, \hat{L}S^{(\hbar)}\varphi_{z_-}\big\rangle = L\big(S^{cl}(z_-)\big) + \mathcal{O}\big(\sqrt{\hbar}\big)$$

*In particular one recovers the classical scattering operator from the quantum scattering operator in the semiclassical limit.*

*Proof* Using Corollary 15 one gets

$$\big\langle S^{(\hbar)}\varphi_{z_-}, \hat{L}S^{(\hbar)}\varphi_{z_-}\big\rangle = \big\langle\varphi_{z_-}^{\Gamma_+}, \hat{L}\varphi_{z_-}^{\Gamma_+}\big\rangle + \mathcal{O}\big(\sqrt{\hbar}\big)$$

and the result follows from a trivial extension of Lemma 14 of Chap. 2. □

*Remark 22* A similar result was proven for the time-delay operator in [192]. The proof given here is different and doesn't use a global non-trapping assumption.

Further study concerns the scattering evolution of Lagrangian states (also called WKB states). It was considered by Yajima [203] in the momentum representation and by S. Robinson [167] for the position representation. The approach developed here provides a more direct and general proof that is detailed in [164].

Note also that under the analytic and Gevrey assumption one can recover the result of [102] for the semiclassical propagation of coherent states with exponentially small estimate.

# Chapter 5
# Trace Formulas and Coherent States

**Abstract** The most known trace formula in mathematical physics is certainly the Gutzwiller trace formula linking the eigenvalues of the Schrödinger operator $\hat{H}$ as Planck's constant goes to zero (the semi-classical régime) with the closed orbits of the corresponding classical mechanical system. Gutzwiller gave a heuristic proof of this trace formula, using the Feynman integral representation for the propagator of $\hat{H}$. In mathematics this kind of trace formula was first known as Poisson formula. It was proved first for the Laplace operator on a compact manifold, then for more general elliptic operators using the theory of Fourier-integral operators. Our goal here is to show how the use of coherent states allows us to give a rather simple and direct rigorous proof.

## 5.1 Introduction

A quantum system is described by its Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ and its admissible energies are the eigenvalues $E_j(\hbar)$ (we suppose that the spectrum of the self-adjoint operator $\hat{H}$ in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is discrete). The frequency transition between energies $E_j(\hbar)$ and $E_k(\hbar)$ is $\omega_{j,k} = \frac{E_k(\hbar)-E_j(\hbar)}{\hbar}$.

If $n = 1$, or if the system is integrable, it is possible to prove semi-classical expansion for individual eigenvalues $E_j(\hbar)$ when $\hbar \searrow 0$. For more general systems it is very difficult and almost impossible to analyze individual eigenvalues. But it is possible to give a statistical description of the energy spectrum in the semi-classical regime by considering mean values

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(f(\hat{H})\big) = \sum f\big(E_j(\hbar)\big) \tag{5.1}$$

A first result can be obtained if we suppose that the $\hbar$-Weyl symbol $H$ of $\hat{H}$ is smooth and satisfies the assumption of the functional calculus in Chap. 2 (Theorem 10). Consider an interval $I_\varepsilon = [\lambda_1 - \varepsilon, \lambda_2 + \varepsilon]$ such that $H^{-1}(I)$ is compact for $\varepsilon$ small enough. The following result is proved in [107]:

**Proposition 47**

(i) *For every smooth function $f$ supported in $I_\varepsilon$ we have the asymptotic expansion at any order in $\hbar$*

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_5, 

$$\mathrm{Tr}\, f\big(\hat{H}\big) \asymp (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} dX\, f\big(H(X)\big) + \sum_{j\geq 1} \hbar^{j-n} C_j(f) \tag{5.2}$$

*where $C_j(f)$ are computable distributions in the test function $f$.*

(ii) *If $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ are noncritical values for $H$*[1] *and if $N_I$ denotes the number of eigenvalues of $\hat{H}$ in $I := [\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$ then we have the Weyl asymptotic formula*

$$N_I = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \mathrm{Vol}\big(H^{-1}(I)\big) + O\big(\hbar^{1-n}\big) \tag{5.3}$$

*Remark 23* (i) The first part of the Proposition is an easy application of the functional calculus.

Using (i) it is possible to prove a Weyl formula with an error term $O(\hbar^{\theta-n})$ with $\theta < \frac{2}{3}$. The error term with $\theta = 1$ is optimal (in general) and can be obtained using a method initiated by Hörmander [42, 107, 116]. Furthermore using a trick initiated by Duistermaat–Guillemin [71] the remainder term can be improved in $o(\hbar^{1-n})$ if the measure of closed classical path on $H^{-1}(\lambda_i)$ is zero, for $i = 1, 2$ (see [158]).

The density of states of a quantum system $\hat{H}$ is the sum of delta distribution $D(E) = \sum \delta(E - E_j(\hbar))$. The integrated density of states is the spectral repartition function $N(E) = \sharp\{j, E_j(\hbar) < E\}$ where $\sharp\mathcal{E}$ denotes the number of terms in a series $\mathcal{E}$. So that we have $D(E) = \frac{d}{dE}N(E)$.

The Gutzwiller trace formula is a semi-classical formula which expresses the density of states of a quantum system in terms of the characteristics of the corresponding classical system (invariant tori for the completely integrable systems, periodic orbits otherwise). Remark that properties of the classical system may have consequence on the error term in the Weyl formula (see the Remark above). The prototype of the trace formula is the Poisson summation formula:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} f(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} \tilde{f}(2\pi k) \tag{5.4}$$

for any $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$. Recall that $\tilde{f}$ is the Fourier transform $\tilde{f}(\tau) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} dt\, \mathrm{e}^{-it\tau} f(t)$.

We show in which respect it is a Trace Formula. Consider the quantum momentum operator $\hat{P}$ in dimension one, $\hat{P} = -i\frac{d}{dx}$, acting in $L^2([0, 2\pi])$ with periodic boundary conditions $u(0) = u(2\pi)$. $\hat{P}$ is an unbounded operator with purely discrete spectrum and one has

$$\mathrm{sp}\big(\hat{P}\big) = \mathbb{Z}$$

Therefore one has

$$\mathrm{Tr}\, f\big(\hat{P}\big) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} f(n)$$

[1] See the definition in Sect. 5.2.

The classical Hamiltonian is $H(q, p) = p$. Therefore the solutions of the classical equations of motion are

$$q = t \quad \mathrm{mod}(2\pi)$$

So, the classical trajectories are periodic in phase space $(\mathbb{T}^1) \times \mathbb{R}$ and are $k$-repetitions of the primitive orbit of period $2\pi$, $\forall k \in \mathbb{Z}$. Thus the periods of the classical flow are equal to $2k\pi, k \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then the Poisson Summation Formula expresses that the trace of a function of a quantum Hamiltonian equals the sum over the periodic orbits of the corresponding classical flow of the Fourier Transform of this function taken at the periods of the classical flow.

From the Poisson Summation formula one deduces a Trace Formula for the one-dimensional Harmonic Oscillator: take

$$\hat{H}_0 = \frac{1}{2}\big(\hat{P}^2 + \hat{Q}^2\big)$$

the Hamiltonian of the Harmonic Oscillator. We assume $\hbar = 1$ for simplicity. The spectrum of $\hat{H}_0$ is $\{n + \frac{1}{2}, n \in \mathbb{N}\}$. Therefore for any $f \in \mathcal{S}([0, +\infty[)$ one has

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(f\big(\hat{H}_0\big)\big) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} f\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)$$

Replace $f$ by $\hat{T}(q, 0)f$ in (5.4). One gets

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} f(n+q) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{2i\pi kq} \tilde{f}(2k\pi)$$

Therefore for $q = \frac{1}{2}$ one gets

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(f\big(\hat{H}_0\big)\big) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} (-1)^k \tilde{f}(2k\pi)$$

But $2k\pi$ are the periods of the orbits for the classical Harmonic oscillator of frequency 1, which are all repetitions of the primitive orbit of period $2\pi$. One notes the apparition of a factor $(-1)^k$ in the trace formula which is the manifestation of the so-called Maslov index of the periodic orbit of period $2k\pi$.

The paper of Gutzwiller appeared in 1971. Between 1973 and 1975 several authors gave rigorous derivations of trace formulas, generalizing the classical Poisson summation formula from $d^2/d\theta^2$ on the circle to elliptic operators on compact manifolds: Colin de Verdière [45], Chazarain [41], Duistermaat–Guillemin [71]. The first article is based on a parametrix construction for the associated heat equation, while the two other ones replace this with a parametrix constructed as a Fourier-integral operator, for the associated wave equation.

The pioneering works in quantum physics of Gutzwiller [97, 98] and Balian–Bloch [12, 13] (1972–74) showed that the trace of a quantum observable $\hat{A}$, localized in a spectral neighborhood of size $O(\hbar)$ of an energy $E$ for the quantum Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$, can be expressed in terms of averages of the classical observable $A$ associated with $\hat{A}$ over invariant sets for the flow of the classical Hamiltonian $H$ associated with $\hat{H}$. This is related to the spectral asymptotics for $\hat{H}$ in the semi-classical limit, and it can be understood as a "correspondence principle" between classical and quantum mechanics as Planck's constant $\hbar$ goes to zero.

More recently, papers by Guillemin–Uribe [96] (1989), Paul–Uribe [150, 151] (1991, 1995), Meinrenken [144] (1992) and Dozias [70] (1994) have developed the necessary tools from microlocal analysis [117] in a nonhomogeneous (semi-classical) setting to deal with Schrödinger-type Hamiltonians. Extensions and simplifications of these methods have been given by Petkov–Popov [157] and Charbonnel–Popov [40].

In this Chapter we show how to recover the semi-classical Gutzwiller trace formula from the coherent states method.

The coherent states approach presented here seems particularly suitable when one wishes to compare the phase-space quantum picture with the phase-space classical flow. Furthermore, it avoids problems with caustics, and the Maslov indices appear naturally. In short, it implies the Gutzwiller trace formula in a very simple and transparent way, without any use of the global theory of Fourier-integral operators. In their place we use the coherent states approximation (gaussian beams) and the stationary phase theorem.

The use of Gaussian wave packets is such a useful idea that one can trace it back to the very beginning of quantum mechanics, for instance, Schrödinger [175] (1926). However, the realization that these approximations are universally applicable, and that they are valid for arbitrarily long times, has developed gradually. In the mathematical literature these approximations have never become textbook material, and this has lead to their repeated rediscovery with a variety of different names, e.g. coherent states and Gaussian beams. The first place that we have found where they are used in some generality is Babich [8] (1968) (see also [9]). Since then they have appeared, often as independent discoveries, in the work of Arnaud [6] (1973), Keller and Streifer [124] (1971), Heller [110, 111] (1975, 1987), Ralston [159, 160] (1976, 1982), Hagedorn [99, 100] (1980–85), and Littlejohn [138] (1986)—and probably of many more, which we have not found. Their use in trace formulas was proposed (heuristically) by Wilkinson [199] (1987). The propagation formulas of [99, 100] were extended in Combescure–Robert [52], with a detailed estimate on the error both in time and in Planck's constant $\hbar$. This propagation formula of coherent states which is described in Chap. 4 allows us to avoïd the whole machinery of Fourier-integral operator theory. The early application of these methods in [8] was for the construction of quasi-modes, and this has been pursued further in [159] and [150]. They have also been applied to the pointwise behavior of semi-classical measures [153].

The proof we shall present here for the Gutzwiller trace formula is inspired by the paper by Combescure–Ralston–Robert [53].

## 5.2 The Semi-classical Gutzwiller Trace Formula

We consider a quantum system in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ with the Schrödinger Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H} = -\hbar^2 \Delta + V(x) \tag{5.5}$$

where $\Delta$ is the Laplacian in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and $V(x)$ a real, $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ potential.

The corresponding Hamiltonian for the classical motion is

$$H(q,p) = p^2 + V(q)$$

and for a given energy $E \in \mathbb{R}$ we denote by $\Sigma_E$ the "energy shell":

$$\Sigma_E := \{(q,p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} : H(q,p) = E\} \tag{5.6}$$

More generally we shall consider Hamiltonians $\hat{H}$ obtained by the $\hbar$-Weyl quantization of the classical Hamiltonian $H$, so that $\hat{H} = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(H)$, where

$$\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(H)\psi(x) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \iint_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} H\left(\frac{x+y}{2}, \xi\right) \psi(y) \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i(x-y)\cdot\xi}{\hbar}}\, dy\, d\xi \tag{5.7}$$

The Hamiltonian $H$ is assumed to be a smooth, real valued function of $z = (x, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, and to satisfy the following global estimates:

- (H.0) there exist non-negative constants $C, m, C_\gamma$ such that

$$\left|\partial_z^\gamma H(z)\right| \le C_\gamma \langle H(z)\rangle, \quad \forall z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n},\ \forall \gamma \in \mathbb{N}^{2n} \tag{5.8}$$

$$\langle H(z)\rangle \le C\langle H(z')\rangle \cdot \langle z - z'\rangle^m, \quad \forall z,\ z' \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} \tag{5.9}$$

  where we have used the notation $\langle u\rangle = (1+|u|^2)^{1/2}$ for $u \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

*Remark 24*

(i) $H(q,p) = p^2 + V(q)$ satisfies (H.0), if $V(q)$ is bounded below by some constant $a > 0$ and satisfies the property (H.0) in the variable $q$.
(ii) The technical condition (H.0) implies in particular that $\hat{H}$ is essentially self-adjoint on $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ for $\hbar$ small enough and that $\chi(\hat{H})$ is a $\hbar$-pseudodifferential operator if $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ (see Chap. 2 and [107]).

Let us denote by $\phi^t$ the classical flow induced by Hamilton's equations with Hamiltonian $H$, and by $S(q,p;t)$ the classical action along the trajectory starting at $(q,p)$ at time $t=0$, and evolving during time $t$

$$S(q,p;t) = \int_0^t \big(p_s \cdot \dot{q}_s - H(q,p)\big)\, ds \tag{5.10}$$

where $(q_t, p_t) = \phi_t(q,p)$, and dot denotes the derivative with respect to time. We shall also use the notation: $\alpha_t = \phi^t(\alpha)$ where $\alpha = (q,p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, is a phase-space point. Recall that the Hamiltonian $H$ is constant along the flow $\phi^t$.

If $\gamma$ is a periodic trajectory parametrized as $t \mapsto \alpha_t$, $\alpha_{T_\gamma^*} = \alpha_0$ where $T_\gamma^*$ is the primitive period (the smallest positive period), the classical action along $\gamma$ is

$$S_\gamma = \int_0^{T_\gamma^*} dt\, p_t \dot{q}_t := \oint_\gamma p\, dq$$

An important role in what follows is played by the "linearized flow" around the classical trajectory, which is defined as follows. Let

$$H''(\alpha_t) = \left.\frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial \alpha^2}\right|_{\alpha=\alpha_t} \tag{5.11}$$

be the Hessian of $H$ at point $\alpha_t = \phi^t(\alpha)$ of the classical trajectory. Let $J$ be the symplectic matrix

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbb{1} \\ -\mathbb{1} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.12}$$

where 0 and $\mathbb{1}$ are, respectively, the null and identity $n \times n$ matrices. Let $F_t$ be the $2n \times 2n$ real symplectic matrix solution of the linear differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{F}_t &= J H''(\alpha_t) F_t \\ F_0 &= \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{1} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathbb{1} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbb{1} \end{aligned} \tag{5.13}$$

$F_t$ depends on $\alpha = (q, p)$, the initial point for the classical trajectory, $\alpha_t$.

Let $\gamma$ be a *closed* orbit on $\Sigma_E$ with period $T_\gamma$, and let us denote simply by $F_\gamma$ the matrix $F_\gamma = F(T_\gamma)$. $F_\gamma$ is usually called the "monodromy matrix" of the closed orbit $\gamma$. Of course, $F_\gamma$ does depend on $\alpha$, but its eigenvalues do not, since the monodromy matrix with a different initial point on $\gamma$ is conjugate to $F_\gamma$. $F_\gamma$ has 1 as eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity at least equal to 2. In all that follows, we shall use the following definition:

**Definition 12** We say that $\gamma$ is a non-degenerate orbit if the eigenvalue 1 of $F_\gamma$ has algebraic multiplicity 2.

Let $\sigma$ denote the usual symplectic form on $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$

$$\sigma\left(\alpha, \alpha'\right) = p \cdot q' - p' \cdot q, \quad \alpha = (q, p);\ \alpha' = \left(q', p'\right) \tag{5.14}$$

($\cdot$ is the usual scalar product in $\mathbb{R}^n$). We denote by $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_1'\}$ a basis for the eigenspace of $F_\gamma$ belonging to the eigenvalue 1, and by $V$ its orthogonal complement in the sense of the symplectic form $\sigma$

$$V = \left\{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} : \sigma(\alpha, \alpha_1) = \sigma\left(\alpha, \alpha_1'\right) = 0\right\} \tag{5.15}$$

Then, the restriction $P_\gamma$ of $F_\gamma$ to $V$ is called the (linearized) "Poincaré map" for $\gamma$.

In more general cases the Hamiltonian flow will contain manifolds of periodic orbits with the same energy. When this happens, the periodic orbits will necessarily be degenerate, but the techniques we use here can still apply. The precise hypothesis for this ("Hypothesis C") will be given later. Following Duistermaat and Guillemin we call this a "clean intersection hypothesis", it is more explicit than other versions of this assumption. Since the statement of the trace formula is simpler and more informative when one does assume that the periodic orbits are non-degenerate, we will give only that formula in this case.

We shall now assume the following. Let $(\Gamma_E)_T$ be the set of all periodic orbits on $\Sigma_E$ with periods $T_\gamma$, $0 < |T_\gamma| \le T$ (including repetitions of primitive orbits and assigning negative periods to primitive orbits traced in the opposite sense).

- (H.1) There exists $\delta E > 0$ such that $H^{-1}([E - \delta E, E + \delta E])$ is a compact set of $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ and $E$ is a noncritical value of $H$ (i.e. $H(z) = E \Rightarrow \nabla H(z) \neq 0$).
- (H.2) All $\gamma$ in $(\Gamma_E)_T$ are non-degenerate, i.e. 1 is not an eigenvalue for the corresponding "Poincaré map", $P_\gamma$. In particular, this implies that for any $T > 0$, $(\Gamma_E)_T$ is a discrete set, with periods $-T \le T_{\gamma_1} < \cdots < T_{\gamma_N} \le T$.

  We can now state the Gutzwiller trace formula. Let $\hat{A} = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^w(A)$ be a quantum observable, such that $A$ satisfies the following.
- (H.3) There exists $\delta \in \mathbb{R}$, $C_\gamma > 0$ ($\gamma \in \mathbb{N}^{2n}$), such that

$$\left|\partial_z^\gamma A(z)\right| \le C_\gamma \langle H(z)\rangle^\delta, \quad \forall z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$$

- (H.4) $\mathrm{g}$ is a $\mathcal{C}^\infty$ function whose Fourier transform $\tilde{\mathrm{g}}$ is of compact support with $\mathrm{Supp}\,\tilde{\mathrm{g}} \subset [-T, T]$ and let $\chi$ be a smooth function with a compact support contained in $]E - \delta E, E + \delta E[$, equal to 1 in a neighborhood of $E$. Then the following "regularized density of states" $\rho_A(E)$ is well defined:

$$\rho_A(E) = \mathrm{Tr}\left(\chi(\hat{H})\hat{A}\chi(\hat{H})\mathrm{g}\left(\frac{E - \hat{H}}{\hbar}\right)\right) \tag{5.16}$$

Note that (H.1) implies that the spectrum of $\hat{H}$ is purely discrete in a neighborhood of $E$ so that $\rho_A(E)$ is well defined. We have also, more explicitly,

$$\rho_A(E) = \sum_{1 \le j \le N} \mathrm{g}\left(\frac{E - E_j}{\hbar}\right)\chi^2(E_j)\langle\hat{A}\varphi_j, \varphi_j\rangle \tag{5.17}$$

where $E_1 \le \cdots \le E_N$ are the eigenvalues of $\hat{H}$ in $]E - \delta E, E + \delta E[$ (with multiplicities) and $\varphi_j$ is the corresponding eigenfunction ($\hat{H}\varphi_j = E_j\varphi_j$). Let us remark here that the $\hbar$ scaling: $\frac{E - E_j}{\hbar}$ is the right one to have a nice semi-classical limit. The first argument is that if $n = 1$ (and for integrable systems), in regular case, eigenvalues are given by Bohr–Sommerfeld formula [108] and their mutual distance is of order $\hbar$. The second argument is included in the following result [106, 158].

Under assumption (H.1) the Liouville measure $dL_E$ is well defined on the energy surface $\Sigma_E$:

$$dL_E = \frac{d\Sigma_E}{|\nabla H|} \quad (d\Sigma_E \text{ is the Euclidean measure on } \Sigma_E)$$

Now we can state the Gutzwiller trace formula.

**Theorem 28** (Gutzwiller trace formula) *Assume* (H.0)–(H.2) *are satisfied for $H$,* (H.3) *for $A$ and* (H.4) *for $g$. Then the following asymptotic expansion holds true, modulo $O(\hbar^\infty)$,*

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_A(E) \equiv{}& (\pi)^{-n/2}\hat{\mathrm{g}}(0)\hbar^{-(n-1)}\int_{\Sigma_E} A(\alpha)\,d\sigma_E(\alpha) + \sum_{k\geq -n+2} c_k(\hat{\mathrm{g}})\hbar^k \\ &+ \sum_{\gamma\in(\Gamma_E)_T} (2\pi)^{n/2-1}\mathrm{e}^{i(S_\gamma/\hbar+\sigma_\gamma\pi/2)}\Big\{\hat{\mathrm{g}}(T_\gamma)\big|\det(\mathbb{1}-P_\gamma)\big|^{-1/2} \\ &\times \int_0^{T_\gamma^*} A(\alpha_s)\,ds + \sum_{j\geq 1} d_j^\gamma(\hat{g})\hbar^j\Big\}\end{aligned} \tag{5.18}$$

*where $T_\gamma^*$ is the primitive period of $\gamma$, $\sigma_\gamma$ is the Maslov index of $\gamma$ ($\sigma_\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}$ and is computed in the proof), $c_k(\tilde{\mathrm{g}})$ are distributions in $\tilde{\mathrm{g}}$ with support in $\{0\}$, $d_j^\gamma(\tilde{\mathrm{g}})$ are distributions in $\tilde{g}$ with support $\{T_\gamma\}$.*

*Remark 25* We can include more general Hamiltonians depending explicitly in $\hbar$, $H = \sum_{j=1}^K \hbar^j H^{(j)}$ such that $H^{(0)}$ satisfies (H.0) and for $j \geq 1$,

$$\big|\partial^\gamma H^{(j)}(z)\big| \leq C_{\gamma,j}\big\langle H^{(0)}(z)\big\rangle \tag{5.19}$$

It is useful for applications to consider Hamiltonians like $H^{(0)} + \hbar H^{(1)}$ where $H^{(1)}$ may be, for example, a spin term. In that case the formula (5.18) is true with different coefficients. In particular the first term in the contribution of $T_\gamma$ is multiplied by $\exp(-i\int_0^{T_\gamma^*} H^{(1)}(\alpha_s)\,ds)$.

*Remark 26* For Schrödinger operators we only need smoothness of the potential $V$. In this case the trace formula (5.18) is still valid without any assumptions at infinity for $V$ when we restrict ourselves to a compact energy surface, assuming $E < \liminf_{|x|\to\infty} V(x)$. Using exponential decrease of the eigenfunctions [109] we can prove that, modulo an error term of order $O(\hbar^{+\infty})$, the potential $V$ can be replaced by a potential $\tilde{V}$ satisfying the assumptions of the Remark 2.1.

It is also possible to get a trace formula for Hamiltonians with symmetries [38].

## 5.3 Preparations for the Proof

We shall make use of the standard coherent states introduced in Chap. 1 and their propagation by the time-dependent Schrödinger equation established in Chap. 4. We denote by

$$\varphi_\alpha = \hat{T}(\alpha)\psi_0 \tag{5.20}$$

the usual coherent states centered at the point $\alpha$ of the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. Then it is known that any operator $\hat{B}$ with a symbol decreasing sufficiently rapidly is in trace class [163], and its trace can be computed by (see Chap. 1)

$$\operatorname{Tr}\hat{B} = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}}\langle\varphi_\alpha, \hat{B}\varphi_\alpha\rangle\, d\alpha \tag{5.21}$$

The regularized density of states $\rho_A(E)$ can now be rewritten as

$$\rho_A(E) = (2\pi)^{-n-1}\hbar^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}\times\mathbb{R}^{2n}}\tilde{g}(t)\mathrm{e}^{iEt/\hbar}\langle\varphi_\alpha, \hat{A}_\chi U(t)\varphi_\alpha\rangle\, dt\, d\alpha \tag{5.22}$$

where $U(t)$ is the quantum unitary group:

$$U(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}/\hbar}, \quad \text{and} \quad \hat{A}_\chi = \chi(\hat{H})\hat{A}\chi(\hat{H}) \tag{5.23}$$

Our strategy for computing the behavior of $\rho_A(E)$ as $\hbar$ goes to zero is first to compute the bracket

$$m(\alpha, t) = \langle\varphi_\alpha, \hat{A_\chi} U(t)\varphi_\alpha\rangle, \tag{5.24}$$

where we drop the subscript $\chi$ in $A_\chi$ for simplicity.

First of all we shall use Lemma 14 of Chap. 2, giving the action of an $\hbar$-pseudodifferential operator on a Gaussian.

Thus $m(t, \alpha)$ is a linear combination of terms like

$$m_\gamma(\alpha, t) = \langle\Psi_{\gamma,\alpha}, U(t)\varphi_\alpha\rangle \tag{5.25}$$

Now we compute $U(t)\varphi_\alpha$, using the semi-classical propagation of coherent states result of Chap. 4. We recall that $F_t$ is a time-dependent symplectic matrix (Jacobi matrix) defined by the linear equation (5.13). $\hat{R}(F)$ denotes the metaplectic representation of the linearized flow $F$ (see Chap. 3), and the $\hbar$-dependent metaplectic representation is defined by

$$\hat{R}_\hbar(F) = \Lambda_\hbar\hat{R}(F)\Lambda_\hbar^{-1} \tag{5.26}$$

We will also use the notation

$$\delta(\alpha, t) = \int_0^t p_s\cdot\dot{q}_s\, ds - tH(\alpha) - \frac{p_t\cdot q_t - p\cdot q}{2} \tag{5.27}$$

From Chap. 4 we have the following propagation estimates in the $L^2$-norm: for every $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and every $T > 0$ there exists $C_{N,T}$ such that

$$\left\| U(t)\varphi_\alpha - \exp\left(\frac{i\delta(\alpha,t)}{\hbar}\right)\hat{T}(\alpha_t)\hat{R}_\hbar(F_t)\Lambda_\hbar P_N(x, D_x, t, \hbar)\widetilde{\psi_0}\right\| \le C_{N,T}\hbar^N \quad (5.28)$$

where $\widetilde{\psi_0}(x) = \pi^{-n/4}\exp(-|x|^2/2)$, and $P_N(t,\hbar)$ is the $(\hbar, t)$-dependent differential operator defined by

$$P_N(x, D_x, t, \hbar) = \mathbb{1} + \sum_{(k,j)\in I_N} \hbar^{k/2-j} p_{kj}^w(x, D, t)$$
$$\text{with } I_N = \left\{(k,j) \in \mathbb{N}\times\mathbb{N},\ 1 \le j \le 2N-1,\ k \ge 3j,\ 1 \le k-2j < 2N\right\} \quad (5.29)$$

where the differential operators $p_{kj}(x, D_x, t)$ are products of $j$ Weyl quantization of homogeneous polynomials of degree $k_s$ with $\sum_{1\le s\le j} k_s = k$ (see [52], Theorem 3.5 and its proof). So that we get

$$p_{kj}^w(x, D_x, t)\widetilde{\psi_0} = Q_{kj}(x)\widetilde{\psi_0}(x) \quad (5.30)$$

where $Q_{kj}(x)$ is a polynomial (with coefficients depending on $(\alpha, t)$) of degree $k$ having the same parity as $k$. This is clear from the following facts: homogeneous polynomials have a definite parity, and Weyl quantization behaves well with respect to symmetries: $\mathrm{Op}^w(A)$ commutes to the parity operator $\Sigma f(x) = f(-x)$ if and only if $A$ is an even symbol and anticommutes with $\Sigma$ if and only if $A$ is an odd symbol) and $\widetilde{\psi_0}(x)$ is an even function.

So we get

$$m(\alpha, t) = \sum_{(j,k)\in I_N; |\gamma|\le 2N} c_{k,j,\gamma}\hbar^{\frac{k+|\gamma|}{2}-j}\exp\left(\frac{i\delta(t,\alpha)}{\hbar}\right)$$
$$\times \left\langle \hat{T}(\alpha)\Lambda_\hbar Q_\gamma\widetilde{\psi_0}, \hat{T}(\alpha_t)\Lambda_\hbar Q_{k,j}\hat{R}(F_t)\widetilde{\psi_0}\right\rangle + O\left(\hbar^N\right) \quad (5.31)$$

where $Q_{k,j}$, respectively, $Q_\gamma$ are polynomials in the $x$ variable with the same parity as $k$, respectively, $|\gamma|$. This remark will be useful in proving that we have only entire powers in $\hbar$ in (5.18), even though half integer powers appear naturally in the asymptotic propagation of coherent states.

By an easy computation we have

$$\left\langle \hat{T}(\alpha)\Lambda_\hbar Q_\gamma\widetilde{\psi_0}, \hat{T}(\alpha_t)\Lambda_\hbar Q_{k,j}\hat{R}(F_t)\widetilde{\psi_0}\right\rangle$$
$$= \exp\left(-i\frac{1}{2\hbar}\sigma(\alpha,\alpha_t)\right)\left\langle \hat{T}_1\left(\frac{\alpha-\alpha_t}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right)Q_\gamma\widetilde{\psi_0}, Q_{k,j}\hat{R}(F_t)\widetilde{\psi_0}\right\rangle \quad (5.32)$$

where $\hat{T}_1(\cdot)$ is the Weyl translation operator with $\hbar = 1$.

We set

$$m_{k,j,\gamma}(\alpha,t) = \left\langle \hat{T}_1\left(\frac{\alpha-\alpha_t}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right) Q_\gamma \widetilde{\psi_0}, Q_{k,j}\hat{R}(F_t)\widetilde{\psi_0}\right\rangle \tag{5.33}$$

$$m_0(\alpha,t) = \left\langle \hat{T}_1\left(\frac{\alpha-\alpha_t}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right) \widetilde{\psi_0}, \hat{R}(F_t)\widetilde{\psi_0}\right\rangle \tag{5.34}$$

We compute $m_0(\alpha,t)$ first. We shall use the fact that the metaplectic group transforms Gaussian wave packets into Gaussian wave packets in a very explicit way. If we denote by $A_t$, $B_t$, $C_t$, $D_t$ the four $n\times n$ matrices of the block form of $F_t$

$$F_t = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ C_t & D_t \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.35}$$

We have already seen in Chaps. 3 and 4, since $F_t$ is symplectic, that $U_t = A_t + iB_t$ is invertible. So we have defined

$$\Gamma_t = V_t U_t^{-1}, \quad \text{where } V_t = (C_t + iD_t) \tag{5.36}$$

We have from our Chap. 3 (see also [77], Chap. 4)

$$\begin{aligned} m_0(\alpha,t) = {} & [\det U_t]_c^{-1/2}\pi^{-n/2} \\ & \times \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \exp\left\{ \frac{i}{2}(\Gamma_t + i\mathbb{1})x\cdot x - \frac{i}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\left(x - \frac{q-q_t}{2}\right)\right. \\ & \left. \times \big(p - p_t + i(q-q_t)\big)\right\} dx \end{aligned} \tag{5.37}$$

But the integration in $x$ is a Fourier transform of a Gaussian and can be performed (see in Appendix A, Sect. A.1). The complex matrix $\Gamma_t + i\mathbb{1}$ is invertible and we have

$$(\Gamma_t + i\mathbb{1})^{-1} = \frac{\mathbb{1} + W_t}{2i} \tag{5.38}$$

where we use the following notation:

$$W_t = Z_t Y_t^{-1}, \qquad Z_t = U_t + iV_t, \qquad Y_t = U_t - iV_t \tag{5.39}$$

It is clear that $Y$ is invertible (see Chap. 3). So we get

$$m_0(\alpha,t) = 2^n \pi^{n/2}\big[\det Y_t U_t^{-1}\big]_*^{-1/2} [\det U_t]_c^{-1/2} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\Psi_E(t,\alpha)} \tag{5.40}$$

where the phase $\Psi_E(t,\alpha)$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi_E(t,\alpha) = {} & t\big(E - H(\alpha)\big) + \frac{1}{2}\int_0^t \sigma(\alpha_s - \alpha, \dot{\alpha}_s)\, ds \\ & + \frac{i}{4}(\mathbb{1} - W_t)(\breve{\alpha} - \breve{\alpha}_t)\cdot \overline{(\breve{\alpha} - \breve{\alpha}_t)} \end{aligned} \tag{5.41}$$

with $\breve{\alpha} = q + ip$ if $\alpha = (q,p)$.

In (5.40) we have a product of square root of determinant. $[\det U_t]_c^{-1/2}$ is a branch for $[\det U_t]^{-1/2}$ with the phase (or argument) obtained by continuity in time from $U_{t=0} = \mathbb{1}$. For a complex symmetric matrix $M$ with definite-positive real part, $[\det M]_*^{-1/2}$ is a branch for $(\det M)^{-1/2}$ with the phase obtained by continuity along a path joining $\Re M$ to $M$, the eigenvalues of $M^{1/2}$ having positive real part. Following carefully these phases will give the Maslov correction index.

*Remark 27* There is here a difference with the paper [53] where the phase was obtained before integration in $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, so computations here will be a little bit more natural and easier.

The same phase $\Psi_E(t, \alpha)$ appears when computing $m_{k,j,\gamma}(\alpha, t)$ with non-trivial amplitudes. Then the formula for the regularized density of states in (5.22) takes the form

$$\rho_A(E) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} dt \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} d\alpha\, a(t, \alpha, \hbar) \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\Psi_E(t,\alpha)} \tag{5.42}$$

where $\Psi_E$ is given in (5.41) and $a(t, \alpha, \hbar) \asymp \sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}} a_j(t, \alpha)\hbar^j$.

Our plan is to prove Theorem 28 by expanding (5.42) by the method of stationary phase. The necessary stationary phase lemma for complex phase functions can easily be derived from Theorem 7.7.5 in [117]. There is also an extended discussion of complex phase functions depending on parameters in [117] leading to Theorem 7.7.12, but the form of the stationary manifold here permits us to use the following result proved in Sect. A.2.

**Theorem 29** (Stationary phase expansion) *Let $\mathcal{O} \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ be an open set, and let $a, f \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathcal{O})$ with $\Im f \geq 0$ in $\mathcal{O}$ and $\operatorname{supp} a \subset \mathcal{O}$. We define*

$$M = \left\{x \in \mathcal{O}, \Im f(x) = 0, f'(x) = 0\right\}$$

*and assume that $M$ is a smooth, compact and connected submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^d$ of dimension $k$ such that for all $x \in M$ the Hessian, $f''(x)$, of $f$ is non-degenerate on the normal space $N_x$ to $M$ at $x$.*

*Under the conditions above, the integral $J(\omega) = \int_{R^d} \mathrm{e}^{i\omega f(x)} a(x) dx$ has the following asymptotic expansion as $\omega \to +\infty$, modulo $O(\omega^{-\infty})$:*

$$J(\omega) \equiv \left(\frac{2\pi}{\omega}\right)^{\frac{d-k}{2}} \sum_{j\geq 0} c_j \omega^{-j}$$

*The coefficient $c_0$ is given by*

$$c_0 = \mathrm{e}^{i\omega f(m_0)} \int_M \left[\det\left(\frac{f''(m)|N_m}{i}\right)\right]_*^{-1/2} a(m)\, dV_M(m) \tag{5.43}$$

*where $dV_M(m)$ is the canonical Euclidean volume in $M$, $m_0 \in M$ is arbitrary, and $[\det P]_*^{-1/2}$ denotes the product of the reciprocals of square roots of the eigenvalues* *of P chosen with positive real parts. Note that, since* $\Im f \geq 0$, *the eigenvalues of* $\frac{f''(m)|N_m}{i}$ *lie in the closed right half plane.*

## 5.4 The Stationary Phase Computation

In this section we compute the stationary phase expansion of (5.22) with phase $\Psi_E$ given by (5.41). Note that $a(t, \alpha, \hbar)$ is actually, according to (5.31), a polynomial in $\hbar^{1/2}$ and $\hbar^{-1/2}$. Hence the stationary phase theorem (with $\hbar$-independent symbol $a$) applies to each coefficient of this polynomial.

We need to compute the first and second order derivatives of $\Psi_E(t, \alpha)$. Let us introduce the $2n \times 2n$ complex symmetric matrix

$$W_t^\sharp = \begin{pmatrix} W_t & -iW_t \\ -iW_t & -W_t \end{pmatrix}$$

It is enough to compute first derivatives for $\Psi_E$ up to $O(|\alpha_t - \alpha|^2)$:

$$\partial_t \Psi_E(t, \alpha) \equiv E - H(\alpha) - \frac{1}{2}(\alpha_t - \alpha) \cdot J\dot{\alpha}_t + \frac{1}{2i}\big(W^\sharp - \mathbb{1}\big)\dot{\alpha}_t \cdot (\alpha_t - \alpha) \quad (5.44)$$

$$\partial_\alpha \Psi_E(t, \alpha) \equiv \frac{1}{2}\big(\mathbb{1} + F^T\big)J(\alpha_t - \alpha) + \frac{1}{2i}\big(F^T - \mathbb{1}\big)\big(W^\sharp - \mathbb{1}\big)(\alpha_t - \alpha) \quad (5.45)$$

The critical set for the stationary phase theorem is defined as

$$\mathcal{C}_E = \big\{(\alpha, t) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} \times \mathbb{R}, \Im\big(\Psi_E(\alpha, t)\big) = 0, \partial_t \Psi_E(t, \alpha) = 0, \partial_\alpha \Psi_E(t, \alpha) = 0\big\}$$

We have seen in Chap. 2 that since $F$ is symplectic, one has $W^*W < \mathbb{1}$, so if $\Im(\Psi_E(\alpha, t)) = 0$ then $\alpha_t = \alpha$. Using (5.44) we get

$$\mathcal{C}_E = \big\{(\alpha, t) \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} \times \mathbb{R}, H(\alpha) = E; \alpha_t = \alpha\big\}$$

Hence $(t, \alpha)$ is a critical point means that $\alpha$ is on a periodic path of energy $E$, for the Hamiltonian $H$, and period $t$.

The second derivatives of $\Psi_E$ restricted on $\mathcal{C}_E$ can be computed as follows:

$$\partial^2_{t,t}\Psi_E(t, \alpha) = \frac{1}{2i}\big(W_t^\sharp - \mathbb{1}\big)\dot{\alpha} \cdot \dot{\alpha} \quad (5.46)$$

$$\partial^2_{t,\alpha}\Psi_E(t, \alpha) = -\partial_\alpha H(\alpha) + \frac{1}{2i}\big(F_t^T - \mathbb{1}\big)\big(W_t^\sharp - \mathbb{1}\big)(\dot{\alpha}) \quad (5.47)$$

$$\partial^2_{\alpha,\alpha}\Psi_E(t, \alpha) = \frac{1}{2}\big(JF_t - F_t^T J\big) + \frac{1}{2i}\big(F_t^T - \mathbb{1}\big)\big(W_t^\sharp - \mathbb{1}\big)(F_t - \mathbb{1}) \quad (5.48)$$

Let $\Psi''_E(t_0, \alpha_0)$ be the Hessian matrix of $\Psi_E$ at point $(t_0, \alpha_0)$ of $\mathcal{C}_E$. We have to compute the kernel of $\Psi''_E(\alpha_0, t_0)$.

**Lemma 33** *For every* $(t_0, \alpha_0) \in \mathcal{C}_E$ *we have*

$$\ker\big(\Psi_E''(t_0, \alpha_0)\big) = \big\{(\tau, v) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2n},\ \ v \cdot \partial_\alpha H = 0, (F_{t_0} - \mathbb{1})v + \tau\dot{\alpha} = 0\big\} \quad (5.49)$$

*Proof* Using the Taylor formula we have

$$\Im\big(\psi_E(t, \alpha)\big) = \frac{1}{2}\Im\Psi_E''(t_0, \alpha_0)(t - t_0, \alpha - \alpha_0) \cdot (t - t_0, \alpha - \alpha_0) + O\big(|t - t_0|^3 + |\alpha - \alpha_0|^3\big) \quad (5.50)$$

From $W^*W < 1$ we get, for some $c > 0$,

$$\Im\big(\psi_E(t, \alpha)\big) \geq c|\alpha - \alpha_t|^2 \quad (5.51)$$

Using that $\alpha - \alpha_t = (\alpha - \alpha_0) + (\alpha_0 - \alpha_{0,t_0}) + (\alpha_{0,t_0} - \alpha_{t_0}) + (\alpha_{t_0} - \alpha_t)$ we get

$$\alpha - \alpha_t = (\mathbb{1} - F_{t_0})(\alpha - \alpha_0) + (t_0 - t)\dot{\alpha}_t + O\big(|t - t_0|^2 + |\alpha - \alpha_0|^2\big)$$

Then from (5.50) and (5.51) we get, for some $c > 0$,

$$\big|\Im\Psi_E''(t_0, \alpha_0)(t - t_0, \alpha - \alpha_0) \cdot (t - t_0, \alpha - \alpha_0)\big| \geq c\big\|(F_{t_0} - \mathbb{1})(\alpha - \alpha_0) + (t - t_0)\dot{\alpha}\big\|^2 \quad (5.52)$$

So we have proved the part "⊆" in (5.49). The part "⊇" is obvious. □

The first thing to check, in order to apply the stationary phase theorem is that the support of $\alpha$ in (5.42) can be taken as compact, up to an error $O(\hbar^\infty)$. We do this in the following way: let us recall some properties of $\hbar$-pseudodifferential calculus proved in [68, 107]. The function $m(z) = \langle H(z)\rangle$ is a weight function. In [68] it is proved that $\chi(\hat{H}) = \hat{H}_\chi$ where $H_\chi \in S(m^{-k})$, for every $k$ ($\chi$ is like in (H.4)). More precisely, we have in the $\hbar$ asymptotic sense in $S(m^{-k})$,

$$H_\chi = \sum_{j \geq 0} H_{\chi j}\hbar^j$$

and support $[H_{\chi,j}]$ is in a fixed compact set for every $j$ (see (H.4) and [107] for the computations of $H_{\chi,j}$). Let us recall that the symbol space $S(m)$ is equipped with the family of semi-norms

$$\sup_{z \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}} m^{-1}(z)\left|\frac{\partial^\gamma}{\partial z^\gamma}u(z)\right|$$

Now we can prove the following lemma.

**Lemma 34** *There is a compact set* $K$ *in* $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ *such that for*

$$m(\alpha, t) = \big\langle\varphi_\alpha, \hat{A}_\chi U(t)\varphi_\alpha\big\rangle$$

*we have*

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}/K} \left|m(\alpha, t)\right| d\alpha = O\left(\hbar^{+\infty}\right)$$

*uniformly in every bounded interval in* $t$.

*Proof* Let $\tilde{\chi} \in C_0^\infty(]E-\delta E, E+\delta E[)$ such that $\tilde{\chi}\chi = \chi$. Using (H.3) and the composition rule for $\hbar$-pseudodifferential operators we can see that $\hat{A}_\chi(\hat{H})$ is bounded on $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. So there exists a $C > 0$ such that

$$\left|m(\alpha, t)\right| \le C \left\| \tilde{\chi}\left(\hat{H}\right)\varphi_\alpha \right\|^2$$

But we can write

$$\left\| \tilde{\chi}\left(\hat{H}\right)\varphi_\alpha \right\|^2 = \left\langle \tilde{\chi}\left(\hat{H}\right)^2 \varphi_\alpha, \varphi_\alpha \right\rangle$$

Let us introduce the Wigner function, $w_\alpha$, for $\varphi_\alpha$ (i.e. the Weyl symbol of the orthogonal projection on $\varphi_\alpha$). We have

$$\left\langle \tilde{\chi}\left(\hat{H}\right)^2 \varphi_\alpha, \varphi_\alpha \right\rangle = (\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int H_{\chi^2}(z) w_\alpha(z)\, dz$$

where

$$w_\alpha(z) = (\pi\hbar)^{-n} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|z-\alpha|^2}{\hbar}}$$

Using remainder estimates from [107] we have, for every $N$ large enough,

$$\hat{H}_{\chi^2} = \sum_{0 \le j \le N} H_{\chi^2, j} \hbar^j + \hbar^{N+1} R_N(\hbar)$$

where the following estimate in Hilbert–Schmidt norm holds:

$$\sup_{0<\hbar\le 1} \left\| R_N(\hbar) \right\|_{HS} < +\infty$$

Now there is an $R > 0$ such that for every $j$, we have $\mathrm{Supp}[H_{\chi^2, j}] \subseteq \{z, |z| < R\}$. So the proof of the lemma follows from

$$\left\| R_N(\hbar) \right\|_{HS}^2 = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n} \int \left\| R_N(\hbar)\varphi_\alpha \right\|^2 d\alpha$$

and from the elementary estimate, which holds for some $C, c > 0$,

$$\iint_{\{|z|\le R, |\alpha| \ge R+1\}} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{|\alpha - r|^2}{\hbar}}\, dz\, d\alpha \le C \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{c}{\hbar}} \qquad \square$$

From (5.49) we see that a sufficient condition to apply the stationary phase theorem is the following "clean intersection condition" for the Hamiltonian flow $\phi^t$.

**Clean Intersection Condition (CI)** We assume that $\mathcal{C}_E$ is a union of smooth compact connected components and on each component, the tangent space $T_{(t_0,\alpha_0)}\mathcal{C}_E$ to $\mathcal{C}_E$ at $(t_0,\alpha_0)$ coincides with the linear space $\{(\tau,v)\in\mathbb{R}\times\mathbb{R}^{2n}, v\cdot\partial_\alpha H=0, (F_{t_0}\mathbb{1})v+\tau\dot{\alpha}=0\}$.

So under condition (CI) the kernel of $\Psi''_E(t_0,\alpha_0)$ coincides with the tangent space $T_{(t_0,\alpha_0)}(\mathcal{C}_E)$. Hence $\Psi''_E(t_0,\alpha_0)$ is non-degenerate on the normal space at $\mathcal{C}_E$ on $(t_0,\alpha_0)$, as is required to apply the stationary phase theorem. At this point we have already proved that there exists an asymptotic expansion for the regularized density of states $\rho_A(E)$. A more difficult problem is to compute this asymptotics in general.

The simpler case is the period 0 of the flow: $\mathcal{C}_E=\{0,\alpha), H(\alpha)=E\}$. Then the property (CI) is satisfied if $E$ is non critical for $H$. Remark that 0 is not an accumulation point in the periods of classical paths.

The Hessian matrix on $\mathcal{C}_E$ is

$$\Psi''_E(0,\alpha)=\begin{pmatrix}-\frac{1}{2}\nabla H & i\nabla H\\ -\nabla H & 0\end{pmatrix}$$

where $\nabla H=\partial_\alpha H$. The normal space $\mathcal{N}_\alpha$ to $\mathcal{C}_E$ has the basis $\{(1,0), (0,\nabla H)\}$. So the determinant of $\Psi''_E(0,\alpha)$ restricted to $\mathcal{N}_{(0,\alpha)}$ is $\|\nabla H\|^4$. The stationary phase theorem gives us

**Proposition 48** *Let* $\mathrm{g}$ *be such that* $\tilde{\mathrm{g}}$ *is supported in* $]-T_0,T_0[$ *where* $T_0>0$ *and* $\phi^t$ *has no periodic trajectory on* $\Sigma_E$ *with a period in* $]-T_0,T_0[\backslash\{0\}$. *Then we have*

$$\rho_A(E)=\tilde{\mathrm{g}}(0)(2\pi)^{-n}\left(\int_{\Sigma_E}\frac{\chi(H(\alpha))}{\|\nabla H\|}\,d\Sigma_E\right)\hbar^{1-n}+O\big(\hbar^{2-n}\big) \tag{5.53}$$

*Moreover the asymptotics can be extended as a full asymptotics in* $\hbar$.

As an application of (5.53) we have the following.

**Theorem 30** (Weyl asymptotic formula) *Assume that* $H$ *satisfies condition* (H.0). *Consider* $\lambda_1<\lambda_2$ *such that* $H^{-1}[\lambda_1-\varepsilon,\lambda_2+\varepsilon]$ *is compact and are non critical values for* $H$. *Let* $N_I$ *be the number of eigenvalues* $E_j(\hbar)$ *of* $\hat{H}$ *in* $I=[\lambda_1,\lambda_2]$.

*Then we have*

$$N_I=(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\mathrm{Vol}\big\{\alpha\in\mathbb{R}^{2n},\ H(\alpha)\in I\big\}+O\big(\hbar^{1-n}\big) \tag{5.54}$$

*Proof* Using a partition of unity it is enough to consider

$$\sigma(\lambda)=\sum_{E_j(\hbar)\le\lambda}\chi\big(E_j(\hbar)\big)$$

where $\chi$ is supported in a small neighborhood of $\lambda_1$ or $\lambda_2$ (between $\lambda_1$ and $\lambda_2$ we can apply the functional calculus to get an asymptotic expansion; see [107]).

To prove an asymptotic expansion for $\sigma(\lambda)$ we use (5.53) choosing $A=\chi(H)$, $\tilde{g}$ even, $\tilde{g}(0)=1$, $g\geq 0$ and $g(\lambda)\geq\delta_0$ for $|\lambda|\leq\varepsilon_0$ for some $\delta_0>0$, $\varepsilon_0>0$. We have

$$\sigma(\lambda)-\frac{1}{\hbar}\int g\Big(\frac{\mu-\lambda}{\hbar}\Big)\sigma(\mu)\,d\mu=\int\big(\sigma(\lambda)-\sigma(\lambda+\tau\hbar)\big)g(\tau)\,d\tau \qquad (5.55)$$

From (5.53) we have, after integration,

$$\hbar^{-1}\int g\Big(\frac{\mu-\lambda}{\hbar}\Big)\sigma(\mu)\,d\mu=(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{H(\alpha)\leq\lambda}d\alpha\,\chi\big(H(\alpha)\big)+O\big(\hbar^{-n}\big)$$

Using the following estimate, for some $C>0$:

$$\big|\sigma(\lambda+\tau\hbar)-\sigma(\lambda)\big|\leq C\big(1+|\tau|\big)\hbar^{1-n} \qquad (5.56)$$

we get

$$\sigma(\lambda)=(2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{H(\alpha)\leq\lambda}d\alpha\,\chi\big(H(\alpha)\big)+O\big(\hbar^{-n}\big)$$

then (5.54) follows.

Now we prove (5.56). It is enough to consider the case $\tau\geq 0$.

Suppose $\tau\leq\varepsilon_0$. Then

$$\delta_0\int_{\lambda}^{\lambda+\tau\hbar}\sigma(\mu)\leq\int d\mu\,g\Big(\frac{\mu-\lambda}{\hbar}\Big)=O\big(\hbar^{1-n}\big)$$

For $\tau=\ell\varepsilon_0$ with $\ell\in\mathbb{N}$, using the triangle inequality, we get

$$\big|\sigma(\lambda+\ell\varepsilon_0\hbar)-\sigma(\lambda)\big|\leq C\ell\hbar^{1-n}$$

Finally for $\ell\varepsilon_0<\tau<(\ell+1)\varepsilon_0$ using again the triangle inequality we get (5.56). □

*Remark 28* Assuming that the set of all periodical trajectories of $H$ in $\Sigma_E$ is of Liouville-measure 0, it is possible to prove by the same method the following result. For every $C>0$ we have

$$\lim_{\hbar\searrow 0}\hbar^{n-1}\sharp\big\{j,\,E-C\hbar\leq E_j(\hbar)\leq E-C\hbar\big\}=\int_{\Sigma_E}dL_E=:L_E(\Sigma_E) \qquad (5.57)$$

This result was already proved in [106, 158] using Fourier-integral operators.

Now we come to the proof of the Gutzwiller trace formula (5.18).

Note that for isolated periodic orbits on $\Sigma_E$ the non-degenerate assumption is equivalent to the condition (CI). So it results from our discussion that in this case the Hessian matrix $\Psi''_E$ at $(t_0,\alpha_0)$, where $\gamma$ is a periodic path with period $t_0=kT^*_\gamma$ and $\alpha_0\in\gamma$ is non-degenerate on the normal space $\mathcal{N}_{t_0,\alpha_0}$ at $\mathcal{C}_E$. Here $\mathcal{N}_{t_0,\alpha_0}$ is the linear space $\{\mathbb{R}(1,0)+\{(0,v),\ v\in\mathbb{R}^{2n},\sigma(v,\nabla H)=0\}$. Our main problem is to compute the determinant of the restriction $\Psi''_{E,\perp}(t_0,\alpha_0)$ of $\Psi''_E(t_0,\alpha_0)$ to $\mathcal{N}_{t_0,\alpha_0}$. We shall denote $\Pi_{\dot\alpha}$ the orthogonal projection in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ on $J\nabla H(\alpha_0) := \dot\alpha$ (tangent vector to $\gamma$).

It is convenient to introduce the notations

$$G = \frac{1}{2}\big(W_{t_0}^{\sharp} - \mathbb{1}\big), \qquad K = \big(F_{t_0}^T - \mathbb{1}\big)\left(G + \frac{i}{2}J\right) + iJ$$

Using that $F_{t_0}$ is symplectic we have

$$\partial^2_{\alpha,\alpha}\Psi_E(t_0,\alpha_0) = K(F_{t_0} - \mathbb{1})$$

So we have

$$\Psi_E''(t_0,\alpha_0) = i^{-1}\begin{pmatrix} G\dot\alpha\cdot\dot\alpha & K\dot\alpha \\ K\dot\alpha & K(F_{t_0} - \mathbb{1}) \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.58}$$

This formula is general. Furthermore we have the very useful result:

**Lemma 35** *$K$ is a $2n \times 2n$ invertible matrix and we have*

$$K^{-1} = -\frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} U - \mathbb{1} & -i(\mathbb{1} + U) \\ i\mathbb{1} + V & -(\mathbb{1} + iV) \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.59}$$

*In particular we have*

$$\det K = (-1)^n \det\left(\frac{Y}{2}\right)^{-1} \tag{5.60}$$

*where $U = U_{t_0}$, $V = V_{t_0}$, $Y = Y_{t_0}$.*

*Proof* We have, using definition of $W$,

$$W^{\sharp} - \mathbb{1} + iJ = \begin{pmatrix} W - \mathbb{1} & -i(W - \mathbb{1}) \\ -i(W + \mathbb{1}) & -(W + \mathbb{1}) \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= \begin{pmatrix} 2iV & 2V \\ -2iU & -2U \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} (U - iV)^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & (U - iV)^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

After some algebraic computations, using in particular the symplectic relations, we find

$$K = \begin{pmatrix} -\mathbb{1} - iV & i(\mathbb{1} + U) \\ -i\mathbb{1} - V & -\mathbb{1} + U \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} (U - iV)^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & (U - iV)^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

So we get the lemma. □

Now we begin to use the non-degeneracy condition to compute the determinant of $\Psi_{E,\perp}''(t_0,\alpha_0)$. We have

$$\det\big(i^{-1}\Psi_{E,\perp}''(t_0,\alpha_0)\big) = i^{-1}\det\begin{pmatrix} d & K\dot\alpha \\ K\dot\alpha & K(F_{t_0} - \mathbb{1}) + i\Pi_{\dot\alpha} \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.61}$$

where $d = \frac{1}{2}(W^{\sharp} - \mathbb{1})$.

Let us introduce now convenient coordinates. We define a Poincaré section $\mathcal{S}$ by the equation $\mathcal{T}(\alpha) = 0$ where $\mathcal{T}$ is a classical observable such that $\{\mathcal{T}, H\}(\alpha) = 1$, $\mathcal{T}(\alpha_0) = 0$, $\mathcal{T}$ is defined in an open neighborhood $\mathcal{V}_0$ of $\alpha_0$.

The first return Poincaré map $\mathcal{P}(\alpha) = \phi^{T(\alpha)}(\alpha)$ is defined in $\mathcal{V}_0 \cap S$ such that $\mathcal{T}(\phi^{T(\alpha)}(\alpha)) = 0$ with $T(\alpha_0) = t_0$, $T(\alpha)$ is the first return time.

In $\mathcal{V}_0$ we can define new symplectic coordinates: $(e, \tau, \varpi)$, where $e = H(\alpha)$, $\tau = \mathcal{T}(\alpha)$, $\varpi(\alpha) \in \mathbb{R}^{2(n-1)}$. The differential $\mathcal{P}'(\alpha_0)$ of $\mathcal{P}$ at $\alpha_0$ is related with the stability matrix $F = (\partial_\alpha \phi^{t_0})(\alpha_0)$:

$$\mathcal{P}'(\alpha_0)v = Fv - \big(F^T \nabla \mathcal{T} \cdot v\big)\dot{\alpha} \tag{5.62}$$

For $e$ near $E$, the Poincaré map $\mathcal{P}_e$ is defined in $\mathcal{V}_0 \cap \mathcal{S} \cap \Sigma_e$ into $\mathcal{V}_1 \cap \mathcal{S} \cap \Sigma_e$, where $\mathcal{V}_1$ is a neighborhood of $\alpha_0$, by $\mathcal{P}(\alpha) = \phi^{T(\alpha)}(\alpha)$, $T(\alpha_0) = t_0$. It is a symplectic map and for $e = E$ its differential $P_\gamma$ is the restriction of $\mathcal{P}'(\alpha_0)$ to $N_\gamma := T_{\alpha_0}(\mathcal{S} \cap \Sigma_E)$ (for more details we refer to [103]).

Note that $N_\gamma = \{v \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}, v \cdot \nabla H = v \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} = 0\}$.

When the energy $e$ is varying around $E$ we have a smooth family of closed trajectories of period $T(e)$ parametrized by $\alpha(e) \in \mathcal{V}_0 \cap \mathcal{S}$ such that $\alpha(E) = \alpha_0$ and $T(E) = t_0$. $T$ and $\alpha$ are smooth in $e$. This result is known as the cylinder Theorem [103]. It is a consequence of the implicit function theorem applied to the equation $\phi^T(e)(\alpha(e)) = \alpha(e)$. In particular we have

$$(F - \mathbb{1})\alpha'(E) = T'(E)\dot{\alpha} \tag{5.63}$$

Note that $\alpha'(E) \cdot \nabla H = 1$ so $\alpha'(E) \neq 0$ and the non-degeneracy assumption implies that $\{\dot{\alpha}, \alpha'(E)\}$ is a basis for the generalized eigenspace $E_1$ for the eigenvalue 1 of $F$ (we have a non-trivial Jordan block if $T'(E) \neq 0$).

Let $V$ be the symplectic orthogonal of $E_1$: $V = \{v | \sigma(v, \dot{\alpha}) = \sigma(v, \alpha'(E)) = 0\}$. The restriction of $F$ to $V$ is the algebraic linear Poincaré map ${P_\gamma}^{(al)}$. Using (5.62) we can easily prove that $P_\gamma$ and ${P_\gamma}^{(al)}$ are conjugate: $MP_\gamma = {P_\gamma}^{(al)}$ where $M$ is an invertible linear map from $N_\gamma$ onto $V$. So we have

$$\det(P_\gamma - \mathbb{1}) = \det\big({P_\gamma}^{(al)} - \mathbb{1}\big)$$

In particular if $\gamma$ is non-degenerate then $P_\gamma - \mathbb{1}$ is invertible. The strategy is to simplify as far as possible the r.h.s. in (5.61).

To simplify our discussion we shall assume that $T'(E) \neq 0$. It is not a restriction because if $T' = 0$ we can perturb a little $F$ by $F^\varepsilon$, $\varepsilon > 0$, such that

$$F^\varepsilon \dot{\alpha} = F \quad \text{on } V, \qquad F^\varepsilon \dot{\alpha} = \alpha, \qquad F^\varepsilon \alpha'(E) = \alpha'(E) + \varepsilon\dot{\alpha}$$

The determinant we have to compute depends only on the symplectic map $F$, so we can compute with $F^\varepsilon \dot{\alpha}$ and take the limit as $\varepsilon \to 0$.

The first step is to find $v \in \mathbb{C}^{2n}$ such that

$$(F - \mathbb{1})v + v \cdot \dot{\alpha} K^{-1} \dot{\alpha} = \dot{\alpha} \tag{5.64}$$

With this $v := v_0$ we get

$$\det\big(i^{-1}\Psi''_{E,\perp}(t_0,\alpha_0)\big) = i^{-1}\det\begin{pmatrix} d - v_0\cdot K\dot\alpha & K\dot\alpha \\ 0 & K(F-\mathbb{1}) + i\Pi_{\dot\alpha}\end{pmatrix} \tag{5.65}$$

where $\Pi_{\dot\alpha} = \frac{(v\cdot\dot\alpha)}{|\dot\alpha|^2}\dot\alpha$.

A direct computation gives

$$K^{-1}\dot\alpha = -\frac{i}{2}(F+\mathbb{1})\nabla H$$

so (5.64) is transformed into

$$(F-\mathbb{1})v = \frac{i}{2}v\cdot\dot\alpha(F+\mathbb{1})\nabla H$$

Using $(F-\mathbb{1})^T\nabla H = 0$ we have $v\cdot\dot\alpha = 0$, so we have to solve

$$(F-\mathbb{1})v_0 = \dot\alpha \tag{5.66}$$

We are looking for $v_0 = \lambda\dot\alpha + \mu\alpha'(E)$ and we find

$$v_0 = \frac{1}{T'(E)}\left(\frac{\alpha'(E)\cdot\dot\alpha}{|\dot\alpha|^2}\dot\alpha - \alpha'(E)\right) \tag{5.67}$$

So our first simplification gives the expression

$$\det\big(i^{-1}\Psi''_{E,\perp}(t_0,\alpha_0)\big) = i^{-1}\big(d - v_0\dot K\dot\alpha\big)\det K\det\big(F - \mathbb{1} + iK^{-1}\Pi_{\dot\alpha}\big)$$

For the first term we get

$$d - v_0\dot K\dot\alpha = -iv_0\cdot J\dot\alpha = i\frac{\sigma(\alpha'(E),\dot\alpha)}{T'(E)}$$

$\det K$ is already computed. We shall compute $\det(F - \mathbb{1} + iK^{-1}\Pi_{\dot\alpha})$ in a symplectic basis $\{v_1, v_2, v_3, \dots, v_{2n}\}$ where $v_1 = \dot\alpha$, $v_2 = \frac{1}{\nabla H\cdot\alpha'(E)}\alpha'(E)$ where $\sigma(v_{2j-1}, v_{2j}) = 1$ for $1 \le j \le n$ and $\sigma(v_j, v_k) = 0$ if $|j-k| \ne 1$. In this basis we have

$$K^{-1}\Pi_{\dot\alpha}v_j = \frac{v_j\cdot\dot\alpha}{|\dot\alpha|^2}K^{-1}\Pi_{\dot\alpha}\dot\alpha$$

So combining with the first column we can eliminate the terms $K^{-1}\Pi_{\dot\alpha}v_j$ for $j \ge 2$ and using that $F - \mathbb{1}$ is invertible on $V$ we can assume that in the first column only the two first terms are not zero. Finally we have obtained

$$\det\big(F - \mathbb{1} + iK^{-1}\Pi_{\dot\alpha}\big) = \det\begin{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} x_1 & \delta \\ x_2 & 0\end{pmatrix} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & [P_\gamma - \mathbb{1}]\end{pmatrix} = -\delta x_2\det(P_\gamma - \mathbb{1}) \tag{5.68}$$

It is left to compute $x_2$ and $\delta$. We have

$$\delta = \sigma\big((F - \mathbb{1})v_2, v_2\big) = -\frac{T'(E)}{(\nabla H \cdot \alpha'(E))^2}\sigma\big(\dot{\alpha}, \alpha'(E)\big) \tag{5.69}$$

$$x_2 = -\frac{1}{2}\sigma\big((F + \mathbb{1})\nabla H, v_1\big) = |\nabla H|^2 \tag{5.70}$$

So we get

$$\det\big(i^{-1}\Psi''_{E,\perp}(t_0, \alpha_0)\big) = 2^n \|\nabla H\|^2 \det(Y)^{-1} \det(P_\gamma - \mathbb{1}) \tag{5.71}$$

Using the expression (5.40) we find the leading term $\rho_{1,\gamma}(E)$ for the contribution of the periodic path $\gamma$ in formula (5.18), assuming for simplicity that $A = 1$,

$$\rho_{1,\gamma}(E) = (2\pi)^{n/2-1}\big[\det\big(YU^{-1}\big)\big]_*^{-1/2}[\det U]_c^{-1/2}[\det Y]^{1/2} \\ \times \hat{\mathrm{g}}(T_\gamma)\big[\det(P_\gamma - \mathbb{1})\big]^{-1/2} \mathrm{e}^{i\psi_E} \|\nabla H\|^{-1} \tag{5.72}$$

where $[u]^{1/2}$ denotes a suitable branch for the square root. So we get

$$\rho_{1,\gamma}(E) = (2\pi)^{n/2-1} \mathrm{e}^{i(S_\gamma/\hbar + \sigma_\gamma\pi/2)} \hat{\mathrm{g}}(T_\gamma) T^*_\gamma \big|\det(\mathbb{1} - P_\gamma)\big|^{-1/2} \tag{5.73}$$

with $\sigma_\gamma \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $S_\gamma = \oint_\gamma p\,dq$.

Let us remark that, because $P_\gamma$ is symplectic and 1 is not eigenvalue of $P_\gamma$, we have $\det(P_\gamma - \mathbb{1}) = (-1)^{\sigma'}|\det(P_\gamma - \mathbb{1})|$ where $\sigma'$ is the number of eigenvalues of $P_\gamma$ smaller than 1. So we see that

$$\mathrm{e}^{i\sigma_\gamma\pi/2} = \pm\mathrm{e}^{i\sigma'\pi/2} \tag{5.74}$$

Thus we get that the contribution of the Maslov index in Theorem 28 is to determine the sign in (5.74).

We have given here an analytical method for its computation. We do not consider its geometrical interpretation ("Maslov cycle") for which we refer to the literature on this subject [60, 134, 166] and references in these works.

The other coefficients, $d_j^\gamma$ are spectral invariants which have been studied by Guillemin and Zelditch. In principle we can compute them using this explicit approach. This completes the proof of Theorem 28.

## 5.5 A Pointwise Trace Formula and Quasi-modes

From the well known Bohr–Sommerfeld quantization rules it is believed that there exist strong connections between periodic trajectories of a classical system $H$ and bound states of its quantization $\hat{H}$. In this section we discuss some properties of localization for bound states or approximate bound states (quasi-modes) near periodic trajectories in the simplest cases. More general results are proved in [153].

### 5.5.1 A Pointwise Trace Formula

The idea of this formula has appeared in [153]. We give here a proof of the main result of [153] for Gaussian coherent states. We assume that properties (H.0) and (H.1) are satisfied. Consider the local density of states defined for every $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ by

$$\rho_E(\alpha) \equiv \sum_j \mathrm{g}\left(\frac{E - E_j(\hbar)}{\hbar}\right)\chi\left(E_j(\hbar)\right)\left|\langle\psi_\alpha, \psi_j^\hbar\rangle\right|^2$$

where $\psi_j^\hbar$ are the normalized eigenfunctions for $\hat{H}$, $\hat{H}\psi_j^\hbar = E_j(\hbar)\psi_j^\hbar$.

**Theorem 31** *The local density of states $\rho_E(\alpha)$ has the following asymptotic behavior as $\hbar \to 0$:*

$$\rho_E(\alpha) \equiv \sum_{k\in\mathbb{N}} \ell_k(\mathrm{g}, \alpha)\hbar^{\frac{1}{2}+k} \tag{5.75}$$

*The coefficients $\ell_k(\mathrm{g}, \alpha)$ are smooth in $\alpha$ and are distributions in $\tilde{\mathrm{g}}$. Their expressions depend on the behavior of the path $t \mapsto \phi^t\alpha$.*

(i) *If the path $t \mapsto \phi^t\alpha$ has no periodic point with period in* $\operatorname{supp}\tilde{\mathrm{g}}$ *then $\ell_k(\mathrm{g}, \alpha)$ are distributions in $\tilde{\mathrm{g}}$ supported in $\{0\}$. In particular the leading term is*

$$\ell_0(\mathrm{g}, \alpha) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\pi^{-\frac{n+1}{2}}\frac{1}{\|\nabla H(\alpha)\|}\tilde{\mathrm{g}}(0) \tag{5.76}$$

(ii) *If $t \mapsto \phi^t\alpha$ has a primitive period $T^*$, $\ell_k(\mathrm{g}, \alpha)$ are distributions in $\tilde{\mathrm{g}}$ supported in $\{mT^*,\ m \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. In particular the leading term is*

$$\ell_0(\mathrm{g}, \alpha) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\pi^{-\frac{n+1}{2}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathrm{g}}\left(mT^*\right)C(m) \tag{5.77}$$

*where*

$$C(m) = \left(\mathbb{1} - W_{mT^*}^\sharp\dot{\alpha}\cdot\dot{\alpha}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}.$$

*Recall that $W_t^\sharp$ depends on the monodromy matrix $F_t$.*

*Proof* As for the trace formula (5.18), we first give a time-dependent formula for $\rho_E(\alpha)$ with the propagator $U(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\frac{t}{\hbar}\hat{H}}$.

If $\Pi_z$ is the orthogonal projection on the coherent state $\varphi_z$ we have

$$\rho_E(\alpha) = \operatorname{Tr}\left(\mathrm{g}\left(\frac{E - \hat{H}}{\hbar}\right)\chi\left(\hat{H}\right)\Pi_\alpha\right)$$

by computing the trace on the basis $\psi_j^\hbar$. So we get

$$\rho_E(\alpha) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int dt\,\tilde{\mathrm{g}}(t)\mathrm{e}^{i\frac{t}{\hbar}E}\left\langle\varphi_\alpha, U(t)\chi\left(\hat{H}\right)\varphi_\alpha\right\rangle \tag{5.78}$$

In (5.78) the integrand is the same as in the proof of the trace formula. The difference is that here we have only a time integration. So the stationary phase theorem is much simpler to apply: $\alpha$ is fixed such that $H(\alpha) = E$, the critical set of the phase $\psi_E$, is defined by the equation $\phi^t\alpha = \alpha$ so we have $t = mT^*$ where $T^*$ is the primitive period ($T^* = 0$ if $\alpha$ is not a periodic point of the flow).

$\ddot{\psi}_E(t, \alpha)$ is here the second derivative in time of $\psi_E$. So we have

$$\ddot{\psi}_E(t, \alpha) = \frac{i}{2}\big(\mathbb{1} - W_t^\sharp\big)\dot{\alpha} \cdot \dot{\alpha}$$

For $t = 0$ we have $\ddot{\psi}_E(\alpha) = \frac{i}{2}\|\nabla H\|^2$. Using that $\nabla H \neq 0$, the stationary phase theorem gives the part (i) of the Theorem.

For the periodic case we have to recall that $W_t$ is a complex symmetric $n \times n$ matrix and that $W^*W < 1$. With this properties we have easily that for every $T > 0$ there exists $c_T > 0$ such that

$$\Re\big(\mathbb{1} - W_t^\sharp\big)\dot{\alpha} \cdot \dot{\alpha} \geq c_t\|\dot{\alpha}\|^2 \quad \text{for } t \in [-T, T]$$

So the critical points $t = mT^*$, $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, are non degenerate and the stationary phase theorem gives the part (ii) of the Theorem. □

### 5.5.2 Quasi-modes and Bohr–Sommerfeld Quantization Rules

Quasi-modes (or approximated eigenfunctions) can be considered in more general and more interesting cases (see [125, 153, 159, 160]) but for simplicity we shall consider here mainly the fully periodic case. We always assume that (H.0) and (H.1) are satisfied. We introduce:

(H.P) For every $E \in [E_-, E_+]$, $\Sigma_E$ is connected and the Hamiltonian flow $\Phi_H^t$ is periodic on $\Sigma_E$ with a period $T_E$.

*Remark 29* For $n = 1$ the periodicity condition is always satisfied. For $d > 1$ this condition is rather strong. Nevertheless it is satisfied for integrable systems and for systems with a large group of symmetries.

Let us first recall a result in classical mechanics (Guillemin–Sternberg, [95]):

**Proposition 49** *Let us assume that above conditions are satisfied. Let $\gamma$ be a closed path of energy $E$ and period $T_E$. Then the action integral $\mathcal{J}(E) = \int_\gamma p\,dq$ defines a function of $E$, $C^\infty$ in $]E_-, E_+[$ and such that $\mathcal{J}'(E) = T_E$. In particular for one degree of freedom systems we have*

$$\mathcal{J}(E) = \int_{H(z)\leq E} dz$$

Now we can extend $\mathcal{J}$ to an increasing function on $\mathbb{R}$, linear outside a neighborhood of $I$. Let us introduce the rescaled Hamiltonian $\hat{K} = (2\pi)^{-1}\mathcal{J}(\hat{H})$. Using properties concerning the functional calculus [107], we can see that $\hat{K}$ has all the properties of $\hat{H}$ and furthermore its Hamiltonian flow has a constant period $2\pi$ in $\Sigma_\lambda^{K_0} = K_0^{-1}(\lambda)$ for $\lambda \in [\lambda_-, \lambda_+]$ where $\lambda_\pm = \frac{1}{2\pi}\mathcal{J}(E_\pm)$. So in what follows we replace $\hat{H}$ by $\hat{K}$, its "energy renormalization". Indeed, the mapping $\frac{1}{2\pi}\mathcal{J}$ is a bijective correspondence between the spectrum of $\hat{H}$ in $[E_-, E_+]$ and the spectrum of $\hat{K}$ in $[\lambda_-, \lambda_+]$, including multiplicities, such that $\lambda_j = \frac{1}{2\pi}\mathcal{J}(E_j)$.

Let us denote by $m$ the average of the action of a periodic path on $\Sigma_\lambda^{K_0}$ and by $\mu \in \mathbb{Z}$ its Maslov index ($m = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_\gamma p\,dx - 2\pi F$). Under the above assumptions the following results were proved in [107], using semi-classical Fourier-integral operators and ideas introduced before by Colin de Verdière [44] and Weinstein [195].

#### 5.5.2.1 Statements of Results Concerning Spectral Asymptotics

**Theorem 32** [44, 107, 195] *There exist* $C_0 > 0$ *and* $\hbar_1 > 0$ *such that*

$$\operatorname{spect}(\hat{K}) \cap [\lambda_-, \lambda_+] \subseteq \bigcup_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} I_k(\hbar) \tag{5.79}$$

*with*

$$I_k(\hbar) = \left[-m + \left(k - \frac{\mu}{4}\right)\hbar - C_0\hbar^2, -m + \left(k - \frac{\mu}{4}\right)\hbar + C_0\hbar^2\right]$$

*for* $\hbar \in ]0, \hbar_1]$.

Let us remark for $\hbar$ small enough, the intervals $I_k(\hbar)$ do not intersect and this theorem gives the usual Bohr–Sommerfeld quantization conditions for the energy spectrum, more explicitly,

$$\lambda_k = \frac{1}{2\pi}\mathcal{J}(E_k) = \left(k - \frac{\mu}{4}\right)\hbar - m + O(\hbar^2)$$

Under a stronger assumption on the flow, it is possible to estimate the number of states in each cluster $I_k(\hbar)$.

(H.F) $\Phi_{K_0}^t$ has no fixed point in $\Sigma_F^{K_0}$, $\forall\lambda \in [\lambda_- - \varepsilon, \lambda_+ + \varepsilon]$ and $\forall t \in ]0, 2\pi[$.

Let us denote by $d_k(\hbar)$ the number of eigenvalues of $\hat{K}$ in the interval $I_k(\hbar)$.

**Theorem 33** [42, 44, 108] *Under the above assumptions, for* $\hbar$ *small enough and* $-m + (k - \frac{\mu}{4})\hbar \in [\lambda_-, \lambda_+]$, *we have*

$$d_k(\hbar) \equiv \sum_{j\geq 1} \Gamma_j\left(-m + \left(k - \frac{\mu}{4}\right)\hbar\right)\hbar^{j-d} \tag{5.80}$$

*with* $\Gamma_j \in C^\infty([\lambda_-, \lambda_+])$. *In particular*

$$\Gamma_1(\lambda) = (2\pi)^{-d} \int_{\Sigma_\lambda} d\nu_\lambda$$

In the particular case $n = 1$ we have $\mu = 2$ and $m = -\min(H_0)$ hence $d_k(\hbar) = 1$. Furthermore the Bohr–Sommerfeld conditions take the following more accurate form:

**Theorem 34** [107] *Let us assume* $n = 1$ *and* $m = 0$. *Then there exists a sequence* $f_k \in C^\infty([F_-, F_+])$, *for* $k \geq 2$, *such that*

$$\lambda_\ell + \sum_{k\geq 2} h^k f_k(\lambda_\ell) = \left(\ell + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar + O\left(\hbar^\infty\right) \tag{5.81}$$

*for* $\ell \in \mathbb{Z}$ *such that* $(\ell + \frac{1}{2})\hbar \in [\lambda_-, \lambda_+]$.

*In particular there exists* $g_k \in C^\infty([\lambda_-, \lambda_+])$ *such that*

$$\lambda_\ell = \left(\ell + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar + \sum_{k\geq 2} h^k g_k\left(\left(\ell + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar\right) + O\left(\hbar^\infty\right) \tag{5.82}$$

*where* $\ell \in Z$ *such that* $(\ell + \frac{1}{2})\hbar \in [F_-, F_+]$.

We can deduce from the above theorem and Taylor formula the Bohr–Sommerfeld quantization rules for the eigenvalues $E_n$ at all order in $\hbar$.

**Corollary 17** *There exist* $\lambda \mapsto b(\lambda, \hbar)$ *and* $C^\infty$ *functions* $b_j$ *defined on* $[\lambda^-, \lambda^+]$ *such that* $b(\lambda, \hbar) = \sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}} b_j(\lambda)\hbar^j + O(\hbar^\infty)$ *and the spectrum* $E_n$ *of* $\hat{H}$ *is given by*

$$E_n = b\left(\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar, \hbar\right) + O\left(\hbar^\infty\right) \tag{5.83}$$

*for* $n$ *such that* $(n + \frac{1}{2})\hbar \in [\lambda^-, \lambda^+]$. *In particular we have* $b_0(\lambda) = \mathcal{J}^{-1}(2\pi\lambda)$ *and* $b_1 = 0$.

When $H^{-1}(I)$ is not connected but such that the $M$ connected components are mutually symmetric, under linear symplectic maps, then the above results still hold [107].

*Remark 30* For $n = 1$, the methods usually used to prove existence of a complete asymptotic expansion for the eigenvalues of $\hat{H}$ are not suitable to compute the coefficients $b_j(\lambda)$ for $j \geq 2$. This was done recently in [46] using the coefficients $d_{jk}$ appearing in the functional calculus.

#### 5.5.2.2 A Proof of the Quantization Rules and Quasi-modes

We shall give here a direct proof for the Bohr–Sommerfeld quantization rules by using coherent states, following [26]. A similar approach, with more restrictive assumptions, was considered before in [151].

The starting point is the following remark. Let $r > 0$ and suppose that there exists $C_r$ such that for every $\hbar \in ]0, 1]$, there exist $E \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$, such that

$$\|(\hat{H} - E)\psi\| \le C_r \hbar^r, \quad \text{and} \quad \liminf_{\hbar \to 0} \|\psi\| := c > 0 \tag{5.84}$$

If these conditions are satisfied, we shall say that $\hat{H}$ has a quasi-mode of energy $E$ with an error $O(\hbar^r)$. With quasi-modes we can find some points in the spectrum of $\hat{H}$ close to the energy $E$. More precisely, if $\delta > \frac{C_r}{c}$, the interval $[E - \delta\hbar^r, E + \delta\hbar^r]$ meets the point spectrum of $\hat{H}$. This is easily proved by contradiction, using that $\hat{H}$ is self-adjoint. So if the spectrum of $\hat{H}$ is discrete in a neighborhood of $E$, then we know that $\hat{H}$ has at least one eigenvalue in $[E - \delta\hbar^r, E + \delta\hbar^r]$.

Let us assume that the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ satisfies conditions (H.0), (H.1), (H.P).

Using Proposition 49, we can assume that the Hamiltonian flow $\Phi_t^H$ has a constant period $2\pi$ in $H^{-1}]E_- - \varepsilon, E_+ + \varepsilon[$, for some $\varepsilon > 0$.

Following an old idea in quantum mechanics (A. Einstein), let us try to construct a quasi-mode for $\hat{H}$ with energies $E^{(\hbar)}$ close to $E \in [E_-, E_+]$, related with a $2\pi$ periodic trajectory $\gamma_E \subset \Sigma_E^{H_0}$, by the Ansatz

$$\psi_{\gamma_E} = \int_0^{2\pi} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{itE^{(\hbar)}}{\hbar}} U(t)\varphi_z \, dt \tag{5.85}$$

where $z \in \gamma_E$ ($\psi_{\gamma_E}$ is a state living on $\gamma_E$). Let us introduce the real numbers

$$\sigma(\hbar) = \frac{1}{2\pi\hbar} \int_0^{2\pi} \left[\dot{q}(t)p(t) - H_0\big(q(t), p(t)\big)\right] dt + \frac{\mu}{4}$$

where $t \mapsto (q(t), p(t))$ is a $2\pi$-periodic trajectory $\gamma_E$ in $H_0{}^{-1}(E)$, $E \in [E_-, E_+]$, $\mu$ is the Maslov index of $\gamma$. In order that the Ansatz (5.85) provides a good quasi-mode, we must first check that its mass is not too small.

**Proposition 50** *Assume that* $2\pi$ *is the primitive period of* $\gamma_E$. *Then there exists a real number* $m_E > 0$ *such that*

$$\|\psi_{\gamma_E}\| = m_E \hbar^{1/4} + O\big(\hbar^{1/2}\big) \tag{5.86}$$

*Proof* Using the propagation of coherent states and the formula giving the action of metaplectic transformations on Gaussians, up to an error term $O(\sqrt{\hbar})$, we have

$$\|\psi_{\gamma_E}\|^2 = (\pi\hbar)^{-d/2}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\Phi(t,s,x)}\big(\det(A_t+iB_t)\big)^{-1/2} \\ \times\big(\overline{\det(A_s+iB_s)}\big)^{-1/2}\,dt\,ds\,dx$$

where the phase $\Phi$ is

$$\Phi(t,s,x) = (t-s)E + (\delta_t-\delta_s) + \frac{1}{2}(q_s\cdot p_s - q_t\cdot p_t) + x\cdot(p_t-p_s) \\ + \frac{1}{2}\big(\Gamma_t(x-q_t)\cdot(x-q_t) - \overline{\Gamma_s}(x-q_s)\cdot(x-q_s)\big) \tag{5.87}$$

$\Gamma_t$ is the complex matrix defined in (5.36).

Let us show that we can compute an asymptotics for $\|\psi_{\gamma_E}\|^2$ with the stationary phase Theorem. Using that $\Im(\Gamma_t)$ is positive non-degenerate, we find that

$$\Im\big(\Phi(t,s,x)\big)\geq 0, \quad \text{and} \quad \big\{\Im\big(\Phi(t,s,x)\big)=0\big\} \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \{x=q_t=q_s\} \tag{5.88}$$

On the set $\{x=q_t=q_s\}$ we have $\partial_x\Phi(t,s,x) = p_t - p_s$. So if $\{x=q_t=q_s\}$ then we have $t=s$ ($2\pi$ is the primitive period of $\gamma_E$) and we get easily that $\partial_s\Phi(t,s,x)=0$. In the variables $(s,x)$ we have found that $\Phi(t,s,x)$ has one critical point: $(s,x)=(t,q_t)$. Let us compute the Hessian matrix $\partial^{(2)}_{s,x}\Phi$ at $(t,t,q_t)$:

$$\partial^{(2)}_{s,x}\Phi(t,t,q_t) = \begin{pmatrix} -(\overline{\Gamma_t}\dot q_t - \dot p_t)\cdot\dot q_t & [\overline{\Gamma_t}(\dot q_t-\dot p_t)]^T \\ \overline{\Gamma_t}(\dot q_t - \dot p_t) & 2i\Im\Gamma_t \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.89}$$

To compute the determinant, we use the identity, for $r\in\mathbb{C}$, $u\in\mathbb{C}^d$, $R\in GL(\mathbb{C}^d)$

$$\begin{pmatrix} r & u^T \\ u & R\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -R^{-1}u & \mathbb{1}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r-u^T\cdot R^{-1}u & u^T \\ 0 & R\end{pmatrix} \tag{5.90}$$

Then we get

$$2\det\big[-i\partial^2_{s,x}\Phi(t,t,q_t)\big] \\ = \Gamma_t\dot q_t\cdot\dot q_t + \big(\Im(\Gamma_t)\big)^{-1}(\Re\Gamma_t\dot q_t - \dot p_t)\cdot(\Re\Gamma_t\dot q_t-\dot p_t)\det[2\Im\Gamma_t] \tag{5.91}$$

But $E$ is not critical, so $(\dot q_t, \dot p_t)\neq(0,0)$ and we find that $\det[-i\partial^2_{s,x}\Phi(t,t,q_t)]\neq 0$. The stationary phase Theorem (see Appendix A) gives

$$\|\psi_{\gamma_E}\|^2 = m_E{}^2\sqrt{\hbar} + O(\hbar) \tag{5.92}$$

with

$$m_E^2 = 2^{(d+1)/2}\sqrt{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}\big|\det(A_t+iB_t)\big|^{-1/2}\big|\det\big[-i\partial^2_{s,x}\Phi(t,t,q_t)\big]\big|^{-1/2}\,dt \tag{5.93}$$

□

We now give one formulation of the Bohr–Sommerfeld quantization rule.

**Theorem 35** *Let us assume that the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ satisfies conditions* (H.0), (H.1), (H.P) *with period $T_E = 2\pi$ and that $2\pi$ is a primitive period for a periodic trajectory $\gamma_E \subseteq \Sigma_E$.*

*Then $\hbar^{-1/4}\psi_{\gamma_E}$ is a quasi-mode for $\hat{H}$, with an error term $O(\hbar^{7/4})$, if $E$ satisfies the quantization condition*:

$$\sigma(\hbar) := \frac{\mu}{4} + \frac{1}{2\pi\hbar}\int_{\gamma_E} p\,dq \in \mathbb{Z} \tag{5.94}$$

*Moreover, the number $\lambda := \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\gamma_E} p\,dq - E$ is constant on $[E_-, E_+]$. Having chosen $C > 0$ large enough, the intervals*

$$I(k,\hbar) = \left[\left(\frac{\mu}{4} + b + k\right)\hbar + \lambda - C\hbar^{7/4}, \left(\frac{\mu}{4} + b + k\right)\hbar + \lambda + C\hbar^{7/4}\right]$$

*satisfy*: *if $I(k,\hbar) \cap [E_-, E_+] \neq \emptyset$ then $\hat{H}$ has an eigenvalue in $I(k,\hbar)$.*

*Proof* We use, once more, the propagation of coherent states. Using periodicity of the flow, we have, if $H(z) = E$,

$$U(2\pi)\varphi_z = \mathrm{e}^{2i\pi\sigma(\hbar)}\varphi_z + O(\hbar) \tag{5.95}$$

Here we have to remark that the term in $\sqrt{\hbar}$ has disappeared. This needs a calculation.

By integration by parts, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{H}\psi_{\gamma_E} &= i\hbar\int_0^{2\pi} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{itE}{\hbar}}\partial_t U(t)\varphi_z\,dt \\ &= i\hbar\left(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{2i\pi E}{\hbar}}U(2\pi)\varphi_z - \varphi_z\right) + E\psi_{\gamma_E} \\ &= E\psi_{\gamma_E} + O\left(\hbar^2\right) \end{aligned} \tag{5.96}$$

So, we finally get a quasi-mode with an error $O(\hbar^{7/4})$, using (5.86). □

More accurate results on quasi-modes, using coherent states, are proved in particular in [125, 164].

# Chapter 6
# Quantization and Coherent States on the 2-Torus

**Abstract** The two dimensional torus $\mathbb{T}^2$ is a very simple symplectic space. Nevertheless it gives non trivial examples of chaotic dynamical systems. These systems can be quantized in a natural way. We shall study some dynamical and spectral properties of them.

## 6.1 Introduction

The 2-torus $\mathbb{T}^2$, with its canonical symplectic form, is seen here as a phase space. It is useful to consider classical systems and quantum systems built on $\mathbb{T}^2$ for at least two purposes.

Dynamical properties of classical non-integrable Hamiltonian systems in the phase space $\mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d$ ($d \geq 2$) are quite difficult to study. In particular there are not so many explicit models of chaotic systems. But on the 2-torus it is very easy to get a discrete chaotic system by considering a $2 \times 2$ matrix $F$ with entries in $\mathbb{Z}$ and such that $|\mathrm{Tr}\, F| > 2$. So we get a discrete flow $t \mapsto F^t z$ for $t \in \mathbb{Z}$, $z \in \mathbb{T}^2$[1], where $\mathbb{T}^2 = \mathbb{R}^2/\mathbb{Z}^2$ is the 2-dimensional torus.

In 1980 Hannay–Berry succeeded to construct a "good quantization" $\hat{R}(F)$ corresponding to the "classical system" $(\mathbb{T}^2, F)$. From this starting point many results were obtained concerning consequences of classical chaos on the behavior of the eigenstates of the unitary family of operators $\hat{R}(F)$ as well by physicists and mathematicians. In this section we shall explain some of these results and their relationship with periodic coherent states.

## 6.2 The Automorphisms of the 2-Torus

We have already seen in Chap. 1 that $\mathbb{R}^2$ is a symplectic linear space with the canonical symplectic bilinear form $\sigma = dq \wedge dp$. $\mathbb{T}^2$ is also a symplectic (compact) manifold with the symplectic two-form $\sigma = dq \wedge dp$ identified with the plane Lebesgue measure.

[1]For $t \in \mathbb{N}$, $F^t z$ means that we apply $F$ $t$-times starting from $z$, and if $t > 0$ then $F^t = (F^{-t})^{-1}$.

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_6, 

Here we call automorphism of the 2-torus $\mathbb{T}^2$ any map $F$ induced by a symplectic matrix $F \in SL(2, \mathbb{Z})$.

Let $F$ be of the form

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.1}$$

with entries in $\mathbb{Z}$ satisfying $\det(F) = ad - bc = 1$; the corresponding map of the 2-torus is given by

$$(q, p) \in \mathbb{T}^2 \longmapsto (q', p') \in \mathbb{T}^2, \quad \text{with } q' = aq + bp \ (\text{mod } 1),\ p' = cq + dp \ (\text{mod } 1)$$

So $F$ is a symplectic diffeomorphism of $\mathbb{T}^2$. In particular it preserves the Lebesgue measure $m_L$ on $\mathbb{T}^2$.

We shall consider now the discrete dynamical system in $\mathbb{T}^2$ generated by $F$.

Let us first recall the definitions and properties concerning classical chaos (ergodicity, mixing). For more details we refer to the books [55, 123, 140].

A (discrete) dynamical system is a triplet $(X, \Phi, m)$ where $X$ is a measurable space, $m$ a probability measure on $X$ and $\Phi$ a measurable map on $X$ preserving the measure $m$:

For any measurable set $E \subset M$ one has $m(\Phi^{-1}E) = m(E)$.

The orbit (or trajectory) of a point $x \in X$ is $O(x) := \{\Phi^k(x), k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. The orbit is periodic if $\Phi^T(x) = x$ for some $T \in \mathbb{Z}$, $T \neq 0$.

**Definition 13** For a dynamical system $D = (X, \Phi, m)$ let us consider the time average or Birkhoff average $E_T(f, x) = \frac{1}{T}\sum_{t=0}^{t=T} f(\Phi^t(x))$, where $f$ is measurable.

$\Phi$ is ergodic if for any function $f \in L^1(X, m)$ one has

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} E_T(f, x) = m(f), \quad m\text{—everywhere} \tag{6.2}$$

where $m(f) := \int_X f\, dm$ is the spatial average.

*Remark 31* If a dynamical system is ergodic its time average (in the sense of the left hand side of (6.2)) equals the "space average", and does not depend on the initial point $x \in X$ almost surely.

**Proposition 51** *A dynamical system $D = (X, \Phi, m)$ is ergodic if and only if one of the following statements is satisfied*:

(i) *Any measurable set $E \subset X$ which is $\Phi$-invariant is such that $m(E) = 0$ or $m(X \setminus E) = 0$.*
(ii) *If $f \in L^\infty(X, m)$ is $\Phi$-invariant ($f \circ \Phi = f$) then it is constant $m$-everywhere.*

See [123, 139] for proofs.

This means in particular that the periodic orbits of an ergodic dynamical system are rather "rare" from a measurable point of view:

**Proposition 52** *Let $\Phi$ be a continuous map on a compact topological space $X$ endowed with a probability measure $m$ which is $\Phi$-invariant and such that $m(U) > 0$ for any open set $U$. If $(X, \Phi, m)$ is ergodic, then the set of periodic orbits in $X$ is of measure* 0.

Although relatively rare, the periodic orbit have a strong importance in the framework of ergodic theory since they allow the construction of invariant measures in the following way. Let $x \in X$ and let $O(x)$ be a periodic orbit of period $p(x) \in \mathbb{R}$. The following probability measure is clearly invariant:

$$m_x = \frac{1}{p(x)} \sum_{k=1}^{p(x)} \delta_{\Phi^k(x)}$$

where $\delta_a$ is the Dirac distribution at point $a \in \mathbb{R}$.

Given a map $\Phi$ in $X$ and $m$ an invariant measure, it is not always true that $m$ is the unique invariant measure. If it is the case the map $\Phi$ is said "uniquely ergodic" and the unique invariant measure is ergodic (see [123]).

Well known examples are irrational rotations on the circle (or translations on the torus $\mathbb{T}^1$). If $\alpha$ is an irrational number, $\Phi(x) = x + \alpha$, mod.1 defines a unique ergodic transformation in $\mathbb{T}^1$, the unique invariant measure is the Lebesgue measure (see [123]). In the topological framework one has a characterization of such maps [55]:

**Proposition 53** *Let $D = (X, \Phi, m)$ be a dynamical system with $X$ a compact metric space, and $\Phi$ a continuous map. $D$ is uniquely ergodic if and only if $\forall f \in \mathcal{C}(X)$:*

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \left\| \frac{1}{T} \sum_{l=0}^{T-1} f \circ \Phi^l - m(f) \right\|_\infty = 0$$

*where $\| \cdot \|_\infty$ is the norm of the uniform convergence.*

There is a stronger property of dynamical systems which is the "mixing" property:

**Definition 14** A dynamical system $D = (X, \Phi, m)$ is said to be mixing if $\forall f, g \in L^2(X, m)$ one has

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \int_X f\big(\Phi^k(x)\big) g(x)\, dm(x) = m(f)m(g)$$

The following result is useful and easy to prove.

**Proposition 54** *$D = (X, \Phi, m)$ is mixing if and only if there exists a total set $\mathcal{T}$ in $L^2(X, m)$ such that for every $f, g \in \mathcal{T}$ we have*

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \int_X f\big(\Phi^k(x)\big) g(x)\, dm(x) = m(f)m(g)$$

In the framework where $X$ is a differentiable manifold, one can define the notion of Anosov system (see [123, 139]):

**Definition 15** A diffeomorphism $\Phi$ of a differentiable manifold $M$ is Anosov if $\forall x \in M$, there exists a decomposition of the tangent space at $x$ in direct sum of two subspaces $E_x^u$ and $E_x^s$ and constants $K > 0$, $0 < \lambda < 1$ satisfying

$$(D_x\Phi)E_x^s = E_{\Phi(x)}^s, \qquad (D_x\Phi)E_x^u = E_{\Phi(x)}^u$$

and

$$\left\|\left(D_x\Phi^n\right)E_x^s\right\| \le K\lambda^n, \qquad \left\|\left(D_x\Phi^{-n}\right)E_x^u\right\| \le K\lambda^n$$

$\forall x \in M, n \in \mathbb{N}$.

We have the following useful stability result (see [139]).

**Theorem 36** *Let $M$ be a compact manifold and $\Phi$ an Anosov diffeomorphism on $M$. There exists $\varepsilon > 0$ small enough such that if $\|\Phi - \Psi\|_{C^1(M)} < \varepsilon$ then $\Psi$ is an Anosov diffeomorphism on $M$, where*

$$\|\Psi\|_{C^1(M)} = \sup_{x\in M}\left(\left|\Phi(x)\right| + \left\|D_x\Phi(x)\right\|\right)$$

**Theorem 37** *If $\Phi$ is a diffeomorphism Anosov on $\mathbb{T}^2$ then the dynamical system $D = (\mathbb{T}^2, \Phi, \mu)$ is mixing, $\mu$ being the normalized Lebesgue measure on $\mathbb{T}^2$.*

Let $F \in SL(2,\mathbb{Z})$. The hyperbolic automorphism of the 2-torus defined by $F$ represents the simplest examples of hyperbolic dynamical systems when $|\mathrm{Tr}\, F| > 2$. Namely if this is satisfied then $F$ has two eigenvalues $\lambda_+ = \lambda > \lambda_- = \lambda^{-1}$ with $\lambda > 1$. Denote $T_x(\mathbb{T}^2)$ the tangent space at point $x \in \mathbb{T}^2$, $E_x^+$ (resp. $E_x^-$) the eigenspace associated to the eigenvalue $\lambda$ (resp. $\lambda^{-1}$) and $D_xF : T_x(\mathbb{T}^2) \longmapsto T_{Fx}(\mathbb{T}^2)$ the differential of $F$. One has

$$\left\|D_xF(v)\right\| = |\lambda|\|v\| \quad \text{if } v \in E_x^+$$

$$\left\|D_xF(v)\right\| = \left|\lambda^{-1}\right|\|v\| \quad \text{if } v \in E_x^-$$

where $\|\cdot\|$ is the norm associated to the Riemannian metric $ds^2 = dq^2 + dp^2$ on $\mathbb{T}^2$. This proves that $F$ is an Anosov diffeomorphism, and is therefore ergodic and mixing.

We can also give a more direct proof that $F$ is mixing using Proposition 54. Let us consider the total family in $L^2(\mathbb{T}^2)$, $e_k(x) = \mathrm{e}^{2i\pi k\cdot x}$, where $k \in \mathbb{Z}^2$. We have

$$\int_{\mathbb{T}^2} \overline{e_k(x)} e_\ell\left(\Phi^n(x)\right) dm(x) = \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} \overline{e_k(x)} e_{(\Phi^T)^n\ell}(x)\, dm(x)$$

If $\ell \neq 0$, using that $A$ has eigenvalues $\lambda$ and $\lambda^{-1}$ with $\lambda > 1$, we see that $(\Phi^T)^n \ell$ is large for $\pm n$ large hence we get $\int_{\mathbb{T}^2} \overline{e_k(x)} e_\ell(\Phi^n(x))\, dm(x) = 0$. We can conclude using Proposition 54.

One can easily identify the periodic points of $F$:

**Proposition 55** *The periodic points* $(q, p) \in \mathbb{T}^2$ *of an hyperbolic automorphism of* $\mathbb{T}^2$ *are exactly points* $(q, p)$ *such that* $(q, p) \in \mathbb{Q}^2/\mathbb{Z}^2$.

*Proof* Let $A$ be an hyperbolic automorphism of $\mathbb{T}^2$, and $n \in \mathbb{N}^*$. Then the finite set $L_n = \{(\frac{r}{n}, \frac{s}{n}), r, s = 1, \ldots, n\}$ is invariant under $A$ and so all elements of $L_n$ are periodic for $A$. Let $m \neq n \in \mathbb{N}^*$. Since one has

$$L_{m,n} = \left\{ \left( \frac{r}{m}, \frac{s}{n} \right), r = 1, \ldots, m, s = 1, \ldots, n \right\} \subset L_{mn}$$

all points of $L_{m,n}$ are also periodic. Thus all points in $\mathbb{Q}^2/\mathbb{Z}^2$ are periodic for $A$. No other point can be periodic. Namely a point $(q, p) \in \mathbb{T}^2$ is periodic of period $k \in \mathbb{N}^*$ if and only if there exists $(m, n) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$ such that

$$\left(A^k - \mathbb{1}\right) \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} m \\ n \end{pmatrix}$$

But the matrix $A^k - \mathbb{1}$ is invertible and has only rational entries. Thus

$$\begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix} = \left(A^k - \mathbb{1}\right)^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} m \\ n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r_k \\ s_k \end{pmatrix}$$

with $(r_k, s_k) \in \mathbb{Q}^2$. This completes the proof. □

*Remark 32* An hyperbolic automorphism of $\mathbb{T}^2$ is always mixing (so ergodic) but never uniquely ergodic since every periodic point $x$ gives an invariant probability measure $m_x$.

## 6.3 The Kinematics Framework and Quantization

We closely follow the approaches of [10, 27, 29, 30, 59, 104].

Let us recall that we consider as phase space the 2-torus $\mathbb{T}^2 = \mathbb{R}^2/\mathbb{Z}^2$ with its canonical symplectic two form.

Using the correspondence principle between classical and quantum mechanics, it seems natural to look for the quantum states $\psi$ having the same periodicity in position and momentum $(q, p)$ as the underlying classical system.

The Weyl–Heisenberg translation operators $\hat{T}(q, p)$ "translate" the quantum state by a vector $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. So we are looking for some Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, included in the Schwartz temperate distribution space $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$, such that for every $\psi \in \mathcal{H}$ we have

$$\hat{T}(1,0)\psi = \mathrm{e}^{-i\theta_1}\psi \tag{6.3}$$

$$\hat{T}(0,1)\psi = \mathrm{e}^{i\theta_2}\psi \tag{6.4}$$

where we allow a phase $\theta = (\theta_1, \theta_2)$ since two wavefunctions $\psi_1, \psi_2$ satisfying $\psi_2 = \mathrm{e}^{i\alpha}\psi_1$ define the same quantum state and, more importantly, we shall recover the plane model as $\theta$ runs over the square $[0, 2\pi[\times[0, 2\pi[$.

(6.4) means that the $\hbar$-Fourier transform $\mathcal{F}_\hbar\psi$ satisfies

$$\mathcal{F}_\hbar\psi(p+1) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\theta_2}\mathcal{F}_\hbar\psi(p) \tag{6.5}$$

Recall that $\mathcal{F}_\hbar\psi(p) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-1/2}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathrm{e}^{-iqp/\hbar}\psi(q)\,dq$.

From (6.3), (6.4) we see that $\psi$ must be a joint eigenvector for the Weyl–Heisenberg operators $\hat{T}(q,p)$ and we get

$$\hat{T}(0,1)\hat{T}(1,0)\psi = \hat{T}(1,0)\hat{T}(0,1)\psi$$

Since we have

$$\hat{T}(0,1)\hat{T}(1,0) = \mathrm{e}^{i/\hbar}\hat{T}(1,0)\hat{T}(0,1)$$

conditions (6.3), (6.4) entail the following quantification condition $\frac{1}{2\pi\hbar} = N$ where $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\hbar$ is the Planck constant. Moreover, the quantum states $\psi$ live in a $N$-dimensional complex vector space.

This result can be obtained using the powerful methods of the geometric quantization [59]. Here we follow a more elementary approach as in [29, 30].

Let us denote by $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ the linear space of temperate distributions $\psi$ satisfying periodicity conditions (6.3), (6.4) with $\hbar = \frac{1}{2\pi N}$ (remark that if $\hbar \neq \frac{1}{2\pi N}$ and if $\psi$ satisfies (6.3), (6.4) then $\psi = 0$). So in all this chapter it is assumed that $\hbar = \frac{1}{2\pi N}$ for some $N \in \mathbb{N}$.

**Proposition 56** *$\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ is a $N$ dimensional complex linear subspace of the temperate distribution space $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$.*

*Proof* Let $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. From condition (6.4) we find that the support of $\psi$ is in the discrete set $\{q_j = \frac{2\pi j+\theta_2}{2\pi N}, j \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. So $\psi$ is a sum of derivatives of Dirac distributions $\psi = \sum c_j^\alpha \delta_{q_j}^{(\alpha)}$. Using uniqueness of this decomposition we can prove that $c_j^{(\alpha)} = 0$ for $\alpha \neq 0$, so we have $\psi = \sum c_j\delta_{q_j}$ where $c_j = c_j^{(0)}$. Now, using (6.3) we get a periodicity condition on the coefficient $c_j$. So we have

$$c_{j+N} = \mathrm{e}^{i\theta_1}c_j, \quad \forall j \in \mathbb{Z} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi = \sum_{0\le j\le N-1} c_j\left(\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{ik\theta_1}\delta_{q_j+k}\right) \tag{6.6}$$

Conversely it is easy to see that if $\psi$ satisfies (6.6) then $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. So the proposition is proven. □

From the proof of the proposition, we get a basis of $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$:

$$e_j^{(\theta)} = N^{-1/2} \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{ik\theta_1} \delta_{q_j+k}, \quad 0 \le j \le N-1$$

$e_j^{(\theta)}$ obviously satisfies (6.3). Let us check that it satisfies (6.5) by computing its Fourier transform. As a consequence of the usual Poisson formula:

$$\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{2i\pi kx} = \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \delta_\ell(x)$$

we get after some easy computations

$$\mathcal{F}_\hbar e_j^{(\theta)}(p) = N^{-1} \mathrm{e}^{-2i\pi p(j+\theta_2/2\pi)} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \delta_{\frac{\ell}{N}+\frac{\theta_1}{2\pi}} \tag{6.7}$$

Let us introduce $p_\ell = \frac{\ell}{N} + \frac{\theta_1}{2\pi}$ and $\varepsilon_\ell^{(\theta)} = N^{-1/2} \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{-ik\theta_2} \delta_{\frac{\ell}{N}+\frac{\theta_1}{2\pi}+k}$, for $\ell = 0, \ldots, N-1$. We have now

$$\mathcal{F}_\hbar e_j^{(\theta)} = \sum_{0 \le \ell \le N-1} F_{j,\ell} \varepsilon_\ell^{(\theta)} \tag{6.8}$$

where the matrix element $F_{j,\ell}$ is given by

$$F_{j,\ell} = N^{-1/2} \exp\left(-\frac{i}{N}\left(2\pi j\ell + \theta_2 \ell + \theta_1 j + \frac{\theta_1\theta_2}{2\pi}\right)\right)$$

We put on $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ the unique Hilbert space structure such that $\{e_j^{(\theta)}\}_{0 \le j \le N-1}$ is an orthonormal basis. So we see that $\mathcal{F}_\hbar$ is a unitary transformation from $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta_1, \theta_2)$ onto $\mathcal{H}_N(-\theta_2, \theta_1)$. In particular if $\theta = (0, 0)$, the matrix $\{F_{j,\ell}\}$ is the matrix of the discrete Fourier transform.

For all $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_{(\theta_1,\theta_2)}$ we have

$$\psi = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} c_j(\psi) e_j^{(\theta)}$$

Then the vector

$$\left(c_j(\psi)\right)_{j=0}^{N-1}$$

is interpreted physically as the quantum state of the particle in the position representation. Similarly in the momentum representation one sees that $\tilde{\psi}^\theta \in \mathcal{H}_N(-\theta_2, \theta_1)$ is decomposed as

$$\tilde{\psi}^\theta = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} d_j(\psi) \varepsilon_j^{(\theta)}$$

One goes from the position to the momentum representation via a generalized Discrete Fourier Transform:

$$d_k(\hat{\psi}) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\theta_2}{N}\left(\frac{\theta_1}{2\pi}+k\right)\right)\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{j=0}^{N-1} c_j(\psi)\exp\left(-ij\left(\frac{2\pi k}{N}+\frac{\theta_1}{N}\right)\right)$$

For $\theta = (0,0)$ we recognize the discrete Fourier operator that we have introduced above.

A convenient representation formula for elements of $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ can be obtained using the following symmetrization operator:

$$\Sigma_N^{(\theta)} = \sum_{z\in\mathbb{Z}^2} (-1)^{Nz_1z_2} \mathrm{e}^{i(\theta_1 z_1 - \theta_2 z_2)} \hat{T}(z) \tag{6.9}$$

Let us remark that $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ if and only if $\psi \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$ satisfies

$$\hat{T}(z)\psi = (-1)^{Nz_1z_2} \mathrm{e}^{i\sigma((\theta_2,\theta_1),(z_1,z_2))}\psi \tag{6.10}$$

**Proposition 57** *$\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}$ defines a linear continuous map from $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ in $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$. Its range is $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. Moreover for every $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ we have*

$$\langle e_j^{(\theta)}, \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi\rangle = N^{-1/2}\sum_{\ell\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i\ell\theta_1}\psi(q_j-\ell) = e_j^{(\theta)}(\psi) \tag{6.11}$$

*and*

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} |\psi(x)|^2\,dx = \frac{1}{4\pi^2}\iint_{[0,2\pi[^2} |e_j^{(\theta)}(\psi)|^2\,d\theta \tag{6.12}$$

*The map $\psi \mapsto \{e_j^{(\theta)}(\psi)\}_{0\le j\le N-1}$ can be extended as an isometry from $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ onto the Hilbert space $L^2([0,2\pi[^2, \mathbb{C}^N, \frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2})$.*

*Proof* Recall that we have

$$\hat{T}(z)\psi(x) = \mathrm{e}^{-iz_1z_2/2\hbar}\mathrm{e}^{ixz_2/\hbar}\psi(x-z_1)$$

So we have

$$\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi = \sum_{z_1,z_2\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i(\theta_1 z_1-\theta_2 z_2)}\mathrm{e}^{ixz_2/\hbar}\psi(x-z_1)$$

We first compute the $z_2$-sum using the Poisson formula:

$$\sum_{z_2\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i(xz_2/\hbar-\theta_2 z_2)} = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \delta_{\frac{k}{N}+\frac{\theta_2}{2\pi N}}$$

we get

$$\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{ik\theta_1} \sum_{0\le j\le N-1}\Big(\sum_{\ell\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i\ell\theta_1}\psi(q_j-\ell)\Big)\delta_{q_j+k} \tag{6.13}$$

The equalities (6.11) and (6.12) follow easily from (6.13).

In particular we see that for every $j = 0, \dots, N-1$ we have $e_j^{(\theta)} = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi_j$ where $\psi_j(x) = \psi_0(q_j - x)$, $\psi_0$ is $C^\infty$, with support in $[-\frac{1}{4N}, \frac{1}{4N}]$ and $\psi_0(0) = 1$. This proved that $\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}(\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})) = \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$.

Let us define the map $\mathcal{I}(\psi) = \{e_j^{(\theta)}(\psi)\}_{0\le j\le N-1}$. We know that $\mathcal{I}$ defines an isometry from $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ into $L^2([0, 2\pi[^2, \mathbb{C}^N, \frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2})$. We have to prove now that $\mathcal{I}$ is onto.

It is enough to prove that the conjugate operator $\mathcal{I}^*$ is injective on $L^2([0, 2\pi[^2, \mathbb{C}^N, \frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2})$. To do that we have to compute $\langle \mathcal{I}^* f, \psi\rangle$ where $f = (f_0, \dots, f_{N-1})$, $f_j$ are periodical functions on the lattice $2\pi\mathbb{Z}\times 2\pi\mathbb{Z}$ and $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$. This is an exercise left to the reader. □

This leads to a direct integral decomposition of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$:

$$L^2(\mathbb{R}) \cong \left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\right)^2 \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\, \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$$

$$\psi \cong \left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\right)^2 \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\, \psi(\theta), \quad \text{where } \psi(\theta) = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi$$

This is a Bloch decomposition of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ analogous to the description of electrons in a periodic structure.

It appears that $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ is equipped with the natural inner product and the spaces $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ are the natural quantum Hilbert spaces of states having the torus as phase space.

Let us explain now in more detail the identification

$$L^2(\mathbb{R}) \cong \left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\right)^2 \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\, \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$$

For every $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ we define $\tilde{\psi}(\theta, j) = e_j^{(\theta)}(\psi)$ where $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$ and $j \in \mathbb{Z}$. We have seen that $\psi \mapsto \tilde{\psi}$ is an isometry from $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ onto $L^2([0, 2\pi[^2\times(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z}), \frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2}\otimes d\mu_N)$ where $\mu_N$ is the uniform probability on $\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z}$.

Let $\hat{A}$ be some bounded operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$. Assume that $\hat{A}$ is a linear continuous operator from $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ to $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ and from $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$ to $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$ and that $\hat{A}$ commutes with $\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}$ ($\hat{A}\Sigma_N^{(\theta)} = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\hat{A}$), for every $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$. Then $\hat{A}$ is a decomposable operator (see Reed–Simon [162], t. 1, p. 281). More precisely we have the following useful result.

**Proposition 58** *Let us denote by $\hat{A}_{N,\theta}$ the restriction of $\hat{A}$ to $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. Then we have, for every $\psi_1, \psi_2 \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$,*

$$\langle \psi_2, \hat{A}\psi_1 \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{R})} = \iint_{[0,2\pi[^2} \langle \psi_2(\theta), \hat{A}_{N,\theta}\psi_1(\theta) \rangle_{\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)} \frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2} \tag{6.14}$$

*where $\psi_1(\theta) = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi_1$.*

*Proof* This is easily proved using that $\psi(\theta) = \sum_{0\le j\le N-1} \tilde{\psi}(\theta, j)e_j^{(\theta)}$ and (6.12). □

We shall apply the following results proved using Reed–Simon [162].

**Corollary 18** *Let $\hat{A}$ be a decomposable operator like above. Then we have*

$$\|\hat{A}\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R})} = \sup_{\theta\in[0,2\pi[^2} \|\hat{A}_{N,\theta}\|_{\mathcal{H}_N^{(\theta)}} \tag{6.15}$$

*and $\hat{A}$ is an isometry in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ if and only if $\hat{A}_{N,\theta}$ is an isometry in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ for every $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$.*

First examples are the Weyl–Heisenberg translations.

**Lemma 36** *Let $z = (z_1, z_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Then $\hat{T}(z)\Sigma_N^{(\theta)} = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\hat{T}(z)$ if and only if $Nz \in \mathbb{Z}^2$. Moreover if $z_1 = \frac{n_1}{N}$ and $z_2 = \frac{n_2}{N}$ we have*

$$\hat{T}_{N,\theta}\left(\frac{n_1}{N}, \frac{n_2}{N}\right)e_j^{(\theta)} = \exp\left(i\pi\frac{n_1 n_2}{N}\right)\exp\left(i(\theta_2 + 2\pi j)\frac{n_2}{N}\right)e_{j+n_1}^{(\theta)} \tag{6.16}$$

*Proof* Exercise. □

**Corollary 19** *The unitary (projective) representation $(n_1, n_2) \mapsto \hat{T}_{N,\theta}(\frac{n_1}{N}, \frac{n_2}{N})$ of the group $\mathbb{Z}^2$ in $\mathcal{H}_N^{(\theta)}$ is irreducible.*

*Proof* Let $V$ be an invariant subspace of $\mathcal{H}_N^{(\theta)}$ and $v = \sum_{0\le j\le N-1} a_j e_j^{(\theta)}$, $v \ne 0$. If $a_j = 0$ for $j \ne j_0$, then using translation $\hat{T}_{N,\theta}(\frac{n_1}{N}, 0)$ we get $e_j^{(\theta)} \in V\ \forall j$. But playing with $\hat{T}_{N,\theta}(0, \frac{n_2}{N})$, if $m$ coefficients $a_j$ are not 0 there exists a non zero vector of $V$ with $m-1$ non null coefficients. So we can conclude that $V = \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. □

*Remark 33* It has been proved that all irreducible unitary representations of the discrete Heisenberg group are equivalent to $(\hat{T}_{N,\theta}(\frac{n_1}{N}, \frac{n_2}{N}), \mathcal{H}_N(\theta))$, for some $(N, \theta) \in \mathbb{N}^* \times [0, 2\pi[^2$ [63].

For the particular case $\theta = (0, 0)$, the states $e_j^0$ can be identified with the natural basis in $\mathbb{C}^N$. Then the translation operators $\hat{T}(1/N, 0)$, $\hat{T}(0, 1/N)$ are simply $N \times N$

matrices of the following form:

$$\hat{T}(0, 1/N) := Z = \operatorname{diag}\bigl(1, \omega, \omega^2, \ldots, \omega^{N-1}\bigr) \tag{6.17}$$

where $\omega = \mathrm{e}^{2i\pi/N}$ is the primitive $N$th root of unity.

$$\hat{T}(1/N, 0) := X = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.18}$$

These operators (matrices) have been introduced by Schwinger [175] as "generalized Pauli matrices" and are intensively used in quantum information theory for the mutually unbiased bases problem in $\mathbb{C}^N$. See [50, 175]. They have the following properties:

**Proposition 59**

(i) *X and Z are unitary.*
(ii) *They are idempotent, namely*

$$X^N = Z^N = \mathbb{1}$$

*(the identity matrix in* $\mathbb{C}^N$*).*
(iii) *They* $\omega$*-commute*:

$$XZ = \omega ZX.$$

(iv) *X is diagonalized by the discrete Fourier transform* $\mathcal{F}$:

$$\mathcal{F}^* X \mathcal{F} = Z$$

*where* $\mathcal{F}_{j,k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \omega^{jk}, \ \forall j, k = 1, \ldots, N.$

*Remark 34* A complex $N \times N$ matrix is an Hadamard matrix if all its entries have equal modulus. Note that $\mathcal{F}$ is an unitary Hadamard matrix of the Vandermonde form, and that $X$ and its powers generate the commutative algebra of the "circulant" matrices. A $N \times N$ matrix $C$ is said to be circulant if all its rows and columns are successive circular permutations of the first:

$$C = \operatorname{circ}(c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_N) = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 & c_2 & \ldots & c_N \\ c_N & c_1 & \ldots & c_{N-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ c_2 & c_3 & \ldots & c_1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.19}$$

$$C = c_1 \mathbb{1} + c_N X + \cdots + c_2 X^{N-1}$$

(see [57]).

The Discrete Fourier transform in $\mathbb{C}^N$ is very natural in this context since it transforms any basis vector in the position representation into any basis vector in the momentum representation.

**Lemma 37** *For any circulant matrix $C$ there exists a diagonal matrix $D$ such that*

$$\mathcal{F}^* C \mathcal{F} = D$$

*Furthermore*

$$D_{j,j} = \sqrt{N}\hat{c}_j = \sum_0^{N-1} c_{k+1}\omega^{-jk}$$

*Proof* Use Proposition 59(iv) and (6.19). □

These properties are very useful to construct the $N+1$ mutually unbiased bases in Quantum Information Theory for $N$ a prime number. See [50].

## 6.4 The Coherent States of the Torus

Already used in the physical literature in [131] we introduce now the coherent states adapted to the torus structure of the phase space. They will be the image by the periodisation operator $\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}$ of the usual Gaussian coherent states studied in Chap. 1.

In dimension 1 one has, for $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $\gamma \in \mathbb{C}$, $\Im\gamma > 0$,

$$\varphi_{\gamma,z}(x) = \left(\frac{\Im\gamma}{\pi\hbar}\right)^{1/4} \exp\left(-\frac{iqp}{2\hbar} + \frac{ixp}{\hbar} + i\gamma\frac{(x-q)^2}{2\hbar}\right) \tag{6.20}$$

$$\varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)} = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\varphi_{\gamma,z} \tag{6.21}$$

It is easily seen from the definition properties of $\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}$ and the product rules for $\hat{T}(z)$ that

$$\varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)} = \sum_{n_1,n_2\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{Nn_1n_2} \mathrm{e}^{i(\theta_1 n_1 - \theta_2 n_2) + \frac{i}{2\hbar}\sigma(n,z)} \hat{T}(n+z)\varphi_{\gamma,0} \tag{6.22}$$

For every $z' = (z'_1, z'_2) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$ we get

$$\varphi_{\gamma,z+z'}^{(\theta)} = (-1)^{Nz'_1z'_2} \mathrm{e}^{i(z'_2\theta_2 - z'_1\theta_1)} \mathrm{e}^{i\pi N\sigma(z,z')} \varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)} \tag{6.23}$$

Thus the states $\varphi_{\gamma,z+z'}^{(\theta)}, \varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)}$ are equal modulo phase factor, so they describe the same physical system and we can identify them. Recall that $\sigma$ is the symplectic form:

$$\sigma\big((a,b),(c,d)\big) = ad - bc$$

The set $\{\varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)}\}_{z\in\mathbb{T}^2}$ therefore constitutes a coherent states system adapted to the torus.

In the basis $e_j^{(\theta)}$ of the position representation we have

$$c_j(q,p) := \langle e_j^{(\theta)}, \varphi_{q,p}^{(\theta)}\rangle$$
$$= \left(\frac{\Im\gamma}{\pi\hbar}\right)^{1/4} \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \mathrm{e}^{-i\frac{qp}{2\hbar}} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i\theta_1 m} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(x_j^m p)} \exp\left(i\gamma\frac{1}{2\hbar}\left(x_j^m - q\right)^2\right) \tag{6.24}$$

where $x_j^m = \frac{j}{N} + \frac{\theta_2}{2\pi N} - m$.

Similarly we have in the momentum representation (for $\gamma = i$):

$$d_k(q,p) = \left(\frac{1}{\pi\hbar}\right)^{1/4} \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{2\hbar}qp} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{-im\theta_2 + \frac{i}{\hbar}q\xi_m^k} \exp\left(\frac{-1}{2\hbar}\left(\xi_m^k - p\right)^2\right)$$

with $\xi_m^k = \frac{k}{N} + \frac{\theta_1}{2\pi N} - m$.

An important property which is inherited from the overcompleteness character of the set of coherent states in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is that the $\{\varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)}\}_{z\in\mathbb{T}^2}$ form an overcomplete system of $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ with a resolution of the identity operator $\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)}$:

**Proposition 60** *$\forall\theta \in [0, 2\pi)^2$ and $\forall\hbar = 1/2\pi N$ we have*

$$\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)} = \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} \frac{dq\,dp}{2\pi\hbar} |\varphi_{\gamma,q,p}^{(\theta)}\rangle\langle\varphi_{\gamma,q,p}^{(\theta)}|$$

*where we use the bra–ket notation for the projector on the coherent state $\varphi_{q,p}^{(\theta)}$.*

*Proof* For simplicity we assume $\gamma = i$. Since $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ is finite dimensional it is enough to prove that $\forall(j,k) \in [0, N-1]^2$ we have

$$\int_{\mathbb{T}^2} \frac{dq\,dp}{2\pi\hbar} \langle\varphi_{q,p}^{\theta}, e_k^{\theta}\rangle\langle e_j^{\theta}, \varphi_{q,p}^{\theta}\rangle = \delta_{j,k}$$

Now using (6.24) together with Fubini's Theorem we get

$$\int_{\mathbb{T}^2} \frac{dq\,dp}{2\pi\hbar} \bar{c}_k(q,p) c_j(q,p) = \sum_{m,n} \mathrm{e}^{i\theta_1(m-n)} \int_0^1 dp \exp\big(2\pi i\big(j-k-N(m-n)\big)p\big)$$
$$\times \int_0^1 dq\, \bar{\varphi}_{0,0}^{\theta}\big(x_j^m - q\big)\varphi_{0,0}^{\theta}\big(x_j^m - q\big) \tag{6.25}$$

If $j = k$ then the first integral in the right hand side of (6.25) is zero except for $m = n$ in which case we get 1. Thus we get

$$\int_{(q,p)\in\mathbb{T}^2} \frac{dq\,dp}{2\pi\hbar} \left|c_j(q,p)\right|^2 = \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_0^1 dq \left\|\varphi_{0,0}^{\theta}\big(x_m^j - q\big)\right\|^2 = \left\|\varphi_{0,0}^{\theta}\right\|^2 = 1$$

If $j \neq k$ the same integral is zero since $j - k \in \mathbb{N}^*$. $\square$

We also get the Fourier–Bargmann transform $\psi^\sharp$ of any state $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ as

$$\psi^\sharp = \sqrt{N}\langle \varphi^\theta_{q,p}, \psi\rangle$$

The map $W^\theta : \psi \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta) \longmapsto W^\theta\psi = \sqrt{N}\psi^\sharp \in L^2(\mathbb{T}^2, \frac{dqdp}{2\pi\hbar})$ is obviously isometric. The quantity

$$H^\theta(q,p) = \left|\langle \varphi^\theta_{q,p}, \psi\rangle\right|^2$$

is called the Husimi function of $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$.

We have as a corollary an analogous result as Proposition 6:

**Corollary 20** *Let $\hat{A}_\theta \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_\theta)$. Then*

$$\operatorname{Tr}(\hat{A}_\theta) = \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} \langle \varphi^\theta_{q,p}, \hat{A}_\theta \varphi^\theta_{q,p}\rangle \frac{dq\,dp}{2\pi\hbar}$$

We have the following very useful semi-classical result.

**Proposition 61** *For every complex numbers $\gamma, \gamma'$ with positive imaginary part we have*:

(i) *There exist constants $C > 0, c > 0$ such that for any $z, z' \in \mathbb{T}^2$, $N \geq 1$,*

$$\left|\langle \varphi^\theta_{\gamma',z'}, \varphi^\theta_{\gamma,z}\rangle\right| \leq C\sqrt{N}\mathrm{e}^{-d(z,z')^2 cN} \tag{6.26}$$

*where $d(z,z')$ is the distance between $z$ and $z'$ on the torus $\mathbb{T}^2$. In particular for $\gamma = \gamma' = i$ we can choose $c = \pi$.*

(ii) *There exists $c > 0$ such that $\forall\theta \in [0, 2\pi)^2$ we have $\forall z = (q,p) \in \mathbb{T}^2$*

$$\left\|\varphi^\theta_{\gamma,z}\right\|^2 = 1 + O(\mathrm{e}^{-cN})$$

*Proof* For simplicity, let assume that $\gamma = \gamma' = i$. The proof is the same for arbitrary $\gamma, \gamma'$.

We recall that in the continuous case one has

$$\left|\langle \varphi_{z'}, \varphi_z\rangle\right|^2 = \exp\left(-\frac{|z'-z|^2}{2\hbar}\right)$$

so that

$$\|\varphi_z\| = 1$$

Thus we shall prove that the analogous properties (i) and (ii) hold for the coherent states of the 2-torus but only in the semi-classical limit $N \to \infty$. A weaker result is given in [29], here we shall give a different proof.

We rewrite (6.23): for every $z \in \mathbb{T}^2$, $m = (m_1, m_2) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$,

$$\varphi^{(\theta)}_{z+m} = \mathrm{e}^{i\pi N(\sigma(z,m)+m_1m_2)}\mathrm{e}^{i(m_2\theta_2 - m_1\theta_1)}\mathrm{e}^{i\pi N\sigma(z,z')}\varphi^{(\theta)}_z \tag{6.27}$$

Let us denote $f_{z,z'}(\theta) = \langle \varphi_z^\theta, \varphi_{z'}^\theta \rangle$ and consider $f_{z,z'}$ as a periodic function in $\theta$ for the lattice $(2\pi\mathbb{Z})^2$. Its Fourier coefficient $c_m(z, z')$ can be computed using (6.27),

$$c_m(z, z') = \int_{[0,2\pi[^2} \mathrm{e}^{-im\cdot\theta} \langle \varphi_z^\theta, \varphi_{z'}^\theta \rangle \frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2} \tag{6.28}$$

$$= \mathrm{e}^{i\pi N(\sigma(z,m)+m_1 m_2)} \int_{[0,2\pi[^2} \langle \varphi_{z'}^\theta, \varphi_{z+\check{m}}^\theta \rangle \frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2} \tag{6.29}$$

$$= \mathrm{e}^{i\pi N(\sigma(z,m)+m_1 m_2)} \langle \varphi_{z'}, \varphi_{z+\check{m}} \rangle \tag{6.30}$$

where $\check{m} = (m_1, -m_2)$. $f_{z,z'}$ being a smooth function in $\theta$, we get

$$\left| f_{z,z'}(\theta) \right| \le \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}^2} \left| c_m(z, z') \right| \tag{6.31}$$

But $|c_m(z, z')| = (\pi\hbar)^{-1} \exp(-\frac{|z'-z-\check{m}|^2}{2\hbar})$. So

$$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}^2} \left| c_m(z, z') \right| = (\pi\hbar)^{-1} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}^2} \exp\left( -\frac{|z' - z - \check{m}|^2}{2\hbar} \right)$$

Now we have

$$|z' - z - \check{m}|^2 \ge |z' - z|^2 + |m|^2 - 2|m||z - z'|$$

So we get

$$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}^2, |m|\ge 4\sqrt{2}} \exp\left( -\frac{|z' - z - \check{m}|^2}{2\hbar} \right) \le \mathrm{e}^{-|z-z'|^2\pi N} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}^2} \mathrm{e}^{-|m|^2\pi N/2}$$

So for every $N \ge 1$ we get

$$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}^2, |m|\ge 4\sqrt{2}} \exp\left( -\frac{|z' - z - \check{m}|^2}{2\hbar} \right) \le C\mathrm{e}^{-|z-z'|^2\pi N}$$

For the finite sum we have easily

$$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}^2, |m|\le 4\sqrt{2}} \exp\left( -\frac{|z' - z - \check{m}|^2}{2\hbar} \right) \le C\mathrm{e}^{-d(z,z')^2\pi N}$$

so we get (i).

Concerning the proof with any $\gamma, \gamma'$, we have to use the inequality

$$\left| \langle \varphi_{\gamma',z'}, \varphi_{\gamma,z} \rangle \right| \le C\hbar^{-1/2} \mathrm{e}^{-c\frac{|z-z'|^2}{\hbar}}$$

where $C > 0$, $c > 0$ depend on $\gamma, \gamma'$, but not in $z, z'$.

The proof of (ii) uses the same method with $z' = z$. So we get

$$\left|f_{z,z}(\theta) - 1\right| \leq \sum_{m \neq (0,0)} \left|\langle \varphi_z, \varphi_{z+m} \rangle\right|$$

and

$$\left|f_{z,z}(\theta) - 1\right| \leq \sqrt{N} \sum_{m \neq (0,0)} \mathrm{e}^{-|m|^2 \pi N}$$

So we have proved (ii). □

## 6.5 The Weyl and Anti-Wick Quantizations on the 2-Torus

We will show how a phase-space function (classical Hamiltonian) $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ can be quantized as a selfadjoint operator in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. These functions have to be real.

### *6.5.1 The Weyl Quantization on the 2-Torus*

We identify the functions $H$ with the functions $\mathcal{C}^\infty$ on $\mathbb{R}^2$ of period $(1, 1) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Then we have

$$H(q, p) = \sum_{(m,n) \in \mathbb{Z}^2} H_{m,n} \mathrm{e}^{2i\pi\sigma((q,p),(m,n))}$$

Then we define, following [104] and [64]:

**Definition 16**

$$\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(H) = \sum_{m,n} H_{m,n} \hat{T}\left(\frac{m}{N}, \frac{n}{N}\right) \tag{6.32}$$

Recall that $\hbar = \frac{1}{2\pi N}$, $N \in \mathbb{N}^*$.
One has the following property:

**Proposition 62** *Let* $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)^2$ *and* $\hbar > 0$. *Then for any function* $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ *one has*

$$\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(H)\mathcal{H}_N(\theta) \subseteq \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$$

*Proof* This follows directly from the definition of $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ and from

$$\hat{T}(m, n)\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(H)\hat{T}(m, n)^* = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(H), \quad \text{if } m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

In other words $\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(H)$ commutes with $\Sigma_N^{(\theta)}$. □

Thus we define the operator $\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H) \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_\theta)$ as the restriction of (6.32) to $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$.

In the decomposition of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ as a direct integral, $\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)$ is the fiber at $\theta$ of $\mathrm{Op}^W_\hbar(H)$.

$$\mathrm{Op}^W_\hbar(H) = \iint_{[0,2\pi[^2} \mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)\frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2} \tag{6.33}$$

We have also the following formula by restriction to $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$:

$$\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H) = \sum_{n,m\in\mathbb{Z}} H_{n,m}\hat{T}\left(\frac{n}{N},\frac{m}{N}\right) \tag{6.34}$$

In particular we see that the map $H \mapsto \mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)$ cannot be injective, so the Weyl symbol $H$ of $\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)$ is not unique. It becomes unique by restricting to trigonometric polynomials symbols. Let us denote by $\mathcal{T}_N$ the linear space spanned by $\pi_{n,m}(q,p) = \mathrm{e}^{2i\pi(nq-mp)}$, for $n,m = 0,\dots,N-1$. Then we have

**Proposition 63** $\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}$ *is a unitary map from* $\mathcal{T}_N$ (*with the norm of* $L^2([0,1]^2)$) *onto* $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_N(\theta))$, *equipped with its Hilbert–Schmidt norm. In particular we have, for every* $H, K \in \mathcal{T}_N$,

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(K)^*\big) = N\iint_{\mathbb{T}^2} H(z)\overline{K(z)}\,dz \tag{6.35}$$

*Proof* Let us recall the formula

$$\hat{T}\left(\frac{k}{N},\frac{\ell}{N}\right)e_j^{(\theta)} = \mathrm{e}^{i\pi k\ell/N}\mathrm{e}^{i(\theta_2+2\pi j)\ell/N}e_{j+k}^{(\theta)} \tag{6.36}$$

Using that the discrete Fourier transform is unitary, we get

$$\mathrm{Tr}\left(\hat{T}\left(\frac{k}{N},\frac{\ell}{N}\right)\hat{T}\left(\frac{k'}{N},\frac{\ell'}{N}\right)^*\right) = N\delta_{k,k'}\delta_{\ell,\ell'} \tag{6.37}$$

So the system $\{N^{-1/2}\hat{T}(\frac{k}{N},\frac{\ell}{N})\}_{0\le k,\ell\le N-1}$ is an orthonormal basis in $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_N(\theta))$, equipped with its Hilbert–Schmidt norm and we get the proposition. □

**Corollary 21** *Every linear operator* $\hat{H}$ *in* $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ *has a unique Weyl symbol* $H \in \mathcal{T}_N$,

$$H(z) = \sum_{0\le m,n\le N-1} H_{m,n}\mathrm{e}^{2i\pi\sigma(z,(m,n))}$$

*where*

$$H_{m,n} = N^{-1/2}\mathrm{Tr}\left(\hat{H}\hat{T}\left(\frac{m}{N},\frac{n}{N}\right)^*\right) \tag{6.38}$$

A semi-classical result for the Weyl quantization is the following:

**Proposition 64** *For all* $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ *one has*

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)\big) = \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} dz\, H(z)$$

*Proof* Using the orthonormal position basis $e_j^{(\theta)}$ one has

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)\big) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\sum_{m,n} H_{n,m}\left\langle e_j^\theta, \hat{T}\left(\frac{m}{N}, \frac{n}{N}\right)e_j^\theta\right\rangle$$

Now we use the property (6.36):

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)\big)\\
&= \frac{1}{N}\sum_{j,k=0}^{N-1}\sum_{\ell,n\in\mathbb{Z}} H_{n,\ell N+k}\\
&\quad\times \exp\left(i\frac{\pi n}{N}(\ell N+k) - i\theta_1\ell + i\frac{2\pi n}{N}\left(\frac{\theta_2}{2\pi}+j+k\right)\right)\langle e_j^\theta, e_{j+k}^\theta\rangle\\
&= \sum_{\ell,n} H_{n,\ell N}(-1)^{\ell n}\mathrm{e}^{-i\ell\theta_1 + i\frac{n\theta_2}{N}}\frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\mathrm{e}^{i\frac{2\pi nj}{N}}
\end{aligned} \tag{6.39}$$

Thus we conclude

$$\frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H)\big) = H_{0,0} + \sum_{\ell,n\in\mathbb{Z}^*} H_{\ell N,nN}\mathrm{e}^{i\sigma((\ell,n),(\theta_1,\theta_2))}$$

The last term tends to 0 because of the regularity of $H$, and the first one is $\int_{\mathbb{T}^2} dz\, H(z)$, which completes the proof. □

## 6.5.2 *The Anti-Wick Quantization on the 2-Torus*

As in the continuous case (see Chap. 2) the Anti-Wick quantization is associated to the system of coherent states.

**Definition 17** Let $H \in L^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$. Then $\varphi_{q,p}^\theta$ being the system of coherent states defined in the previous section, we define

$$\mathrm{Op}^{AW}_{\hbar,\theta}(H) := \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} H(z)\big|\varphi_z^\theta\big\rangle\big\langle\varphi_z^\theta\big|\frac{dz}{2\pi\hbar}$$

*Remark 35* Note that $\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(H)$ for $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ is simply the restriction of $\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^{AW}(H)$ (considered as an operator on $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$) to $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$.

Let us recall that we always assume $2\pi\hbar N = 1$.

As for Weyl quantization, Anti-Wick quantization on $\mathbb{R}^2$ and on $\mathbb{T}^2$ are related with a direct integral decomposition

**Proposition 65** *Let $H \in C^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$. Then we have the direct integral decomposition*

$$\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^{AW}(H) = \iint_{[0,2\pi[^2} \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(H)\frac{d\theta}{(2\pi)^2} \tag{6.40}$$

*In particular we have the uniform norm estimate*

$$\left\|\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(H)\right\| \leq \|H\|_\infty \tag{6.41}$$

*Proof* Using periodicity of $H$ and direct integral decomposition of $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ ($\psi(\theta) = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi$), we get

$$\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^{AW}(H)\psi = \sum_{n=(n_1,n_2)\in\mathbb{Z}^2} \iint_{[0,2\pi[^2} \iint_{\mathbb{T}^2} H(z)\langle\varphi_{z+n}^\theta, \psi(\theta)\rangle\varphi_{z+n}\, dz\frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2} \tag{6.42}$$

Using periodicity in $z$ of $\varphi_z$ and $\varphi_{z+n} = \mathrm{e}^{i\sigma(n,z)/2\hbar}\hat{T}(n)\varphi_z$, we get

$$\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^{AW}(H)\psi = \iint_{[0,2\pi[^2} \iint_{\mathbb{T}^2} H(z)\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \psi(\theta)\rangle\varphi_{z+n}\, dz\frac{d\theta}{4\pi^2} \tag{6.43}$$

So we have proved $(\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^{AW}(H))_\theta = \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(H)$. □

Now we show a link between Anti-Wick quantization and the Husimi function:

**Proposition 66** *One has for any $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ and for any $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_\theta$*

$$\left\langle\psi, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW} H\psi\right\rangle = N\int_{\mathbb{T}^2} dz\, H(z)H_\psi(z)$$

And we have the following semi-classical limit:

**Proposition 67** *For any $z \in \mathbb{T}^2$, any $\theta \in [0; 2\pi[^2$, and any $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ we have*

$$\lim_{N\to\infty}\left\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW} H\varphi_z^\theta\right\rangle = H(z)$$

*Proof* We denote $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{T}^2$ and $B_\varepsilon(z)$ the ball of center $z$ and radius $\varepsilon$ and by $B_\varepsilon^c(z)$ its complementary set. Take $\varepsilon \ll 0$. We have

$$\left\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(H)\varphi_z^\theta\right\rangle = \int_{B_\varepsilon^c(z)} \frac{dz'}{2\pi\hbar}H(z')\left|\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \varphi_{z'}^\theta\rangle\right|^2 + \int_{B_\varepsilon(z)} \frac{dz'}{2\pi\hbar}H(z')\left|\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \varphi_{z'}^\theta\rangle\right|^2$$

It is clear that the first term in the right hand side tends to 0 as $\hbar \to 0$ because of Proposition 61(i). For the second term we denote $g(z, z') = N|\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \varphi_{z'}^\theta\rangle|^2$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left|\int_{B_\varepsilon(z)} dz'\, H(z') g(z, z') - H(z)\right| \\
&\quad \le \int_{B_\varepsilon(z)} dz' \left|H(z') - H(z)\right| g(z, z') + \left|H(z)\right| \left|\int_{B_\varepsilon(z)} g(z, z')\, dz' - 1\right| \\
&\quad \le \varepsilon \|\nabla H\|_\infty \int_{B_\varepsilon(z)} g(z, z')\, dz' + \left|H(z)\right| \left|\int_{B_\varepsilon(z)} dz'\, g(z, z') - 1\right| \qquad (6.44)
\end{aligned}$$

Using the resolution of identity we have

$$\int_{B_\varepsilon(z)} dz'\, g(z, z') = \|\varphi_z^{(\theta)}\|^2 - \int_{B_\varepsilon^c(z)} dz'\, g(z, z')$$

Using Proposition 61(ii) the first term in the right hand side tends to 1 as $N \to \infty$, and it is clear that the second is small as $N \to \infty$. This completes the proof. □

As in the continuous case the Weyl and Anti-Wick quantizations are equivalent in the semi-classical regime:

**Proposition 68** *For any $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ and any $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)^2$ we have*

$$\|\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^W(H) - \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(H)\|_{\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_N(\theta))} = \mathcal{O}(N^{-1}), \quad \text{as } N \to \infty \qquad (6.45)$$

*Proof* This result follows from the similar one in the continuous case (see Chap. 2, Proposition 27) using the estimate

$$\|\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^W(H) - \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(H)\|_{\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_N(\theta))} \le \|\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^W(H) - \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar}^{AW}(H)\|_{\mathcal{L}(L^2(\mathbb{R}))} \qquad (6.46)$$

□

## 6.6 Quantum Dynamics and Exact Egorov's Theorem

### *6.6.1 Quantization of $SL(2, \mathbb{Z})$*

We now consider a dynamics in phase space induced by symplectic transformations $F \in SL(2, \mathbb{Z})$. It creates a discrete time evolution in $\mathbb{T}^2$ and the $n$-step evolution is provided by $F^n$.

One wants here to quantize $F$ as a natural operator in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$.

We have seen in Chap. 2 (3.3) that $F$ is quantized in $\mathcal{L}(L^2(\mathbb{R}))$ by the metaplectic transformation $\hat{R}(F)$. Let us recall the following property:

$$\hat{R}(F)^* \hat{T}(z) \hat{R}(F) = \hat{T}(F^{-1} z) \qquad (6.47)$$

We shall see now how to associate to $F$ an unitary operator in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$.

**Proposition 69** *Let $F \in SL(2,\mathbb{Z})$. Then for any $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)^2$ there exists $\theta' \in [0, 2\pi)^2$ such that*

$$\hat{R}(F)\mathcal{H}_\theta \subseteq \mathcal{H}_{\theta'}$$

*Furthermore $\theta'$ is defined as follows*:

$$\begin{pmatrix}\theta_2' \\ \theta_1'\end{pmatrix} = F\begin{pmatrix}\theta_2 \\ \theta_1\end{pmatrix} + \pi N\begin{pmatrix}ab \\ cd\end{pmatrix}, \qquad \begin{pmatrix}\text{mod } 2\pi \\ \text{mod } 2\pi\end{pmatrix} \tag{6.48}$$

*Moreover we have*

$$\hat{R}(F)\Sigma_N^{(\theta)} = \Sigma_N^{(\theta')}\hat{R}(F) \tag{6.49}$$

*Proof* We use here Proposition 57 and formula (6.9). From (6.47) we get, if $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ and $z = (z_1, z_2) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$,

$$\hat{T}(z)\hat{R}(F)\psi = \hat{R}(F)\hat{T}\big(F^{-1}(z)\big)\psi = \mathrm{e}^{-i(\sigma(z',(\theta_2,\theta_1))+\pi N z_1' z_2')}\hat{R}(F)\psi \tag{6.50}$$

where

$$z' = F^{-1}z = \begin{pmatrix}z_1' \\ z_2'\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}d & -b \\ -c & a\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}z_1 \\ z_2\end{pmatrix}$$

We have $\sigma(z', (\theta_2, \theta_1)) = \sigma(z, F(\theta_2, \theta_1))$ and

$$z_1' z_2' = -cdz_1^2 + (ad + bc)z_1 z_2 - abz_2^2$$

But modulo 2 we have $z_1^2 \equiv -z_1$, $z_2^2 \equiv -z_2$, $ad + bc \equiv 1$. So we get, modulo $2\pi$,

$$\sigma\big(z', (\theta_2, \theta_1)\big) + \pi N z_1' z_2' \equiv z_1(d\theta_1 + c\theta_2 + \pi Ncd) - z_2(b\theta_1 + a\theta_2 - \pi Nab) + \pi N z_1 z_2$$

So we have $\hat{R}(F)\mathcal{H}_\theta \subset \mathcal{H}_{\theta'}$ with $\theta'$ given by (6.48). Moreover it is easy to check formula (6.49). □

Let us denote $\theta' := \pi_F(\theta)$. So $\pi_F$ is a smooth map from the torus $\mathbb{R}^2/(2\pi\mathbb{Z})^2$ into itself.

*Remark 36* We can easily see that $\hat{R}_\theta(J) = \mathcal{F}^*$ for $\theta = (0, 0)$ in the basis of $\{e_j^{(\theta)}\}_{j=1}^N$, up to a phase.

**Definition 18** For every $F \in SL(2,\mathbb{Z})$, we shall denote $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$ the restriction of $\hat{R}(F)$ to $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. It is the quantization of $F$ in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$ is a linear operator from $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta')$.

**Proposition 70** *$\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$ is a one-to-one linear map from $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta')$.*

*Furthermore we have the following relationship between $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$ and $\hat{R}(F)$.*

$$\hat{R}(F) = \int_{[0,2\pi[^2}^{\oplus} V_{N,\theta}\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)\frac{d\theta}{(2\pi)^2} \tag{6.51}$$

*where $V_{N,\theta}$ is the canonical isometry from $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta')$ onto $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ defined by $V_{N,\theta}e_j^{(\theta')} = e_j^{(\theta)}$.*

*In particular for every $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$, $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$ is a unitary transformation from $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ onto $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta')$.*

*Proof* We know that $\hat{R}(F)$ is an isomorphism from $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ onto $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ and from $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$ onto $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R})$. Using that $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ is finite dimensional we see that $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$ is a one-to-one linear map from $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta')$.

We can easily check that $V_{N,\theta}\Sigma_N^{(\pi_F(\theta))} = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}$ for every $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$. So using that $\pi_F$ is an area preserving transformation we get, for every $\psi, \eta \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$,

$$\langle \eta, \hat{R}(F)\psi\rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{R})} = \frac{1}{4\pi^2}\int_{[0,2\pi[^2} \langle \eta(\theta), V_{N,\theta}\hat{R}_{N,\theta}\psi(\theta)\rangle_{\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)} d\theta$$

So the proposition is proved using standard properties of direct integral decompositions for operators. □

One has the following results concerning the interesting case $\theta' = \theta$. The proofs are left to the reader or see [29, 30, 104].

**Proposition 71** *Consider $F \in SL(2, \mathbb{Z})$ with $|\mathrm{Tr}\, F| > 2$. Then $\forall N \in \mathbb{N}^*$ there exists $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)^2$ so that*

$$\hat{R}(F)\mathcal{H}_N(\theta) \subseteq \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$$

*where $\theta$ can be chosen independent of $N$ if and only if $F$ is of the form*

$$\begin{pmatrix} \text{even} & \text{odd} \\ \text{odd} & \text{even} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} \text{odd} & \text{even} \\ \text{even} & \text{odd} \end{pmatrix}$$

*The case $|\mathrm{Tr}\, F| = 3$ is the only case where the choice of $\theta$ is unique with $\theta = (\pi, \pi)$ for $N$ odd and $\theta = (0, 0)$ for $N$ even.*

*Moreover in the case*

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} \text{even} & \text{odd} \\ \text{odd} & \text{even} \end{pmatrix}$$

*the value $\theta = (0, 0)$ is a solution of the fixed point equation $\theta = \pi_F(\theta)$.*

*Remark 37* It has been shown in [64] that for $F \in SL(2, \mathbb{Z})$ of the following form:

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} 2g & 1 \\ 2g^2 - 1 & 2g \end{pmatrix}$$

the operator $\hat{R}(F)$ has matrix elements in the basis $\{e_j^{(0)}\}_{j=0}^{N-1}$ of the form

$$\hat{R}(F)_{j,k} = \frac{C_N}{\sqrt{N}} \exp\left(\frac{2i\pi}{N}\left(gj^2 - jk + gk^2\right)\right)$$

where $|C_N| = 1$, so that it is represented as a unitary Hadamard matrix. We do not know at present whether this property is shared by more general maps $F$.

### 6.6.2 The Egorov Theorem Is Exact

As in the continuous case the Egorov theorem is exact since $\hat{R}(F)$ is the metaplectic representation of the linear symplectic map $F$:

**Theorem 38** *For any $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ one has*

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)^* \mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H) \hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F) = \mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H \circ F) \tag{6.52}$$

*Proof* By denoting $\hat{T}_\theta(z)$ the restriction of $\hat{T}(z)$ to $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ one has

$$\mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H) = \sum_{m,n\in\mathbb{Z}} H_{m,n} \hat{T}_\theta\left(\frac{m}{N}, \frac{n}{N}\right)$$

So

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)^* \mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H) \hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F) = \sum_{m,n} H_{m,n} \hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)^* \hat{T}_\theta\left(\frac{m}{N}, \frac{n}{N}\right) \hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$$

But we know that

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)^* \hat{T}_\theta(z) \hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F) = \hat{T}_\theta\left(F^{-1}z\right), \quad \forall z = (m/N, n/N)$$

We do the change of variables

$$\begin{pmatrix} m' \\ n' \end{pmatrix} = F^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} m \\ n \end{pmatrix}$$

Then we get

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)^* \mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H) \hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F) = \sum_{m',n'\in\mathbb{Z}} (H \circ F)_{m',n'} \hat{T}_\theta\left(\frac{m'}{N}, \frac{n'}{N}\right) = \mathrm{Op}^W_{\hbar,\theta}(H \circ F)$$

This completes the proof. □

### 6.6.3 Propagation of Coherent States

As in the continuous case the quantum propagation of coherent states is explicit and "imitates" the classical evolution of phase-space points. Here the phase space is the 2-torus and $\forall z \in \mathbb{T}^2$ the time evolution of the point $z = (q, p)$ is given by

$$z' = \begin{pmatrix} q' \\ p' \end{pmatrix} = F \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix}, \quad \bmod \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

We shall use "generalized coherent states" which are actually "squeezed states". Take $\gamma \in \mathbb{C}$ with $\Im\gamma > 0$. The normalized Gaussian $\varphi_\gamma \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ were defined in Sect. 6.4.

$$\varphi_\gamma(x) := \left(\frac{\Im\gamma}{\pi\hbar}\right)^{1/4} \exp\left(\frac{i\gamma x^2}{2\hbar}\right)$$

Then the generalized coherent states in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ are

$$\varphi_{\gamma,z} := \hat{T}(z)\varphi^\gamma \tag{6.53}$$

The generalized coherent states on the 2-torus are as above

$$\varphi^{(\theta)}_{\gamma,z} = \Sigma^{(\theta)}_N \varphi_{\gamma,z} \in \mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$$

We take such coherent state as initial state and apply to it the quantum evolution operator $\hat{R}_\theta(F)$. One has the following result:

**Proposition 72** *Let $F \in SL(2,\mathbb{Z})$ be given by*

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$$

*If $\pi_F(\theta) = \theta$, then*

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)\varphi^\theta_{\gamma,z} = \left(\frac{|b\gamma + a|}{b\gamma + a}\right)^{1/2} \varphi^\theta_{F\cdot\gamma, Fz}$$

*where $F \cdot \gamma = \frac{d\gamma+c}{b\gamma+a}$.*

*Proof* We know that $\Sigma^{(\theta)}_N \hat{R}(F) = \hat{R}(F)\Sigma^{(\theta)}_N$. Let $z = (q, p) \in \mathbb{T}^2$. Then we have

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)\varphi^\theta_{\gamma,z} = \hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)\Sigma^{(\theta)}_N \varphi_{\gamma,z} = \Sigma^{(\theta)}_N \hat{R}(F)\varphi_{\gamma,z}$$

The result follows from the propagation of coherent states by metaplectic transformations in the plane (see Chap. 3). □

## 6.7 Equipartition of the Eigenfunctions of Quantized Ergodic Maps on the 2-Torus

One of the simplest trace of the ergodicity of a map $F$ on $\mathbb{T}^2$ in the quantum world is the equipartition of the eigenfunctions of $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$ in the classical limit $N \to \infty$. It has been established in the literature in different contexts: for the geodesic flow on a compact Riemannian manifold it was proven by [45, 174, 206]. For Hamiltonian flows in $\mathbb{R}^n$ it was established in [106], and for smooth convex ergodic billiards in [83]. For the case of the $d$-torus this problem has been investigated in [28]. Here we restrict ourselves on the case of the 2-torus.

**Theorem 39** (Quantum ergodicity) *Let $F$ be an ergodic area preserving map on $\mathbb{T}^2$, and $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F) \in \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{H}_\theta)$ its quantization where $\theta = \pi_F(\theta)$. Denote by $\{\phi_j^N\}_{j=1,\dots,N}$ the eigenfunctions of $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$. Then there exists $E(N) \subset \{1, \dots, N\}$ satisfying*

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{\#E(N)}{N} = 1$$

*such that $\forall A \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ and all maps $j : N \in \mathbb{N} \longmapsto j(N) \in E(N)$ we have*:

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \langle \phi_{j(N)}^N, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^W(A)\phi_{j(N)}^N \rangle = \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} A(z)\,dz \tag{6.54}$$

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \langle \phi_{j(N)}^N, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(A)\phi_{j(N)}^N \rangle = \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} A(z)\,dz \tag{6.55}$$

*uniformly with respect to the map $j(N)$.*

*Remark 38* This Theorem says that the Wigner distribution and Husimi distribution (when divided by $N$) converge in the sense of distributions to the Liouville distribution along subsequences of density one.

We begin with a lemma:

**Lemma 38** *Let us introduce the following Radon probability measures $\mu_j^N$, $\bar{\mu}_N$ as follows*:

$$\mu_j^N(A) = \langle \phi_j^N, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(A)\phi_j^N \rangle, \qquad \bar{\mu}_N(A) = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j^N(A)$$

*This measures are $F$-invariant. because $\phi_j^N$ are eigenstates for $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$.*

*One has $\forall A \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$:*

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \bar{\mu}_N(A) = \mu(A)$$

*$\mu$ is the Liouville measure on the 2-torus $\mathbb{T}^2$.*

*Proof* We find that the measures $\mu_j^N$ are $F$-invariant, modulo $O(N^{-1})$, using Egorov theorem and that $\phi_j^N$ are eigenstates for $\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$.

Clearly we have

$$\bar{\mu}_N(A) = \frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(A)\big)$$

So we have

$$\begin{aligned}\big|\bar{\mu}_N(A) - \mu(A)\big| &= \left|\frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(A)\big) - \mu(A)\right| \\ &\le \big\|\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{AW}(A) - \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{W}(A)\big\|_{\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_\theta)} + \left|\frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^{W}(A)\big) - \mu(A)\right|\end{aligned}$$

We deduce the result using Propositions 64 and 68. □

*Remark 39* The Lemma is still true for the Schwartz distributions $\nu_j^N(A) = \langle\phi_j^N, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^W(A)\phi_j^N\rangle$ and $\bar{\nu}_N(A) = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^N \nu_j^N(A)$. The $\nu_j^N$ are exactly $F$-invariant.

Let us prove now

**Proposition 73** *For every $A \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ we have*

$$\lim_{N\to+\infty}\frac{1}{N}\sum_{0\le j\le N}|\mu_j^N(A) - \mu(A)|^2 = 0 \tag{6.56}$$

*Proof* We can replace $A$ by $A - \mu(A)$ and assume that $\mu(A) = 0$.

Define for $n \in \mathbb{N}^*$ the "time-average" of $A$:

$$A_n = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=1}^{k=n} A \circ F^k.$$

Using the Remark after Lemma 38, we can replace $\mu_j^N$ by $\nu_j^N$.

We have $\nu_j(A) = \nu_j(A_n)$ for every $n \ge 1$. So we get using the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality and $F$ invariance of $\nu_j^N$,

$$\begin{aligned}\big|\nu_j^N(A)\big|^2 &= \big|\langle\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(A_n)\phi_j^N, \phi_j^N\rangle\big|^2 \le \big\|\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(A_n)\phi_j^N\big\|^2 \\ &\le \big\langle\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(A_n)^*\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(A_n)\phi_j^N, \phi_j^N\big\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{6.57}$$

But from the composition rule for $\hbar$ Weyl quantization (Chap. 2) we have

$$\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(A_n)^*\mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W(A_n) = \mathrm{Op}_\hbar^W\big(|A_n|^2\big) + \mathcal{O}\left(\frac{1}{N}\right) \tag{6.58}$$

For every $n$, consider the limit $N \to +\infty$. Using Lemma 38 we get

$$\limsup_{N\to+\infty} \left|\mu_j^N(A)\right|^2 = \limsup_{N\to+\infty} \left|\nu_j^N(A)\right|^2 \le \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} |A_n|^2\, d\mu$$

Using ergodicity assumption and the Lebesgue dominated convergence theorem we have

$$\lim_{n\to+\infty} \int_{\mathbb{T}^2} |A_n|^2\, d\mu = 0$$

The limit (6.56) follows if $\mu(A) = 0$. □

Now, the Bienaymé–Tchebichev inequality gives the following result according to which "almost-all" eigenstates are equidistributed on the torus.

**Proposition 74** *For any $H \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ and $\forall \varepsilon > 0$*

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{\#\{j : \, |\mu_j^N(H) - \mu(H)| < \varepsilon\}}{N} = 1$$

Along the same lines as in [106] one can concludes for the existence of a $H$-independent set $E(N)$ such that the theorem holds true.

*Remark 40* A natural question is "is the quantum ergodic theorem true with $E(N) = N$" (unique quantum ergodicity)? The answer is negative. In [58] the following result is proved. Let $\mathcal{C} = \{\tau_1, \dots, \tau_K\}$, $K$ periodic orbits for $F$. Consider the probability measure $\mu_{\mathcal{C},\alpha} = \sum_{1\le j\le K} \alpha_j \mu_{\tau_j}$, where $\alpha_j \in [0, 1]$ and $\sum_{1\le j\le K} \alpha_j = 1$. Then there exists a sequence $N_k \to +\infty$ such that

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \left\langle \phi_{N_k}^N, \mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^W(A)\phi_{N_k}^N \right\rangle = \frac{1}{2}\int_{\mathbb{T}^2} A(z)\, dz + \frac{1}{2}\mu_{\mathcal{C},\alpha}(A) \tag{6.59}$$

This result shows that some eigenstates can concentrate along periodic orbits, this phenomenon is named scarring.

## 6.8 Spectral Analysis of Hamiltonian Perturbations

The previous results can be extended to some perturbations of automorphisms of the torus $\mathbb{T}^2$.

Let $H$ be a real periodic Hamiltonian, $H \in C^\infty(\mathbb{T}^2)$ and $F \in SL(2, \mathbb{Z})$. Let $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$ be such that $\theta = \pi_F(\theta)$. We consider here the following unitary operator in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$, where $2\pi\hbar N = 1$:

$$U_\varepsilon = \exp\left(-i\frac{\varepsilon}{\hbar}\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^w(H)\right)\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$$

We shall see that if $F$ is hyperbolic and $\varepsilon$ small enough the quantum ergodic theorem is still true.

To prepare the proof we begin by some useful properties concerning the propagators $V(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\frac{t}{\hbar}\hat{H}}$, $V_{N,\theta}(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\frac{t}{\hbar}\hat{H}_{N,\theta}}$.

Let us introduce the following Hilbert spaces: $\mathcal{K}_s = \mathrm{Dom}(\hat{H}_{osc} + 1)^{s/2}$, where $s \geq 0$, with the norm $\|\psi\|_s^2 = \|(\hat{H}_{osc} + 1)^{s/2}\psi\|^2$ ($\hat{H}_{osc} = -\hbar^2\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + x^2$).

**Lemma 39** *For every $s \geq 0$ and every $T > 0$, there exists $C_{s,T} > 0$ such that*

$$\left\| V(t)\psi \right\|_s \leq C_{s,T}\|\psi\|_s, \quad \forall \psi \in \mathcal{K}_s, \forall t \in [-T, T], \forall \hbar \in ]0, 2\pi]$$

*Proof* It is sufficient to assume that $s \in \mathbb{N}$ (using complex interpolation). For $s = 0$ we know that $V(t)$ is unitary. Let us denote $\Lambda = (\hat{H}_{osc} + 1)^{1/2}$. Let us assume $s = 1$. It is enough to prove that $\Lambda V(t)\Lambda^{-1}$ is bounded from $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ into $L^2(\mathbb{R})$.

We have

$$\frac{\hbar}{i}\frac{d}{dt}V(-t)\Lambda V(t) = V(-t)\big[\hat{H}, \Lambda\big]V(t)$$

Using the semi-classical calculus (Chap. 2), and that $H$ is periodic, we know that $\frac{i}{\hbar}[\hat{H}, \Lambda]$ is bounded on $L^2(\mathbb{R})$. So the lemma is proved for $s = 1$.

Now we will prove the result for every $s \in \mathbb{N}$ by induction. Assume the lemma is proved for $k \leq s - 1$. Compute

$$\frac{\hbar}{i}\frac{d}{dt}V(-t)\Lambda^s V(t) = V(t)\big[\hat{H}, \Lambda^s\big]V(t)$$

But $\frac{i}{\hbar}[\hat{H}, \Lambda^s]$ is an $\hbar$ pseudodifferential operator of order $s - 1$ for the weight $\mu(x, \xi) = (1 + x^2 + \xi^2)^{1/2}$. In particular the operator $\frac{i}{\hbar}[\hat{H}, \Lambda^s]\Lambda^{1-s}$ is bounded on $L^2(\mathbb{R})$. So we get the result for $s$ using the induction assumption. □

The following result will be useful to transform properties from the space $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ to the spaces $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$.

Let $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ and for $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$ be such that $\tilde{\psi}(\theta) = (\tilde{\psi}(\theta, 0), \ldots, \tilde{\psi}(\theta, N - 1) \in \mathbb{C}^N$ (coefficient of $\psi(\theta)$ in the canonical basis of $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$). Let us denote $H_N^s([0, 2\pi[^2)$ the periodic Sobolev space of order $s \geq 0$ of functions from $[0, 2\pi[^2$ into $\mathbb{C}^N$ Its norm is denoted $\|\cdot\|_{N,s}$.

**Lemma 40** *For every $s \geq 0$ there exists $C_s$ such that*

$$\left\|\tilde{\psi}\right\|_{N,s} \leq C_s\|\psi\|_s, \quad \forall \psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}) \tag{6.60}$$

*In particular we have the following pointwise estimate: for every $s > 1$ there exists $C_s$ such that*

$$\left|\tilde{\psi}(\theta)\right| \leq C_s\|\psi\|_s, \quad \forall \psi \in \mathcal{K}_s \tag{6.61}$$

*Proof* Let us recall that, for every $\psi \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$, $\theta = (\theta_1, \theta_2) \in ]0, 2\pi]^2$,

$$\tilde{\psi}(\theta, j) = N^{-1/2} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i\ell\theta_1} \psi(q_j - \ell), \quad q_j = \frac{j}{N} + \frac{\theta_2}{2\pi N}$$

So we have

$$\partial_{\theta_1} \tilde{\psi}(\theta, j) = N^{-1/2} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i\ell\theta_1} i(\ell - q_j)\psi(q_j - \ell) + iN^{-1/2} q_j \tilde{\psi}(\theta, j) \tag{6.62}$$

$$\partial_{\theta_2} \tilde{\psi}(\theta, j) = N^{-1/2} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{e}^{i\ell\theta_1} i\hbar \frac{d}{dx} \psi(q_j - \ell) \tag{6.63}$$

Reasoning by induction on $|m| = m_1 + m_2$, $m = (m_1, m_2)$, we easily get

$$\int_{[0,2\pi[^2} \left|\partial_\theta^m \tilde{\psi}(\theta, j)\right|^2 d\theta \le C_m \sum_{k+\ell \le |m|} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left(\left|(\hbar\partial_x)^k \psi(x)\right|^2 + \left|x^\ell \psi(x)\right|^2\right) dx \tag{6.64}$$

So estimate (6.60) follows. Estimate (6.61) is a consequence of Sobolev estimate in dimension 2. □

Let us now consider the propagation of coherent states $\varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)}$ under the dynamics $V_{N,\theta}(t)$ in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$. We shall prove that estimates can be obtained from the corresponding evolution in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ (see Chap. 4), using the two previous lemmas.

Recall these results. We have checked approximate solutions for the Schrödinger equation:

$$i\hbar\partial_t \psi_t = \hat{H}\psi_t, \quad \psi_0 = \varphi_{\gamma,z}, \ \Im\gamma > 0$$

We have found $\psi_{z,t}^{(M)}$ such that

$$i\hbar\partial_t \psi_{z,t}^{(M)} = \hat{H}\psi_{z,t}^{(M)} + \hbar^{(N+3)/2} R_{z,t}^{(M)}, \quad \psi_{z,0}^{(M)} = \varphi_{\gamma,z} \tag{6.65}$$

where, for every $s \ge 0$, $\|R_{z,t}^{(M)}\|_{\mathcal{K}_s} = O(1)$ for $\hbar \to 0$.

$\psi_{z,t}^{(M)}$ has the following expression:

$$\psi_{z,t}^{M}(x) = \mathrm{e}^{i\frac{\delta_t}{\hbar}} \sum_{0 \le j \le M} \hbar^{j/2} \pi_j\left(t, \frac{x - q_t}{\sqrt{\hbar}}\right) \varphi_{z_t}^{\Gamma_t}(x) \tag{6.66}$$

where $z_t = (q_t, p_t)$ is the classical path in the phase space $\mathbb{R}^2$ such that $z_0 = z$ satisfying

$$\begin{cases} \dot{q}_t = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(t, q_t, p_t) \\ \dot{p}_t = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(t, q_t, p_t), \quad q_0 = q, \ p_0 = p \end{cases} \tag{6.67}$$

and

$$\varphi_{z_t}^{\Gamma_t} = \hat{T}(z_t)\varphi^{\Gamma_t}. \tag{6.68}$$

$\varphi^{\Gamma_t}$ is the Gaussian state:

$$\varphi^{\Gamma_t}(x) = (\pi\hbar)^{-d/4} a(t) \exp\left(\frac{i}{2\hbar}\Gamma_t x.x\right) \tag{6.69}$$

$\Gamma_t$ is a complex number with positive non degenerate imaginary part, $\delta_t$ is a real function, $a(t)$ is a complex function, $\pi_j(t,x)$ is a polynomial in $x$ (of degree $\le 3j$) with time dependent coefficients.

More precisely $\Gamma_t$ is given by the Jacobi stability matrix of the Hamiltonian flow $z \mapsto \Phi_H^t z := z_t$. If we denote

$$A_t = \frac{\partial q_t}{\partial q}, \qquad B_t = \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial q}, \qquad C_t = \frac{\partial q_t}{\partial p}, \qquad D_t = \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial p} \tag{6.70}$$

then we have

$$\Gamma_t = (C_t + \gamma D_t)(A_t + \gamma B_t)^{-1}, \quad \Gamma_0 = \gamma, \tag{6.71}$$

$$\delta_t(z) = \int_0^t \big(p_s q_s - H(z_s)\big)\, ds - \frac{q_t p_t - q_0 p_0}{2}, \tag{6.72}$$

$$a(t) = \big[\det(A_t + \gamma B_t)\big]^{-1/2}, \tag{6.73}$$

where the complex square root is computed by continuity from $t = 0$.

Using the two lemmas and the Duhamel formula, we get, using the notation $\psi^{(\theta)} = \Sigma_N^{(\theta)}\psi$,

**Proposition 75** *For every $m \ge 0$ and every $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[^2$ we have*

$$\big\| V_{N,\theta}\varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)} - \psi_{z,t}^{(m,\theta)} \big\|_{\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)} = O\big(N^{-(m+1)/2}\big) \tag{6.74}$$

*In particular we have $\psi_{z,t}^{(0,\theta)} = \varphi_{\Gamma_t,z_t}^{(\theta)}$ with the notation of Sect. 6.4.*

Let us come back to Hamiltonian perturbations of hyperbolic automorphism $F$. Let us denote $F_H^\varepsilon = \Phi_H^\varepsilon \circ F$. $F_H^\varepsilon$ is symplectic on $\mathbb{T}^2$ (it preserves the area). By the $C^1$ stability of Anosov dynamical systems, for $\varepsilon$ small enough, $F_H^\varepsilon$ is Anosov. The quantum analogue of $F_H^\varepsilon$ is the unitary operator

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F) = \exp\left(-i\frac{\varepsilon}{\hbar}\mathrm{Op}_{\hbar,\theta}^w(H)\right)\hat{R}_{N,\theta}(F)$$

We have the following semi-classical correspondence.

**Proposition 76** *The following estimates hold true uniformly in $z \in \mathbb{T}^2$ and $\varepsilon \in [0,1]$:*

$$\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\varphi_{\gamma,z}^{(\theta)} = C_\varepsilon \varphi_{\gamma_\varepsilon, F_H^\varepsilon(z)}^{\theta} \tag{6.75}$$

*where* $\gamma_\varepsilon = \frac{C_\varepsilon + F\cdot\gamma D_\varepsilon}{A_\varepsilon + F\cdot\gamma B_\varepsilon}$ *and*

$$C_\varepsilon = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta_\varepsilon(F(z))/\hbar}\left(\frac{|\gamma b + a|}{\gamma b + a}\right)^{1/2}\left(\frac{|A_\varepsilon + F\cdot\gamma B_\varepsilon|}{A_\varepsilon + F\cdot\gamma B_\varepsilon}\right)^{1/2}$$

*In particular* $C_\varepsilon$ *is a complex number of modulus one.*

*Proof* This is a direct consequence of propagation of coherent states (Sect. 4.3). □

Now we shall prove some spectral properties for $\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)$ for $\varepsilon$ small enough.

Let us denote $\eta_j^N$, $0 \le j \le N-1$ the eigenvalues of $\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)$, so that $\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\psi_j^N = \eta_j^N\psi_j^N$ where $\{\psi_j^N\}_{0\le j\le N-1}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$ and $\eta_j^N \in \mathbb{S}^1$, the unit circle of the complex plane.

**Theorem 40** *For* $\varepsilon > 0$ *small enough, when* $N \to +\infty$, *the eigenvalues* $\{\eta_j^N\}_{0\le j\le N-1}$ *are uniformly distributed on* $\mathbb{S}^1$ *i.e. for every interval* $I$ *on* $\mathbb{S}^1$) *we have*

$$\lim_{N\to+\infty}\frac{\sharp\{j;\eta_j^N \in I\}}{N} = \mu(I) \tag{6.76}$$

*were* $\mu$ *is the Lebesgue probability measure on* $\mathbb{S}^1$.

*Proof* In a first step we will prove that for every $f \in C^1(\mathbb{S}^1)$ we have

$$\lim_{N\to+\infty}\frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big[f\big(\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\big)\big] = \int_{\mathbb{S}^1} f(x)\,d\mu(x) \tag{6.77}$$

Using Fourier decomposition of $f$ it is enough to prove (6.77) for $f(z) = z^k$, $k \in \mathbb{Z}$. Hence we have to prove that for every $k \ne 0$,

$$\lim_{N\to+\infty}\frac{1}{N}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\big(\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\big)^k\big) = 0 \tag{6.78}$$

We assume $k \ge 1$ (for $k \le -1$ there are obvious modifications).

Using that the coherent states are an overcomplete system in $\mathcal{H}_N(\theta)$, we have

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\big(\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\big)^k\big) = \int_{\mathbb{T}^2}\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \big(\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\big)^k\varphi_z^\theta\rangle$$

Using the propagation of coherent states we get

$$\big|\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \big(\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\big)^k\varphi_z^\theta\rangle\big| = \big|\langle\varphi_z^\theta, \varphi_{\gamma(\varepsilon,k),(F_H^\varepsilon)^k}\rangle\big| + O\big(\varepsilon N^{-1/2}\big)$$

and using Proposition 61 we have

$$\left|\left\langle \varphi_z^\theta, \left(\hat{R}_{N,\theta,\varepsilon}(F)\right)^k \varphi_z^\theta \right\rangle\right| \le C(\varepsilon,k)\sqrt{N}\mathrm{e}^{-c(\varepsilon,k)d((F_H^\varepsilon)^k z,z)^2 N} + O\left(\varepsilon N^{-1/2}\right)$$

But we know that for $\varepsilon$ small enough $F_H^\varepsilon$ is Anosov so it is ergodic and its periodic set has zero measure. So for every $\delta > 0$ we have $\mu\{z \in \mathbb{T}^2,\ d((F_H^\varepsilon)^k z, z) \ge \delta\} = 0$. Using that $O(\varepsilon N^{-1/2})$ is uniform in $z \in \mathbb{T}^2$ we get (6.78) hence (6.77).

Now we get easily the Theorem considering $f_\pm \in C^1(\mathbb{S}^1)$ such that $f_- \le \mathbb{1}_I \le f_+$ and $\int_{\mathbb{S}^1} (f_+ - f_-)\, d\mu < \delta$ with $\delta \to 0$. $\square$

# Chapter 7
# Spin-Coherent States

**Abstract** In this chapter we consider that the unit sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ of the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^3$ with its canonical symplectic structure is a phase space. Then coherent states are labeled by points on $\mathbb{S}^2$ and allow us to build a quantization of the two sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$. They are defined in each finite-dimensional space of an irreducible unitary representation of the symmetry group $SO(3)$ (or its covering $SU(2)$) of $\mathbb{S}^2$ and give a semi-classical interpretation for the spin.

As an application we state the Berezin–Lieb inequalities and compute the thermodynamic limit for large spin systems.

## 7.1 Introduction

Up to now we have considered Gaussian coherent states and their relationship with the Heisenberg group, the symplectic group and the harmonic oscillator. These states are used to describe field coherent states (Glauber [90]). For the description of assembly of two-levels atom, physicists have introduced what they have called "atomic coherent states" [5]. These states are defined in Hilbert space irreducible representations of some symmetry Lie group.

As we shall see later it is possible to associate coherent states to any Lie group irreducible representation. This general construction is due to Perelomov [155]. In this chapter we consider the rotation group $SO(3)$ of the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^3$ and its companion $SU(2)$. Irreducible representations of these groups are related with the spin of particles as was discovered by Pauli [154].

In this chapter (and in the rest of the book) we shall use freely some basic notions concerning Lie groups, Lie algebra and their representations. We have recalled most of them in an Appendices A, B and C.

## 7.2 The Groups $SO(3)$ and $SU(2)$

Let us consider the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^3$ equipped with the usual scalar product, $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$, $y = (y_1, y_2, y_3)$, $x \cdot y = x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2 + x_3 y_3$ and the Euclidean norm

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_7, 

$\|x\| = (x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2)^{1/2}$. The isometry group of $\mathbb{R}^3$ is denoted $O(3)$.[1] $A \in O(3)$ means that $\|Ax\| = \|x\|$ for every $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$. $SO(3)$ is the subgroup of direct isometries i.e. $A \in SO(3)$ means that $A \in O(3)$ and $\det A = 1$. It is well known that $A \in SO(3)$ is a rotation characterized by a unitary vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^3$ (rotation axis) and an angle $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[$. More precisely, $v$ is an 1-eigenvector for $A$, $Av = v$ and $A$ is a rotation of angle $\theta$ in the plane orthogonal to $v$. So we have the following formula, for every $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$:

$$Ax := R(\theta, v)x = (1 - \cos\theta)(v \cdot x)v + (\cos\theta)x + \sin\theta(v \wedge x) \tag{7.1}$$

Recall that the wedge product $v \wedge x$ is the unique vector in $\mathbb{R}^3$ such that

$$\det[v, x, w] = (v \wedge x) \cdot w, \quad \forall w \in \mathbb{R}^3$$

It is easy to compute the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(3)$ of $SO(3)$,

$$\mathfrak{so}(3) = \left\{A \in \mathrm{Mat}(3, \mathbb{R}),\ A^T + A = 0\right\}$$

where $A^T$ is the transposed matrix of $A$.

Considering rotations around vectors of the canonical basis $\{e_1, e_2, e_3\}$ of $\mathbb{R}^3$ we get a basis $\{E_1, E_2, E_3\}$ of $\mathfrak{so}(3)$ where

$$E_k = \frac{d}{d\theta} R(\theta, e_k)\Big|_{\theta=0}$$

It satisfies the commutation relation

$$[E_k, E_\ell] = E_m \tag{7.2}$$

for every circular permutation $(k, \ell, m)$ of $(1, 2, 3)$.

It is well known that any rotation matrix is an exponential.

**Proposition 77** *For every $v \in \mathbb{R}^3$, $\|v\| = 1$ and $\theta \in [0, 2\pi[$ we have*

$$R(\theta, v) = \mathrm{e}^{\theta M(v)} \tag{7.3}$$

*where $M(v) = \sum_{1 \le k \le 3} v_j E_j$.*

*Proof* $\theta \mapsto R(\theta, v)$ and $\theta \mapsto \mathrm{e}^{\theta M(v)}$ are one parameter groups, so it is enough to see that their derivatives at $\theta = 0$ are the same. This is true because we have $v \wedge x = M(v)x$. □

As $SO(2)$ (identified to the circle $\mathbb{S}^1$) $SO(3)$ is connected but not simply connected. To compute irreducible representations of $SO(3)$ it is convenient to consider

[1] An isometry in an Euclidean space is automatically linear so that $O(3)$ is a subgroup of $GL(\mathbb{R}^3)$.

a simply connected cover of $SO(3)$ which can be realized as the complex Lie group $SU(2)$. $SU(2)$ is the group of unitary $2 \times 2$ matrices $A$ with complex coefficients, $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -\bar{b} & \bar{a} \end{pmatrix}$, such that $|a|^2 + |b|^2 = 1$.

The Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ is the real vector space of dimension 3 of $2 \times 2$ complex anti-Hermitian matrices of zero trace:

$$\mathfrak{su}(2) = \left\{ X \in \mathfrak{gl}(2, \mathbb{C}) \mid X^* + X = 0, \operatorname{Tr} X = 0 \right\}$$

The three linearly independent matrices:

$$A_1 = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad A_2 = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad A_3 = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix}$$

form a basis of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ on $\mathbb{R}$ and satisfy the commutation relations

$$[A_k, A_\ell] = A_m \tag{7.4}$$

provided $k, l, m$ is a circular permutation of $1, 2, 3$.

Let us consider the adjoint representation of $SU(2)$. This representation is defined in the real vector space $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ by the formula

$$\rho_U(A) = UAU^{-1}, \quad U \in SU(2),\ A \in \mathfrak{su}(2) \tag{7.5}$$

In physics the spin is defined by considering the Pauli matrices, which are hermitian $2 \times 2$ matrices given by

$$\sigma_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \sigma_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \sigma_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{7.6}$$

which satisfy the commutation relations

$$[\sigma_k, \sigma_l] = 2i\sigma_m \tag{7.7}$$

which is equivalent to (7.4) because we have $A_k = \frac{i}{2}\sigma_k$. $\{\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3\}$ is an orthonormal basis for the three-dimensional real linear space $H_{2,0}$ of Hermitian $2 \times 2$ matrices with trace 0, which will be identified with $\mathbb{R}^3$. The scalar product in $H_{2,0}$ is

$$\langle A, B \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{Tr}\big(A^* B\big)$$

Let us denote $R_U$ the $3 \times 3$ matrix of $\rho_U$ in this basis. The following proposition gives the basic relationship between the groups $SO(3)$ and $SU(2)$.

**Proposition 78** *For every $U \in SU(2)$ we have*:

(i) *$R_U$ has real coefficients.*
(ii) *$R_U$ is an isometry in $H_{2,0}$.*
(iii) $\det R_U = 1$.

(iv) *The map* $U \mapsto R_U$ *is a surjective group morphism from* $SU(2)$ *onto* $SO(3)$.
(v) *The kernel of* $U \mapsto R_U$ *is* $\ker R = \{\mathbb{1}, -\mathbb{1}\}$.

*Proof*

(i) From $\langle R_U\sigma_k, \sigma_\ell\rangle = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr}(U\sigma_k U^{-1}\sigma_\ell)$ we get $\overline{\langle R_U\sigma_k, \sigma_\ell\rangle} = \langle R_U\sigma_k, \sigma_\ell\rangle$.
(ii) Using commutativity of trace we have $\langle R_U A, R_U B\rangle = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr} AA^* = \langle A, A\rangle$.
(iii) We have $\det R_U = \pm 1$ because $R_U$ is an isometry. But $\det R_{\mathbb{1}} = 1$ and $SU(2)$ is connected so $\det R_U = 1$.
(iv) It is easy to see that $R$ is a group morphism.

Let us consider the following generators of $SU(2)$:

$$U_1(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi/2} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad U_2(\theta) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) & -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \sin(\theta/2) & \cos(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

Let us remark that we have, for every $\varphi, \varphi', \theta$,

$$U_1(\varphi)U_2(\theta)U_1(\varphi') = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i/2(\varphi+\varphi')} & -\sin(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{i/2(\varphi'-\varphi)} \\ \sin(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i/2(\varphi'-\varphi)} & \cos(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{i/2(\varphi+\varphi')} \end{pmatrix} \tag{7.8}$$

Then compute the image:

$$R_{U_1(\varphi)} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\varphi & \sin\varphi & 0 \\ -\sin\varphi & \cos\varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad R_{U_2(\theta)} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\theta & 0 & -\sin\theta \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin\theta & 0 & \cos\theta \end{pmatrix}$$

$R_{U_1(\varphi)}$ is the rotation of angle $\varphi$ with axis $e_3$, $R_{U_2(\theta)}$ is the rotation of angle $\theta$ with axis $e_2$.

So, if $\varphi, \theta, \eta \in [0, 2\pi[$ we have

$$R_{U_1(\varphi)U_2(\theta)U_1(\eta)} = R_{U_1(\varphi)}R_{U_2(\theta)}R_{U_1(\eta)}$$

where $(\varphi, \theta, \eta)$ are the Euler angles of the rotation $R(\varphi, \theta, \eta) := R_{U_1(\varphi)}R_{U_2(\theta)} \times R_{U_1(\eta)}$. But any rotation can be defined with its Euler angles, so $R$ is surjective.

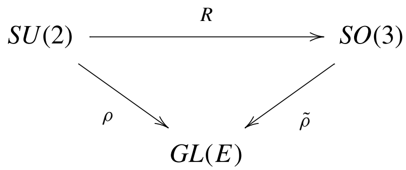
(v) Let $U \in SU(2)$ be such that $UAU^{-1} = A$ for every $A \in H_{2,0}$. Then we easily get $UAU^{-1} = A$ for every $A \in \mathrm{Mat}(2, \mathbb{C})$ hence $U = \lambda\mathbb{1}$ with $\lambda = \pm 1$. □

We shall see now that every irreducible representation of $SO(3)$ comes from an irreducible representation of its companion $SU(2)$.

**Corollary 22** *$\rho$ is an irreducible representation of $SO(3)$ if and only if $\rho$ is an irreducible representation of $SU(2)$ such that*

$$\rho R_U = \rho R_{-U}, \quad \forall U \in SU(2)$$

*Proof* Let $\rho$ be a representation of $SU(2)$ in a finite-dimensional linear space $E$ such that $\rho R_U = \rho R_{-U}$. Then we define a representation $\tilde{\rho}$ of $SO(3)$ in $E$ by the equality $\tilde{\rho}(R_U) = \rho(U)$. Conversely every representation of $SO(3)$ comes from a representation of $SU(2)$ like above. In other words the following diagram is commutative:




where $GL(E)$ is the group of invertible linear maps in $E$. □

**Corollary 23** *The Lie algebras* $\mathfrak{so}(3)$ *and* $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ *are isomorph though the isomorphism* $DR(\mathbb{1})$ (*differential of* $R$ *at the unit of the Lie group* $SU(2)$). *In particular we have* $DR(\mathbb{1})A_k = E_k$, $k = 1, 2, 3$.

*Remark 41* The generators $\{L_k\}_{1\leq k\leq 3}$ of the rotations with axis $e_k$ give a basis of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(3)$ as a real linear space. Recall that $\mathbf{L} = (L_1, L_2, L_3)$ is the angular momentum.[2] $L_k$ belongs to the complex Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(3) \oplus i\mathfrak{so}(3)$ and is sometimes denoted $J_k$, $J = ix \wedge \nabla_x$. For example $L_3 = i(x_2\partial_{x_1} - x_1\partial_{x_2})$. We have the commutation relations, for every circular permutation $(k, \ell, m)$ of $(1, 2, 3)$,

$$[L_k, L_\ell] = iL_m. \tag{7.9}$$

This basis can be identified with the matrix basis $(iE_1, iE_2, iE_3)$ considered before.

## 7.3 The Irreducible Representations of $SU(2)$

The group $SU(2)$ is simply connected (it has the topology of the sphere $\mathbb{S}^3$), so we know that all its representations are determined by the representations of its Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(2)$ (see Appendices A, B and C). Moreover, $SU(2)$ is a compact Lie group so all its irreducible representations are finite dimensional.

### *7.3.1 The Irreducible Representations of* $\mathfrak{su}(2)$

We shall first consider the representation of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ and determine all its irreducible representations.

Recall that $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ is a real Lie algebra and it is more convenient to consider its complexification $\mathfrak{su}(2) + i\mathfrak{su}(2)$. But any matrix can be decomposed as a sum of an

[2] Multiplication by $i$ gives self-adjoint generators instead of anti-self-adjoint operators.

Hermitian and anti-Hermitian part, so we have

$$\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C}) = \mathfrak{su}(2) + i\mathfrak{su}(2) \tag{7.10}$$

$\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C})$ is the space of matrices $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & -a \end{pmatrix}$, $a, b, c \in \mathbb{C}$. It is the Lie algebra of the group of $2 \times 2$ complex matrices $g$ such that $\det g = 1$. It results from (7.10) that irreducible representations of the real Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ are determined by irreducible representations of the complex Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C})$.

One considers $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C})$ endowed with the basis $\{H, K_+, K_-\}$ in which the commutation relations are

$$[H, K_\pm] = \pm K_\pm, \qquad [K_+, K_-] = 2H \tag{7.11}$$

where

$$H = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad K_+ = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad K_- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

It is also convenient to introduce Hermitian generators (see footnote 2):

$$K_3 = H = \frac{\sigma_3}{2}, \qquad K_1 = \frac{K_+ + K_-}{2} = \frac{\sigma_1}{2}, \qquad K_2 = \frac{K_+ - K_-}{2i} = \frac{\sigma_2}{2} \tag{7.12}$$

Let $(E, R)$ be a (finite-dimensional) irreducible representation of $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C})$. For convenience let us denote $\hat{H}$ the operator $R(H)$. $\hat{H}$ admits at least an eigenvalue $\lambda$ and an eigenvector $v \neq 0$:

$$\hat{H}v = \lambda v$$

From the commutation relations (7.11) we have

$$\hat{H}\hat{K}_+ v = (\hat{K}_+\hat{H} + \hat{K}_+)v = (\lambda + 1)\hat{K}_+ v$$
$$\hat{H}\hat{K}_- v = (\hat{K}_-\hat{H} - \hat{K}_-)v = (\lambda - 1)\hat{K}_- v$$

Since there must be only a finite number of distinct eigenvalues of $\hat{H}$, there exists an eigenvalue $\lambda_0$ of $\hat{H}$ and an eigenvector $v_0$ such that

$$\hat{H}v_0 = \lambda_0 v_0, \qquad \hat{K}_- v_0 = 0$$

$\lambda_0$ is the smallest eigenvalue of $\hat{H}$. One defines then

$$v_k = (\hat{K}_+)^k v_0$$

It must obey

$$\hat{H}v_k = (\lambda_0 + k)v_k$$

One can show by induction on $k$ that

$$\hat{K}_- v_k = c_k v_{k-1}, \quad \text{where } c_{k+1} = c_k - 2(\lambda_0 + k),\ \forall k \in \mathbb{N}$$

So we get

$$c_k = -k(2\lambda_0 + k - 1), \quad k \in \mathbb{N}$$

Since the vectors $v_k \neq 0$ are linearly independent and the vector space $E$ is finite dimensional there exists an integer $n$ such that

$$v_0 \neq 0, v_1 \neq 0, \ldots, v_n \neq 0, v_{n+1} = 0$$

Thus from $\hat{K}_- v_{n+1} = 0$ one deduces that $2\lambda_0 + n = 0$.

Then $\forall k \in \mathbb{N}$ one has

$$[\hat{K}_+, \hat{K}_-] v_k = 2\hat{H} v_k, \qquad [\hat{H}, \hat{K}_\pm] v_k = \pm \hat{K}_\pm v_k \tag{7.13}$$

One deduces that the vectors $\{v_k\}_{k=0}^n$ generate a subspace of $E$ invariant by the representation $R$ and since the representation we look for is irreducible, they generate the complex linear space $E$ which is therefore of finite dimension $n+1$. The elements of the basis $\{v_k\}_{k=0}^n$ are called Dicke states in [5].

In conclusion we have found necessary conditions to get an irreducible representation $(E^{(n)},\ R^{(n)})$ of dimension $n+1$ of $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C})$ with a basis $\{v_k\}_{k=0}^n$ of $E^{(n)}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} R^{(n)}(H)v_k &= \left(k - \frac{n}{2}\right) v_k \\ R^{(n)}(K_+)v_k &= v_{k+1} \\ R^{(n)}(K_-)v_k &= k(n-k+1)v_{k-1} \end{aligned} \tag{7.14}$$

for $0 \le k \le n$ and $v_{-1} = v_{n+1} = 0$.

We have to check that these conditions can be realized in some concrete linear space. Let $E^{(n)}$ the complex linear space generated by homogeneous polynomials of degree $n$ in $(z_1, z_2) \in \mathbb{C}$ with the basis $v_k = \frac{z_1^k z_2^{n-k}}{(n-k)!}$ and

$$R^{(n)}(K_-) = z_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial z_1}, \qquad R^{(n)}(K_+) = z_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial z_2}, \qquad R^{(n)}(H) = \frac{1}{2}\left(z_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial z_1} - z_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial z_2}\right)$$

So we have proved:

**Proposition 79** *Every irreducible representation of $\mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C})$ of finite dimension is equivalent to $(E^{(n)},\ R^{(n)})$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$.*

In the physics literature one considers $j$ such that $n = 2j$. $j$ is thus either integer or half-integer and represents the angular momentum of the particles. We shall see later that representations of $SO(3)$ correspond to $j \in \mathbb{N}$ so $n$ is even. $j$ is the greatest eigenvalue of $R^{(n)}(H)$.

In quantum mechanics the representation $(E^{(2j)}, R^{(2j)})$ is denoted $(V^{(j)}, D^{(j)})$ and one considers the basis of $V^{(j)}$ indexed by the number $m$, $-j \le m \le j$, where $m$ is integer if $j$ is, and half-integer if $j$ is.

States in $V^{(j)}$ represent spin states and the operators in $V^{(j)}$ are spin observables. So we introduce the notation $\hat{S}_\ell = R^{(2j)}(K_\ell)$ (it is the spin observable along the axis $0x_\ell$, $1 \le \ell \le 3$) and $\hat{S}_\pm = R^{(2j)}(K_\pm)$. This basis is usually written in the "ket" notation of Dirac as $|j, m\rangle$. The correspondence is the following:

$$|j, m\rangle = (-1)^{j+m} \sqrt{\frac{(j-m)!}{(j+m)!}}\, v_{j+m}$$

In this basis the representation $D^j$ of the elements $K_3$, $K_+$, $K_-$ (basis of the complex Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sl}(2, \mathbb{C})$ defined at the beginning) act as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{S}_3 |j, m\rangle &= m |j, m\rangle \\
\hat{S}_+ |j, m\rangle &= \sqrt{(j-m)(j+m+1)}\, |j, m+1\rangle \\
\hat{S}_- |j, m\rangle &= \sqrt{(j+m)(j-m+1)}\, |j, m-1\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\hat{S}_- |j, -j\rangle = 0, \qquad |j, m\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{(j-m)!}{(j+m)!(2j)!}} \big(\hat{S}_+\big)^{j+m} |j, -j\rangle$$

We recall that the two components $L_1$, $L_2$ of the angular momentum are related to the operators $L_\pm$ as follows:

$$L_+ = L_1 + i L_2, \qquad L_- = L_1 - i L_2$$

In the representation space $(V^{(j)}, D^j)$ of $\mathfrak{sl}(2, \mathbb{C})$ one can consider the spin operator $\mathbf{S} = (\hat{S}_1, \hat{S}_2, \hat{S}_3)$ and

$$\hat{S}_1^2 + \hat{S}_2^2 + \hat{S}_3^2 = \mathbf{S}^2$$

$\mathbf{S}^2$ can be rewritten as

$$\mathbf{S}^2 = \hat{S}_- \hat{S}_+ + \hat{S}_3 \big(\hat{S}_3 + \mathbb{1}\big)$$

It is clear that for the representation $D^j$, the vector $|j, m\rangle$ is eigenstate of $\mathbf{S}^2$:

$$\mathbf{S}^2 |j, m\rangle = j(j+1) |j, m\rangle$$

Thus $\mathbf{S}^2$ acts as a multiple of the identity and is called the Casimir operator of the representation $D^j$.

One defines a scalar product on $E^{(2j)}$ by imposing that the basis $|j, m\rangle$ is an orthonormal basis. In the ordered basis:

$$|j, -j\rangle, |j, -j+1\rangle, \ldots, |j, j-1\rangle, |j, j\rangle$$

the operators $S_3$, $S_\pm$ are represented by the following $(2j+1) \times (2j+1)$ matrices:

$$\hat{S}_3 = \operatorname{diag}(-j, -j+1, \ldots, j-1, j) \tag{7.15}$$

$$\hat{S}_+ = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \sqrt{2j} & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \sqrt{2(2j-1)} & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \sqrt{2(2j-1)} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & \sqrt{2j} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{7.16}$$

$$\hat{S}_- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{2j} & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \sqrt{2(2j-1)} & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & \sqrt{2j} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{7.17}$$

These formulas are consequences of the polynomials representation of the Dicke states $|j, m\rangle$ in the space $V^{(j)}$ given by

$$|j, m\rangle(z_1, z_2) = \frac{z_1^{j+m} z_2^{j-m}}{\sqrt{(j+m)!(j-m)!}}$$

### *7.3.2 The Irreducible Representations of* $SU(2)$

We shall see now that for every $j \in \frac{\mathbb{N}}{2}$ we can get a representation $T^{(j)}$ of $SU(2)$ such that its differential $dT^{(j)}$ coincides with the representations $D^{(j)}$ of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ that we have studied in the previous section. Furthermore they are the only irreducible representations of $SU(2)$.

Since every unitary matrix is diagonalizable with unitary passage matrices we have $\forall A \in SU(2)$:

$$A = g \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{it} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-it} \end{pmatrix} g^{-1}$$

for some $t \in \mathbb{R}$. Then we show that the exponential map from $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ to $SU(2)$ is surjective:

From the relation

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{it} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-it} \end{pmatrix} = \exp(it\sigma_3)$$

we deduce

$$A = \exp\bigl(itg\sigma_3 g^{-1}\bigr)$$

with $ig\sigma_3 g^{-1} \in \mathfrak{su}(2)$, hence the result.

Taking the Pauli matrices as a basis we find that every $A \in \mathfrak{su}(2)$ can be written as

$$A = i\mathbf{a} \cdot \sigma, \quad \mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3$$

We deduce easily that

$$\det A = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2$$

and

$$A^2 = -(\det A)\mathbb{1}$$

Therefore we have proven the following lemma:

**Lemma 41** *For any* $A \in \mathfrak{su}(2)$ *one has*

$$A^2 = -(\det A)\mathbb{1}$$

Furthermore one has the following result:

**Proposition 80** *For any* $A \in \mathfrak{su}(2)$ *such that* $\det A = 1$, *one has*, $\forall t \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\exp(tA) = \cos t\mathbb{1} + \sin tA \tag{7.18}$$

*Proof* Both members of (7.18) have $A$ as derivative at $t = 0$. It is therefore enough to show that the map $t \in \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{1}\cos t + A \sin t$ is a one parameter subgroup of $GL(2, \mathbb{C})$. Take $s \in \mathbb{R}$. One has

$$\begin{aligned}
&(\mathbb{1}\cos t + A\sin t)(\mathbb{1}\cos s + A\sin s)\\
&\quad = \mathbb{1}\cos t\cos s + A^2 \sin s\sin t + (\sin s\cos t + \cos s\sin t)A\\
&\quad = \mathbb{1}\cos(s + t) + A\sin(s + t)
\end{aligned} \tag{7.19}$$

□

As a consequence we see that every element $g \in SU(2)$ can be written as

$$g = \alpha_1\mathbb{1} + \alpha_2\mathscr{I} + \alpha_3\mathscr{J} + \alpha_4\mathscr{K}$$

where

$$\mathscr{I} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathscr{J} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathscr{K} = \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix}$$

the vector $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4)$ of $\mathbb{R}^4$ being of norm 1. Thus $SU(2)$ can be identified with the group of quaternions of norm 1.

The group $SU(2)$ acts on $\mathbb{C}^2$ by the usual matrix action.

$$g = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -\bar{b} & \bar{a} \end{pmatrix} \in SU(2) \tag{7.20}$$

with $|a|^2 + |b|^2 = 1$. Then

$$g\begin{pmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} az_1 + bz_2 \\ -\bar{b}z_1 + \bar{a}z_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$g$ induces an action $\rho(g)$ on functions $f : \mathbb{C}^2 \to \mathbb{C}$:

$$\rho(g)f = f \circ g^{-1}$$

Since $g$ has determinant one its inverse $g^{-1}$ equals

$$g^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{a} & -b \\ \bar{b} & a \end{pmatrix}$$

thus

$$\big(\rho(g)f\big)(z_1, z_2) = f(\bar{a}z_1 - bz_2, \bar{b}z_1 + az_2)$$

One considers $V^{(j)}$ as the vector space of homogeneous polynomials in $z_1, z_2$ of degree $2j$ (we recall that $j \in \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}$). Consider the following basis in $V^{(j)}$:

$$z_2^{2j}, z_1 z_2^{2j-1}, \ldots, z_1^{j+m} z_2^{j-m}, \ldots, z_1^{2j}, \quad -j \le m \le j$$

It is clear that $V^{(j)}$ is stable by $\rho$.

One equips $V^{(j)}$ with the $SU(2)$-invariant scalar product which makes the monomials

$$p_k(z_1, z_2) = \frac{z_1^k z_2^{2j-k}}{\sqrt{k!(2j-k)!}}$$

an orthonormal basis of $V^{(j)}$. Define the action of $g \in SU(2)$ on an homogeneous polynomial $p$ in the following way:

$$T^j(g)p(z_1, z_2) = p \circ g^{-1}(z_1, z_2)$$

Let us prove the following.

**Lemma 42** *Consider the homogeneous polynomial* $p$:

$$p(z_1, z_2) = \sum_{l=0}^{2j} c_l z_1^l z_2^{2j-l}$$

*Then the map*

$$p \mapsto \|p\|^2 = \sum_{l=0}^{2j} l!(2j-l)!|c_l|^2$$

*defines an Hilbertian norm of* $V^{(j)}$ *that is invariant by the action of* $SU(2)$.

*Proof* It is enough to check that $\|p \circ g^*\|^2 = \|p\|^2$ which implies that the representation $(V^{(j)}, T^j)$ is unitary. Take

$$p(z_1, z_2) = p_{\alpha,\beta}(z_1, z_2) = (\alpha z_1 + \beta z_2)^{2j}, \quad \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$$

which generate $V^{(j)}$. Then if

$$p(z_1, z_2) = \sum_{l=0}^{2j} c_l z_1^l z_2^{2j-l}, \qquad p'(z_1, z_2) = \sum_{l=0}^{2j} c_l' z_1^l z_2^{2j-l}$$

$$p \circ g^{-1}(z_1, z_2) = \sum_{l=0}^{2j} d_l z_1^l z_2^{2j-l}, \qquad p' \circ g^{-1}(z_1, z_2) = \sum_{l=0}^{2j} d_l' z_1^l z_2^{2j-l}$$

one has

$$\begin{aligned} \langle p', p \rangle = \langle p' \circ g^{-1}, p \circ g^{-1} \rangle &= \sum_{l=0}^{2j} c_l \bar{c}_l' l!(2j-l)! \\ &= \sum_{l=0}^{2j} d_l \bar{d}_l' l!(2j-l)! = (2j)! \big(\alpha \bar{\alpha}' + \beta \bar{\beta}'\big)^{2j} \end{aligned} \tag{7.21}$$

Namely the Hermitian scalar product in $\mathbb{C}^2$ of $(\alpha, \beta)$ with $(\alpha', \beta')$ is invariant under $SU(2)$. □

We shall study the representation $T^{(j)}$ of $SU(2)$ obtained by restriction of $\rho$ to $V^{(j)}$. One defines

$$f_m^j(z_1, z_2) = z_1^{j+m} z_2^{j-m}$$

We first consider diagonal matrices in $SU(2)$. They are of the form

$$g_t = \exp(-2itK_3) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{it} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-it} \end{pmatrix}$$

Then

$$\big(T^{(j)}(g_t) f_m^j\big)(z_1, z_2) = f_m^j\big(z_1 \mathrm{e}^{-it}, z_2 \mathrm{e}^{it}\big) = \mathrm{e}^{-2imt} f_m^j(z_1, z_2) \tag{7.22}$$

Thus every $f_m^j$ is eigenstate of $T^{(j)}(g_t)$ with eigenvalue $\mathrm{e}^{-2imt}$.

We shall now consider the differential $dT^{(j)}(g)$ for the basis elements $K_3, K_\pm$ of $\mathfrak{sl}(2, \mathbb{C})$: one considers $X \in \mathfrak{sl}(2, \mathbb{C})$,

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & -\alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$g_t = \exp(tX) = \begin{pmatrix} a(t) & b(t) \\ c(t) & d(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

Then $g(0) = \mathbb{1}$ and $g'(0) = X$ so that

$$a(0) = d(0) = 1, \qquad b(0) = c(0) = 0,$$
$$a'(0) = \alpha, \qquad b'(0) = \beta, \qquad c'(0) = \gamma, \qquad d'(0) = -\alpha$$

For any polynomial in two variables $f(z_1, z_2)$ one has

$$\big((d\rho)(-X)f\big)(z_1, z_2) = \frac{d}{dt}\big(\rho(g_t)^{-1} f\big)(z_1, z_2)\Big|_{t=0} = \frac{d}{dt}(f \circ g_t)(z_1, z_2)\Big|_{t=0}$$
$$= (\alpha z_1 + \beta z_2)\partial_1 f(z_1, z_2) + (\gamma z_1 + \delta z_2)\partial_2 f(z_1, z_2)$$

Therefore

$$(d\rho)(K_3) = \frac{1}{2}(z_1\partial_1 - z_2\partial_2)$$
$$(d\rho)(K_+) = z_1\partial_2, \qquad (d\rho)(K_-) = z_2\partial_1$$

We shall determine the action of $d\rho(K_3)$, $d\rho(K_\pm)$ on the basis vectors $f_m^j$ of $V^{(j)}$:

$$d\rho(K_3) f_m^j = m f_m^j$$

Furthermore using

$$\partial_1 f_m^j = (j+m) z_1^{j+m-1} z_2^{j-m}, \qquad \partial_2 f_m^j = (j-m) z_1^{j+m} z_2^{j-m-1}$$

we get

$$d\rho(K_+) f_m^j = (j-m) f_{m+1}^j, \qquad d\rho(K_-) f_m^j = (j+m) f_{m-1}^j$$

Denoting

$$|j, m\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(j-m)!(j+m)!}} f_m^j$$

we get

$$dT^{(j)}(K_3)|j, m\rangle = m|j, m\rangle \tag{7.23}$$
$$dT^{(j)}(K_+)|j, m\rangle = \sqrt{j(j+1) - m(m+1)}\,|j, m+1\rangle \tag{7.24}$$
$$dT^{(j)}(K_-)|j, m\rangle = \sqrt{j(j+1) - m(m-1)}\,|j, m-1\rangle \tag{7.25}$$

We use here the abuse of notation $\rho = T^{(j)}$. So we deduce the following result:

**Proposition 81** *The differential of the representation $T^{(j)}$ of $SU(2)$ coincides with the representation $D^j$ of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$.*

**Proposition 82** *For any $j \in \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}$, $(V^{(j)}, T^{(j)})$ is an irreducible representation of $SU(2)$.*

*It defines an irreducible representation of $SO(3)$ if and only if $j \in \mathbb{N}$.*

*If $n$ is odd ($j \in \frac{\mathbb{N}}{2}$, $j \notin \mathbb{N}$) then $T^{(j)}$ is a projective representation of $SO(3)$.*

*Proof* It follows from general results about the differential of the representations of Lie groups that the differential of $T^{(j)}$ is an irreducible representation.

The second part comes from the following fact: $T^{(j)}(-g) = T^{(j)}(g), \forall g \in SU(2)$ if and only if $n$ is even.

The proof of the last part is left to the reader. □

**Corollary 24** *Every irreducible representation of $SU(2)$ is equivalent to one of the representations $(V^{(j)}, T^{(j)})$, $j \in \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}$.*

*Proof* Since $SU(2)$ is compact we know that every irreducible representation of $SU(2)$ is finite dimensional. We have seen that every irreducible representation of finite dimension of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ is one of the $D^j$, $j \in \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{N}$. This implies the result since $SU(2)$ is connected and simply connected. □

### 7.3.3 Irreducible Representations of *SO*(3) and Spherical Harmonics

We have seen above that irreducible representations of $SO(3)$ are described by $(T^{(j)}, V^{(j)})$ for $j \in \mathbb{N}$. A more concrete equivalent representation can be obtained with a spectral decomposition of the Laplace operator on $\mathbb{S}^2$.

Recall that in spherical coordinates $(r, \theta, \varphi)$ we have

$$\triangle = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_1^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_2^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_3^2} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} + \frac{2}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r^2}\triangle_{\mathbb{S}^2}$$

where $\triangle_{\mathbb{S}^2}$ is the spherical Laplace operator on $\mathbb{S}^2$,

$$\triangle_{\mathbb{S}^2} := \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{1}{\tan\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} + \frac{1}{\sin^2\theta}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \varphi^2} \tag{7.26}$$

$SO(3)$ has a natural representation $\Sigma$ in the function space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ (and in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)$) defined as follows: $\Sigma(g)f(x) = f(g^{-1}x)$ where $g \in SO(3)$, $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ and the Laplace operator commutes with $\Sigma$.

Let us introduce the linear space $\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)}$ of homogeneous polynomials $f$ in $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$ of total degree $j$ and satisfying $\triangle f = 0$ and restricted to the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$; $\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)}$ is the space of spherical harmonics.

Recall that the Euclidean measure on $\mathbb{S}^2$ is $d\mu_2(\theta,\varphi)=\sin\theta\, d\theta\, d\varphi$.

**Theorem 41** *$\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)}$ is a subspace of $C^\infty(\mathbb{S}^2)$ of dimension $2j+1$, invariant for the action $\Sigma$. The representation $(\Sigma,\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)})$ is irreducible and is unitary equivalent to the representation $(T^{(j)}V^{(j)})$.*

*Recall the following expression for the measure $d\mu_2$ on the sphere: $d\mu_2(\theta,\varphi)=\sin\theta\, d\theta\, d\varphi$.*

*Proof* We shall prove some properties of spherical harmonics which are proved in more details for example in [130].

The space $H^j$ is invariant by the generators $L_1, L_2, L_3$ of rotations. In spherical coordinates we have

$$L_3=\frac{1}{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi} \tag{7.27}$$

$$L_2=\frac{1}{i}\left(\cos\varphi\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}-\frac{\sin\varphi}{\tan\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}\right) \tag{7.28}$$

$$L_1=i\left(\sin\varphi\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}+\frac{\cos\varphi}{\tan\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}\right) \tag{7.29}$$

We can compute the Casimir operator: $\mathbf{L}^2:=L_1^2+L_2^2+L_3^2=-\triangle_{\mathbb{S}^2}$. In particular we have $[L_3,\triangle_{\mathbb{S}^2}]=0$.

If $L_\pm:=L_1\pm iL_2$ then we have

$$[L_3,L_\pm]=\pm L_\pm,\qquad [L_+,L_-]=2L_3 \tag{7.30}$$

$$L_+L_-=\mathbf{L}^2-L_3(L_3-\mathbb{1}),\qquad L_-L_+=\mathbf{L}^2-L_3(L_3+\mathbb{1}) \tag{7.31}$$

Let $f\in H^j$. In polar coordinates we have $f(r,\theta,\varphi)=r^jY(\theta,\varphi)$. So we get

$$\triangle f=0\quad\Longleftrightarrow\quad -\triangle_{\mathbb{S}^2}Y=j(j+1)Y$$

$L_3$ can be diagonalized in $H^j$

$$L_3Y=\lambda Y\quad\Longleftrightarrow\quad Y(\varphi,\theta)=\mathrm{e}^{im\varphi}f(\theta),\quad m\in\mathbb{Z},\ -j\le m\le j$$

So admitting that $H^j$ has dimension $2j+1$ we see that the representation $(\Sigma,H^j)$ is unitary equivalent to the representation $(T^{j)},V^{(j)})$. □

*Remark 42* Using the same method as in Sect. 7.3.1, for every $j\in\mathbb{N}$ we have an orthonormal basis $\{Y_j^k\}_{-j\le k\le j}$ of $\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)}$ where $Y_j^k$ are eigenfunctions of $L_3$: $L_3Y_j^k=kY_j^k$, $-j\le k\le j$. In other words $Y_j^k$ are Dicke states. Moreover they have the following expression:

$$Y_j^0(\theta,\varphi)=\sqrt{\frac{2j+1}{4\pi}}P_j(\cos\theta) \tag{7.32}$$

where $P_j$ are the Legendre polynomials

$$P_j(u) = \frac{1}{2^j j!}\frac{d^j}{du^j}\left(u^2-1\right)^j$$

For $k \neq 0$ we can use the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned} L_+ Y_j^k &= \sqrt{j(j+1)-k(k+1)}\,Y_j^{k+1} \\ L_- Y_j^k &= \sqrt{j(j+1)-k(k-1)}\,Y_j^{k-1} \end{aligned} \tag{7.33}$$

Let us prove now two useful properties of the spherical harmonics

**Proposition 83**

(i) *For every* $j \in \mathbb{N}$, $\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)}$ *has dimension* $2j+1$.
(ii) $\{Y_j^k, -j \le k \le j, j \in \mathbb{N}\}$ *is an orthonormal basis of* $L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)$ *or, equivalently,*

$$\bigoplus_{j\in\mathbb{N}} H^j = L^2\left(\mathbb{S}^2\right)$$

*Proof* Let us introduce the space $\mathscr{P}_3^{(j)}$ of homogeneous polynomials in $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$ of total degree $j$. The dimension of $\mathscr{P}_{3,j}$ is $\frac{(j+1)(j+2)}{2}$. It easy to prove that $\triangle$ is surjective so we get (i):

$$\dim(\ker\triangle) = \frac{(j+1)(j+2)}{2} - \frac{(j-1)j}{2} = 2j+1$$

To prove (ii) let us introduce on $\mathscr{P}_3^{(j)}$ a scalar product such that we have an orthonormal basis $\{\frac{x_1^{k_1}x_2^{k_2}x_3^{k_3}}{\sqrt{k_1!k_2!k_3!}}\}_{k_1+k_2+k_3=j}$. Let us introduce the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H} := \oplus\mathscr{P}_3^{(j)}$. So the linear operators $\frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}$ and $x_k$ are hermitian conjugate. Hence $\triangle$ is conjugate to $r^2 = x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2$.

We have $r^2\mathscr{P}_3^{(j)} \subseteq \mathscr{P}_3^{(j+2)}$ and $\triangle\mathscr{P}_3^{(j)} = \mathscr{P}_3^{(j-2)}$. Using the formula (Fredholm property) $\ker A = (\operatorname{Im} A^*)^\perp$, we get $\mathscr{P}_3^{(j)} = H_3^j \oplus r^2\mathscr{P}_3^{(j-2)}$. Step by step we get

$$\mathscr{P}_3^{(j)} = H_3^{(j)} \oplus r^2 H_3^{(j-2)} \oplus \cdots \oplus r^{2\ell} H_3^{(j-2\ell)} \tag{7.34}$$

where $j-1 \le 2\ell \le j$.

Now we can prove that the spherical harmonics is a total system in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Let us remark that the algebra $\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{N}}\mathscr{P}_{3,j}$ is dense in $C(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for the sup-norm (consequence of Stone–Weierstrass Theorem). So using (7.34) we see that $\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{N}}\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)}$ is dense in $C(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for the sup-norm, so $\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{N}}\mathscr{H}_3^{(j)}$ is dense in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)$. □

## 7.4 The Coherent States of $SU(2)$

### 7.4.1 Definition and First Properties

Let us start with a reference (non zero) vector $\psi_0 \in V^{(j)}$ and consider elements of the orbit of $\psi_0$ in $V^{(j)}$ by the action of the representation $T^{(j)}$. We get a family of states of the form

$$|g\rangle = T^{(j)}(g)\psi_0$$

$j$ will be fixed, so we denote $|g\rangle = T(g)\psi_0$. In a more explicit form we have

$$T(g)\psi_0(z_1, z_2) = \psi_0\big(g^{-1}(z_1, z_2)\big), \quad (z_1, z_2) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

In principle any vector $\psi_0 \in V^{(j)}$ can be taken as reference state. However for the states $\psi_0 = |j, \pm j\rangle$ we can see that the dispersion of the total spin operator $\mathbf{S} = (\hat{S}_1, \hat{S}_2, \hat{S}_3)$, is minimal, so that the states $|j, \pm j\rangle$ determine the system of coherent states which, in some sense, is closest to the classical states. In practice we choose in what follows

$$\psi_0 = |j, -j\rangle$$

Let us recall the definition of the dispersion for an observable $\hat{A}$ for a state $\psi$, where $\psi$ is a normalized state in an Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}$ and $\hat{A}$ a self-adjoint operator in $\mathscr{H}$. For $\psi$ in the domain of $\hat{A}$ the average is $\langle\hat{A}\rangle_\psi := \langle\psi, \hat{A}\psi\rangle$ and the dispersion is defined like the variance for a random variable in probability:

$$\triangle_\psi \hat{A} := \big\langle\big(\hat{A} - \langle\hat{A}\rangle_\psi \mathbb{1}\big)^2\big\rangle_\psi = \langle\hat{A}^2\rangle_\psi - \langle\hat{A}\rangle_\psi^2$$

Let us recall here the Heisenberg uncertainty principle: if $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$ are self-adjoint operators in $\mathscr{H}$ and $\psi \in \mathscr{H}$, $\|\psi\| = 1$ then we have

$$\big(\triangle_\psi \hat{A}\big)\big(\triangle_\psi \hat{B}\big) \geq \frac{1}{4}\big(\langle i[\hat{A}, \hat{B}]\rangle_\psi\big)^2 \tag{7.35}$$

Application to the total spin observable gives

$$\triangle_\psi \mathbf{S} = \sum_{1\leq k\leq 3} \triangle_\psi \hat{S}_k = \sum_{1\leq k\leq 3} \big\|\hat{S}_k\psi\big\|^2 - \langle\hat{S}_k\psi, \psi\rangle^2$$

For $\psi_0 = |j, m\rangle$ we get

$$\triangle_{\psi_0}\mathbf{S} = j(j+1) - m^2$$

So the dispersion is minimal for $m = \pm j$.

The Heisenberg inequality for spin operators reads (see (7.35))

$$\langle\hat{S}_1^2\rangle\langle\hat{S}_2^2\rangle \geq \frac{1}{4}\langle\hat{S}_3\rangle^2 \tag{7.36}$$

It is easy to see that this inequality is an equality for $\psi_0 = \psi_{\mathbf{n}_0}$.

Now our goal is to study the main properties of the coherent states $|g\rangle$. Let us first remark that the full group $G = SU(2)$ is not a good set to parametrize these coherent states because the map $g \mapsto |g\rangle$ is not injective. So we introduce the so-called isotropy group $H$ defined as follows:

$$H = \left\{g \in G, \exists\delta \in \mathbb{R}, T(g)\psi_0 = \mathrm{e}^{i\delta}\psi_0\right\}$$

We find that $H$ is the subgroup of diagonal matrices

$$H = \left\{\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & 0 \\ 0 & \bar{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}\right\}, \quad \alpha = \exp(i\psi)$$

Now the map $\dot{g} \mapsto |g\rangle$ is a bijection from the quotient space $X := G/H$ onto the orbit of $\psi_0$, where $G/H$ is the set of left coset $gH$ of $H$ in $G$ and $g \mapsto \dot{g}$ is the canonical map: $G \to G/H$.

Let us denote $X_0 = X \backslash \left\{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{smallmatrix}\right)\right\}$.

**Lemma 43** *$X_0$ is isomorphic to the set of elements of the form*

$$\left\{\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ -\bar{\beta} & \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{R},\ \alpha \neq 0,\ \beta = \beta_1 + i\beta_2 \in \mathbb{C}, \quad \alpha^2 + \beta_1^2 + \beta_2^2 = 1\right\}$$

*Proof* Let us denote $g(a, b)$ a generic element of $SU(2)$, $g = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ -\bar{b} & \bar{a} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$, $a, b \in \mathbb{C}$, $|a|^2 + |b|^2 = 1$.

We first remark that for every $|b| = 1$, $g(0, b)$ is in the coset of $g(0, 1)$.

Now if $|a|^2 + |b|^2 = 1$ and $a \neq 0$ then we have a unique decomposition

$$g(a, b) = g\left(a', b'\right)g(\alpha, 0)$$

with $a' > 0$, $\alpha = \frac{a}{|a|}$, $(a')^2 + |b'|^2 = 1$.

So we get the lemma. □

*Remark 43* Concerning the orbit with our choice of $\psi_0$ the image of $X_0$ does not contain the monomial $z_1^{2j}$, which are obtained with $g(0, 1)$.

Choosing the parametrization

$$\alpha = \cos\frac{\theta}{2}, \qquad \beta = -\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}, \quad 0 \leq \theta < 2\pi,\ 0 \leq \varphi < 2\pi$$

we see that the space $X_0$ is just a representation of the two-dimensional sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ minus the north pole, namely the set of unit three-dimensional vectors

$$\mathbf{n} = (\sin\theta\cos\varphi, \sin\theta\sin\varphi, \cos\theta), \quad 0 \leq \theta < \pi,\ 0 \leq \varphi < 2\pi$$

and any element $g_{\mathbf{n}} \in X$ can be written as

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \exp\left[i\frac{\theta}{2}(\sin\varphi\sigma_1 - \cos\varphi\sigma_2)\right] \tag{7.37}$$

where $\sigma_1, \sigma_2$ are the Pauli matrices.

Thus $g_{\mathbf{n}}$ describes a rotation by the angle $\theta$ around the vector $\mathbf{m} = (\sin\varphi, -\cos\varphi, 0)$ belonging to the equatorial plane of the sphere and perpendicular to $\mathbf{n}$ (it is well defined because $\theta \in [0, \pi[$).

**Definition 19** The coherent states of $SU(2)$ are the following states defined in the representation space $V^{(j)}$:

$$|\mathbf{n}\rangle = T(g_{\mathbf{n}})\psi_0 := D(\mathbf{n})\psi_0 \tag{7.38}$$

In the physics literature they are called the spin-coherent states because the spin is classified with the irreducible representations of $SU(2)$ (see [154]). These coherent states have several other names: atomic coherent states, Bloch coherent states.

Choosing $g = g_{\mathbf{n}}$ the coherent state of the $SU(2)$ group can now be written as

$$|\mathbf{n}\rangle = T(g_{\mathbf{n}})\psi_0 = \exp(i\theta\mathbf{m}\cdot\mathbf{K})\psi_0$$

where

$$\mathbf{m} = (\sin\varphi, -\cos\varphi, 0), \qquad \mathbf{K} = (K_1, K_2, K_3)$$

$\mathbf{m}$ is the unit vector orthogonal to both $\mathbf{n}$ and $\mathbf{n}_0 = (0, 0, 1)$. Note that this definition excludes the south pole $\mathbf{n}_S = (0, 0, -1)$.

Thus a coherent state of $SU(2)$ corresponds to a point of the two-dimensional sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ which may be considered as the phase space of a classical dynamical system, the "classical spin". The coherent states associated with the south pole will be the image of $(g(0, \beta))$, $|\beta| = 1$ giving monomials $z_1^{2j}$.

So we have parametrized the spin coherent by the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$.

Another useful parametrization can be obtained with the complex plane, using the stereographic projection from the south pole of the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ onto the complex plane $\mathbb{C}$.

If $\mathbf{n} = (n_1, n_2, n_3) \in \mathbb{S}^2$ then the stereographic projection of $\mathbf{n}$ from the south pole is the complex number $\zeta(\mathbf{n}) = \frac{n_1+in_2}{1+n_3}$. So in polar coordinates we have $\zeta(\mathbf{n}) = \tan(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}$.

As we have already remarked, the group $SU(2)$ naturally embeds into the complex group $SL(2, \mathbb{C})$ which is the group of complex matrices having determinant one. The following Gaussian decomposition in $SL(2, \mathbb{C})$ will be useful. The proof is an easy exercise.

**Lemma 44** *For any $g \in SL(2, \mathbb{C})$ of the form*

$$g = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \delta \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{with } \delta \neq 0$$

*one has a unique (Gaussian) decomposition*

$$g = t_+ \cdot d \cdot t_-$$

*where $d$ is diagonal and $t_\pm$ are triangular matrices of the form*

$$t_+ = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \zeta \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad t_- = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ z & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{7.39}$$

*and*

$$d = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & \varepsilon \end{pmatrix}$$

*We have the formulas*

$$\varepsilon = \delta, \qquad z = \frac{\gamma}{\delta}, \qquad \zeta = \frac{\beta}{\delta} \tag{7.40}$$

*Moreover if $g \in SU(2)$ then we have*

$$|\varepsilon|^2 = \left(1 + |\zeta|^2\right)^{-1} = \left(1 + |z|^2\right)^{-1} \tag{7.41}$$

This allows to write as consequence of Gauss decomposition,

$$T^{(j)}(g) = T^{(j)}(t_+) T^{(j)}(d) T^{(j)}(t_-)$$

Let us write $\varepsilon = r\mathrm{e}^{is}$ with $r > 0$ and $s \in \mathbb{R}$.

Taking $\psi_0 = |j, -j\rangle$ as the reference state one gets in the representation $(T^{(j)}, V^{(j)})$

$$T^{(j)}(t_-)\psi_0 = \mathrm{e}^{z_+ \hat{S}_-}\psi_0 = \psi_0 \tag{7.42}$$

$$T^{(j)}(d)\psi_0 = \mathrm{e}^{-2j(\log r + is)}\psi_0 \tag{7.43}$$

So we have

$$T(g)\psi_0 = \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} N T(t_+)\psi_0 \tag{7.44}$$

From (7.41) we get $N = (1 + |\zeta|^2)^{-j}$. $\varphi$ is a real number (argument of $\delta$). If $g = g_\mathbf{n}$ then $\delta$ is real so we get $s = \varphi = 0$.

In conclusion we have obtained an identification of the coherent states $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ with the state $|\zeta\rangle$ defined as follows:

$$|\zeta\rangle = \left(1 + |\zeta|^2\right)^{-j} \exp\left(\zeta \hat{S}_+\right)|j, -j\rangle$$

More precisely we denote $|\zeta\rangle = |g_\mathbf{n}\rangle$ with the following correspondence:

$$\mathbf{n} = (\sin\theta\cos\varphi, \sin\theta\sin\varphi, \cos\theta), \qquad \zeta = -\tan\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}$$

The geometrical interpretation is that $-\bar{\zeta}$ is the stereographic projection of $\mathbf{n}$.

Recall the following expression of $g_{\mathbf{n}}$:

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\frac{\theta}{2} & -\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi} \\ \sin\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} & \cos\frac{\theta}{2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{7.45}$$

Another form for $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ is given by the following equivalent definition using that $g_{\mathbf{n}} = \mathrm{e}^{i\theta(\sin\varphi\hat{S}_1 - \cos\varphi\hat{S}_2)}$,

$$|\mathbf{n}\rangle = D(\xi)\psi_0$$

where

$$D(\xi) = \exp\big(\xi\hat{S}_+ - \bar{\xi}\hat{S}_-\big)$$

and $\xi = \tan(\frac{\theta}{2})\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}$.

The Gaussian decomposition also provides a "normal form" of $D(\xi)$:

$$D(\xi) = \exp\big(\zeta\hat{S}_+\big)\exp\big(\eta\hat{S}_3\big)\exp\big(\zeta'\hat{S}_-\big)$$

with

$$\eta = -2\log|\xi|, \quad \zeta' = -\bar{\zeta}$$

Since $\zeta$, $\zeta'$, $\eta$ do not depend on $j$ it is enough to check this formula in the representation where $j = \frac{1}{2}$, $\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2}R(\boldsymbol{\sigma})$, where $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ is the three component Pauli matrix.

For each $\mathbf{n} \in \mathbb{S}^2$ the coherent state $\psi_{\mathbf{n}}$ minimizes Heisenberg inequality obtained by translation of (7.36) by $D(\mathbf{n})$ i.e. putting $\tilde{S}_k = D(\mathbf{n})\hat{S}_k D(\mathbf{n})^{-1}$ instead of $\hat{S}_k$, $1 \le k \le 3$.

### *7.4.2 Some Explicit Formulas*

Many explicit formulas can be proved for the spin-coherent states. These formulas have many similarities with formulas already proved for the Heisenberg coherent states and can be written as well with the coordinates $\mathbf{n}$ on the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ or in the coordinates $\zeta$ in the complex plane $\mathbb{C}$.

Let us first remark that $\mathbb{S}^2$ and $\mathbb{C}$ can be identified with a classical phase space. $\mathbb{S}^2$ is equipped with the symplectic two form $\sigma = \sin\theta\, d\theta \wedge d\varphi$. In the stereographic projection it is transformed in $\sigma = 2i\frac{d\zeta\wedge d\bar{\zeta}}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^2}$. This is an easy computation using $\zeta = -\tan\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}$.

Let us consider first some properties of operators $D(\mathbf{n})$. We shall also use the notations $D(\xi)$ or $D(\zeta)$ where $\xi$ and $\zeta$ are given by $\xi = \tan(\frac{\theta}{2})\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}$ and $\zeta = -\tan\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}$ using polar coordinates for $\mathbf{n}$. The multiplication law for the operators $D(\mathbf{n})$ is given by the following formula:

**Proposition 84**

(i) *For every* $\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2$ *outside the south pole of* $\mathbb{S}^2$ *we have*

$$D(\mathbf{n}_1)D(\mathbf{n}_2) = D(\mathbf{n}_3)\exp\big(-i\Phi(\mathbf{n}_1,\mathbf{n}_2)J_3\big) \tag{7.46}$$

*where $\Phi(\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2)$ is the oriented area of the geodesic triangle on the sphere with vertices at the points $[\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2]$.*

$\mathbf{n}_3$ *is determined by*

$$\mathbf{n}_3 = R_{g_{\mathbf{n}_1}} \mathbf{n}_2 \tag{7.47}$$

*where $R_g$ is the rotation associated to $g \in SU(2)$ as in Proposition 78 and*

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \exp\left(i\frac{\theta}{2}(\sigma_1 \sin\varphi - \sigma_2 \cos\varphi)\right) \tag{7.48}$$

(ii) *More generally for every $g \in SU(2)$ and every $\mathbf{n} \in \mathbb{S}^2$ such that $\mathbf{n}$ and $g \cdot \mathbf{n}$ are outside the south pole we have*

$$D^{(j)}(g)\psi_{\mathbf{n}} = \exp\bigl(-ij\mathscr{A}(g, \mathbf{n})\bigr)\psi_{g\cdot\mathbf{n}} \tag{7.49}$$

*where $g \cdot \mathbf{n} = R_g(\mathbf{n})$ and $\mathscr{A}(g, \mathbf{n})$ is the area of the spherical triangle $[\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}, g \cdot \mathbf{n}]$.*

*Proof* We prove the result in the two-dimensional representation of $SU(2)$. The vector $\mathbf{n}_3$ is determined only by geometrical rule and is thus independent of the representation. We choose the representation in $V^{1/2}$.

Define $R(g)$ to be the rotation in $SO(3)$ induced by any $g \in SU(2)$. By the definition (7.48) of $g_{\mathbf{n}}$ we have

$$R(g_{\mathbf{n}})\mathbf{n}_0 = \mathbf{n}, \quad \forall \mathbf{n} = (\sin\theta\cos\varphi, \sin\theta\sin\varphi, \cos\theta)$$

We need to compute $g = g_{\mathbf{n}_1} g_{\mathbf{n}_2}$. We use the following lemma:

**Lemma 45** *$\forall g \in SU(2)$ $\exists \mathbf{m} \in \mathbb{S}^2$ and $\delta \in \mathbb{R}$ such that*

$$g = g_{\mathbf{m}} r_3(\delta)$$

*where $r_3(\delta) = \exp(i\frac{\delta}{2}\sigma_3)$.*

Applying the lemma to $g = g_{\mathbf{n}_1} g_{\mathbf{n}_2}$ we get

$$g = g_{\mathbf{m}} r_3(\delta)$$

and we need to identify $\mathbf{m}$ with $\mathbf{n}_3$ given by (7.47). We have

$$R\bigl(r_3(\delta)\bigr)\mathbf{n}_0 = \mathbf{n}_0$$

Then

$$R(g) = R(g_{\mathbf{n}_1})R(g_{\mathbf{n}_2}) = R(g_{\mathbf{m}})R\bigl(r_3(\delta)\bigr)$$

Applying this identity to the vector $\mathbf{n}_0$ we get

$$R(g_{\mathbf{n}_1})R(g_{\mathbf{n}_2})\mathbf{n}_0 = R(g_{\mathbf{n}_1})\mathbf{n}_2 = R(g_{\mathbf{m}})n_0 = \mathbf{m}$$

Thus we have proven that $\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{n}_3 = R(g_{\mathbf{n}_1})\mathbf{n}_2$.

So we have seen that the displacement operator $D(\mathbf{n})$ transforms any spin-coherent state $|\mathbf{n}_1\rangle$ into another coherent state of the system up to a phase:

$$D(\mathbf{n})|\mathbf{n}_1\rangle = D(\mathbf{n})D(\mathbf{n}_1)\psi_0 = D(\mathbf{n}_2)\exp\big(i\hat{S}_3\Phi(\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}_1)\big)\psi_0 = \exp\big(-ij\Phi(\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}_1)\big)|\mathbf{n}_2\rangle$$

where $\mathbf{n}_2 = R(g_{\mathbf{n}})\mathbf{n}_1$. The second factor in the right hand side of (8.65) does depend on the representation. The computation of $\Phi(\mathbf{n}_1,\mathbf{n}_2)$ will be done later.

In the proof of (7.49) the nontrivial part is to compute the phase $\mathscr{A}(g,\mathbf{n})$ which also will be done later. □

The following lemma shows that the spin is independent of the direction.

**Lemma 46** *One has*

$$D(\mathbf{n})\hat{S}_3 D(\mathbf{n})^{-1} = \mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{S}$$

We shall prove the lemma in the representation of the Pauli matrices. First note that

$$D(\mathbf{n}) = \cos\frac{\theta}{2} + i\sin\frac{\theta}{2}(\sin\varphi\sigma_1 - \cos\varphi\sigma_2)$$

Then

$$D(\mathbf{n})\sigma_3 D(\mathbf{n})^{-1} = \left(\cos\frac{\theta}{2} + i\sin\frac{\theta}{2}(\sin\varphi\sigma_1 - \cos\varphi\sigma_2)\right)\sigma_3 \times\left(\cos\frac{\theta}{2} - i\sin\frac{\theta}{2}(\sin\varphi\sigma_1 - \cos\varphi\sigma_2)\right) \quad (7.50)$$

We use the properties of the Pauli matrices:

$$\sigma_1\sigma_3 = -i\sigma_2, \qquad \sigma_2\sigma_3 = i\sigma_1, \qquad \sigma_2\sigma_1 = -i\sigma_3$$

to compute the right hand side. One gets

$$D(\mathbf{n})\sigma_3 D(\mathbf{n})^{-1} = \cos\theta\sigma_3 + \sin\theta(\sin\varphi\sigma_2 + \cos\varphi\sigma_1) = \mathbf{n}\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma}$$

The following consequence is that $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the operator $\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{S}$:

**Proposition 85** *One has*

$$\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{S}|\mathbf{n}\rangle = -j|\mathbf{n}\rangle$$

*Proof* Denote by $|\mathbf{n}_0\rangle$ the vector

$$e^{iS_3\theta}\psi_0$$

Then

$$S_3|\mathbf{n}_0\rangle = -je^{i\theta\hat{S}_3}\psi_0 = -j|\mathbf{n}_0\rangle$$

since we take $\psi_0 = |j,-j\rangle$.

Now we shall use the above lemma:

$$\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{S}|\mathbf{n}\rangle = D(\mathbf{n})J_3\psi_0 = -j|\mathbf{n}\rangle$$

This completes the proof of the proposition. □

As in the Heisenberg setting, the spin-coherent states family $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ is not an orthogonal system. One can compute the scalar product of two coherent states $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$, $|\mathbf{n}'\rangle$:

**Proposition 86** *One has*

$$\langle\mathbf{n}'|\mathbf{n}\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{ij\Phi(\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}')}\left(\frac{1+\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{n}'}{2}\right)^j \tag{7.51}$$

*where $\Phi(\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}')$ is a real number. If the spherical triangle with vertices $\{\mathbf{n}_0,\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}'\}$ is an Euler triangle then $\Phi(\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}')$ is the oriented area of this triangle.*

*Proof* To each point $\mathbf{n}$ on the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ we associate its spherical coordinates $\theta\in[0,\pi)$, $\varphi\in[0,2\pi)$ as usual:

$$x=\sin\theta\cos\varphi,\qquad y=\sin\theta\sin\varphi,\qquad z=\cos\theta$$

The corresponding element $g_{\mathbf{n}}\in SU(2)$ is defined as

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \exp\left(i\frac{\theta}{2}(\sin\varphi\sigma_1-\cos\varphi\sigma_2)\right)$$

The matrix $i(\sin\varphi\sigma_1-\cos\varphi\sigma_2)$ can be viewed as a pure quaternion that we denote $q$. Using (7.18) we have

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \cos\frac{\theta}{2}+q\sin\frac{\theta}{2}$$

Taking $\mathbf{n}'\in\mathbb{S}^2$ with spherical coordinates $\theta'$, $\varphi'$ we get (using quaternion calculus)

$$\begin{aligned} g_{\mathbf{n}}g_{\mathbf{n}'} &= \cos\frac{\theta}{2}\cos\frac{\theta'}{2}-\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}\cos(\varphi-\varphi') \\ &\quad+\sigma_3 i\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}\sin(\varphi'-\varphi)+q'\cos\frac{\theta}{2}\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}+q\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\cos\frac{\theta'}{2} \end{aligned} \tag{7.52}$$

Therefore $g_{\mathbf{n}}g_{\mathbf{n}'}$ is of the form (7.20) with

$$a=\cos\frac{\theta}{2}\cos\frac{\theta'}{2}-\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i(\varphi-\varphi')}$$

The element $g_{\mathbf{n}}$ of $SU(2)$ can be written as

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \begin{pmatrix}\cos\frac{\theta}{2} & -\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}\\ \sin\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} & \cos\frac{\theta}{2}\end{pmatrix}$$

Now we turn to the representation $T^{(j)}(g)$ in the space $V^{(j)}$ of homogeneous polynomials of degree $2j$ in $z_1,\ z_2$. The coherent state $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ is of the form $T(g_{\mathbf{n}})\psi_0$ for some $\mathbf{n}\in\mathbb{S}^2$ and $\psi_0$ being a reference state. We choose $\psi_0=\frac{z_2^{2j}}{\sqrt{(2j)!}}$ in the homogeneous polynomial representation. Note that this is coherent with the choice $|j,-j\rangle$. The overlap between two coherent states is given by the scalar product:

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\langle T^{(j)}(g_{\mathbf{n}})\psi_0, T^{(j)}(g_{\mathbf{n}'})\psi_0\right\rangle\\&\quad=\frac{1}{(2j)!}\left\langle\left(z_2\cos\frac{\theta}{2}+z_1\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}\right)^{2j},\left(z_2\cos\frac{\theta'}{2}+z_1\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi'}\right)^{2j}\right\rangle\end{aligned}\tag{7.53}$$

We make use of the following result:

**Lemma 47** *Let $\Pi_{\alpha,\beta}(z_1,z_2)=(\alpha z_1+\beta z_2)^{2j}$. Then the scalar product in $V^{(j)}$ of two such polynomials equals*

$$\langle\Pi_{\alpha',\beta'},\Pi_{\alpha,\beta}\rangle=(2j)!\big(\alpha\bar{\alpha}'+\beta\bar{\beta}'\big)^{2j}$$

Then we get

$$\langle\mathbf{n}'|\mathbf{n}\rangle=\left(\cos\frac{\theta}{2}\cos\frac{\theta'}{2}+\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i(\varphi-\varphi')}\right)^{2j}$$

By an easy calculus we obtain

$$\left|\cos\frac{\theta}{2}\cos\frac{\theta'}{2}+\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i(\varphi-\varphi')}\right|^2=\frac{1+\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{n}'}{2}$$

Let us now compute the phase of the overlap $\langle\mathbf{n}'|\mathbf{n}\rangle$. It is a non trivial and interesting computation related with Berry phase as we shall see. It can be extended to a more general setting for coherent states on Kähler manifolds [32]. We follow here the elementary proof of the paper [4].

Let us denote

$$\eta=\arg\left(\cos\frac{\theta}{2}\cos\frac{\theta'}{2}+\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\sin\frac{\theta'}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i(\varphi-\varphi')}\right)$$

Using classical trigonometric formula we get

$$\tan\eta=\frac{\sin\theta\sin\theta'\sin(\varphi-\varphi')}{(1+\cos\theta)(1+\cos\theta')+\sin\theta\sin\theta'\cos(\varphi-\varphi')}\tag{7.54}$$

We now compare this formula with the following spherical geometric formula already known by Euler and Lagrange (see [75] for a detailed proof).

Let 3 points $\mathbf{n}_1$, $\mathbf{n}_2$, $\mathbf{n}_3$ be on the unit sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$, not all on the same great circle and such that the spherical triangle with vertices $\mathbf{n}_1$, $\mathbf{n}_2$, $\mathbf{n}_3$ is an Euler triangle i.e.

the angles and the sides are all smaller than $\pi$. Let $\omega$ be the area of this triangle. Then we have

$$\tan\frac{\omega}{2} = \frac{|\det[\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2, \mathbf{n}_3]|}{1 + \mathbf{n}_1\cdot\mathbf{n}_2 + \mathbf{n}_2\cdot\mathbf{n}_3 + \mathbf{n}_3\cdot\mathbf{n}_1} \tag{7.55}$$

Notice that this formula takes account of the orientation of the piecewise geodesic curve with vertices $\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2, \mathbf{n}_3$. The orientation is positive if the frame $\{O\mathbf{n}_1, O\mathbf{n}_2, O\mathbf{n}_3\}$ is direct.

From (7.54) and (7.55) we get directly that $\tan\frac{\eta}{2} = \tan\frac{\omega}{2}$. But $\omega, \eta \in ]-\pi, \pi[$ so we can conclude that $\eta = \omega$. □

As is expected, the spin-coherent state system provides a "resolution of the identity" in the Hilbert space $V^{(j)}$:

**Proposition 87** *We have the formula*

$$\boxed{\frac{2j+1}{4}\int_{\mathbb{S}^2} d\mathbf{n}\, |\mathbf{n}\rangle\langle\mathbf{n}| = \mathbb{1}} \tag{7.56}$$

*Or using complex coordinates* $|\zeta\rangle$,

$$\boxed{\int_{\mathbb{C}} d\mu_j(\zeta)\, |\zeta\rangle\langle\zeta| = \mathbb{1}} \tag{7.57}$$

*where the measure* $d\mu_j$ *is*

$$d\mu_j(\zeta) = \frac{2j+1}{\pi}\frac{d^2\zeta}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^2}$$

*with* $d^2\zeta = \frac{|d\zeta\wedge d\bar{\zeta}|}{2}$.

*Proof* The two formulas are equivalent by the change of variables $\zeta = -\tan\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}$. So it is sufficient to prove the complex version.

Let us recall the analytic expression for $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ and $|\zeta\rangle$.

$$|\mathbf{n}\rangle = \psi_{\mathbf{n}}(z_1, z_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2j)!}}\left(-\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}z_1 + \cos\frac{\theta}{2}z_2\right)^{2j} \tag{7.58}$$

$$|\zeta\rangle = \psi_{\zeta}(z_1, z_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2j)!}}\frac{1}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^j}\left(\bar{\zeta}z_1 + z_2\right)^{2j} \tag{7.59}$$

Recall that we have an orthonormal basis of Dicke states $\{d_k^j\}_{-j\le k\le j}$ in $V^{(j)}$ where

$$d_k^j(z_1, z_2) = \frac{z_1^{j+k}z_2^{j-k}}{\sqrt{(j+k)!(j-k)!}}$$

So we get

$$\langle\psi_\zeta, d_k\rangle = \left(\frac{(2j)!}{(j+k)!(j-k)!}\right)^{1/2}\left(1+|\zeta|^2\right)^{-j}\zeta^{j+k} \tag{7.60}$$

And using the Parseval formula we get

$$\langle\eta|\zeta\rangle = \left(1+|\zeta|^2\right)^{-j}\left(1+|\eta|^2\right)^{-j}\left(1+\eta\bar{\zeta}\right)^{2j} \tag{7.61}$$

Equation (7.61) is the complex version for the overlap formula of two coherent states (7.53).

It is convenient to introduce now the spin Bargmann transform (see Chap. 1 for the Bargmann transform in the Heisenberg setting).

For every $v \in V^{(j)}$ we define the following polynomial in the complex variable $\zeta$:

$$v^{j,\sharp}(\zeta) = \langle\psi_\zeta|v\rangle\left(1+|\zeta|^2\right)^j$$

If $v = \sum_{-j\le k\le j} c_k e_k$ a direct computation gives

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{\mathbb{C}}\left|v^{j,\sharp}(\zeta)\right|^2\frac{d^2\zeta}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^{2j+2}} &= \frac{\pi}{2j+1}\sum_{-j\le k\le j}|c_k|^2\\ &= \frac{\pi}{2j+1}\|v\|^2\end{aligned} \tag{7.62}$$

Or equivalently

$$\int_{\mathbb{C}}\left|\langle\psi_\zeta|v\rangle\right|^2\frac{d^2\zeta}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^2} = \frac{\pi}{2j+1}\|v\|^2 \tag{7.63}$$

This formula is equivalent to the overcompleteness formula by polarisation. □

*Remark 44* From the proof we have found that the spin-Bargmann transform: $\mathscr{B}^j v(\zeta) := v^{j,\sharp}(\zeta)$ is an isometry from $V^{(j)}$ onto the space $\mathscr{P}_{2j}$ of polynomials of degree at most $2j$ equipped with the scalar product

$$\langle P, Q\rangle = \frac{2j+1}{\pi}\int_{\mathbb{C}}\bar{P}(\zeta)Q(\zeta)\frac{d^2\zeta}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^{2j+2}}$$

In particular we have

$$\psi_\eta^{j,\sharp}(\zeta) = \left(1+|\eta|^2\right)^{-j}(1+\bar{\eta}\zeta)^{2j}$$

We now extend the computation of the phase $\Phi(\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}')$ in the general case by giving for it a different expression related with the well known geometric phase. A similar computation was done in [146].

**Proposition 88** *For any* $\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}' \in \mathbb{S}^2$ *we have*

$$\Phi\big(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}'\big) = -\frac{i}{j} \oint_{[\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}']} \langle \psi_n, d\psi_n \rangle \tag{7.64}$$

*where the integral is computed on the shortest geodesic arc joining* $\mathbf{n}$ *to* $\mathbf{n}'$ *of the one differential form* $\langle \psi_n, d\psi_n \rangle$.

To explain the formula we recall here the main idea behind the geometric phase discovered by Berry [24] and Pancharatnam [149] (see also [2]).

Let us consider a closed loop $\mathbf{n}(t) : [0, 1] \to \mathbb{S}^2$ which is continuous by part, $\mathbf{n}(0) = \mathbf{n}(1)$. We define the time-dependent Hamiltonian as

$$\hat{H}(t) = \mathbf{n}(t) \cdot \mathbf{S}$$

The solution of the time-dependent Schrödinger equation with this Hamiltonian is denoted $\psi(t)$. Let us consider $\eta(t)$ in the Hilbert space and $\alpha(t) \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\psi(t) = \mathrm{e}^{i\alpha(t)} \eta(t)$$

We choose $\alpha(t)$ such that $\langle \eta(t), \dot{\eta}(t) \rangle = 0$. In other terms $\eta(t)$ describes a parallel transport along the curve. Then the geometrical phase $\alpha(t)$ obeys

$$i\dot{\alpha}(t) + \big\langle \psi(t), \dot{\psi}(t) \big\rangle = 0$$

We thus have

$$\alpha(1) := \alpha(\gamma) = i \oint_{\gamma} \langle \psi, d\psi \rangle$$

If $\gamma$ delimitates a portion $\Gamma$ of $\mathbb{S}^2$ we have by Stokes theorem

$$\alpha(\gamma) = \int_{\Gamma} \langle d\psi, d\psi \rangle$$

where the product of the differentials is the external product.

Let $\psi_{\mathbf{n}}$ be the coherent state $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ obtained at $t = 1$ from $\psi(0) = \psi_{\mathbf{n}_0}$. In the homogeneous polynomial representation we get

$$\psi_{\mathbf{n}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2j)!}} \left( \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} z_1 + \cos\frac{\theta}{2} z_2 \right)^{2j}$$

Thus

$$\frac{\partial \psi_{\mathbf{n}}}{\partial \theta} = \frac{j}{\sqrt{(2j)!}} \left( z_1 \cos\frac{\theta}{2} \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} - z_2 \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \right) \left( \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} z_1 + \cos\frac{\theta}{2} z_2 \right)^{2j-1}$$

$$\frac{\partial \psi_{\mathbf{n}}}{\partial \varphi} = \frac{2j}{\sqrt{(2j)!}} i \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} z_1 \left( z_1 \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} + z_2 \cos\frac{\theta}{2} \right)^{2j-1}$$

Using the invariance of the scalar product in $V^{(j)}$ under $SU(2)$ transformations we perform the change of variables

$$
\begin{aligned}
Z_1 &= z_1 \cos\frac{\theta}{2} - z_2 \mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi} \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \\
Z_2 &= z_1 \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} \sin\frac{\theta}{2} + z_2 \cos\frac{\theta}{2}
\end{aligned} \tag{7.65}
$$

One thus have using the orthogonality relations in $V^{(j)}$:

$$
\left\langle \psi_{\mathbf{n}}, \frac{\partial \psi_n}{\partial \theta} \right\rangle = \frac{j}{(2j)!} \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} \langle Z_1 Z_2^{2j-1}, Z_2^{2j} \rangle = 0 \tag{7.66}
$$

One can calculate the scalar product of $\frac{\partial \psi_{\mathbf{n}}}{\partial \theta}$ and $\frac{\partial \psi_{\mathbf{n}}}{\partial \varphi}$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \frac{\partial \psi_{\mathbf{n}}}{\partial \theta}, \frac{\partial \psi_{\mathbf{n}}}{\partial \varphi} \right\rangle &= i \frac{2j^2}{(2j)!} \mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi} \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \left\langle Z_1 Z_2^{2j-1}, \left( Z_1 \cos\frac{\theta}{2} \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} + Z_2 \sin\frac{\theta}{2} \right) Z_2^{2j-1} \right\rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{2} ij \sin\theta
\end{aligned} \tag{7.67}
$$

since

$$
\langle Z_1 Z_2^{2j-1}, Z_1 Z_2^{2j-1} \rangle = (2j-1)
$$

We shall now calculate the phase of the scalar product $\langle \psi_{\mathbf{n}}, \psi_{\mathbf{n}'} \rangle$ by calculating the geometric phase along the geodesic triangle $\mathscr{T} = [\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}', \mathbf{n}_0]$. Denote by $\Omega$ the domain on $\mathbb{S}^2$ delimited by $\mathscr{T}$. We have

$$
\alpha(\mathscr{T}) = i \oint_{\mathscr{T}} \langle \psi_{\mathbf{n}}, d\psi_{\mathbf{n}} \rangle = i \int_{\Omega} \langle d\psi_{\mathbf{n}}, d\psi_{\mathbf{n}} \rangle \tag{7.68}
$$

This yields

$$
\alpha(\mathscr{T}) = -j \int_{\Omega} \sin\theta \, d\theta \, d\varphi = -j \mathrm{Area}(\Omega)
$$

We denote by $[\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2]$ the portion of great circle on $\mathbb{S}^2$ between $\mathbf{n}_1$ and $\mathbf{n}_2$. We now integrate (7.68) successively along $[\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}]$, $[\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}']$ and $[\mathbf{n}', \mathbf{n}_0]$. From the fact that $[\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}]$, $[\mathbf{n}', \mathbf{n}_0]$ lie in verticle planes we have

$$
\int_{[\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}]} \langle \psi_{\mathbf{n}}, d\psi_{\mathbf{n}} \rangle = \int_{[\mathbf{n}', \mathbf{n}_0]} \langle \psi_{\mathbf{n}}, d\psi_{\mathbf{n}} \rangle = 0
$$

Thus for an Euler triangle we get

$$
-j \mathrm{Area}(\Omega) = -j \Phi(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}') = i \int_{[\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}']} \langle \psi_{\mathbf{n}}, d\psi_{\mathbf{n}} \rangle
$$

In the general case we can subdivide the triangle in several Euler triangles with vertex at $\mathbf{n}_0$ by adding vertices between $\mathbf{n}$ and $\mathbf{n}'$. Then we get

$$\Phi\big(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}'\big) = -\frac{i}{j}\int_{[\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}']} \langle \psi_{\mathbf{n}}, d\psi_{\mathbf{n}}\rangle$$

As a consequence of our study of the geometric phase, let us now compute the phase in formula (7.46).

We already know that

$$D(\mathbf{n}_1)D(\mathbf{n}_2)\psi_0 = D(\mathbf{n}_3)\mathrm{e}^{i\alpha}$$

and we have to compute $\alpha$.

We have

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle\psi_0, D(\mathbf{n}_1)D(\mathbf{n}_2)\psi_0\big\rangle &= \mathrm{e}^{i\alpha}\big\langle\psi_0, D(\mathbf{n}_3)\psi_0\big\rangle \\ &= \big\langle D(\mathbf{n}_1)^*\psi_0, D(\mathbf{n}_2)\psi_0\big\rangle \qquad (7.69)\end{aligned}$$

From Lemma 48 we know that $\langle\psi_0, D(\mathbf{n}_3)\psi_0\rangle \geq 0$. But $D(\mathbf{n}_1)^* = D(\mathbf{n}_1^*)$ where $\mathbf{n}_1^*$ is the symmetric of $\mathbf{n}_1$ on the great circle determined by $\mathbf{n}_0$ and $\mathbf{n}_1$. Applying the computation of the phase in (7.53) we get

$$\alpha = \arg\big(\langle\mathbf{n}_1^*, \mathbf{n}_2\rangle\big)$$

With an elementary geometric argument we get the phase in formula (7.46).

As a consequence, we can get the phase $\mathscr{A}(g, \mathbf{n})$ in formula (7.49). If $g = g_{\mathbf{m}}$ then $\mathscr{A}(g_m, \mathbf{n}) = \Phi(\mathbf{m}, \mathbf{n})$. For a generic $g \in SU(2)$ we have $g = g_{\mathbf{m}} r_3(\delta)$ for some $\delta \in \mathbb{R}$.

So we have $gg_{\mathbf{n}} = g_{\mathbf{m}} r_3(\delta) g_{\mathbf{n}}$. Let $\mathbf{n} = (\theta, \varphi)$ (polar coordinates). We have $r_3(\delta) g_{\mathbf{n}} = g_{\mathbf{n}'} r_3(\delta)$ where $\mathbf{n}' = (\theta, \varphi + \delta)$. So using computation of $\Phi$ in (7.46) and elementary geometry we find that $\mathscr{A}(g, \mathbf{n})$ is equal to the area of the spherical triangle $[n_0, n, g \cdot \mathbf{n}]$.

Let us close our discussion concerning the geometric phase for coherent states by the following result:

**Lemma 48** *Let $\psi_1$ and $\psi_2$ be two different states on a great circle of $\mathbb{S}_j$ (unit sphere on $V^{(j)}$). One parametrizes this by the angle $\theta$ in the following way:*

$$\psi(\theta) = x_1(\theta)\psi_1 + x_2(\theta)\psi_2$$

*where $x_i(\theta) \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\psi(0) = \psi_1,\ \psi(\theta_0) = \psi_2$.*

*One assumes that*

$$\big\langle\psi(\theta), \dot{\psi}(\theta)\big\rangle = 0$$

*Then $\psi_1$ and $\psi_2$ are in phase, namely*

$$\langle\psi_1, \psi_2\rangle > 0$$

*Proof* One can assume that $a = \Re\langle\psi_1, \psi_2\rangle > 0$. Then by an easy calculus we get

$$x_1(\theta) = \cos\theta - \frac{a}{\sqrt{1-a^2}}\sin\theta, \qquad x_2(\theta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-a^2}}\sin\theta, \quad a = \cos\theta_0$$

$$\Im\big\langle\psi(\theta), \dot{\psi}(\theta)\big\rangle = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{1-a^2}}\Im\langle\psi_1, \psi_2\rangle$$

One deduces that $\langle\psi_1, \psi_2\rangle$ is real therefore positive. □

*Remark 45* For two coherent states $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ and $|\mathbf{n}'\rangle$ there are two natural geodesics joining them: the geodesic on the two sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ and the geodesic on the sphere $\mathbb{S}_j$ (sphere $(2j+1)$ dimensional). It is a consequence of results proved above that the geometric phases for these two curves in $V^{(j)}$ are the same. This was not obvious before computations.

## 7.5 Coherent States on the Riemann Sphere

We have seen that it is convenient to compute on the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ using complex coordinates given by the stereographic projection. We shall give here more details about this. In particular this gives a semi-classical interpretation for the spin-coherent states and a quantization of the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$. The picture is analogous to the harmonic oscillator coherent states and the associated Wick quantization of the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2d}$.

The stereographic projection of the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ from its south pole is the transformation $\pi_s(\mathbf{n}) = \zeta$, defined by

$$\zeta = \frac{n_1 + in_2}{1 + n_3}$$

where $\mathbf{n} = (n_1, n_2, n_3)$. $\pi_s$ is an homeomorphism from $\mathbb{S}^2_\star := \mathbb{S}^2\backslash\{(0, 0, 1)\}$ on the complex plane $\mathbb{C}$. Moreover $\pi_s$ can be extended in an homeomorphism from $\mathbb{S}^2$ on $\tilde{\mathbb{C}} := \mathbb{C} \cup \{\infty\}$ such that $\pi_s(0, 0, 1) = \infty$. $\tilde{\mathbb{C}}$ is a one-dimensional complex and compact manifold called the Riemann sphere.

$\pi_s^{-1}$ is determined by the formula $\pi_s^{-1}\zeta = (n_1, n_2, n_3)$ where

$$n_1 = \frac{\zeta + \bar{\zeta}}{1 + |\zeta|^2}, \qquad n_2 = \frac{\zeta - \bar{\zeta}}{i(1 + |\zeta|^2)}, \qquad n_3 = \frac{1 - |\zeta|^2}{1 + |\zeta|^2}$$

It is known that the group of automorphisms of $\tilde{\mathbb{C}}$ (bijective and biholomorphic transformations) is the Möbius group, the group of homographic transformations $h(z) = \frac{az+b}{cz+d}$ where $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $ad - bc = 1$. The conventions are: if $c = 0$ then $h(\infty) = \infty$; if $c \neq 0$ then $h(\infty) = \frac{a}{c}$, $h(-\frac{d}{c}) = \infty$.

Let us denote $g = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix}\right)$, $g \in SL(2, \mathbb{C})$ and $f = h_g$. Then is not difficult to see that $h_g = \mathbb{1}$ if and only if $g = \pm\mathbb{1}_2$.

We have seen that if $g \in SU(2)$ then $R_g$ defines a rotation in $\mathbb{S}^2$. In $\tilde{\mathbb{C}}$ we see that $R_g$ becomes a Möbius transformation:

**Lemma 49** *Let $\tilde{R}_g = \pi_s R_g \pi_s^{-1}$ and $g \in SU(2)$, $g = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -\bar{b} & \bar{a} \end{pmatrix}$. Then we have*

$$\tilde{R}_g \zeta = \frac{a\zeta + b}{-\bar{b}\zeta + \bar{a}}, \quad \forall \zeta \in \tilde{\mathbb{C}} \tag{7.70}$$

*Proof* We only give a sketch. First it is enough to consider $g = g_2(\theta)$. After some computations we get the result using that Möbius transformations preserve the cross ratio $\frac{\zeta_1 - \zeta_3}{\zeta_2 - \zeta_3}$. □

For simplicity we denote $\tilde{R}_g \zeta := g \cdot \zeta$.

Now our aim is to realize the representation $(T^{(j)}, V^j)$ in a space of holomorphic functions on the Riemann sphere $\tilde{\mathbb{C}}$. This is achieved easily with the spin-Bargmann transform $\mathscr{B}^j$ introduced above. Recall that $\mathscr{B}^j v(\zeta) = \langle \psi_\zeta, v \rangle (1 + |\zeta|^2)^j$.

We get the images of the Dicke basis and of the coherent states:

$$\tilde{d}_\ell(\zeta) := \mathscr{B}^j(d_k)(\zeta) = \left( \frac{(2j)!}{\ell!(2j-\ell)!} \right)^{1/2} \zeta^\ell, \quad j + k = \ell \tag{7.71}$$

$$\tilde{\psi}_\zeta(z) = \langle \psi_z, \psi_\zeta \rangle \big(1 + |z|^2\big)^j = \big(1 + |\zeta|^2\big)^{-j} \big(1 + \bar{\zeta} z\big)^{2j}, \quad z, \zeta \in \mathbb{C} \tag{7.72}$$

Let us remark that the Hilbert space $V^j$ is transformed in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{P}_{2j}$ (polynomials of degree $\le 2j + 1$) and that $\mathscr{P}_{2j}$ coincides with the space of holomorphic functions $P$ on $\mathbb{C}$ such that

$$\int_{\mathbb{C}} \big|P(\zeta)\big|^2 \big(1 + |\zeta|^2\big)^{-2j-2} d^2\zeta < +\infty$$

So the exponential weight of the usual Bargmann space is replaced here by a polynomial weight.

We see now that the action of $SU(2)$ in the Bargmann space $\mathscr{P}_{2j}$ is simple and has a nice semi-classical interpretation.

Let us denote $\tilde{T}^j(g) := \mathscr{B}^j T^j(g) \mathscr{B}^{j\star}$.

On the Riemann sphere the representation $\tilde{T}^j$ has the following expression:

**Proposition 89** *For every $\psi \in \mathscr{P}_{2j}$ and $g \in SU(2)$ we have*

$$\tilde{T}^j(g)\psi(\zeta) = \mu_j(g, \zeta)\psi\big(g^{-1}(\zeta)\big) \tag{7.73}$$

*where $g = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -\bar{b} & \bar{a} \end{pmatrix}$, $\mu_j(g, \zeta) = (a + \bar{b}\zeta)^{2j}$ and $\tilde{R}_{g^{-1}}(\zeta) = \frac{\bar{a}\zeta - b}{\bar{b}\zeta + a}$.*

*Proof* It is enough to prove the proposition for $\psi(\zeta)=\zeta^{\ell}$. From definition of $\mathscr{B}^j$ we get

$$\big(\mathscr{B}^j T^j(g)d_k\big)(\zeta)=(2j)!\frac{(j+k)!}{\sqrt{(j-k)!}}\big\langle\big(\bar\zeta z_1+z_2\big)^{2j},(\bar a z_1-bz_2)^{j+k}\big(\bar b z_1+az_2\big)^{j-k}\big\rangle_{V^j}$$

Using that the scalar product in $V^j$ is invariant for the $SU(2)$ action we obtain

$$\big(\mathscr{B}^j T^j(g)d_\ell\big)(\zeta)=\left(\frac{(2j)!}{\ell!(2j-\ell)!}\right)^{1/2}\big(a+\bar b\zeta\big)^{2j}\left(\frac{\bar a\zeta-b}{\bar b\zeta+a}\right)^{\ell} \tag{7.74}$$

Hence we get the proposition. □

Now, following Onofri [148] we shall give a classically mechanical interpretation of the term $\mu(g,\zeta)$. This interpretation can be extended to any semi-simple Lie group, as we shall see later.

Let us introduce $K(\zeta,\bar\zeta)=2\log(1+\zeta\bar\zeta)$ (Kähler potential), $d$ the exterior differential, $\partial$ the exterior differential in $\zeta$, $\bar\partial$ the exterior differential in $\bar\zeta$.

We have $d=\partial+\bar\partial$ and $d\partial=\bar\partial\partial=-\partial\bar\partial$.

We introduce the one form $\theta=-i\partial K$ and the two form

$$\omega=d\theta=2i\frac{d\zeta\wedge d\bar\zeta}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^2}$$

$\omega$ is clearly a non-degenerate antisymmetric two form. So $(\tilde{\mathbb{C}},\omega)$ is a symplectic manifold. Moreover it is a Kähler one-dimensional complex manifold for the Hermitian metric

$$ds^2=4\frac{d\zeta d\bar\zeta}{(1+|\zeta|^2)^2}$$

It is not difficult to see that $\omega$ is invariant by the action of $SU(2)$: $g_\star\omega=\omega$. In other words $SU(2)$ acts in $\tilde{\mathbb{C}}$ by canonical transformations.

$\tilde{\mathbb{C}}$ is connected and simply connected, so there exists a smooth function $S(g,\zeta)$ such that $dS(g,\zeta)=\theta-g_\star\theta$.

Now let us compute $d\mu$ as follows.

From (7.73) with $\psi=\tilde\psi_0=1$ and using that $\langle\psi_\zeta,\psi_0\rangle=(1+|\zeta|^2)^j$ we get

$$\mu_j(g,\zeta)=\frac{\langle\psi_0,T^j(g^{-1}g_\zeta)^\star\psi_0\rangle}{\langle\psi_0,\psi_\zeta\rangle}$$

Then we compute $d\mu=(ij(\theta-g_\star\theta))\mu=(ij\,dS)\mu$. Hence we get the classically mechanical interpretation for $\mu(g,\zeta)$

$$\mu(g,\zeta)=\mu(g,0)\mathrm{e}^{ij\int_0^\zeta(\theta-g_\star\theta)} \tag{7.75}$$

## 7.6 Application to High Spin Inequalities

One of the first successful use of spin-coherent states was the thermodynamic limit of spin systems as an application of Berezin–Lieb inequalities. Berezin–Lieb inequality holds true for general coherent states.

### *7.6.1 Berezin–Lieb Inequalities*

We shall follow here the notations of Sect. 2.6 concerning Wick quantization. We assume here that the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}$ is finite dimensional (this is enough for our application). Let $\hat{A} \in \mathscr{L}(\mathscr{H})$ with a covariant symbol $A_c$ and contravariant symbol $A^c$ defined on some metric space $M$ with a probability Radon measure $d\mu(m)$. It is not difficult to see that these two symbols satisfy the following duality formulas:

$$\operatorname{Tr}\big(\hat{A}\hat{B}\big) = \int_M A_c(m) B^c(m)\, d\mu(m) \tag{7.76}$$

$$A_c\big(m'\big) = \int_M \big|\langle e_m | e_{m'}\rangle\big|^2 A^c(m)\, d\mu(m) \tag{7.77}$$

In particular we have

$$\operatorname{Tr}\big(\hat{A}\big) = \int_M A_c(m) d\mu(m) \tag{7.78}$$

Let us remark that if $A_c$ is well defined, $A^c$ is not uniquely defined in general.

**Theorem 42** *Let $\hat{H}$ be a self-adjoint operator in $\mathscr{H}$ and $\chi$ a convex function on $\mathbb{R}$. Then we have the inequalities*

$$\int_M \chi\big(H_c(m)\big)\, d\mu(m) \le \operatorname{Tr}\big(\chi\big(\hat{H}\big)\big) \le \int_M \chi\big(H^c(m)\big)\, d\mu(m) \tag{7.79}$$

*Proof* Let us recall the Jensen inequality [170], which is the main tool for proving the Berezin–Lieb inequalities. For any probability measure $\nu$ on $M$, any convex function $\chi$ on $\mathbb{R}$ and any $f \in L^1(M, d\nu)$ we have

$$\chi\left(\int_M f\, d\nu(m)\right) \le \int_M \chi\big(f(m)\big)\, d\nu(m) \tag{7.80}$$

We start with the formula

$$\operatorname{Tr}\big(\chi\big(\hat{H}\big)\big) = \int_M \big\langle e_m, \chi\big(\hat{H}\big) e_m\big\rangle\, d\mu(m)$$

Using the spectral decomposition for self-adjoint operators, we have

$$\big\langle e_m, \chi\big(\hat{H}\big) e_m\big\rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \chi(\lambda)\, d\nu_m(\lambda)$$

where $\nu_m$ is the spectral measure of the state $e_m$. It is a probability (discrete) measure. So the Jensen inequality gives

$$\langle e_m, \chi(\hat{H}) e_m\rangle \geq \chi\left(A_c(m)\right)$$

Integrating in $m$ we get the first Berezin–Lieb inequality

$$\int_M \chi\left(H_c(m)\right) d\mu(m) \leq \mathrm{Tr}\big(\chi(\hat{H})\big)$$

For the second inequality we introduce an orthonormal basis of $\mathscr{H}$: $\{v_n\}_{1\leq n\leq N}$ of eigenfunctions of $\hat{A}$. So we have

$$\langle v_n|\chi(\hat{H})v_n\rangle = \chi\left(\langle v_n|\hat{H}v_n\rangle\right) = \chi\left(\int_M H^c(m)\left|\langle v_n|e_m\rangle\right|^2 d\mu(m)\right)$$

From Jensen inequality applied with the probability measure $|\langle v_n|e_m\rangle|^2 d\mu(m)$ we get

$$\langle v_n|\chi(\hat{H})v_n\rangle \leq \int_M \chi\left(H^c(m)\right)\left|\langle v_n|e_m\rangle\right|^2 d\mu(m)$$

Summing in $n$ we get the second Berezin–Lieb inequality. □

### 7.6.2 High Spin Estimates

We consider a one-dimensional Heisenberg chain of $N$ spin $\mathbf{S}^n = (S_1^n, S_2^n, S_3^n)$, $1 \leq n \leq N$. The Hamiltonian of this system is

$$\hat{H} = -\sum_{1\leq n\leq N-1} \mathbf{S}^n\mathbf{S}^{n+1}$$

$\hat{H}$ is an Hermitian operator in the finite-dimensional Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_N = \otimes^N \mathscr{H}^n$ where $\mathscr{H}^n = V^{(j)}$ for every $n$.

From the coherent states systems in $V^{(j)}$ we get in a standard way a coherent system in $\mathscr{H}_N$ parametrized on $(\mathbb{S}^2)^N$ (or $\mathbb{C}^N$ using the complex parametrisation). In the sphere representation, if $\Omega = (\mathbf{n}^1, \ldots, \mathbf{n}^N) \in \mathbb{S}^N$ we define the coherent state $\psi_\Omega = \psi_{\mathbf{n}^1} \otimes \psi_{\mathbf{n}^2} \cdots \psi_{\mathbf{n}^N}$. We get, as for $N = 1$, an overcomplete system with a resolution of identity. We denote $d\Omega_N$ the probability measure $(4\pi)^{-N} d\mathbf{n}^1 \otimes \cdots \otimes d\mathbf{n}^N$. Wick and anti-Wick quantization are also well defined as explained in Chap. 1. In particular the Berezin–Lieb inequalities are true in this setting.

As usual the following convention is used: if $\hat{A} \in \mathscr{L}(\mathscr{H}^m)$ and $\hat{B} \in \mathscr{L}(\mathscr{H}^{m'})$ then $\hat{A}\hat{B} = \mathbb{1} \otimes \mathbb{1} \cdots \otimes \hat{A} \otimes \cdots \otimes \hat{B} \otimes \mathbb{1} \cdots \otimes \mathbb{1}$ with $\hat{A}$ at position $m$, $\hat{B}$ at position $m'$.

In particular for the covariant and contravariant symbols of $\hat{A}\hat{B}$ we have the following obvious properties:

$$(AB)_c(\Omega) = A_c\left(\mathbf{n}^m\right)B_c\left(\mathbf{n}^{m'}\right) \tag{7.81}$$

$$(AB)^c(\Omega) = A^c\left(\mathbf{n}^m\right)B^c\left(\mathbf{n}^{m'}\right) \tag{7.82}$$

We shall prove the following results concerning the symbols of one spin operators $(S_1, S_2, S_3)$:

**Proposition 90** *The covariant symbols are*

$$S_{1,c}(\mathbf{n}) = -j\sin\theta\cos\varphi \tag{7.83}$$

$$S_{2,c}(\mathbf{n}) = -j\sin\theta\sin\varphi \tag{7.84}$$

$$S_{3,c}(\mathbf{n}) = -j\cos\theta \tag{7.85}$$

*The contravariant symbols are*

$$S_1^c(\mathbf{n}) = -(j+1)\sin\theta\cos\varphi \tag{7.86}$$

$$S_2^c(\mathbf{n}) = -(j+1)\sin\theta\sin\varphi \tag{7.87}$$

$$S_3^c(\mathbf{n}) = -(j+1)\cos\theta \tag{7.88}$$

*Proof* It seems more convenient to compute in the complex representation $\psi_\zeta$ for the coherent states. In the space $V^{(j)}$ the spin operators are represented by differential operators

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2}(z_1\partial_{z_2} + z_2\partial_{z_1}) \tag{7.89}$$

$$S_2 = \frac{1}{2i}(z_1\partial_{z_2} - z_2\partial_{z_1}) \tag{7.90}$$

$$S_3 = \frac{1}{2}(z_1\partial_{z_1} - z_2\partial_{z_2}) \tag{7.91}$$

The coherent state $\psi_\zeta^j$ has the expression

$$\psi_\zeta(z_1, z_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2j)!}}\left(1+|\zeta|^2\right)^{-j}(\zeta z_1 + z_2)^{2j}$$

So a direct computation gives

$$\langle\zeta|S_1|\zeta\rangle = -2j\frac{\Re\zeta}{1+|\zeta|^2} = -j\sin\theta\cos\varphi \tag{7.92}$$

In the same way we can compute $S_{2,c}(\mathbf{n})$ and $S_{3,c}(\mathbf{n})$.

Computing contravariant symbols is more difficult because we have no direct formula.

The trick is to start with a large enough set of functions in complex variables $(\zeta, \bar{\zeta})$ and to compute their anti-Wick quantizations.

Let us denote $A_{\alpha,\beta,\tau}(\zeta, \bar{\zeta}) = (1 + |\zeta|^2)^{-\tau} \zeta^\alpha \bar{\zeta}^\beta$ and $\hat{A}_{\alpha,\beta,\tau}(k, \ell)$ the matrix elements of the operator $\hat{A}_{\alpha,\beta,\tau}$, $-j \le k, \ell \le j$, in the canonical basis of $V^{(j)}$. We shall use the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle v_\ell, \hat{A} v_k \rangle &= \int_{\mathbb{C}} A^c(\zeta) \langle v_\ell, \Pi_\zeta v_k \rangle \, d\mu_j(\zeta) \\ \langle v_\ell, \Pi_\zeta v_k \rangle &= \langle v_\ell, \psi_\zeta \rangle \langle \psi_\zeta, v_k \rangle = c_k c_\ell \bar{\zeta}^{j+\ell} \zeta^{j+k} \end{aligned} \tag{7.93}$$

where $c_k = \left(\frac{(2j)!}{(j+k)!(j-k)!}\right)^{1/2}$.

So we get

$$\hat{A}_{\alpha,\beta,\tau}(k, \ell) = c_k c_\ell \int_{\mathbb{C}} \left(d^2 \zeta\right) \zeta^{j+k+\alpha} \bar{\zeta}^{j+\ell+\beta} \left(1 + |\zeta|^2\right)^{-2j-\tau-2}$$

Using polar coordinates $\zeta = r e^{i\gamma}$ we get

$$\hat{A}_{\alpha,\beta,\tau}(k, \ell) = c_k c_\ell \delta_{\alpha+k,\beta+\ell} 2(2j+1) \int_0^\infty dr \frac{r^{2j+2\alpha+2k+1}}{(1+r^2)^{2j+\tau+2}}$$

We compute the one variable integral using beta and gamma functions

$$\int_0^\infty dr \, \frac{r^s}{(1+r^2)^t} = \frac{1}{2} B\left(\frac{s+1}{2}, t - \frac{s+1}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma(\frac{s+1}{2}) \Gamma(t - \frac{s+1}{2})}{\Gamma(t)}$$

Finally we have the formula

$$\hat{A}_{\alpha,\beta,\tau}(k, \ell) = (2j+1) c_k c_\ell \delta_{\alpha+k,\beta+\ell} \frac{\Gamma(j+k+\alpha+1) \Gamma(j-\alpha-k+\tau+1)}{\Gamma(2j+\tau+2)} \tag{7.94}$$

For example if $\tau = 1$, $\alpha = 0, 1$, $\beta = 0, 1, 2$ we find

$$\hat{A}_{1,0,1}(k, k+1) = \frac{1}{2j+2} \sqrt{(j+k+1)(j-k)} \tag{7.95}$$

$$\hat{A}_{0,1,1}(k, k+1) = \frac{1}{2j+2} \sqrt{(j+k)(j-k+1)} \tag{7.96}$$

$$\hat{A}_{0,0,1}(k, k+1) = \frac{1}{2j+2} (j-k+1) \tag{7.97}$$

$$\hat{A}_{1,1,1}(k, k+1) = \frac{1}{2j+2} (j+k+1) \tag{7.98}$$

Using these results we easily get a contravariant symbol for **S** as in (7.86). □

Now we can compute the covariant and contravariant symbols of the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$. Applying the above results, translated in the sphere variables, we get

$$H_c(\Omega) = j^2 \sum_{1 \le m \le N-1} \mathbf{n}^m \mathbf{n}^{m+1} \tag{7.99}$$

$$H^c(\Omega) = (j+1)^2 \sum_{1 \le m \le N-1} \mathbf{n}^m \mathbf{n}^{m+1} \tag{7.100}$$

We are ready now to prove the main result which is a particular case of much more general results proved in [136, 177]. Let us introduce the quantum partition function

$$Z^q(\beta, j) = \frac{1}{(2j+1)^N} \operatorname{Tr} \mathrm{e}^{-\beta \hat{H}}, \quad \beta \in \mathbb{R}$$

The corresponding classical partition function is obtained taking the average of spin operators on coherent states. So we define

$$Z^{c\ell}(\beta, j) = \int_{(\mathbb{S}^2)^N} \mathrm{e}^{-\beta H_c(\Omega)}\, d\mu(\Omega)$$

Putting together all the necessary results we have proved the following Lieb's inequalities:

**Proposition 91** *We have the following inequalities*:

$$Z^{c\ell}(\beta, j) \le Z^q(\beta, j) \le Z^{c\ell}(\beta, j+1), \quad \forall j, \ \textit{integer or half-integer} \tag{7.101}$$

This result can be used to study the thermodynamic limit of large spin systems (see [136]).

**Corollary 25** *With the notations of the previous proposition we have*

$$\lim_{j \to +\infty} \frac{Z^q(\beta, j)}{Z^{c\ell}(\beta, j)} = 1 \tag{7.102}$$

## 7.7 More on High Spin Limit: From Spin-Coherent States to Harmonic-Oscillator Coherent States

We want to give here more details concerning the transition between spin-coherent states and Heisenberg coherent states.

Let us begin by the following easy connection between spin-coherent states and harmonic oscillator coherent state. We compute on the Bargmann side. We start from

$$\psi_\eta^{j,\sharp}(\zeta) = \left(1 + |\eta|^2\right)^{-j} \left(1 + \bar{\eta}\zeta\right)^{2j}$$

If we replace $\eta$ and $\zeta$ by $\frac{\eta}{\sqrt{2j}}$ and $\frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{2j}}$ and let $j \to +\infty$ then we get

$$\lim_{j\to+\infty} \psi^{j,\sharp}_{\frac{\eta}{\sqrt{2j}}}\left(\frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{2j}}\right) = \mathrm{e}^{\bar{\eta}\zeta-|\eta|^2/2} = \sqrt{2\pi}\varphi_\eta(\zeta)$$

In the right side $\varphi_\eta(\zeta)$ is the Bargmann transform of the Gaussian coherent state located in $\eta$. In this sense the spin-coherent states converge, in the high spin limit, to the "classical" coherent states.

In the same way we shall prove that the Dicke states converge to the Hermite basis of the harmonic oscillator.

Let us denote now $d_{j,k}$ the Dicke basis of $V^{(j)}$: $\hat{H}d_{j,k} = kd_{j,k}$, $-j \le k \le j$. The spin-Bargmann transform of $d_{j,k}$ is easily computed:

$$d^\sharp_{j,k}(\zeta) = \frac{(2j)!}{(j+k)!(j-k)!}\zeta^{j+k}$$

Recall that (see Chap. 1) the Bargmann transform of the Hermite function $\psi_\ell$ ($\ell \in \mathbb{N}$) is

$$\psi^\sharp_\ell(\zeta) = \frac{\zeta^\ell}{\sqrt{2\pi\ell!}}$$

Then we have

**Proposition 92** *For every $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$ and every $r > 0$ we have*

$$\lim_{\substack{j\to+\infty, k\to-\infty \\ j-k\to\ell}} d^\sharp_{j,k}\left(\frac{\zeta}{\sqrt{2j}}\right) = \sqrt{2\pi}\psi^\sharp_\ell(\zeta) \tag{7.103}$$

*uniformly in $|\zeta| \le r$.*

*Proof* The result follows from the following approximations. For $j, k$ large enough such that $j - k \approx \ell$ we have

$$\frac{(2j)!}{(j+k)!(j-k)!} \approx \frac{(2j)!}{\ell!(2j-\ell)!} \approx \frac{(2j)^\ell}{\ell!} \qquad \square$$

A different approach concerning the high spin limit of spin-coherent states is to consider contractions of the Lie group $SU(2)$ in the Heisenberg Lie group $\mathbf{H}_1$ (see [121]). We are not going to consider here the theory of Lie group contractions in general but to compute on the example of $SU(2)$ and its representations.

Let us consider the irreducible representation of index $j$ of $SU(2)$ in the Bargmann space $\mathscr{P}_{2j}$. $\mathscr{P}_{2j}$ is clearly a finite-dimensional subspace of the Bargmann–Fock space $\mathscr{F}(\mathbb{C})$.

Let us compute in this representation the images $L^\sharp_\pm, L^\sharp_3$ of the generators $K_\pm, K_3$ of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sl}(\mathbb{C})$. We get easily

$$L^\sharp_3 = \zeta\frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta} - j \tag{7.104}$$

$$L^\sharp_+ = 2j\zeta - \zeta^2\frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta} \tag{7.105}$$

$$L^\sharp_- = \frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta} \tag{7.106}$$

Let us introduce a small parameter $\varepsilon > 0$ and denote

$$L^\varepsilon_+ = \varepsilon L^\sharp_+ \tag{7.107}$$

$$L^\varepsilon_- = \varepsilon L^\sharp_- \tag{7.108}$$

$$L^\varepsilon_3 = L^\sharp_3 + \frac{1}{2\varepsilon^2}\mathbb{1} \tag{7.109}$$

We have the following commutation relations:

$$\left[L^\varepsilon_+, L^\varepsilon_-\right] = 2\varepsilon^2 L^\varepsilon_3 - \mathbb{1}, \qquad \left[L^\varepsilon_3, L^\varepsilon_\pm\right] = \pm L^\varepsilon_\pm \tag{7.110}$$

As $\varepsilon \to 0$ (7.107) define a family of singular transformations of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ and for $\varepsilon = 0$ we get (formally)

$$\left[L^0_+, L^0_-\right] = -\mathbb{1}, \qquad \left[L^0_3, L^0_\pm\right] = \pm L^0_\pm \tag{7.111}$$

These commutation relations are those satisfied by the harmonic oscillator Lie algebra: $L^0_+ \equiv a^\dagger$, $L^0_- \equiv a$, $L^0_3 \equiv N := a^\dagger a$.

We can give a mathematical proof of this analogy by computing covariant symbols.

**Proposition 93** *Assume that* $\varepsilon \to 0$ *and* $j \to +\infty$ *such that* $\lim 2j\varepsilon^2 = 1$. *Then we have*

$$\lim\left\langle\psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}}\middle|L^\varepsilon_3\middle|\psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}}\right\rangle = |\zeta|^2 = \langle\varphi_\zeta|a^\dagger a|\varphi_\zeta\rangle \tag{7.112}$$

$$\lim\left\langle\psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}}\middle|L^\varepsilon_+\middle|\psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}}\right\rangle = \bar\zeta = \langle\varphi_\zeta|a^\dagger|\varphi_\zeta\rangle \tag{7.113}$$

$$\lim\left\langle\psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}}\middle|L^\varepsilon_-\middle|\psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}}\right\rangle = \zeta = \langle\varphi_\zeta|a|\varphi_\zeta\rangle \tag{7.114}$$

*Proof* From the computations of Sect. 7.5 we have

$$\left\langle\psi^j_\zeta\middle|L^\sharp_3\middle|\psi^j_\zeta\right\rangle = -j\frac{1-|\zeta|^2}{1+|\zeta|^2}$$

So we have

$$\left\langle \psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}} \middle| L^\varepsilon_3 \middle| \psi^j_{\zeta/\sqrt{2j}} \right\rangle = +\left|\zeta^2\right| + O\left(\frac{1}{j}\right)$$

and we get (7.112).

The other formulas are proved in the same way using the following relations:

$$\left\langle \psi^j_\zeta \middle| L^\sharp_+ \middle| \psi^j_\zeta \right\rangle = \frac{2j\bar{\zeta}}{1+|\zeta|^2}, \qquad \left\langle \psi^j_\zeta \middle| L^\sharp_- \middle| \psi^j_\zeta \right\rangle = \frac{2j\zeta}{1+|\zeta|^2} \qquad \square$$

# Chapter 8
# Pseudo-Spin-Coherent States

**Abstract** We have seen before that spin-coherent states are strongly linked with the algebraic and geometric properties of the Euclidean 2-sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$. We shall now consider analogue setting when the sphere is replace by the 2-pseudo-sphere i.e. the Euclidean metric in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is replaced by the Minkowski metric and the group $SO(3)$ by the symmetry group $SO(2,1)$. The main big difference with the Euclidean case is that in the Minkowski case the pseudo-sphere in non compact as well its symmetry group $SO(2,1)$ and that all irreducible unitary representations of $SO(2,1)$ are infinite dimensional.

## 8.1 Introduction to the Geometry of the Pseudo-Sphere, $SO(2,1)$ and $SU(1,1)$

In this section we shall give a brief introduction to pseudo-Euclidean geometry (often named hyperbolic geometry). There exists a huge literature on this subject. For more details we refer to in [11] or to any standard text book on hyperbolic geometry like [36].

### *8.1.1 Minkowski Model*

On the linear space $\mathbb{R}^3$ we consider the Minkowski metric defined by the symmetric bilinear form $\langle x, y\rangle_{\mathscr{M}} := x \boxdot y := x_1y_1 + x_2y_2 - x_0y_0$ where $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^3$, $x = (x_0, x_1, x_2)$, $y = (y_0, y_1, y_2)$.

So we get the three-dimensional Minkowski space $(\mathbb{R}^3, \langle\cdot,\cdot\rangle_M)$ with its canonical orthonormal basis $\{e_0, e_1, e_2\}$.

Let us remark that the Minkowski metric is the restriction of the Lorentz relativistic metric, defined by the quadratic form $x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 - x_0^2$, to the three-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ defined by $x_3 = 0$.

The surface in $\mathbb{R}^3$ defined by the equation $\{x \in \mathbb{R}^3,\ \langle x, x\rangle_M = -1\}$ is a hyperboloid with two symmetric sheets. The pseudo-sphere $P\mathbb{S}^2$ is one of this sheet. So we can choose the upper sheet:

$$P\mathbb{S}^2 = \left\{x = (x_0, x_1, x_2), x_1^2 + x_2^2 - x_0^2 = -1, x_0 > 0\right\}$$

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_8, 

$P\mathbb{S}^2$ is a surface which can be parametrized with the pseudopolar coordinates $(\tau, \varphi)$:

$$x_0 = \cosh\tau, \qquad x_1 = \sinh\tau\cos\varphi, \qquad x_2 = \sinh\tau\sin\varphi,$$
$$\tau \in [0, +\infty[, \varphi \in [0, 2\pi[$$

$P\mathbb{S}^2$ is a Riemann surface for the metric induced on $P\mathbb{S}^2$ by the Minkowski metric. In coordinates $(x_0, x_1, x_2)$ $P\mathbb{S}^2$ is defined by the equation $x_0 = \sqrt{1 + x_1^2 + x_2^2}$. So, in coordinates $\{x_1, x_2\}$ on $P\mathbb{S}^2$, the metric $ds^2 = -dx_0^2 + dx_1^2 + dx_2^2$ is given by the following symmetric matrix:

$$G = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - \frac{x_1^2}{1+x_1^2+x_2^2} & \frac{x_1x_2}{1+x_1^2+x_2^2} \\ \frac{x_1x_2}{1+x_1^2+x_2^2} & 1 - \frac{x_2^2}{1+x_1^2+x_2^2} \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence we see that $ds^2$ is positive-definite on $P\mathbb{S}^2$. In polar coordinates we have a simpler expression: $ds^2 = d\tau^2 + \sinh\tau^2\, d\varphi^2$. The curvature of $P\mathbb{S}^2$ is $-1$ everywhere (compare with the sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ with curvature is $+1$ everywhere). By analogy with the Euclidean sphere we shall denote $\mathbf{n}$ the generic point on $\mathbb{S}^2$.

The Riemannian surface measure in pseudopolar coordinates is given by computing the density $\sqrt{\det G}$, where $G$ is the matrix of the metric in coordinates $(\tau, \varphi)$. So the surface measure on $P\mathbb{S}^2$ is

$$d^2\mathbf{n} = \sinh\tau\, d\tau\, d\varphi$$

We can see that the geodesics on the pseudo-sphere $P\mathbb{S}^2$ are determined by their intersection with planes through the origin 0.

We consider now the symmetries of $P\mathbb{S}^2$. Let us denote

$$L = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

the matrix of the quadratic form $\langle \bullet, \bullet \rangle_{\mathscr{M}}$: $\langle x, y \rangle_M = Lx \cdot y$ (recall that the $\cdot$ denotes the usual scalar product in $\mathbb{R}^3$).

The invariance group of $\langle \bullet, \bullet \rangle_{\mathscr{M}}$ is denoted $O(2, 1)$. So $A \in O(2, 1)$ means $Ax \boxdot Ax = x \boxdot x$ for every $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$ or equivalently, $A^T LA = L$ ($A^T$ is the transposed matrix of $A$). In particular if $A \in O(2, 1)$ then $\det A = \pm 1$. The direct invariance group is the subgroup $SO(2, 1)$ defined by $A \in O(2, 1)$ and $\det A = 1$. This group is not connected so we introduce $SO_0(2, 1)$ the component of $\mathbb{1}$ in $SO(2, 1)$, it is a closed subgroup of $SO(2, 1)$.

The pseudo-sphere $P\mathbb{S}^2$ is clearly invariant under $SO_0(2, 1)$.

It is not difficult to see that 1 is always an eigenvalue for every $A \in SO_0(2, 1)$. Let $v \in \mathbb{R}^2$ be such that $\|v\| = 1$, $Av = v$ and $\langle v, v \rangle_M \neq 0$. The orthogonal complement of $\mathbb{R}v$ for the Minkowski form $\langle ., . \rangle_M$ is a two-dimensional plane invariant by $A$. So $A$ looks like a rotation in Euclidean geometry.

Let us give the following examples of transformations in $SO_0(2,1)$:

$$R_\varphi = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos\varphi & -\sin\varphi \\ 0 & \sin\varphi & \cos\varphi \end{pmatrix}: \quad \text{rotation in the plane } \{e_1, e_2\} \tag{8.1}$$

$$B_{1,\tau} = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh\tau & \sinh\tau & 0 \\ \sinh\tau & \cosh\tau & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}: \quad \text{boost in the direction } e_1 \tag{8.2}$$

$$B_{2,\tau} = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh\tau & 0 & \sinh\tau \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sinh\tau & 0 & \cosh\tau \end{pmatrix}: \quad \text{boost in the direction } e_2 \tag{8.3}$$

These three transformations generate all the group $SO_0(2,1)$. This can be easily proved using the following remark: if $Av = v$ and if $U$ is a transformation then $A_U(Uv) = Uv$ where $A_U = UAU^{-1}$.

$SO_0(2,1)$ is a Lie group. In particular it is a three-dimensional manifold.

### *8.1.2 Lie Algebra*

We can get a basis for the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(2,1)$ of $SO(2,1)$ by computing the generators of the three one-parameter subgroups defined in (8.1). We get

$$E_0 := \frac{d}{d\varphi} R_\varphi|_{\varphi=0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.4}$$

$$E_1 := \frac{d}{d\tau} B_{1,\tau}|_{\tau=0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.5}$$

$$E_2 := \frac{d}{d\tau} B_{2,\tau}|_{\tau=0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.6}$$

The commutation relations of the Lie algebra are the following:

$$[E_0, E_1] = E_2, \qquad [E_2, E_0] = E_1, \qquad [E_1, E_2] = -E_0 \tag{8.7}$$

If we compare with generators of $\mathfrak{so}(3)$ we remark the minus sign in the last relation.

Let us consider the exponential map $\exp : \mathfrak{so}(2,1) \to SO(2,1)$. If $A = x_0 E_0 + x_1 E_1 + x_2 E_2$ where $x_0^2 + x_1^2 + x_2^2 = 1$, we have the one-parameter subgroup of $SO(2,1)$, $R(\theta) = \mathrm{e}^{\theta A}$. $R(\theta)$ is a pseudo-rotation with axis $v = (x_0, -x_2, x_1)$. Its geometrical properties are classified by the sign of $\langle v, v\rangle_M$.

- $\langle v, v\rangle_M > 0$ ("time-like" axis): $R(1)$ has a unique fixed point on $P\mathbb{S}^2$, each orbit is bounded. $R(1)$ is said to be elliptic
- $\langle v, v\rangle_M < 0$ ("space-like" axis): there exists a unique geodesic on $P\mathbb{S}^2$ invariant by $U(1)$, $R(1)$ is said hyperbolic
- $\langle v, v\rangle_M = 0$ ("light-like" axis): the geodesics asymptotically going to $\mathbb{R}v$ are invariant by $R(1)$. $R(1)$ is said parabolic

These classification will be more explicit on other models of $P\mathbb{S}^2$ as we shall see. As in the Euclidean case we can realize the Lie algebra relations (8.7) in a Lie algebra of complex $2 \times 2$ matrices.

We replace the group $SU(2)$ by the group $SU(1,1)$ of pseudo-unitary unimodular matrices of the form:

$$g = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad |\alpha|^2 - |\beta|^2 = 1$$

$SU(1,1)$ is a Lie group of real dimension 3. Let us introduce now a convenient parametrization of $SU(1,1)$:

$$\alpha = \cosh \frac{t}{2} e^{i(\varphi+\psi)/2}, \qquad \beta = \sinh \frac{t}{2} e^{i(\varphi-\psi)/2}$$

where the triple $(\varphi, t, \psi)$ runs through the domain $0 \le \varphi < 2\pi,\ 0 < t < \infty,\ -2\pi \le \psi < 2\pi$. In this way one gets the factorization

$$\begin{aligned} g(\varphi, t, \psi) &= \begin{pmatrix} \cosh \frac{t}{2} e^{i(\varphi+\psi)/2} & \sinh \frac{t}{2} e^{i(\varphi-\psi)/2} \\ \sinh \frac{t}{2} e^{i(\psi-\varphi)/2} & \cosh \frac{t}{2} e^{-i(\varphi+\psi)/2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= g(\varphi, 0, 0) g(0, t, 0) g(0, 0, \psi) \end{aligned}$$

In the group $SU(1,1)$ we choose three one-parameter subgroups consisting of the matrices

$$\omega_1(t) = g(0, t, 0), \qquad \omega_2(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh \frac{t}{2} & i \sinh \frac{t}{2} \\ -i \sinh \frac{t}{2} & \cosh \frac{t}{2} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \omega_0(t) = g(t, 0, 0)$$

The generators of these one-parameter subgroups are

$$b_1 = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad b_2 = \frac{i}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad b_0 = \frac{i}{2}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

These three matrices form a basis of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ with the commutation relations:

$$[b_1, b_2] = -b_0, \qquad [b_2, b_0] = b_1, \qquad [b_0, b_1] = b_2 \tag{8.8}$$

We see that the Lie algebras $\mathfrak{so}(2,1)$ and $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ are isomorph and we can identify the basis $\{E_0, E_1, E_2\}$ and $\{b_0, b_1, b_2\}$. Now we shall see that $SU(1,1)$ is for

$SO_0(2,1)$ what is $SU(2)$ for $SO(3)$. Let us consider the adjoint representation of $SU(1,1)$. For every $g \in SU(1,1)$ and $x = (x_0, x_1, x_2)$ we have

$$g\Big(\sum_{0\le k\le 2} x_k b_k\Big)g^{-1} = \sum_{0\le k\le 2} y_k b_k$$

Let us denote $y = \rho(g)x$, where $y = (y_0, y_1, y_2)$. As in the Euclidean case we have the following result.

**Proposition 94** *For every $g \in SU(1,1)$ we have*:

(i) *$g \mapsto \rho(g)$ is a group morphism from $SU(1,1)$ onto $SO(2,1)_0$.*
(ii) *$\rho(g) = \mathbb{1}$ if and only if $g = \pm\mathbb{1}$. In particular the groups $SO(2,1)_0$ and $SU(1,1)/\{\mathbb{1}, -\mathbb{1}\}$ are isomorph.*
(iii) *If $A = v_0 b_0 + v_1 b_1 + v_2 b_2$ then for every $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$, $\rho(e^{\tau A})$ is a pseudo-rotation of axis $(v_0, -v_2, v_1)$.*

*Proof* It is easy to see that $\rho(g) \in SO(2,1)$ and $\rho$ is a group morphism. Let us remark that we have $\omega_k(t) = e^{tb_k}$ for $k = 0, 1, 2$. Then we find that $\rho(\omega_0(t))$ is the rotation $R_t$ of axis $e_0$ in the Minkowski space, $\rho(\omega_1(t))$ is the boost $B_{1,t}$ and $\rho(\omega_2(t))$ is the boost $B_{2,t}$. Then it results that the range of $\rho$ is the full group $SO_0(2,1)$.

(ii) is easy to prove, as in the Euclidean case.

We assume $v = (v_0, v_1, v_2) \neq (0,0,0)$. The kernel of $v_0E_0 + v_1E_1 + v_2E_2$ is clearly generated by the vector $(v_0, -v_2, v_1)$ so we get (iii). □

It will be useful to remark that the group $SU(1,1)$ is isomorph to the $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ group of real $2 \times 2$ matrices $A$ such that $\det A = 1$. The isomorphism is simply the conjugation $A \mapsto \Lambda^{-1} A \Lambda$ where $A \in SL(2,\mathbb{R})$, $\Lambda = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ i & 1\end{pmatrix}$.

Let us remark that we have $\mathfrak{su}(1,1) + i\mathfrak{su}(1,1) = \mathfrak{sl}(2,\mathbb{C})$ so $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ and $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ have the same complexification as Lie algebras.

We shall see now that this isomorphism has a simple geometry interpretation and this is very useful to get a better insight of the pseudo-sphere geometry.

### 8.1.3 The Disc and the Half-Plane Poincaré Representations of the Pseudo-Sphere

Considering the stereographic projection from the apex $(0,0,-1)$ onto the plane $\{e_1, e_2\}$, the upper hyperboloid is transformed into the disc $\mathbb{D}$ of radius 1. By this transformation the metric on the pseudo-sphere becomes a metric on $\mathbb{D}$. Choosing in $P\mathbb{S}^2$ polar coordinates $(\tau, \varphi)$ and in $\mathbb{D}$ polar coordinates $(r, -\varphi)$, we have

$$x_0 = \cosh\tau, \qquad x_1 = \sinh\tau\cos\varphi, \qquad x_2 = \sinh\tau\sin\varphi, \qquad r = \tanh\frac{\tau}{2}$$

In $\mathbb{D}$ the metric and the surface element of the pseudo-sphere have the following expression:

$$ds^2 = \frac{4(dr^2 + r^2\, d\varphi^2)}{(1-r^2)^2}, \qquad d^2\zeta = \frac{4r\, dr\, d\varphi}{(1-r^2)^2}$$

So we get another model of the pseudo-sphere named the Poincaré disc model.

It is also convenient to introduce a complex representation of $\mathbb{D}$, $\zeta = re^{-i\varphi}$. In $\mathbb{D}$ geodesics are the straight lines through the origin and arcs circle orthogonal to the boundary (see the references).

Let us remark that the metric is conformal so the angles for the metric coincide with the Euclidean angles. So an isometry of $\mathbb{D}$ is a conformal transformation of $\mathbb{D}$. We know that such direct transformations $f$ are homographic:

$$f(\zeta) = \frac{\alpha\zeta + \beta}{\bar{\beta}\zeta + \bar{\alpha}}, \quad \text{such that } |\alpha|^2 - |\beta|^2 = 1$$

In other words the direct symmetry group of $\mathbb{D}$ is given by a representation of $SU(1,1)$, $g \mapsto H_g$, where $H_g(\zeta) = f(\zeta)$, $g = \left(\begin{smallmatrix}\alpha & \beta \\ \bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha}\end{smallmatrix}\right)$. Moreover we see easily that $H_g = \mathbb{1}_{\mathbb{D}}$ if and only if $g = \pm\mathbb{1}$. So we recover geometrically the fact that $SO(2,1) \approx SU(1,1)/\{\mathbb{1}, \pm\mathbb{1}\}$.

It is well known that the unit disc can be conformally transformed into the half complex plane $\mathbb{H} = \{z = u + iv,\ v > 0\}$ by the homography $H_0\zeta = \frac{-i\zeta + i}{\zeta + 1}$ or $H_0^{-1}z = \frac{-z+i}{z+i}$, where $\zeta \in \mathbb{D}$, $z \in \mathbb{H}$. Explicitly, if $\zeta = re^{i\varphi}$ and $z = u + iv$, we have

$$u = \frac{2r\sin\varphi}{1 + r^2 + 2r\cos\varphi}, \qquad v = \frac{1 - r^2}{1 + r^2 + 2r\cos\varphi}$$

In $\mathbb{H}$ the metric and the surface element of the pseudo-sphere have the following expression:

$$ds^2 = \frac{du^2 + dv^2}{v^2}, \qquad d^2 z = \frac{du\, dv}{v}$$

So we get another model of the pseudo-sphere named the Poincaré half-plane model. In this model the boundary of the disc is transformed into the real axis. In $\mathbb{H}$ the geodesics are vertical lines and half circles orthogonal to the real axis.

As for the disc we can see that the direct symmetry group of $\mathbb{H}$ is the group $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ with the homographic action $H_g(z) = \frac{\alpha z + \beta}{\gamma z + \delta}$, $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \in \mathbb{R}$, $\alpha\delta - \gamma\beta = 1$ and $H_g = \mathbb{1}_{\mathbb{H}}$ if and only if $g = \pm\mathbb{1}$. We recover the fact that $SU(1,1)$ and $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ are isomorph groups.

Finally there is another realization of the pseudo-sphere which is important to define coherent states: $P\mathbb{S}^2$ can be seen as a quotient of $SU(1,1)$ by its compact maximal subgroup $U(1)$.

**Lemma 50** *For every* $\mathbf{n} = (\cosh\tau, \sinh\tau\sin\varphi, \sinh\tau\cos\varphi)$ *define*

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh(\tau/2) & \sinh(\tau/2)e^{-i\varphi} \\ \sinh(\tau/2)e^{i\varphi} & \cosh(\tau/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

*Then the map* $\mathbf{n} \mapsto \{g_{\mathbf{n}}\omega_0(t),\ t \in [-2\pi, 2\pi[\}$ *is a bijection from* $\mathbb{S}^2$ *in the right cosets of* $SU(1,1)$ *modulo* $U(1)$ *where* $U(1)$ *is identified with the diagonal matrices* $\begin{pmatrix} e^{it/2} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-it/2} \end{pmatrix}$, $t \in [0, 4\pi[$.

*Proof* Let us denote $g(\alpha,\beta) = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \bar\beta & \bar\alpha \end{pmatrix}$, $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$, $|\alpha|^2 - |\beta|^2 = 1$. The lemma is a direct consequence of the following decomposition: there exist $\alpha' > 0$, $\beta' \in \mathbb{C}$, $t \in [0, 4\pi[$, unique such that

$$g(\alpha,\beta) = g\big(\alpha', \beta'\big)\omega_0(t)$$

More precisely we have $\alpha' = |\alpha|$, $t = 2\arg\alpha$, $\beta' = e^{it/2}\beta$. This proves the lemma. □

So modulo composition by a rotation of axis $e_0$ on the right, every $g \in SU(1,1)$ is equivalent to a unique $g_{\mathbf{n}}$, $\mathbf{n} \in P\mathbb{S}^2$. We can see that $g_{\mathbf{n}}$ is a pseudo-rotation with axis $v = (0, \sin\varphi, \cos\varphi)$ (remark a change of sign).

To get that, remark

$$g_{\mathbf{n}}^{-1}\frac{d}{d\tau}g_{\mathbf{n}} = \frac{1}{2}(\cos\varphi\sigma_1 + \sin\varphi\sigma_2) = (\cos\varphi b_1 - \sin\varphi b_2)$$

so $g_{\mathbf{n}} = e^{\tau(\cos\varphi b_1 - \sin\varphi b_2)}$, this is indeed a pseudo-rotation of axis direction $(0, \sin\varphi, \cos\varphi)$.

## 8.2 Unitary Representations of $SU(1,1)$

Let us begin by introducing a useful and important invariant operator for Lie group representation: the Casimir operator. We first define the Killing form on a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$,

$$\langle X, Y\rangle_0 = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr}\big(ad(X)ad(Y)\big) \tag{8.9}$$

where $ad$ is the Lie adjoint representation: $ad(X)Y = [X, Y]$, $\forall Y \in \mathfrak{g}$.

$ad(X)$ is the infinitesimal generator of the one-parameter group transformation in $\mathfrak{g}$:

$$G_\theta(Y) = e^{\theta X} Y e^{-\theta X}$$

We have the antisymmetric property:

$$\big\langle ad(X)Y, Z\big\rangle_0 = -\big\langle Y, ad(X)Z\big\rangle_0, \quad \forall X, Y, Z \in \mathfrak{g}$$

Consider a basis $\{X_j\}$ of $\mathfrak{g}$. The Killing form in this basis has the matrix $g_{j,k} = \mathrm{tr}(ad(X_j)ad(X_k))$. We denote $g^{j,k}$ the inverse of the matrix $g_{j,k}$.

Let us now consider a representation $R$ of a Lie group $G$ in the linear space $V$ and $\rho = dR$ the corresponding representation of its Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ in $\mathscr{L}(V)$. The Casimir operator $C^\rho_{as}$ is defined as follows:

$$C^\rho_{as} = \sum g^{j,k}\rho(X_j)\rho(X_k)$$

Let us remark that if $V$ is infinite dimensional some care is necessary to check the domain of $C^\rho_{as}$. Nevertheless a standard computation gives the following important property.

**Lemma 51** *The Casimir operator $C^\rho_{as}$ commutes with the representation $\rho$, $\rho(X)C^\rho_{as} = C^\rho_{as}\rho(X)$, $\forall X \in \mathfrak{g}$.*

*In particular if the representation is irreducible then $C^\rho_{as} = c^\rho_{as}\mathbb{1}$, $c_{as} \in \mathbb{R}$.*

Let us now remark that every irreducible unitary representation of $SU(1,1)$ is infinite dimensional, this is a big difference with $SU(2)$.

**Proposition 95** *Let $\rho$ be a unitary representation of $SU(1,1)$ in a finite-dimensional Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}$. Then $\rho$ is trivial, i.e. $\rho(g) = \mathbb{1}_{\mathscr{H}}$, $\forall g \in SU(1,1)$*

*Proof* Using the isomorphism from $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ onto $SU(1,1)$, it is enough to prove the proposition for a unitary representation of $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$.

For every $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $a \in \mathbb{R}$, $a \neq 0$, we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & a^{-1} \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & x \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & a^{-1} \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & a^2x \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then we see that $\rho\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & x \\ 0 & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ are all conjugate for $x > 0$. By continuity they are conjugate to $\mathbb{1}_{\mathscr{H}} = \rho\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ because the representation is finite dimensional. The same property holds true for $x < 0$ and for matrices $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ y & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$. But the group $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ is generated by the two matrices $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & x \\ 0 & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ and $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ y & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$. So we can conclude that $\rho(A) = \mathbb{1}_{\mathscr{H}}$ for every $A \in SL(2,\mathbb{R})$. □

Unitary irreducible representations of $SU(1,1)$ have been computed independently by Gelfand–Neumark [81] and by Bargmann [15]. We shall follow here the presentation by Bargmann with some minor modifications.

### 8.2.1 Classification of the Possible Representations of $SU(1, 1)$

Let $\rho$ be an irreducible unitary representation of $SU(1, 1)$ in some Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}$.

It can be proved that $\mathscr{H}$ is infinite dimensional except if $\rho$ is trivial ($\rho(g) = \mathbb{1}$, $\forall g \in SU(1, 1)$).

So $\mathscr{H}$ will be infinite dimensional.

In the representation space the generators $b_j$ define the operators

$$B_j := i \frac{d}{dt} \rho\big(\omega_j(t)\big)\Big|_{t=0}, \quad j = 0, 1, 2$$

with the commutation relations

$$[B_1, B_2] = -i B_0, \qquad [B_2, B_0] = i B_1, \qquad [B_0, B_1] = i B_2 \tag{8.10}$$

Or with the complex notation $B_\pm = B_2 \pm i B_1$, we have

$$[B_-, B_+] = 2B_0, \qquad [B_0, B_\pm] = \pm B_\pm \tag{8.11}$$

We have $\rho(\omega_0(t)) = \mathrm{e}^{-itB_0}$ hence $\mathrm{e}^{-i4\pi B_0} = 1$. So the spectrum of $B_0$ is a subset of $\{\frac{k}{2},\ k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. There exists $\psi_0 \in \mathscr{H}$, $\|\psi_0\| = 1$ and $B_0\psi_0 = \lambda\psi_0$, $\lambda = \frac{k_0}{2}$, $k_0 \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Using the commutation relation we have

$$B_0 B_+ \psi_0 = (\lambda + 1) B_+ \psi_0 \tag{8.12}$$

$$B_0 B_- \psi_0 = (\lambda - 1) B_- \psi_0 \tag{8.13}$$

Reasoning by induction, we get for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$B_0\big(B_+^k\big)\psi_0 = (\lambda + k)(B_+)^k \psi_0 \tag{8.14}$$

$$B_0(B_-)^k \psi_0 = (\lambda - k)(B_-)^k \psi_0 \tag{8.15}$$

Introduce now the Casimir operator $C_{as}$ of the representation which is supposed to be irreducible, so $C_{as} = c_{as}\mathbb{1}$ where

$$C_{as} = B_0^2 - \frac{1}{2}(B_- B_+ + B_+ B_-)$$

Hence we have the equations

$$(B_- B_+ + B_+ B_-)\psi_0 = 2\big(\lambda^2 - c_{as}\big)\psi_0 \tag{8.16}$$

$$(B_- B_+ - B_+ B_-)\psi_0 = 2\lambda\psi_0 \tag{8.17}$$

So we get

$$B_- B_+ \psi_0 = \big(\lambda(\lambda + 1) - c_{as}\big)\psi_0 \tag{8.18}$$

$$B_+ B_- \psi_0 = \big(\lambda(\lambda - 1) - c_{as}\big)\psi_0 \tag{8.19}$$

Using now $B_{\pm}^{k}\psi_0$ instead of $\psi_0$ we have proved for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$B_{-}B_{+}^{k}\psi_0 = \big((\lambda + k - 1)(\lambda + k) - c_{as}\big)\psi_0 \tag{8.20}$$

$$B_{+}B_{-}^{k}\psi_0 = \big((\lambda - k + 1)(\lambda - k) - c_{as}\big)\psi_0 \tag{8.21}$$

Let us denote $\nu_k^+ = ((\lambda + k - 1)(\lambda + k) - c_{as})$ and $\nu_k^- = ((\lambda - k + 1)(\lambda - k) - c_{as})$.
Using that $B_+ = B_-^*$ and $B_- = B_+^*$ we get from (8.20),

$$\left\| B_{+}^{k+1}\psi_0 \right\|^2 = \nu_{k+1}^{+} \left\| B_{+}^{k}\psi_0 \right\|^2 \tag{8.22}$$

$$\left\| B_{-}^{k+1}\psi_0 \right\|^2 = \nu_{k+1}^{-} \left\| B_{-}^{k}\psi_0 \right\|^2 \tag{8.23}$$

From (8.22) we can start the discussion.

(I) Suppose that for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $B_{+}^{k}\psi_0 \neq 0$ and $B_{-}^{k}\psi_0 \neq 0$. Then for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $\lambda \pm k$ is an eigenvalue for $B_0$.
  (I-1) If 0 is in this family (i.e. $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}$) then we can suppose that $B_0\psi_0 = 0$ so we can choose $\lambda = 0$. From (8.22) we find the necessary condition $c_{as} < 0$.
  (I-2) If 0 is not in the family $\lambda \pm k$, $\lambda = \frac{1}{2} + k_0$, $k_0 \in \mathbb{Z}$ and using $B_{\pm}^{k}$ we can assume that $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$. From (8.22) we get $c_{as} < 1/4$.
  In these two cases we get an orthonormal basis $\{\varphi_m\}_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}$ for $\mathscr{H}$, such that $B_0\varphi_m = (m + \frac{\varepsilon}{2})\varphi_m$, where $\varepsilon = 0$ in the first case and $\varepsilon = 1$ in the second case. This is really a basis because the linear space span by the $\varphi_m$ is invariant by the representation which is irreducible.

(II) Suppose now that there exists $k_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $B_{+}^{k_0+1}\psi_0 = 0$ and $B_{+}^{k_0}\psi_0 \neq 0$. Using (8.20) we see that for every $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, $B_{-}^{\ell}\psi_0$ is proportional to $B_{-}^{\ell'}B_{+}^{k_0}\psi_0$, so we can replace $\psi_0$ by $B_{+}^{k_0}\psi_0$. So we have $B_0\psi_0 = \lambda\psi_0$, $B_+\psi_0 = 0$. Hence this gives $\nu_1^+ = 0$ and $c_{as} = \lambda(\lambda + 1)$. If $\lambda = 0$ we get $B_-\psi_0 = 0$ and the Hilbert space is unidimensional. So we have $\lambda > 0$. As above we get an orthonormal basis of $\mathscr{H}$ $\{\varphi_m\}_{m\in\mathbb{N}}$ such that $B_0\varphi_m = (\lambda - m)\varphi_m$.
  If there exists $k_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $B_{-}^{k_0+1}\psi_0 = 0$ and $B_{-}^{k_0}\psi_0 \neq 0$ we have a similar result with eigenvalues $\lambda + m$ for $B_0$.

In case (I) the Casimir parameter $c_{as}$ varies in an interval and we said the representation belongs to the continuous series; in case (II) the Casimir parameter varies in a discrete set and we say that the representation belongs to the discrete series.

### 8.2.2 *Discrete Series Representations of* $SU(1, 1)$

In the last section we have found necessary conditions satisfied by any irreducible representation of $SU(1, 1)$. Now we have to prove that these conditions can be realized in some concrete Hilbert spaces.

#### 8.2.2.1 The Hilbert Spaces $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$

Let $n$ be a real number, $n \geq 2$, $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ is the Hilbert space of holomorphic functions $f$ on the unit disc $\mathbb{D}$ of the complex plane $\mathbb{C}$ satisfying

$$\|f\|^2_{\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})} := \frac{n-1}{\pi}\int_{\mathbb{D}} \left|f(z)\right|^2\left(1-|z|^2\right)^{n-2} dx\,dy < +\infty, \quad z = x + iy \tag{8.24}$$

The measure $d\nu_n(z) := \frac{n-1}{\pi}(1-|z|^2)^{n-2}\,dx\,dy$ is a probability measure on $\mathbb{D}$ and $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ is a complete space with the obvious Hilbert norm is a consequence of standard properties of holomorphic functions.

It is useful to produce the following characterization of $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ using the series expansion of $f$:

$$f(z) = \sum_{k\geq 0} c_k(f) z^k$$

which is absolutely convergent inside the disc $\mathbb{D}$.

In (8.24) let us compute the integral in polar coordinates $z = r\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}$. From the Parseval formula for Fourier series we get

$$\|f\|_{\mathscr{H}_n^2(\mathbb{D})} = 2(n-1)\pi \sum_{k\geq 0}\left|c_k(f)\right|^2 \int_0^1 r^{2k+1}\left(1-r^2\right)^{n-2} dr \tag{8.25}$$

So we have

$$\|f\|^2_{\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})} = \sum_{k\geq 0}\left|c_k(f)\right|^2 \frac{\Gamma(n)\Gamma(k+1)}{\Gamma(n+k)} \tag{8.26}$$

This gives a unitary equivalent definition of $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ as a Hilbert space of functions on the unit circle. In particular the scalar product in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ of $f_1$ and $f_2$ has the following expression:

$$\langle f_1, f_2\rangle_{\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})} = \sum_{k\geq 0}\overline{c_k(f_1)}c_k(f_2)\gamma_{n,k} \tag{8.27}$$

where $\gamma_{n,\ell} = \frac{\Gamma(n)\Gamma(\ell+1)}{\Gamma(n+\ell)}$.

From formula (8.26) and (8.27) we easily get that $e_\ell(z) := \{\frac{z^\ell}{\sqrt{\gamma_{n,\ell}}}\}_{\ell\geq 0}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$.

#### 8.2.2.2 Discrete Series Realization of $SU(1,1)$ in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$

These representations can be introduced using Gauss decomposition in the complex Lie group $SL(2,\mathbb{C})$,

$$\begin{pmatrix}\alpha & \beta\\ \gamma & \delta\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ \frac{\gamma}{\alpha} & 1\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\alpha & 0\\ 0 & \frac{1}{\alpha}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & \frac{\beta}{\alpha}\\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} \tag{8.28}$$

where $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$ are complex numbers such that $\alpha\delta - \beta\delta = 1$, $\alpha \neq 0$.

Moreover this decomposition as a product like

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ z & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{u} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & w \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

is unique. So this allows us to define natural actions of $SU(1,1)$ in the disc $\mathbb{D}$.

Let us denote by $t_-(z)$ the matrices $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ z & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$, $t_+(z)$ the matrices $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & z \\ 0 & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ and $d(u) = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} u & 0 \\ 0 & u^{-1} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$.

Let us denote $g$ a generic element of $SU(1,1)$,

$$g = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}$$

Consider the $t_-$ matrix in the Gaussian decomposition of $gt_-(z)$. We have $t_- = t_-(\tilde{z})$ where the complex number $\tilde{z}$ is $\tilde{z} = M_-(g)(z) = \frac{\bar{\beta}+\bar{\alpha}z}{\alpha+\beta z}$. We get easily that $|M_-(g)(z)| = 1$ if $|z| = 1$ and from the maximum principle, $|M_-(g)(z)| < 1$ if $|z| < 1$. So we have defined a right action of $SU(1,1)$ in $\mathbb{D}$. In the same way we get a left action considering the $t_+$ matrix in the decomposition of $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & z \\ 0 & 1 \end{smallmatrix}\right) g^{-1}$. So we get the action $M_+(g)(z) = \frac{-\bar{\beta}+\alpha z}{\bar{\alpha}-\bar{\beta}z}$.

Now we want to define unitary actions of $SU(1,1)$ in the space $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ as follows:

$$\mathscr{D}_n^-(g)f(z) = m_g^-(z) f\left(M_-\left(g^{-1}\right)z\right) \tag{8.29}$$

where the multiplier $m_g^-(z)$ is chosen such that $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ defines an unitary representation of $SU(1,1)$. We prove now that it is true with the choice $m_g^-(z) = (\bar{\alpha} - \beta z)^{-n}$.

**Theorem 43** *For every integer $n \geq 2$ we have the following unitary representation of $SU(1,1)$ in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}(\mathbb{D})$:*

$$\mathscr{D}_n^-(g)f(z) = (\bar{\alpha} - \beta z)^{-n} f\left(\frac{-\bar{\beta} + \alpha z}{\bar{\alpha} - \beta z}\right) \tag{8.30}$$

$$\mathscr{D}_n^+(g)f(z) = (\alpha + \bar{\beta} z)^{-n} f\left(\frac{\beta + \bar{\alpha} z}{\alpha + \bar{\beta} z}\right) \tag{8.31}$$

*Proof* It is not difficult to see that $\mathscr{D}_n^\pm$ are $SU(1,1)$ actions in the linear space $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$. Let us prove that $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ is unitary. This follows with the holomorphic change of variables $Z = \frac{-\bar{\beta}+\alpha z}{\bar{\alpha}-\beta z}$, $Z = X + iY$, $z = x + iy$. We get $z = \frac{\bar{\beta}+\bar{\alpha}Z}{\alpha+\beta Z}$, $\frac{dz}{dZ} = (\beta Z + \alpha)^{-2}$. We conclude using that for a holomorphic change of variable in the plane, we have from the Cauchy conditions,

$$\left|\det \frac{\partial(x,y)}{\partial(X,Y)}\right| = \left|\frac{dz}{dZ}\right|^2$$

So we get for any $f \in \mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$,

$$\int_{\mathbb{D}} |\bar{\alpha} - \beta z|^{-2n} \left| f\left(\frac{-\bar{\beta} + \alpha z}{\bar{\alpha} - \beta z}\right)\right|^2 \left(1 - |z|^2\right)^{n-2} dx\, dy$$
$$= \int_{\mathbb{D}} \left|f(Z)\right|^2 \left(1 - |Z|^2\right)^{n-2} dX\, dY$$

which says that $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ is unitary. Let us remark here that the above computations show that the multiplier $m_g^-$ is necessary to prove unitarity. □

The next step is to prove that these representations are irreducible. To do that we first compute the corresponding Lie algebra representation.

Let us compute the image of this basis by the representation $\mathscr{D}_n^-$. Straightforward computations give

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathscr{D}_n^-\big(\omega_0(t)\big) f(z)\Big|_{t=0} = \frac{1}{2i}\left(n + 2z\frac{d}{dz}\right) f(z) \tag{8.32}$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathscr{D}_n^-\big(\omega_1(t)\big) f(z)\Big|_{t=0} = \frac{1}{2}\left(nz + \left(z^2 - 1\right)\frac{d}{dz}\right) f(z) \tag{8.33}$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathscr{D}_n^-\big(\omega_2(t)\big) f(z)\Big|_{t=0} = \frac{1}{2i}\left(nz + \left(1 + z^2\right)\frac{d}{dz}\right) f(z) \tag{8.34}$$

So we get the three self-adjoint generators $B_0$, $B_1$, $B_2$, $B_j = i d\mathscr{D}_n^-(b_j)$, where $d$ denotes the differential on the group at $\mathbb{1}$,

$$B_0 = \frac{n}{2} + z\frac{d}{dz} \tag{8.35}$$

$$B_1 = \frac{i}{2}\left(nz + \left(z^2 - 1\right)\frac{d}{dz}\right) \tag{8.36}$$

$$B_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(nz + \left(z^2 + 1\right)\frac{d}{dz}\right) \tag{8.37}$$

with the commutation relations

$$[B_1, B_2] = -iB_0, \qquad [B_2, B_0] = -iB_1, \qquad [B_0, B_1] = iB_2 \tag{8.38}$$

Using the notation $B_\pm = B_2 \mp iB_1$, we have

$$B_- = \frac{d}{dz} \tag{8.39}$$

$$B_+ = nz + z^2\frac{d}{dz} \tag{8.40}$$

and

$$[B_-, B_+] = 2B_0, \qquad [B_0, B_\pm] = \pm B_\pm \tag{8.41}$$

*Remark 46* Operators $B_a$ for $a = 0, 1, 2, \pm$ are non-bounded operators in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ so we have to define their domains. Here we know that the representation $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ is unitary. So Stone's theorem gives that $B_0$ is essentially self-adjoint and the linear space $\mathscr{P}^\infty$ of all polynomials in $z$ is a core for $B_0$. Moreover the spectrum of $B_0$ is discrete, with simple eigenvalues $\{n/2 + k,\ k \in \mathbb{N}\}$.

$B_1$ and $B_2$ also have a unique closed extension. Moreover it could be possible to characterize their domains (left to the reader!). Operators $B_\pm$ are closable in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$. We keep the same notation $B_\pm$ for their closures.

We have the following useful property.

**Lemma 52** *$B_\pm$ are adjoint of each other: $B_\pm^* = B_\mp$. In particular for every $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}$ the operator $i(\zeta B_- - \bar{\zeta} B_+)$ is self-adjoint.*

*Proof* It is enough to prove $B_\pm^* = B_\mp$. This is formally obvious because we know that $B_1, B_2$ are self-adjoint. We left to the reader to check that the domains are the same. □

Let us compute the Casimir operator $C_{as}^n$ for the representation $\mathscr{D}_n^-$.

A direct computation of the coefficients $g_{j,k}$ of the Killing form shows that $g_{j,k} = 0$ if $j \neq k$ and $g_{0,0} = -1$, $g_{1,1} = g_{2,2} = 1$. So we get

$$C_{as}^n = B_0^2 - B_1^2 - B_2^2 = B_0^2 - \frac{1}{2}(B_+B_- + B_-B_+) \tag{8.42}$$

Let us assume for the moment that $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ is irreducible. Then by Schur lemma we know that $C_{as}^n$ is a number; this number can be computed using the monomial $z^0$. We find easily

$$C_{as}^n = \frac{n}{2}\left(\frac{n}{2} - 1\right) = k(k-1), \quad k =: \frac{n}{2} \tag{8.43}$$

Let us remark that $k := \frac{n}{2}$ is the lowest eigenvalue of $B_0$ and is called Bargmann index.

### 8.2.3 Irreducibility of Discrete Series

Here we prove that for every integer $n \geq 2$, the representation $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ is irreducible.

Let $E$ be a closed invariant subspace in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$. The restriction of $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ to the compact commutative subgroup $g(\theta, 0, 0)$ is a sum of one-dimensional unitary representations. So there exist $u \in E$, $\nu \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\mathscr{D}_n^-\big(g(\theta, 0, 0)\big)u = \mathrm{e}^{i\nu\theta}u, \quad \forall\theta \in \mathbb{R}$$

But $u$ has a series expansion $u(z) = \sum a_j z^j$. So by identification we have $\mathrm{e}^{i\nu\theta}a_j = \mathrm{e}^{-i(n+2j)\theta}a_j$. From this we find that there exists $j_0$ such that $a_{j_0} \neq 0$ so we find

$\nu = n + 2j_0$. But this entails $a_j = 0$ if $j \neq j_0$. Hence we conclude that the monomial $z^{j_0}$ belongs to $E$.

Now playing with $B_\pm$ we conclude easily that $E$ contains all the monomials $z^j$, $j \in \mathbb{N}$. We have proved above that the monomials is a total system in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$. So $E = \mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$.

The discrete series representations have an important property: they are square integrable (see Appendices A, B and C).

On the group $SU(1, 1)$ we have a left and right invariant Haar measure $\mu$. $\mu$ is positive on each non empty open set and unique up to a positive constant (see [128]).

The following result is proved in [129].

**Proposition 96** *For every $f \in \mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ we have*

$$\int_{SU(1,1)} \left|\langle \mathscr{D}_n^-(g) f, f\rangle_{\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})}\right|^2 d\mu(g) < +\infty$$

*where $dg$ is the Haar measure on $SU(1, 1)$.*

There exist other unitary irreducible representations for $SU(1, 1)$: the principal series and the complementary series (see also the book of Knapp [127] for more details). These representations are *not square integrable*.

Up to equivalence, discrete series, principal series and complementary series are the only irreducible unitary representations. Let us explain now what principal series are.

### 8.2.4 Principal Series

These representations can also be realized in Hilbert spaces of functions on the unit circle.

They are defined in the following way: take a nonnegative number $\lambda$ and a point $z$ on the unit circle. Then the homographic transformation

$$z \mapsto \frac{\alpha z + \bar{\beta}}{\beta z + \bar{\alpha}}$$

obviously maps the unit circle into itself. One defines

$$\mathscr{P}_{i\lambda}(g) f(z) = |\beta z + \bar{\alpha}|^{-1+2i\lambda} f\left(\frac{\alpha z + \bar{\beta}}{\beta z + \bar{\alpha}}\right)$$

One considers the Hilbert space $\mathfrak{L}^2(\mathbb{S}^1)$ with the scalar product

$$\langle f_1, f_2\rangle = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\, \bar{f}_1(\theta) f_2(\theta)$$

To prove the unitarity of the representation $\mathscr{P}_{i\lambda}(g)$ in the Hilbert space we perform the change of variable $\theta \mapsto \theta'$ where

$$\mathrm{e}^{i\theta'} = \frac{\alpha \mathrm{e}^{i\theta} + \bar{\beta}}{\beta \mathrm{e}^{i\theta} + \bar{\alpha}}$$

The Jacobian satisfies

$$\left|\frac{d\theta'}{d\theta}\right| = \left|\beta \mathrm{e}^{i\theta} + \bar{\alpha}\right|^{-2}$$

Thus we have for any real $\lambda$:

$$\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta \left|\left(\mathscr{P}_{i\lambda}(g) f\right)\left(\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}\right)\right|^2 = \int_0^{2\pi} d\theta' \left|f\left(\mathrm{e}^{i\theta'}\right)\right|^2$$

Now we can prove:

**Proposition 97** *For any* $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, $\mathscr{P}_{i\lambda}$ *is a unitary irreducible representation of* $SU(1,1)$ *in the Hilbert space* $\mathfrak{L}^2(\mathbb{S}^1)$. *Moreover its Casimir operator is* $C_{i\lambda} = -(\frac{1}{4} + \lambda^2)$.

For the generator $\omega_0(t)$ of the Lie group $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ one gets

$$\left(\mathscr{P}_{i\lambda}\left(\omega_0(t)\right) f\right)\left(\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}\right) = f\left(\mathrm{e}^{i(\theta+t)}\right)$$

Thus the corresponding generator of $SU(1,1)$ is simply

$$L_0 = \frac{d}{d\theta}$$

To find the generator associated to $\omega_1$ we need to calculate

$$\left|\sinh\frac{t}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\theta} + \cosh\frac{t}{2}\right|^2 = \cosh t + \cos\theta \sinh t$$

Thus

$$\left(\mathscr{P}_{i\lambda}\left(\omega_1(t) f\right)\right)\left(\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}\right) = (\cosh t + \sinh t \cos\theta)^{-1/2+i\lambda} f\left(\frac{\cosh\frac{t}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\theta} + \sinh\frac{t}{2}}{\sinh\frac{t}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i\theta} + \cosh\frac{t}{2}}\right)$$

Thus the generator $L_1$ of $SU(1,1)$ is given by

$$L_1 = \left(-\frac{1}{2} + i\lambda\right)\cos\theta - \sin\theta\frac{d}{d\theta}$$

Similarly using the third generator $\omega_2$ one finds

$$L_2 = -\left(-\frac{1}{2} + i\lambda\right)\sin\theta - \cos\theta\frac{d}{d\theta}$$

Therefore the usual linear combinations $B_\pm = \pm L_1 + iL_2$ satisfy

$$B_+ = \left(-\frac{1}{2} + i\lambda\right)\mathrm{e}^{-i\theta} - i\mathrm{e}^{-i\theta}\frac{d}{d\theta}$$
$$B_- = -\left(-\frac{1}{2} + i\lambda\right)\mathrm{e}^{i\theta} - i\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}\frac{d}{d\theta}$$

We define

$$B_0 = iL_0 = i\frac{d}{d\theta}$$

Using the same method as for discrete series, we can prove that these representations are irreducible (start with $B_0$ and use $B\pm$).

To calculate the Casimir operator $B_0^2 - \frac{1}{2}(B_-B_+ + B_+B_-)$ it is enough to apply it to the constant function. Thus $B_0 1 = 0$, $B_\pm 1 = \pm(-\frac{1}{2} + i\lambda)\mathrm{e}^{\mp i\theta}$. One finds

$$C := B_0^2 - \frac{1}{2}(B_-B_+ + B_+B_-) = -\left(\frac{1}{4} - \lambda^2\right)\mathbb{1}$$

### 8.2.5 Complementary Series

When the parameter $\lambda$ of the principal series is imaginary the representation is not unitary in the space $L^2(\mathbb{S}^1)$. So, following Bargmann [17] we introduce a different Hilbert space. Let us introduce the sesquilinear form depending of the real parameter $\sigma \in ]0, \frac{1}{2}[$,

$$\langle f_1, f_2\rangle_\sigma = c\iint_{[0,2\pi]^2}\big(1 - \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2)\big)^{\sigma-1/2}\overline{f_1(\theta_1)}f_2(\theta_2)\,d\theta_1\,d\theta_2$$

$\langle f_1, f_2\rangle_\sigma$ is well defined if $f_1, f_2$ are continuous on $\mathbb{S}^1$. The constant $c$ is computed such that $\langle 1, 1\rangle_\sigma = 1$,

$$c = 2^{1/2-\sigma}\pi B(\sigma, 1/2)^{-1}$$

The integral $\int_0^{2\pi}(1 - \cos\theta)^{\sigma-1/2}\,d\theta$ is computed using the change of variable $x = \cos(\theta)$ so we get $c$. The following properties are useful to build the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_\sigma$.

**Proposition 98**

(i) *For every* $f_1, f_2 \in C(\mathbb{S}^1)$ *we have*

$$\iint_{[0,2\pi]^2}\big(1 - \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2)\big)^{\sigma-1/2}\big|f_1(\theta_1)\big|\big|f_2(\theta_2)\big|\,d\theta_1\,d\theta_2 \le \|f_1\|\|f_2\|$$

(ii)

$$\langle e_k, e_\ell \rangle_\sigma = 0, \quad \text{if } k \neq \ell$$

*where* $e_k(\theta) = \mathrm{e}^{ik\theta}$.

(iii)

$$\langle e_k, e_k \rangle_\sigma = \lambda_k(\sigma)$$

*where*

$$\lambda_k(\sigma) = \frac{\Gamma(1/2+\sigma)\Gamma(|k|+1/2-\sigma)}{\Gamma(1/2-\sigma)\Gamma(|k|+1/2+\sigma)} \tag{8.44}$$

*In particular* $\lambda_0 = 1$ *and* $\lambda_k(\sigma) > 0$ *for every* $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ *and* $\sigma \in ]0, 1/2[$.

*Proof*

(i) is proved using the change of variable $u = \theta_1 - \theta_2$ and Cauchy–Schwarz inequality.

(ii) It is a consequence of the following equality, for $k \neq \ell$,

$$\langle e_k, e_\ell \rangle_\sigma = \iint_{[0,2\pi]^2} \big(1 - \cos(u)\big)^{\sigma-1/2} \mathrm{e}^{-ik\theta} \mathrm{e}^{i\ell(\theta+u)}\, d\theta\, du = 0$$

(iii) We have $\lambda_{-k} = \lambda_k$, so it is enough to consider the case $k \geq 0$. Hence we have

$$\langle e_k, e_k \rangle_\sigma = 2c \int_0^\pi \big(1 - \cos(u)\big)^{\sigma-1/2} \cos(ku)\, du$$

We compute the integral using the change of variable $x = \cos u$, so $\cos(ku) = T_k(x)$, where $T_k$ is the Tchebichev polynomial of order $k$.

$$\langle e_k, e_k \rangle_\sigma = 2c \int_{-1}^1 (1-x)^{\sigma-1/2} \big(1 - x^2\big)^{-1/2} T_k(x)\, dx$$

But we have the following expression, known as the Rodrigues formula [56]:

$$T_k(x) = (-1)^k 2^{k-1} \frac{(k-1)!}{(2k)!} \big(1 - x^2\big)^{1/2} \frac{d^k}{dx^k} \Big(\big(1 - x^2\big)^{k-1/2}\Big)$$

Hence we get the result by integrations by parts and well known formulas for gamma and beta special functions.

□

So if $f_1, f_2 \in C(\mathbb{S}^1)$, $f_j = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} c_k^j e_k$ is the Fourier decomposition of $f_j$. Then as a result we have

$$\langle f_1, f_2 \rangle_\sigma = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \lambda_k(\sigma) \overline{c_k^1} c_k^2$$

This shows that $(f_1, f_2) \mapsto \langle f_1, f_2\rangle_\sigma$ is a positive-definite sesquilinear form on $C(\mathbb{S}^1)$.

Now we can define the complementary series $\mathscr{C}_\sigma$, $0 < \sigma < 1/2$, as follows. It is realized in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_\sigma$ of functions $f$ on $\mathbb{S}^1$ such that $\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \lambda_k(\sigma)|c_k|^2 < +\infty$ equipped with the scalar product $\langle f_1, f_2\rangle_\sigma$ (see proposition (iii)).

So we can define, for $f \in \mathscr{H}_\sigma$,

$$\mathscr{C}_\sigma(g)f(z) = |\beta z + \bar\alpha|^{-1+2\sigma} f\left(\frac{\alpha z + \bar\beta}{\beta z + \bar\alpha}\right)$$

**Proposition 99** *For all* $0 < \sigma < 1/2$, $\mathscr{C}_\sigma$ *is a unitary irreducible representation of* $SU(1,1)$ *in* $\mathscr{H}_\sigma$. *Moreover its Casimir operator is* $C_\sigma = \sigma^2 - \frac{1}{4}$.

*Proof* We use the same methods as for the discrete and continuous series. In particular the computations are the same as for the continuous series with $\sigma$ in place of $i\lambda$. The main difference here is in the definition of the Hilbert space which is necessary to get a unitary representation. □

### *8.2.6 Bosons Systems Realizations*

Let us start with a one boson system. We consider the usual annihilation and creation operators $a$, $a^\dagger$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ (see Chap. 1). The following operators satisfy the commutation relations (8.41) of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$:

$$B_+ = \frac{1}{2}\left(a^\dagger\right)^2, \qquad B_- = \frac{1}{2}a^2, \qquad B_0 = \frac{1}{4}\left(aa^\dagger + a^\dagger a\right) \tag{8.45}$$

We have seen in Chap. 3 that the metaplectic representation is a projective representation of the group $\mathrm{Sp}(1) = SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ and it is decomposed into two irreducible representation in the Hilbert subspaces of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, $L^2_{ev}(\mathbb{R})$ of even states and $L^2_{od}(\mathbb{R})$ of odd states. But the group $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ is isomorphic to the group $SU(1,1)$ by the explicit map $g \mapsto F_g := M_0 g M_0^{-1}$, $g \in SU(1,1)$, $F_g \in SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ with $M_0 = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & i \\ i & 1\end{smallmatrix}\right)$.

So the metaplectic representation defines a representation of the group $SU(1,1)$ in the space $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ with two irreducible components $\hat R_{ev,od}$ in the space $L^2_{ev,od}(\mathbb{R})$.

In quantum mechanics it is natural to consider ray-representations (or projective representations) instead of genuine representations. For example the metaplectic representation is a ray-representation.

Let us compute the Casimir operators $C_{ev,od}$ for each components.

We compute $C_{ev}$ using the bound state $\psi_0$ for the harmonic oscillator ($\psi_0 \in L^2_{ev}(\mathbb{R})$).

Using that $\hat H_{osc} = \frac{1}{2}(aa^\dagger + a^\dagger a) = aa^\dagger - \frac{1}{2}$ we get $C_{ev}\psi_0 = -\frac{3}{16}\psi_0$ and $C_{od}\psi_1 = -\frac{3}{16}\psi_1$ ($B_0\psi_0 = \frac{1}{4}\psi_0$ and $B_0\psi_1 = \frac{3}{4}\psi_1$).

We see that the commutation relations (8.45) define two irreducible "representations" of $SU(1,1)$ which are neither in the discrete series neither in the continuous series. The reason is that they are ray-representations corresponding with the even part and odd part of the metaplectic representation.

More details concerning ray-representations can be found in [16, 197]. In particular these ray-representations are genuine representations of the covering group $\widetilde{SU}(1,1)$ (which is simply connected but $SU(1,1)$ is not). A "double valued representation" $\rho$ in a linear space satisfies

$$\rho(gh) = C(g,h)\rho(g)\rho(h), \quad \text{with } C(g,h) = \pm 1$$

Let us now consider the two bosons system. We consider two annihilation and creation operators $a_{1,2}, a_{1,2}^\dagger$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ (see Chap. 1). The following operators satisfies the commutation relations (8.41) of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$:

$$B_+ = a_1^\dagger a_2^\dagger, \qquad B_- = a_1 a_2, \qquad B_0 = \frac{1}{2}\big(a_1^\dagger a_1 + a_2^\dagger a_2 + 1\big) \tag{8.46}$$

The Casimir operator is

$$C_{as} = -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4}\big(a_2^\dagger a_2 - a_1^\dagger a_1\big)^2$$

We know from Chap. 1 that we have an orthonormal basis of $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$, $\{\phi_{m_1,m_2}\}_{(m_1,m_2)\in\mathbb{N}^2}$, where $\phi_{m_1,m_2} = (a_1^\dagger)^{m_1}(a_2^\dagger)^{m_2}\phi_{0,0}$ such that

$$B_0\phi_{m_1,m_2} = \frac{m_1+m_2+1}{2}\phi_{m_1,m_2} \tag{8.47}$$

$$B_+\phi_{m_1,m_2} = \phi_{m_1+1,m_2+1} \tag{8.48}$$

$$B_-\phi_{m_1,m_2} = \phi_{m_1-1,m_2-1} \tag{8.49}$$

A direct computation gives

$$C_{as}\phi_{m_1,m_2} = \left(-\frac{1}{4} + (m_1-m_2)^2\right)\phi_{m_1,m_2} \tag{8.50}$$

So if we introduce $k = \frac{1}{2}(1+|n_0|)$, we get easily (assuming $n_0 \geq 0$) the following lemma.

**Lemma 53** *For every positive half integer* $k$, *the Hilbert space spanned by* $\{\phi_{m_2+2k-1,m_2}, m_2 \in \mathbb{N}\}$, *is an irreducible space for the representation of the Lie algebra with generators* (8.45).

We know now that this Lie algebra representation defines a unitary representation of $\widetilde{SU}(1,1)$ but only a projective representation of $SU(1,1)$.

## 8.3 Pseudo-Coherent States for Discrete Series

We can now proceed to the construction of coherent states by analogy with the harmonic oscillator case (Glauber states) and the spin-coherent states.

We consider here the discrete series representation.

### 8.3.1 *Definition of Coherent States for Discrete Series*

Let us consider the representation $(\mathscr{D}_n^-, \mathscr{H}(\mathbb{D}))$. It could be possible to work with $\mathscr{D}_n^+$ as well. Every $g \in SU(1,1)$ can be decomposed as $g = g_{\mathbf{n}} h$ where $h \in U(1)$ and $\mathbf{n} \in P\mathbb{S}^2$. It is convenient to start with $\psi_0 \in \mathscr{H}(\mathbb{D})$ such that $h\psi_0 = \psi_0$ so we take as a fiducial state $\psi_0(\zeta) = \gamma_{n,0}^{-1/2}\zeta^0$ and we define $\psi_{\mathbf{n}} = \mathscr{D}_n^-(g_{\mathbf{n}})\psi_0$. Most of properties of $\psi_{\mathbf{n}}$ will follow from suitable formula for the operator family $D(\mathbf{n}) = \mathscr{D}_n^-(g_{\mathbf{n}})$. There are many similarities with the spin setting. We shall explain now these similarities in more detail.

Using polar coordinates for $\mathbf{n}$ we have

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh(\tau/2) & \sinh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi} \\ \sinh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} & \cosh(\tau/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

So using the definition of the representation $\mathscr{D}_n^-$ we have the straightforward formula for the pseudo-spin-coherent states.

$$\psi_\zeta(z) = \left(1 - |\zeta|^2\right)^{n/2}\left(1 - \bar{\zeta} z\right)^{-n}, \quad \text{where } \zeta = \sinh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} \tag{8.51}$$

Now we shall give a Lie group interpretation of the coherent states. Let us recall that $B_m = id\mathscr{D}_n^-(\mathbb{1})b_m$, $m = 0, 1, 2$, and $B_+ = B_2 + iB_1$, $B_- = B_2 - iB_-$. Then we have

$$D(\mathbf{n}) = \exp\left(-i\tau(\cos\varphi B_1 - \sin\varphi B_2)\right) \tag{8.52}$$

$$= \exp\left(\tau/2\left(B_-\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} - B_+\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}\right)\right) \tag{8.53}$$

The second formula reads

$$D(\mathbf{n}) = D(\xi) = \exp\left(\bar{\xi}B_- \xi B_+\right), \quad \text{with } \xi = \frac{\tau}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi} \tag{8.54}$$

We can get a simpler formula using a heuristic following from Gauss decomposition:

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh(\tau/2) & \sinh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi} \\ \sinh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} & \cosh(\tau/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \tanh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cosh(\tau/2) & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\cosh(\tau/2)} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \tanh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.55}$$

Recall that $B_0\psi_0 = \frac{n}{2}\psi_0$ and $|\zeta| = \tanh(\tau/2)$. Moreover if $b \in \mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ then we have

$$\mathscr{D}_n^-\left(\mathrm{e}^{tb}\right) = \mathrm{e}^{-itB}, \quad \text{with } B = id\mathscr{D}_n^-(\mathbb{1})b \tag{8.56}$$

Suppose that (8.56) can be used for $b_1 \pm b_2$ (which are not in the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$. Then we get the following representation of pseudo-coherent states in the Poincaré disc $\mathbb{D}$, where $\zeta$ and $\mathbf{n}$ represents the same point on the pseudo-sphere $P\mathbb{S}^2$,

$$\psi_{\mathbf{n}} = \psi_\zeta = \left(1 - |\zeta|^2\right)^{n/2}\mathrm{e}^{\bar{\zeta}B_+}\psi_0 \tag{8.57}$$

Let us remark that in the spin case this heuristic is rigorous because the representation $\mathscr{D}^j$ is well defined on $SL(2,\mathbb{C})$ which is not true for $\mathscr{D}_n^-$. Nevertheless it is possible to give a rigorous meaning to formula (8.57) as we shall see in the next section.

### 8.3.2 Some Explicit Formula

We follow more or less the computations done in the spin case. We shall give details only when the proofs are really different.

It is convenient to compute in the canonical basis $\{e_\ell\}_{\ell\in\mathbb{N}}$ of the representation space $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ (analogue of Dicke states or Hermite basis). We easily get the formulas

$$B_+e_\ell = \sqrt{(n+\ell)(\ell+1)}e_{\ell+1} \tag{8.58}$$

$$B_-e_\ell = \sqrt{\ell(n+\ell-1)}e_{\ell-1}, \qquad B_-e_0 = 0 \tag{8.59}$$

$$B_0e_\ell = \left(\frac{n}{2} + \ell\right)e_\ell. \tag{8.60}$$

Let us remark that the linear space $\mathscr{P}_j$ of polynomials of degree $\le j$ is stable for $B_0$ and $B_-$ but not for $B_+$. For every $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$B_+^\ell e_0 = \left(n(n+1)\cdots(n+\ell-1)\ell!\right)^{1/2}e_\ell$$

Following our heuristic argument we expand the exponent $\mathrm{e}^{\bar{\zeta}B_+}$ as a Taylor series (which is not allowed because $B_+$ is unbounded) and we recover the formula:

$$\psi_\zeta(z) = \left(1 - |\zeta|^2\right)^k\left(1 - \bar{\zeta}z\right)^{-2k} \tag{8.61}$$

Let us give now a rigorous proof for this. It is enough to explain what is $\mathrm{e}^{tB_+}e_\ell$ for every $t \in \mathbb{D}$ and every $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$. For simplicity we assume $t \in ]-1,1[$.

**Proposition 100** *For every $m \in \mathbb{N}$, the differential equation*

$$\dot{\phi}_t = B_+\phi_t, \qquad \phi_0(z) = z^m$$

*has a unique solution holomorphic in* $(t, z) \in \mathbb{D} \times \mathbb{D}$ *given by the following formulas. For* $m = 0$

$$\phi_t(z) = (1 - tz)^{-n} \tag{8.62}$$

*for* $m \geq 1$,

$$\phi_t(z) = (1 - tz)^{-n} - 1 + z^m (1 - tz) - n - m \tag{8.63}$$

*Proof* We check $\phi_t(z) = \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} x_\ell(t) z^\ell$. So we can compute $x_\ell(t)$ using the induction formula

$$x_{\ell+1}(t) = x_{\ell+1}(0) + (n + \ell) \int_0^t x_\ell(s)\, ds$$

The result follows easily. □

From our computations we get the expansion of $\psi_\zeta$ in the canonical basis

$$\psi_\zeta = \left(1 - |\zeta|^2\right)^k \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} \left( \frac{\Gamma(2k + \ell)}{\Gamma(\ell + 1)\Gamma(2k)} \right)^{1/2} \bar{\zeta} e_\ell \tag{8.64}$$

**Proposition 101** *For every* $\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2 \in P\mathbb{S}^2$ *we have*

$$D(\mathbf{n}_1) D(\mathbf{n}_2) = D(\mathbf{n}_3) \exp\left(-i \Phi(\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2) B_0\right) \tag{8.65}$$

*where* $\Phi(\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2)$ *is the oriented area of the geodesic triangle on the pseudo-sphere with vertices at the points* $[\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2]$.

$\mathbf{n}_3$ *is determined by*

$$\mathbf{n}_3 = R(g_{\mathbf{n}_1}) \mathbf{n}_2 \tag{8.66}$$

*where* $R(g)$ *is the rotation associated to* $g \in SU(1, 1)$ *and*

$$g_{\mathbf{n}} = \exp\left( -i \frac{\tau}{2} (\sigma_1 \sin\varphi + \sigma_2 \cos\varphi) \right) \tag{8.67}$$

*Proof* Computation of $\mathbf{n}_3$ is easy using the following lemma. The phase will be detailed later. □

**Lemma 54** *For all* $g \in SU(1, 1)$ *there exist* $\mathbf{m} \in \mathbb{PS}^2$ *and* $\delta \in \mathbb{R}$ *such that*

$$g = g_{\mathbf{m}} r_3(\delta)$$

*where* $r_3(\delta) = \exp(i \frac{\delta}{2} B_0)$.

The following lemma shows that the pseudo-spin is also independent of the direction.

**Lemma 55** *One has*

$$D(\mathbf{n})\hat{B}_0 D(\mathbf{n})^{-1} = -\mathbf{n} \boxdot \mathbf{B} \tag{8.68}$$

*Proof* Let $(\tau, \varphi)$ be the pseudopolar coordinates of $\mathbf{n}$, $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(\tau, \varphi)$. We have $D(\mathbf{n}(\tau)) = \exp(-i\tau(\cos\varphi B_1 - \sin\varphi B_2))$.

Let us use the notation $A(\tau) := D(\mathbf{n}(\tau))AD(\mathbf{n}(\tau))^{-1}$ where $A$ is any operator in $\mathscr{H}(\mathbb{D})$. Then we have the equalities

$$\frac{d}{d\tau}B_0(\tau) = -\cos\varphi B_2(\tau) - \sin\varphi B_1(\tau) \tag{8.69}$$

$$\frac{d}{d\tau}B_1(\tau) = -\sin\varphi B_0(\tau) \tag{8.70}$$

$$\frac{d}{d\tau}B_2(\tau) = -\cos\varphi B_0(\tau) \tag{8.71}$$

We have the following consequences:

$$\frac{d^2}{d\tau^2}B_0(\tau) = B_0(\tau), \qquad \frac{d}{d\tau}B_0(0) = -\cos\varphi B_2 - \sin\varphi B_1 \tag{8.72}$$

hence we get $B_0(\tau) = -\mathbf{n}(\tau) \boxdot \mathbf{B}$. □

The following consequence is that $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the operator $\mathbf{n} \boxdot \mathbf{B}$:

**Proposition 102** *One has*

$$\mathbf{n} \boxdot \mathbf{B}|\mathbf{n}\rangle = -k|\mathbf{n}\rangle \tag{8.73}$$

*where* $k = \frac{n}{2}$.

As in the Heisenberg and spin settings, the pseudo-spin-coherent states family $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$ is not an orthogonal system in $\mathscr{H}(\mathbb{D})$. One can compute the scalar product of two coherent states $|\mathbf{n}\rangle$, $|\mathbf{n}'\rangle$:

**Proposition 103** *One has*

$$\langle\mathbf{n}'|\mathbf{n}\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{-ik\Phi(\mathbf{n},\mathbf{n}')}\left(\frac{1 - \mathbf{n} \boxdot \mathbf{n}'}{2}\right)^{-k} \tag{8.74}$$

*where* $\Phi(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}')$ *is the oriented area of the hyperbolic triangle* $\{\mathbf{n}_0, \mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}'\}$.

*Proof* We use the complex representation of coherent states, starting from the definition, we get

$$\psi_\zeta(z) = \left(1 - |\zeta|^2\right)^k \left(1 - \bar{\zeta}z\right)^{-2k}. \tag{8.75}$$

Next we use the series expansion

$$\left(1-\bar{\zeta}z\right)^{-2k}=\sum_{\ell\geq 0}\frac{(2k+\ell-1)!}{(2k-1)!\ell!}\left(\bar{\zeta}z\right)^{\ell}$$

to compute the Fourier coefficient of the coherent state $|\zeta\rangle$ in the basis $e_\ell$

$$\langle e_\ell|\zeta\rangle=\left(\frac{\Gamma(2k+\ell)}{\Gamma(\ell+1)\Gamma(2k)}\right)^{1/2}\left(1-|\zeta|^2\right)^k\zeta^\ell \tag{8.76}$$

The Parseval identity gives

$$\langle\mathbf{n}'|\mathbf{n}\rangle=\left(1-|\zeta|^2\right)^k\left(1-|\zeta'|^2\right)^k\left(1-\bar{\zeta}'\zeta\right)^{-2k} \tag{8.77}$$

We can translate this equality in pseudopolar coordinates ($\zeta=\tanh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}$) and we get

$$\langle\mathbf{n}'|\mathbf{n}\rangle=\left(\cosh(\tau/2)\cosh\left(\tau'/2\right)-\sinh(\tau/2)\sinh\left(\tau'/2\right)\mathrm{e}^{i(\varphi'-\varphi)}\right)^{-2k} \tag{8.78}$$

□

An easy computation now gives the following lemma:

**Lemma 56**

$$\left|\langle\mathbf{n}'|\mathbf{n}\rangle\right|^2=\left(\frac{1-\mathbf{n}\boxdot\mathbf{n}'}{2}\right)^{-2k} \tag{8.79}$$

The computation of the phase $\Phi$ in formula (8.74) can be done as for the spin case using the geometric phase method.

As is expected, the pseudo-spin-coherent state system provides a "resolution of the identity" in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}(\mathbb{D})$:

**Proposition 104** *We have the formula*

$$\boxed{\frac{2k-1}{4}\int_{P\mathbb{S}^2}d\mathbf{n}\,|\mathbf{n}\rangle\langle\mathbf{n}|=\mathbb{1}} \tag{8.80}$$

*Or using complex coordinates* $|\zeta\rangle$,

$$\boxed{\int_{\mathbb{D}}d\nu_{2k}(\zeta)\,|\zeta\rangle\langle\zeta|=\mathbb{1}} \tag{8.81}$$

*where the measure* $d\nu_n$ *is*

$$d\nu_n(\zeta)=\frac{n-1}{\pi}\frac{d^2\zeta}{(1-|\zeta|^2)^2}$$

*with* $d^2\zeta=\frac{|d\zeta\wedge d\bar{\zeta}|}{2}$.

*Proof* The two formulas are equivalent by the change of variables $\zeta = \tanh\frac{\tau}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}$. So it is sufficient to prove the complex version.

We introduce

$$\tilde{f}(\zeta) = \langle\zeta|f\rangle_{\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})}.$$

Decompose $f$ in the basis of $\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$, $f = \sum_{\ell\geq 0} c_\ell e_\ell$, we have

$$\left|f^\sharp(\zeta)\right|^2 = \sum_{\ell\geq 0} \frac{\Gamma(2k+\ell)}{\Gamma(\ell+1)\Gamma(2k)}\left(1-|\zeta|^2\right)^{2k}|\zeta|^{2\ell}|c_\ell|^2$$

After integration in $\zeta$ we have

$$\frac{2k-1}{\pi}\int_{\mathbb{D}}\left|f^\sharp(\zeta)\right|^2\frac{d^2\zeta}{(1-|\zeta|^2)^2} = \int_{\mathbb{D}}\left|f(z)\right|^2 d^2z$$

So we get the resolution of identity by a polarisation argument. □

### 8.3.3 Bargmann Transform and Large k Limit

Here we introduce the (pseudo-spin) Bargmann transform and prove that as $k\to+\infty$ the representation $\mathcal{D}^-_{2k}$ contracts to the Harmonic oscillator representation or Heisenberg–Schrödinger–Weyl representation.

Let us denote

$$\varphi^{k,\sharp}(\zeta) = \langle\zeta|\varphi\rangle_{\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})}\left(1-|\zeta|^2\right)^{-k}, \quad \varphi\in\mathcal{H}_{2k(\mathbb{D})},\ \zeta\in\mathbb{D}.$$

In fact this transformation is trivial, here it is identity! But it is convenient to see this as a Bargmann transform. Using the Parseval formula we easily get

$$\varphi^{k,\sharp}(\zeta) = \sum_{\ell\in\mathbb{N}}\zeta^\ell\gamma_{2k,\ell}^{-1/2}\langle e_\ell,\varphi\rangle_{\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})} = \sum_{\ell\in\mathbb{N}} e_\ell(\zeta)\langle e_\ell,\varphi\rangle_{\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})}$$

Here we shall note the dependence in the Bargmann index $k$, so we denote the pseudo-spin-coherent state $\psi^k_\zeta(z)$.

**Proposition 105** *The pseudo-coherent states $\psi^k_\zeta$ converge to the Glauber coherent state $\varphi_\zeta$ (see Chap. 1) as $k\to+\infty$ in the following Bargmann sense and the Dicke states $\ell^k$ converge to the Hermite function $\psi_\ell$, for every $\ell\in\mathbb{N}$:*

$$\lim_{k\to+\infty}\psi^{k,\sharp}_{\zeta'/\sqrt{2k}}\left(\zeta/\sqrt{2k}\right) = \varphi^\sharp_{\zeta'}(\zeta), \quad \forall\zeta,\zeta'\in\mathbb{C} \tag{8.82}$$

*Proof* It is an easy exercise, knowing that

$$\varphi_\zeta^\sharp(\zeta') = \exp\left(\bar{\zeta}\zeta' - \frac{|\zeta|^2}{2}\right)$$

and that

$$\psi_\ell^\sharp(\zeta) = \frac{\zeta^\ell}{\sqrt{2\pi\ell!}}$$ □

As for the spin case we have analogous results for the generators of the Lie algebras. Let us introduce a small parameter $\varepsilon > 0$ and denote

$$B_\pm^\varepsilon = \varepsilon B_\pm \tag{8.83}$$

$$B_0^\varepsilon = B_0 - \frac{1}{2\varepsilon^2}\mathbb{1} \tag{8.84}$$

We have the following commutation relations:

$$\left[B_+^\varepsilon, B_-^\varepsilon\right] = 2\varepsilon^2 B_3^\varepsilon - \mathbb{1}, \qquad \left[B_3^\varepsilon, B_\pm^\varepsilon\right] = \pm B_\pm^\varepsilon \tag{8.85}$$

As $\varepsilon \to 0$ equations (8.83) define a family of singular transformations of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ and for $\varepsilon = 0$ we get (formally)

$$\left[B_+^0, B_-^0\right] = -\mathbb{1}, \qquad \left[B_3^0, B_\pm^0\right] = \pm B_\pm^0 \tag{8.86}$$

These commutation relations are those satisfied by the harmonic oscillator Lie algebra: $B_+^0 \equiv a^\dagger$, $B_-^0 \equiv a$, $B_0^0 \equiv N := a^\dagger a$.

We can give a mathematical proof of this analogy by computing the averages.

**Proposition 106** *Assume that* $\varepsilon \to 0$ *and* $k \to +\infty$ *such that* $\lim 2k\varepsilon^2 = 1$. *Then we have*

$$\lim\left\langle\psi^k_{\zeta/\sqrt{2k}}\middle|B_0^\varepsilon\middle|\psi^k_{\zeta/\sqrt{2k}}\right\rangle = |\zeta|^2 = \langle\varphi_\zeta|a^\dagger a|\varphi_\zeta\rangle \tag{8.87}$$

$$\lim\left\langle\psi^k_{\zeta/\sqrt{2k}}\middle|B_+^\varepsilon\middle|\psi^k_{\zeta/\sqrt{2k}}\right\rangle = \bar{\zeta} = \langle\varphi_\zeta|a^\dagger|\varphi_\zeta\rangle \tag{8.88}$$

$$\lim\left\langle\psi^k_{\zeta/\sqrt{2k}}\middle|B_-^\varepsilon\middle|\psi^k_{\zeta/\sqrt{2k}}\right\rangle = \zeta = \langle\varphi_\zeta|a|\varphi_\zeta\rangle \tag{8.89}$$

*Proof* From the proof of Lemma 55 we can compute the following averages:

$$\left\langle\psi_{\mathbf{n}}^k, B\psi_{\mathbf{n}}^k\right\rangle = k\mathbf{n}$$

Using the $\zeta$ parametrization we get the result as in the spin case. □

## 8.4 Coherent States for the Principal Series

As for discrete series we can consider coherent states for the principal and complementary series. The principal series is realized in the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{S}^1)$ with the Haar probability measure on the circle $\mathbb{S}^1$ and with its orthonormal basis $e_\ell(\theta) = \mathrm{e}^{i\ell\theta}$, $\ell \in \mathbb{Z}$.

$e_0$ being invariant by the rotations subgroup of $S(1,1)$ we define the coherent states $\psi^\lambda_{\mathbf{n},\zeta}(z)$, $z \in \mathbb{S}^1$, as

$$\psi^{i\lambda}_{\mathbf{n}}(z) = \left|\cosh(\tau/2) + \sinh(\tau/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i\varphi}z\right|^{2i\lambda-1} \tag{8.90}$$

$$\psi^{i\lambda}_{\zeta}(\theta) = \left|1-|\zeta|^2\right|^{\frac{1}{2}-i\lambda}\left|1-\bar{\zeta}z\right|^{2i\lambda-1} \tag{8.91}$$

In the first formula coherent states are parametrized by the pseudo-sphere and in the second formula they are parametrized by the complex plane.

Properties of these coherent states are analyzed in the book [156] (pp. 77–83).

## 8.5 Generator of Squeezed States. Application

We shall prove here that the $SU(1,1)$ generalized coherent states considered above (introduced by Perelomov [156]) are nothing but the one-dimensional squeezed states introduced in Chap. 3.

We consider the realization of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ defined by the generators

$$B_0 = \frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbf{a}\mathbf{a}^\dagger + \mathbf{a}^\dagger\mathbf{a}\right)$$

$$B_+ = \frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{a}^\dagger\right)^2$$

$$B_- = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}^2$$

These generators are defined as closed operators in the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R})$. They obey the commutation rules (8.41). Furthermore for the Casimir operator we have $C_{as} = -\frac{3}{16}\mathbb{1}$.

We have already remarked in Sect. 8.2.6 that this representation of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ gives a projective representation of $SU(1,1)$ (not a genuine group representation).

### 8.5.1 The Generator of Squeezed States

Consider now one-dimensional squeezed states. Recall the following definition. Take a complex number $\omega$ such that $|\omega| < 1$. We define

$$\beta(\omega) = \frac{\omega}{|\omega|} \arg\tanh\bigl(|\omega|\bigr)$$

$$D(\beta) = \exp\bigl(\beta \hat{B}_+ - \bar{\beta} \hat{B}_-\bigr)$$

$D(\beta)$ is also known as the "Bogoliubov transformation" and generates squeezing.

For $|0\rangle = \varphi_0$ being the ground state of $B_0$, let the generalized coherent state $\psi_\beta$ be defined as

$$\psi_\beta = D(\beta)|0\rangle$$

*Remark 47* It is not difficult to show that in terms of the operators $\hat{Q}$, $\hat{P}$ of quantum mechanics one has

$$D(\beta) = \exp\left(\frac{i}{2}\Im\beta\bigl(\hat{Q}^2 - \hat{P}^2\bigr) - \frac{i}{2}\Re\beta\bigl(\hat{Q}\hat{P} + \hat{P}\hat{Q}\bigr)\right)$$

We first recall the fundamental property of $D(\beta)$ proved in Chap. 3 in any dimension.

**Lemma 57** *On $\mathscr{D}(\hat{Q}) \cap \mathscr{D}(\hat{P})$ the following identities holds true*:

(i) *$D(\beta)$ is unitary and satisfies*

$$D(\beta)^{-1} = D(-\beta)$$

(ii)

$$D(\beta)\mathbf{a}D(-\beta) = \bigl(1 - |\omega|^2\bigr)^{-1/2}\bigl(\mathbf{a} - \omega\mathbf{a}^\dagger\bigr)$$

(iii)

$$D(\beta)B_0D(-\beta) = \cosh(2r)B_0 - \frac{\sinh(2r)}{2}\bigl(B_+\mathrm{e}^{i\theta} + B_-\mathrm{e}^{-i\theta}\bigr)$$

*with $\beta = r\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}$ being the polar decomposition of $\beta$ into modulus and phase.*

The following results are direct consequences of Chap. 3:

**Proposition 107**

(i) *Define $\delta = \frac{1-\omega}{1+\omega}$. One has*

$$\Re\delta > 0$$

*and*

$$\psi_\beta(x) = \left(\frac{\Re\delta}{\pi}\right)^{1/4}\left(\frac{1+\omega}{|1+\omega|}\right)^{1/2}\exp\left(-\delta\frac{x^2}{2}\right)$$

(ii) *More generally if $\phi_k$ is the kth normalized eigenstate of $B_0$ (Hermite function) one has*

$$D(\beta)\phi_k = \frac{2^{-k/2}}{\sqrt{n!}}\left(\frac{\Re\delta}{\pi}\right)^{1/4}\left(\frac{1+\omega}{|1+\omega|}\right)^{k+1/2} H_k\left(x\sqrt{\Re\delta}\right)\exp\left(-\frac{\delta x^2}{2}\right)$$

*where $H_k$ is the normalized kth Hermite polynomial.*

Now we address the following question: what is the Wigner function of a squeezed state? It will appear that it is a Gaussian in $q, p$ but with squeezing in some direction and dilatation in the other direction. One has the following result:

**Proposition 108** *The Wigner function $W_{\psi_\beta}(q, p)$ is given by*

$$W_{\psi_\beta}(q, p) = 2\exp\left(-\frac{q^2\Re\delta}{\hbar} - \frac{1}{\hbar\Re\delta}(p + q\Im\delta)^2\right)$$

*Remark 48*

(i) For $\beta = 0$, $\delta = 1$, and thus we recover the Wigner function of $\varphi_0$.
(ii) It is clear that

$$\frac{1}{2\pi\hbar}\int dq\, dp\, W_{\psi_\beta}(q, p) = 1$$

The proof is an easy computation of Gaussian integrals.

### 8.5.2 Application to Quantum Dynamics

Consider the time dependent quadratic Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H}_2(t) = \lambda(t)B_+ + \bar{\lambda}(t)B_- + \mu(t)B_0 \tag{8.92}$$

where $\lambda$ and $\mu$ are $C^1$ functions of $t$, $\lambda$ is complex and $\mu$ is real. Its propagator is denoted $U_2(t, s)$. This is a particular case of general quadratic Hamiltonian studied in Chap. 1 and in Chap. 4.

We revisit here the computation of $U_2(t, s)$ using the $\mathfrak{su}(1, 1)$ Lie algebra relations satisfied by $\{B_0, B_+, B_-\}$.

It is convenient to formulate the result in an abstract setting.

**Proposition 109** *Assume that $B_0$, $B_\pm$ are closed operators with a dense domain in a Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}$ such that $B_0^* = B_0$, $B_+^* = B_-$ and satisfying the commutation relations*:

$$[B_-, B_+] = 2B_0, \qquad [B_0, B_\pm] = \pm B_\pm.$$

*Then $\hat{H}_2(t)$ defined by (8.92) has a propagator given by*

$$U_2(t,s) = D(\beta_t)\exp\bigl(i(\gamma_t - \gamma_s)B_0\bigr)D(-\beta_t) \tag{8.93}$$

*where the complex function $\beta_t$ and the real function $\gamma_t$ satisfy the differential equations*

$$i\dot{\omega}_t = \bar{\lambda}\omega_t^2 + \mu\omega_t + \lambda, \quad \omega_0 = 0 \tag{8.94}$$

$$\dot{\gamma} = -\lambda\bar{\omega} - \bar{\lambda}\omega - \mu, \quad \gamma_0 = 0 \tag{8.95}$$

*Proof* The first step is to compute the following derivatives:

$$i\frac{d}{dt}D(\beta_t) = (\alpha_t B_+ + \bar{\alpha}_t B_- + \rho_t B_0)D(\beta_t) \tag{8.96}$$

where

$$\alpha_t = i\frac{\dot{\omega}_t}{1-|\omega|^2} \tag{8.97}$$

$$\rho_t = i\frac{\omega_t\dot{\bar{\omega}}_t - \dot{\omega}_t\bar{\omega}_t}{1-|\omega_t|^2} \tag{8.98}$$

Using (8.96) we can compute

$$i\frac{d}{dt}U_2(t,s) = \bigl(\alpha_t B_+ + \bar{\alpha}_t B_- + \rho_t B_0 - \dot{\gamma}D(\beta_t)B_0\bigr)D(-\beta_t)$$

and we directly get (8.94).

Let us prove now (8.96).

The method is the following. Denote $L(t) = \beta_t B_+ - \bar{\beta}_t B_-$. We have

$$L(t+\delta t) = L(t) + \delta L(t) \approx L(t) + \delta\frac{d}{dt}L(t)$$

Applying the Duhamel formula we get

$$\mathrm{e}^{L(t+\delta t)} - \mathrm{e}^{L(t)} = \int_0^1 ds\, \mathrm{e}^{sL(t+\delta t)}\delta L(t)\mathrm{e}^{(1-s)L(t)}$$

Then as $\delta t \to 0$ we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}\mathrm{e}^{L(t)} = \int_0^1 ds\, \mathrm{e}^{sL(t)}\dot{L}(t)\mathrm{e}^{(1-s)L(t)}$$

Now we have $\dot{L}(t) = \dot{\beta}_t B_+ - \dot{\bar{\beta}}_t B_-$ and

$$\frac{d}{ds}\mathrm{e}^{sL(t)} B_+ \mathrm{e}^{-sL(t)} = -2\bar{\beta}\mathrm{e}^{sL(t)} B_0 \mathrm{e}^{-sL(t)}$$

and

$$\frac{d}{ds}\mathrm{e}^{sL(t)} B_- \mathrm{e}^{-sL(t)} = -2\beta\mathrm{e}^{sL(t)} B_0 \mathrm{e}^{-sL(t)}$$

Using Lemma 57 we get formula (8.96). □

*Remark 49* The differential equation satisfied by $\omega_t$ is a Ricatti equation. We have seen in Chap. 4 that this equation comes from a classical flow. In particular $\omega_t$ is defined for every time $t$ and satisfied $|\omega_t| < 1$ ($\omega_0 = 0$).

Let us now consider the time dependent Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H}_g(t) = \frac{1}{2}\big(\hat{P}^2 + f(t)\hat{Q}^2\big) + \frac{g^2}{2\hat{Q}^2}$$

where $g$ is a coupling constant and $f$ a function of time $t$. Properties of this Hamiltonian have been considered by [156] and used in [48] to study the quantum dynamics for ions in a Paul trap.

The $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ Lie algebra relations are satisfied by

$$B_0 = \frac{\hat{P}^2 + \hat{Q}^2}{4} + \frac{g^2}{4\hat{Q}^2}, \qquad B_\pm = \frac{\hat{Q}^2 - \hat{P}^2}{4} - \frac{g^2}{4\hat{Q}^2} \mp \frac{QP + PQ}{4} \tag{8.99}$$

So we get

$$\hat{H}_g(t) = \frac{1}{2}\big(f(t) - 1\big)B_+ + \frac{1}{2}\big(f(t) - 1\big)B_- + \big(1 + f(t)\big)B_0$$

The algebra is the same as above but here the potential $\frac{g^2}{2\hat{Q}^2}$ has a non integrable singularity and we have to take care of the domain of definition for operators $B_0$, $B_\pm$. Let us consider the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$. Recall the Hardy inequality

$$\int_0^{+\infty} dx\, \frac{|u(x)|^2}{|x|^2} \le 4\int_0^{+\infty} dx\big|u'(x)\big|^2, \quad \forall u \in H_0^1(\mathbb{R}_+)$$

Recall that $H_0^1(\mathbb{R}_+)$ is the Sobolev space $H^1(\mathbb{R}_+)$ with the condition $u(0) = 0$. Denote by ${L^2}_1(\mathbb{R}_+)$ the space $\{u \in L^2(\mathbb{R}_+), xu \in L^2(\mathbb{R}_+)\}$. The sesquilinear form $(u, v) \mapsto \langle u, B_0 v\rangle$ is well defined on $V := H_0^1(\mathbb{R}_+) \cap L_1^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$ and is Hermitian, non negative. So $B_0$ has a self-adjoint extension as a unbounded operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$. Furthermore we see that $B_\pm$ are also defined as forms on $V$ and have closed extensions in $L^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$ such that $B_+^* = B_-$. These extensions also satisfy the $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$

Lie algebra relations. Hence the unitary operators $D(\beta)$, $e^{i\gamma B_0}$ are well defined in $L_1^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$ with $\beta$ complex and $\gamma$ real.

So we can apply Proposition 109 to the propagator $U_g(t,s)$ of $H_g(t)$.

**Corollary 26** *The Hamiltonian $H_g(t)$ has time dependent propagator $U_g(t,s)$ given by* (8.93)

$$U_g(t,s) = D(\beta_t)\exp\big(i(\gamma_t - \gamma_s)B_0\big)D(-\beta_t) \tag{8.100}$$

*where $B_0$, $B_\pm$ are defined by* (8.99) *and $\beta_t$, $\gamma_t$ are determined by* (8.94). *Moreover they are related to complex solutions of the Newton equation*

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{\xi}_t &= f(t)\xi_t, & \ddot{\xi}_0 &= ig, \\ \omega_t &= \frac{\xi + i\dot{\xi}}{\xi - i\dot{\xi}}, & \gamma_t &= -\frac{1}{2}\arg\big(\xi - i\dot{\xi}\big) \end{aligned} \tag{8.101}$$

*Remark 50* Note that the solution of the classical equation of motion for $H_0(t)$ solves the quantum evolution problem for $\hat{H}_g$ for every $g \in \mathbb{R}$.

The $\mathfrak{su}(1,1)$ Lie algebra can also be used to solve the stationary Schrödinger equations for the hydrogen atom. It is nothing else than a group theoretic approach of a method already used by Schrödinger himself [176].

Let us consider the radial Hamiltonian for the hydrogen atom with mass 1, $\hbar = 1$, charge $e$, energy $E > 0$.

$$\left(\frac{d^2}{dr^2} + \frac{2}{r}\frac{d^2}{dr^2} + 2\frac{e^2}{r} - \frac{\ell(\ell+1)}{r^2} + 2E\right)R(r) = 0 \tag{8.102}$$

We transform this equation by the change of variable $r = x^2$ and of function $R(r) = x^{-3/2} f(x)$. Then we get

$$\left(\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + 8Ex^2 - \frac{4\ell(\ell+1) + 3/4}{x^2} + 8e^2\right) f = 0$$

Another change of variable $x = \lambda u$ with $\lambda = (-\frac{1}{8E})^{1/4}$ gives

$$\left(\frac{d^2}{du^2} + u^2 + -\frac{4\ell(\ell+1) + 3/4}{u^2} + 8\lambda^2 e^2\right) f = 0 \tag{8.103}$$

This equation is the eigenvalue equation for the generator $B_0$ with $g^2 = 4\ell(\ell + 1) + 3/4$. So the negative energies of the radial Schrödinger equation (8.102) are determined by the eigenvalues of $B_0$.

**Lemma 58** *The self-adjoint operator $B_0$ has a compact resolvent. Its spectrum is a discrete set of simple eigenvalues given by*

$$\lambda_k = \frac{2s+1}{4} + k, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}, \text{ where } s = \frac{1}{2} + \left(\frac{1}{4} + g^2\right)^{1/2} \tag{8.104}$$

*Proof* The domain of $B_0$ is included in $H_0^1(\mathbb{R}_+) \cap L_1^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$ so we deduce that its resolvent is compact.

The computation of the spectrum is standard, using $B_-$ and $B_+$ as annihilation and creation operators on the ground state $\psi_0$. Using the results of Sect. 8.2.1.

We compute the ground state by solving equation $B_-\psi_0 = 0$. This a singular differential equation. We put $\psi_0(x) = x^s\varphi(x)$. We can eliminate the singularity by choosing $s = \frac{1}{2} + (\frac{1}{4} + g)^{1/2}$. Then the equation is satisfied if $\varphi(x) = \exp(\frac{-x^2}{2})$. So we have $\psi_0(x) = C_0 x^s \exp(\frac{-x^2}{2})$ where $s$ is like in (8.104) and $B_0\psi_0 = \frac{2s+1}{4}\psi_0$. Then we get all the spectrum of $B_0$ and all the bounded states $\psi_k = C_k B_+^k \psi_0$ where the constants $C_K$ are chosen to have an orthonormal basis in $L^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$. □

Applying this lemma and formula (8.103) we see that (8.102) has non trivial solutions for $E = E_n = -\frac{\mathrm{e}^4}{2n^2}$, $n \geq 1$, the well known energy levels of the hydrogen atom. More properties will be given in the next chapter.

*Remark 51* The Casimir operator is here $C_{as} = c_{as}\mathbb{1}$. $c_{as}$ is computed by

$$C_{as}\psi_0 = \left(B_0^2 - \frac{1}{2}(B_+B_- + B_+B_-)\right)\psi_0 = k(k-1)\psi_0$$

with $k = \frac{2s+1}{4}$. This is not compatible with a discrete representation of $SU(1,1)$ except if $s$ is half an integer. What we have considered here is an irreducible representation of the universal cover $\widetilde{SU}(1,1)$.

It could be possible to study coherent states $\varphi_\beta = D(\beta)\psi_0$ in this representation too as we have done for the discrete representations.

## 8.6 Wavelets and Pseudo-Spin-Coherent States

As is well known wavelets are associated with the affine group of transformations of the real axis $\mathbb{R}$: $t \mapsto at + b$ where $a > 0$ and $b \in \mathbb{R}$. We denote $g(a,b)$ this affine transformation and $\mathbf{A}_F$ the group of all affine transformations.

Wavelets are real functions defined by the action of the group $\mathbf{A}_F$ on a given function $\psi$ so we have

$$\psi_{a,b}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}\psi\left(\frac{t-b}{a}\right)$$

If $\varphi_{a,b}$ is the Fourier transform of $\psi_{a,b}$ and $\varphi$ the Fourier transform of $\psi$, we have

$$\varphi_{a,b}(s) = \sqrt{a}\mathrm{e}^{-ibs}\varphi(as)$$

Now we shall see, following ideas taken from the paper [25], that wavelets and pseudo-spin-coherent states are closely related.

This is not surprising using the following facts: the affine group is isomorph to a subgroup of the $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ group[1] which is isomorph to $SL(2,\mathbb{R})/SO(2)$ and this one is isomorph to $SU(1,1)/U(1)$.[2] Recall that the groups $SU(1,1)$ and $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ are conjugate

$$CSU(1,1)C^{-1} = SL(2,\mathbb{R}), \quad \text{where } C = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ i & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Considering consequences of these facts, we shall find that the discrete series representations of $SU(1,1)$ have realizations with strong connections with the affine group hence relationship between pseudo-coherent states and generalized wavelets will follow.

Remark that the affine group can be identify to $\mathbb{R}_+^* \times \mathbb{R}$ with the group law: $(a,b) \times (a',b') = (aa', ab' + b)$. Let us consider the mapping

$$\mathscr{M} : (a,b) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{a} & \frac{b}{\sqrt{a}} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \end{pmatrix}$$

It is easy to see that $\mathscr{M}$ is a group isomorphism from $\mathbf{A}_F$ into $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$. Its image is denoted $\mathbf{A}_{sl}$.

$SU(2)$ is a compact subgroup of $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ and it is not difficult to prove that the quotient space $SL(2,\mathbb{R})/SO(2)$ can be identified to $\mathbf{A}_{sl}$:

**Lemma 59** *For every $A \in SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ there exits a rotation $R(\theta) = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta \\ -\sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ and a unique affine transformation $(a,b) \in \mathbb{R}_+^* \times \mathbb{R}$ such that*

$$A = \mathscr{M}(a,b)R(\theta)$$

*In particular the left cosets set $SL(2,\mathbb{R})/SO(2)$ is isomorph to $\mathbf{A}_{sl}$.*

Let us consider the discrete series $\mathscr{D}_n^+$ which will be now denoted $\mathscr{D}_n$ ($n \geq 2$ is an integer, $n = 2k$ where $k$ is the Bargmann index). Using the isomorphism $\zeta \mapsto z(\zeta) = \frac{\zeta+i}{1+i\zeta}$ from the unit disc $\mathbb{D}$ onto the Poincaré half-plane $\mathbb{H}$, $\mathscr{D}_n$ can be realized in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})$. $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})$ is the space of holomorphic functions $f$ in $\mathbb{H}$

[1]Recall that $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ is the group of $2 \times 2$ real matrices of determinant one.

[2]Recall that $U(1)$ is identified here with the group of matrices $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{-i\theta} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{i\theta} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$, $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$.

such that

$$\|f\|^2_{\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})} = \frac{n-1}{\pi}\int_{\mathbb{H}} \left|f(X+iY)\right|^2 Y^{n-2}\, dX\, dY < +\infty$$

with the natural norm. So we have a unitary map $f \mapsto F$ from $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})$ onto $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ where $F(\zeta) = 2(1+i\zeta)^{-n} f(z(\zeta))$. In $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})$ the discrete series $\mathscr{D}_n$ gives naturally a unitary representation of $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$

$$\left(\mathscr{D}_n \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} f\right)(z) = (d - bz)^{-n} f\left(\frac{az - c}{-bz + d}\right) \tag{8.105}$$

To establish a connection with the affine group it is convenient to realize the representation $\mathscr{D}_n$ in the space $\check{\mathscr{H}}_n(\mathbb{H})$ of anti-holomorphic functions on $\mathbb{H}$, so that $f \in \check{\mathscr{H}}_n(\mathbb{H})$ means that $\check{f}(z) = f(\bar{z})$ with $f \in \mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})$. $f \mapsto \check{f}$ is a unitary map. We denote $\check{\mathscr{I}}_n F = \check{f}$. Then $\mathscr{D}_n$ is unitary equivalent to the representation $\check{\mathscr{D}}_n$

$$\left(\check{\mathscr{D}}_n \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} f\right)(z) = (a - cz)^{-n} f\left(\frac{dz - b}{-cz + a}\right) \tag{8.106}$$

Note that the unitary equivalence between $\check{\mathscr{D}}_n$ and $\mathscr{D}_n$ is implemented by the group, isomorphism in $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$,

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} d & c \\ b & a \end{pmatrix}$$

The restriction of $\check{\mathscr{D}}_n$ to the affine group has the following expression:

$$\left(\check{\mathscr{D}}_n\big(\mathscr{M}(a,b)\big) f\right)(z) = a^{-n/2} f\left(\frac{z-b}{a}\right) \tag{8.107}$$

Wavelets are functions of a real variable, so the last step is to find a realization of $\mathscr{D}_n$ in the space

$$L^2_n(\mathbb{R}_+) = \left\{\varphi \,\Big|\, \int_0^{+\infty} t^{1-n} \left|\varphi(t)\right|^2 dt < +\infty\right\}$$

with the natural norm.

Let us introduce the (anti-holomorphic) Fourier–Laplace transform:

$$(\mathscr{L}_n\varphi)(z) = c_n \int_0^{+\infty} \varphi(t) \mathrm{e}^{-it\bar{z}}\, dt, \quad z \in \mathbb{C},\ \Im(z) > 0$$

$c_n$ is a normalization constant.

Using the Fourier inverse formula and the Plancherel formula we have

$$\varphi(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi c_n} \mathrm{e}^{ty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \mathscr{L}_n\varphi(x - iy) \mathrm{e}^{itx}\, dx, \quad y > 0,\ t > 0 \tag{8.108}$$

$$\frac{1}{2\pi c_n}\int_{\mathbb{H}} \left|\mathscr{L}_n\varphi(x-iy)\right|^2 y^{n-2}\,dx\,dy = \Gamma(n-1)2^{1-n}\int_0^{+\infty} t^{1-n}\left|\varphi(t)\right|^{2-n}\,dt \tag{8.109}$$

So we get isometries between the spaces $L^2_n(\mathbb{R}_+)$, $\mathscr{H}(\mathbb{H})$ and $\check{\mathscr{H}}(\mathbb{H})$ choosing $c_n = \frac{2^{n-2}}{\pi(n-2)!}$. We have obtained the following irreducible unitary representation of the affine group in the space $L^2_n(\mathbb{R}_+)$:

$$\mathscr{W}_n(a,b) := \mathscr{L}_n^{-1}\check{\mathscr{D}}_n\big(\mathscr{M}(a,b)\big)\mathscr{L}_n$$
$$\varphi_{a,b}(t) := \big(\mathscr{W}_n(a,b)\varphi\big)(t) = a^{1-n/2}\mathrm{e}^{-ibt}\varphi(at)$$

which represent wavelets on the Fourier side. Coherent states for $SU(1,1)$ where defined in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ by an action of $SU(1,1)$, starting from a fiducial states $\psi_0$ invariant by the action of the unit circle $U(1)$ (isomorph to $SO(2)$). Then $SU(1,1)$ coherent states are parametrized by the quotient $SU(1,1)/U(1)$

But from Lemma 59 and the isomorphism between $SU(1,1)$ and $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ we see that $SU(1,1)/U(1)$ can also be parametrized by the affine group: $(a,b)\mapsto g_{a,b}$ where we choose one element $g_{a,b}$ in each left coset. We have seen above in the construction of coherent states that $SU(1,1)/U(1)$ can be parametrized by $\mathbb{C}$ (or by pseudo-sphere): $\xi \mapsto g_\xi$. If $g_{a,b}$ and $g_\xi$ are in the same coset then we have $g_{a,b} = g_\xi h$ where $h \in U(1)$. We have chosen $\psi_0$ rotation invariant so the actions of $g_{a,b}$ and $g_\xi$ define the same coherent state.

Let us move this construction in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})$ and in $L^2_n(\mathbb{R}_+)$. We get, respectively, fiducial states $f_0(z) = d_n(1-iz)^n$ and $\varphi_0(t) = e_n t^{n-1}\mathrm{e}^{-t}$ where $d_n$ and $e_n$ are suitable constants.

Then using properties of the representation $\mathscr{D}_n$ we get a bijective correspondence between $SU(1,1)$ coherent states defined in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ for $\mathscr{D}_n^+$ and wavelets in $L^2_n(\mathbb{R}_+)$. More precisely we have obtained

$$\varphi_{a,b}(t) := \big(\mathscr{W}_n(a,b)\varphi_0\big)(t) = a^{1-n/2}\mathrm{e}^{-ibt}\varphi(at)$$

which represent wavelets on the Fourier side. Their relationship with the $SU(1,1)$ coherent states is given by

$$\mathscr{L}_n^{-1}\check{\mathscr{I}}_n\psi_\xi = \varphi_{a(\xi),b(\xi)}, \quad \forall \xi\in\mathbb{C} \tag{8.110}$$

$$\check{\mathscr{I}}_n^{-1}\mathscr{L}_n\varphi_{a,b} = \psi_{\xi(a,b)}, \quad \forall (a,b)\in\mathbb{R}_+^*\times\mathbb{R} \tag{8.111}$$

where $\xi \mapsto (a(\xi), b(\xi))$ is a bijection from $\mathbb{C}$ onto $\mathbb{R}_+^*\times\mathbb{R}$ and $(a,b)\mapsto \xi(a,b)$ is a bijection from $\mathbb{R}_+^*\times\mathbb{R}$ onto $\mathbb{C}$.

In particular we also have a resolution of identity for wavelets which can be obtained from (8.81) or by a direct computation.

$$f = \frac{n-1}{4\pi}\iint_{\mathbb{R}_+^*\times\mathbb{R}} \frac{da\,db}{a^2}\langle\varphi_{ab}, f\rangle\varphi_{a,b}, \quad \forall f\in L^2_n(\mathbb{R}_+) \tag{8.112}$$

The reader can find in [25] several explicit formulas concerning the three realizations of $\mathscr{D}_n^{\pm}$ in $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$, $\mathscr{H}_n(\mathbb{H})$ and $L_n^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$.

Finally remark that $\mathscr{W}_n$ is a representation in $L_n^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$ of a subgroup of $S(1,1)$ conjugated to the restriction of $\mathscr{D}_n^+$. But all the representations $\mathscr{W}_n$ are equivalent contrary to the representations $\mathscr{D}_n^+$ which are non-equivalent.

If $M_n$ is the unitary map $M_n\varphi(t) = t^{1-n/2}\varphi(t)$ from $L_n^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$ onto $L^2(\mathbb{R}_+)$ then we have clearly $M_n\mathscr{W}_n = \mathscr{W}_2 M_n$ so $\mathscr{W}_n$ and $\mathscr{W}_2$ are conjugate for every $n \geq 2$.

# Chapter 9
# The Coherent States of the Hydrogen Atom

**Abstract** The aim of this chapter is to present a construction of a set of coherent states for the hydrogen atom proposed by C. Villegas-Blas (Thomas and Villegas-Blas in Commun. Math. Phys. 187:623–645, 1997; Villegas-Blas in Ph.D. thesis, 1996). We show that in a semiclassical sense they concentrate essentially around the Kepler orbits (in configuration space) of the classical motion. A suitable unitary transformation (the Fock operator) maps the pure-point subspace of the hydrogen atom Hamiltonian onto the Hilbert space for the $\mathbb{S}^3$ sphere. We study the coherent states for the $\mathbb{S}^3$ sphere (as introduced by A. Uribe (J. Funct. Anal. 59:535–556, 1984)) and show that the action of the group $SO(4)$ is irreducible in the space generated by the spherical harmonics of a given degree. Note that coherent states for the hydrogen atom have been extensively studied by J. Klauder and his school. We have chosen not to present them here and refer the interested reader to Klauder and Skagerstam (Coherent States, 1985).

## 9.1 The $\mathbb{S}^3$ Sphere and the Group $SO(4)$

### *9.1.1 Introduction*

It is well known that the non-relativistic quantum model for the hydrogen atom is the quantization $\hat{H}$ of the Kepler Hamiltonian $H(x,p) = \frac{|p|^2}{2} - \frac{1}{|x|}$, $p, x \in \mathbb{R}^3$.

The natural symmetry group for $H$ seems to be the rotation group $SO(3)$. We shall see in Sect. 9.2 that the hydrogen atom has "hidden symmetries" and its symmetry group is the larger group $SO(4)$ which explain the large degeneracies of the energy levels of $\hat{H}$. This is why we start by studying the group $SO(4)$, its irreducible representations and hyperspherical harmonics.

Recall that $SO(4)$ is the group of direct isometries of the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^4$ or its unit sphere $\mathbb{S}^3$,

$$\mathbb{S}^3 = \left\{x = (x_1, \dots, x_4) \mid x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 + x_4^2 = 1\right\}$$

Let us introduce the Laplacian $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3}$ for the sphere $\mathbb{S}^3$, as the restriction to the unit sphere $\mathbb{S}^3$ of the Laplace operator $\Delta_{\mathbb{R}^4} := \sum_{1\le j\le 4} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_j^2}$. More explicitly computing

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_9, 

$\Delta_{\mathbb{R}^4}$ in hyperspherical coordinates:

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_1 &= r \sin\chi \sin\theta \cos\varphi \\
x_2 &= r \sin\chi \sin\theta \sin\varphi \\
x_3 &= r \sin\chi \cos\theta \\
x_4 &= r \cos\chi, \quad \text{where } \chi, \theta \in [0, \pi[, \varphi \in [0, 2\pi[
\end{aligned} \tag{9.1}
$$

we get

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{R}^4} = \frac{1}{r^3}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right) + \frac{1}{r^2}\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3} \tag{9.2}$$

where

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial\chi^2} + \frac{2}{\tan\chi}\frac{\partial}{\partial\chi} + \frac{1}{\sin^2\chi}\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^2}, \quad \text{where} \tag{9.3}$$

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^2} = \frac{1}{\tan\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} + \frac{1}{\sin^2\theta}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\varphi^2} \tag{9.4}$$

Equation (9.2) defines the operator $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3}$. It is a self adjoint operator in the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ for the Euclidean measure $d\mu_3(\theta, \varphi, \chi) = \sin^2\chi \sin\theta \, d\theta \, d\varphi \, d\chi$. The measure $d\mu_3$ and the operator $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3}$ are invariant by the group $SO(4)$. The spectrum of $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3}$ can be described has follows: there exists an explicit constant $c \in \mathbb{R}$ such that if $\Delta_3 := -\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3} + c$ then $\Delta_3$ has the discrete spectrum

$$\left\{\lambda_k = (k+1)^2 \, | k \in \mathbb{N}\right\}$$

Each $\lambda_k$ is known to have multiplicity $(k+1)^2$ (see [147] or what follows), which coincides with multiplicities of bound states of hydrogen atom as we shall see later.

### *9.1.2 Irreducible Representations of SO(4)*

$SO(4)$ is a compact Lie group so we know that all its irreducible representations are finite dimensional.

The Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(4)$ of $SO(4)$ is the algebra of antisymmetric $4 \times 4$ real matrices; $\mathfrak{so}(4)$ has dimension 6 so the Lie group $SO(4)$ has dimension 6.

We shall see that its irreducible representations can be deduced from irreducible representations of $SU(2)$ (computed in the chapter "Spin Coherent States" which will be denoted (SCS)).

It is convenient to use the quaternion field $\mathbf{H}$ and its generators $\{\mathbf{1}, \mathcal{I}, \mathcal{J}, \mathcal{K}\}$. $\mathbf{H}$ is a 4-dimensional real linear space which can be represented as the space of $2 \times 2$ matrices $q = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -\bar{b} & \bar{a} \end{pmatrix}$ where $a, b \in \mathbb{C}$. The basis is related with Pauli matrices: $\mathbf{1} = \sigma_0, \mathcal{I} = i\sigma_3, \mathcal{J} = i\sigma_2, \mathcal{K} = i\sigma_1$.

The following properties are easy to prove.

1. $\{\mathbb{1}, \mathcal{I}, \mathcal{J}, \mathcal{K}\}$ is an orthonormal basis for the scalar product $\langle q, q'\rangle := \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{tr}(q^\star \cdot q')$. So $\mathbf{H}$ *can be identified with the Euclidean space* $\mathbb{R}^4$.
2. $q^\star \cdot q = q \cdot q^\star = (|a|^2 + |b|^2)\mathbb{1}$. In particular if $q \neq 0$, $q$ is invertible and $q^{-1} = \frac{q^\star}{|q|^2}$ where $|q|^2 = |a|^2 + |b|^2$.
3. $SU(2) = \{q \in \mathbf{H},\ |q| = 1\}$.
4. $\mathfrak{su}(2) = \{q \in \mathbf{H},\ q^\star + q = 0\}$.
   A quaternion $q$ is said pure (or imaginary) if $q^\star + q = 0$ and real if $q^\star = q$.
5. 

$$g \in SU(2) \iff g = e^{\theta A} = \cos\theta + (\sin\theta)A, \quad \theta \in \mathbb{R},\ A \text{ a pure quaternion.}$$

Now we can identify $SO(4)$ with the direct isometries group of the Euclidean space $\mathbf{H}$. In particular if for any $g_1, g_2 \in SU(2)$ we define $\tau(g_1, g_2)q = g_1 \cdot q \cdot g_2^{-1}$ then $\tau(g_1, g_2) \in SO(4)$. Furthermore we have

**Proposition 110** *$\tau$ is a group morphism from $SU(2) \times SU(2)$ in $SO(4)$. The kernel of $\tau$ is $\ker\tau = \{(\mathbb{1}, \mathbb{1}), (-\mathbb{1}, -\mathbb{1})\}$ and $\tau$ is surjective.*

*In particular the group $SO(4)$ is isomorphic to the quotient group $SU(2) \times SU(2)/\{(\mathbb{1}, \mathbb{1}), (-\mathbb{1}, -\mathbb{1})\}$ and its Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(4)$ is isomorphic to the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(2) \oplus \mathfrak{su}(2)$.*

*Proof* It is clear that $\tau$ is a group morphism. $(g_1, g_2) \in \ker\tau$ means that $g_1 \cdot q = q \cdot g_2, \forall q \in \mathbf{H}$. So we get successively:$g_1 = g_2$, $g_1 = \lambda\mathbf{1}$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, $\lambda = \pm 1$ because $g_1 \in SU(2)$.

To prove that $\tau$ is surjective, we use that $\tau(SU(2) \times SU(2))$ is a subgroup of $SO(4)$, its action on $\mathbf{H}$ is transitive and that we have a surjective group homomorphism $g \mapsto R_g$ from $SU(2)$ in $SO(3)$ (acting in pure quaternions). Let $A \in SO(4)$. If $A\mathbf{1} = \mathbf{1}$ then there exists $g \in SU(2)$ such that $A = \tau(g, g)$. If $A\mathbf{1} = q$ then there exist $g_1, g_2 \in SU(2)$ such that $q = \tau(g_1, g_2)\mathbf{1}$ so we can write $A = \tau(g_1 \cdot g, g_2 \cdot g)$. □

Now we use the following classical result to deduce irreducible representations of $SO(4)$ (for a proof see [34]).

**Proposition 111** *Let $G_1, G_2$ be two compact Lie groups, $(\rho_1, V_1)$ and $(\rho_2, V_2)$ two irreducible representations of $G_1$ and $G_2$, respectively. Then $(\rho_1 \otimes \rho_2, V_1 \otimes V_2)$ is an irreducible representation of $G_1 \times G_2$. Conversely every irreducible representation of $G_1 \times G_2$ is like this.*

**Corollary 27** *Let $(\rho, V)$ be an irreducible unitary representation of $SO(4)$. Then there exist $j_1, j_2 \in \frac{\mathbb{N}}{2}$ such that $j_1 + j_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ and such that $(\rho, V)$ is unitarily equivalent to $(T^{(j_1)} \otimes T^{(j_2)}, V^{(j_1)} \otimes V^{(j_2)})$.*

*Proof* Using Proposition 110 we can assume that $(\rho, V)$ is an irreducible representation of $SU(2) \times SU(2)/\{(\mathbb{1}, \mathbb{1}), (-\mathbb{1}, -\mathbb{1})\}$. So $(\rho, V)$ is an irreducible representation of $SU(2) \times SU(2)$ and from Proposition 111 we have $(\rho, V) \equiv (T^{(j_1)} \otimes$

$T^{(j_2)}, V^{(j_1)} \otimes V^{(j_2)})$. To get a representation of $SU(2) \times SU(2)/\{(\mathbb{1}, \mathbb{1}), (-\mathbb{1}, -\mathbb{1})\}$ it is necessary and sufficient that

$$T^{(j_1)}(-\mathbb{1}) \otimes T^{(j_2)}(-\mathbb{1}) = \mathbb{1}_{V^{(1)} \otimes V^{(2)}}$$

So we find the condition $j_1 + j_2 \in \mathbb{N}$. □

### 9.1.3 Hyperspherical Harmonics and Spectral Decomposition of $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3}$

As we have already seen in Chap. 7 for $SO(3)$ we shall see now that irreducible representations of $SO(4)$ are closely related with the hyperspherical harmonics and spectral decomposition of $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3}$.

Let us introduce the space $\mathcal{P}_4^{(k)}$ of homogeneous polynomials $f(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4)$ in the four variables $(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4)$ of total degree $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_4^{(k)}$ the space of $f \in \mathcal{P}_4^{(k)}$ such that $\Delta_{\mathbb{R}^4} f = 0$.

$\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_4^{(k)}$ is determined by its restriction $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ to the sphere $\mathbb{S}^3$ which is by definition the space of hyperspherical harmonics of degree $k$.

Let $f \in \mathcal{P}_4^{(k)}$. For $x \in \mathbb{R}^4$ we have $x = r\omega$, $r > 0$, $\omega \in \mathbb{S}^3$ and $f(x) = r^k \psi(\omega)$. So, using (9.2) we have

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3} \psi = -k(k+2)\psi, \quad \forall \psi \in \mathcal{H}_4^{(k)} \tag{9.5}$$

Let us introduce the modified Laplacian $\Delta_3 = -\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3} + 1$. Then $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ is an eigenspace for $\Delta_3$ with eigenvalue $\lambda_k = (k+1)^2$.

The group $SO(4)$ has a natural unitary representation in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ defined by the formula

$$\rho_g \psi(\omega) = \psi\big(g^{-1}\omega\big), \quad g \in SO(4),\ \omega \in \mathbb{S}^3$$

$\rho$ commutes with $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^3}$ and each $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ is invariant by $\rho$.

The main goal of this sub-section is to prove the following results.

**Theorem 44**

(i) *The Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ is the direct Hilbertian sum of hyperspherical subspaces*:

$$L^2\big(\mathbb{S}^3\big) = \bigoplus_{k \in \mathbb{N}} \mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}, \quad \big(\mathcal{H}_4^{(0)} = \mathbb{C}\big) \tag{9.6}$$

*Moreover we have*

$$\dim\big(\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}\big) = (k+1)^2 \tag{9.7}$$

(ii) *For every $k \in \mathbb{N}$ the representation $(\rho, \mathcal{H}_4^{(k)})$ is irreducible and equivalent to the representation $(T^{(k/2)} \otimes T^{(k/2)}, V^{(k/2)} \otimes V^{(k/2)})$ where $(T^{(j)}, V^{(j)})$ is the irreducible representation of $SU(2)$ defined in Chap.* 7.

*Proof* We shall follow more or less the proof of Proposition 83 of Chap. 7. We first get the following decomposition for homogeneous polynomial spaces in $\mathbb{R}^4$:

$$\mathcal{P}_4^{(k)} = \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_4^{(k)} \oplus r^2 \mathcal{P}_4^{(k-2)} \tag{9.8}$$

$$\mathcal{P}_4^{(k)} = \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_4^{(k)} \oplus r^2 \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_4^{(k-2)} \oplus \cdots \oplus r^{2\ell} \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_4^{(k-2\ell)} \tag{9.9}$$

where $k-1 \le 2\ell \le k$ and $r^2$ is multiplication by $r^2 := x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 + x_4^2$.

Using the Stone–Weierstrass theorem it follows that $\bigcup_{k\in\mathbb{N}} \mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ is dense in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ hence we get the decomposition formula (9.6).

Furthermore we have

$$\dim\big(\mathcal{P}_4^{(k)}\big) = \dim\big(\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}\big) + \dim\big(\mathcal{P}_4^{(k-2)}\big), \quad \text{and} \quad \dim\big(\mathcal{P}_4^{(k)}\big) = \binom{k+3}{k}$$

so we get formula (9.7) by the binomial Newton formula.

Let us prove now that $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ is irreducible for the representation $\rho$.

Denote by $\Sigma_4^{(k)}$ the restriction to $\mathbb{S}^3$ of $\mathcal{P}_4^{(k)}$. Let us consider a fixed point on $\mathbb{S}^3$, for example $\mathbf{n}_0 = (0,0,0,1)$. We can identify with $SO(3)$ the subgroup of $SO(4)$ fixing $\mathbf{n}_0$. Let $\Sigma_{4,3}^{(k)}$ be the subspace of $\psi \in \Sigma_4^{(k)}$ such that $\rho_g \psi = \psi, \forall g \in SO(3)$. Irreducibility of $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ will follow from the

**Lemma 60**

(i) *The dimension of $\Sigma_{4,3}^{(k)}$ is $[\frac{k}{2}] + 1$ ($[\lambda]$ is the greatest integer $n$ such that $n \le \lambda$).*
(ii) *Let $E \ne \{0\}$ be a finite-dimensional $SO(4)$-invariant subspace of the space $C(\mathbb{S}^3)$. Then there exists $\psi_0 \ne 0$, $\psi_0 \in E$ such that $\rho_g \psi_0 = \psi_0$ $\forall g \in SO(3)$.*

Admitting this lemma for a moment let us finish the proof of the theorem.

*Proof* For every $k$ we have the following decomposition of $\Sigma_4^{(k)}$ into irreducible factors:

$$\Sigma_4^{(k)} = \bigoplus_{1\le \ell \le L} E_\ell$$

where each $E_\ell$ is equivalent to some $V^{(j)} \otimes V^{(j')}$. Let us apply the lemma (ii) to each $E_\ell$. We get

$$L \le \dim\big(\Sigma_{4,3}^{(k)}\big) = \left[\frac{k}{2}\right] + 1 \tag{9.10}$$

But from (9.8) we get

$$\Sigma_4^{(k)} = \bigoplus_{2j\le k} \mathcal{H}_4^{(k-2j)}$$

So if one of the $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k-2j)}$ is reducible then $\Sigma_4^{(k)}$ would have at least $[\frac{k}{2}]+2$ irreducible factors which is not possible because of (9.10). So all the spaces $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ are irreducible for $\rho$. □

Let us prove now that $(\rho, \mathcal{H}_4^{(k)})$ is equivalent to the representation $(T^{(k/2)} \otimes T^{(k/2)}, V^{(k/2)} \otimes V^{(k/2)})$. This is a consequence of the Peter–Weyl theorem whose statement is

**Theorem 45** [34] *Let $G$ be a compact Lie group with Haar measure $d\mu$ and let $(\rho_\lambda, V^{(\lambda)}_{\lambda\in\Lambda})$ be the set of all its irreducible unitary representations (up to unitary equivalence). For each $\lambda \in \Lambda$ consider an orthonormal basis of $V^{(\lambda)}$: $\{e_k^{(\lambda)}\}_{1\le k\le k_\lambda}$ and the matrix elements $a_{k,\ell}^{(\lambda)}(g) = \sqrt{k_\lambda}\langle e_k^{(\lambda)}, \rho_\lambda(g)(e_\ell^{(\lambda)})\rangle$, $g \in G$.*

*Then $\{a_{k,\ell}^{(\lambda)},\ 1 \le k, \ell \le k_\lambda,\ \lambda \in \Lambda\}$ is an orthonormal basis of $L^2(G)$.*

In the quaternion model we can see that $\mathbb{S}^3$ is isomorphic to the Lie group $SU(2)$ and up to a normalization constant the Hilbert spaces $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ and $L^2(SU(2))$ coincide.

In $V^{(j)}$ consider the orthonormal basis $v_k$, $0 \le k \le 2j$ and define the linear map by $v_k \otimes v_\ell \mapsto a_{k,\ell}^{(j)}$ from $V^{(j)} \otimes V^{(j)}$ in $L^2(SU(2))$. We get a unitary map $U^{(j)}$ from $V^{(j)} \otimes V^{(j)}$ on a subspace $E^{(j)}$ of $L^2(SU(2))$. Now applying the Peter–Weyl theorem we have the following unitary equivalences:

$$L^2\big(\mathbb{S}^3\big) \sim L^2\big(SU(2)\big) \sim \bigoplus_{j\in\mathbb{N}/2} E^{(j)} \sim \bigoplus_{j\in\mathbb{N}/2} V^{(j)} \otimes V^{(j)}$$

Using uniqueness for the decomposition into irreducible representations we can conclude that $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)} \sim V^{(k/2)} \otimes V^{(k/2)}$. □

### 9.1.4 The Coherent States for $\mathbb{S}^3$

We want to introduce coherent states defined on $\mathbb{S}^3$. Following Uribe [189] we consider a pair of unit vectors $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{S}^3$ such that

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$$

($\cdot$ denotes the usual bilinear form in $\mathbb{C}^4$).

Let

$$\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{C}^4$$

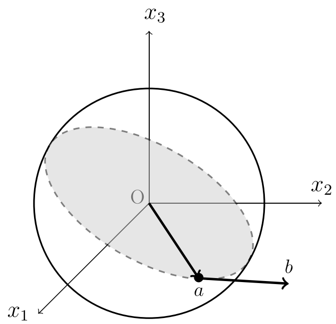



**Fig. 9.1** Coherent states on the sphere

The geometrical interpretation is that $\alpha$ represents a tangent vector $\mathbf{b}$ at the point $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{S}^3$. So the set $\mathcal{A} = \{\alpha = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b} \mid \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0, |\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{b}| = 1\}$ can be identified with the unit tangent bundle $S(\mathbb{S}^3)$ over $\mathbb{S}^3$. Moreover the intersection of $\mathbb{S}^3$ and the real plane containing the vectors $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ is a geodesic on $\mathbb{S}^3$ which will be denoted $\mathring{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$. We have clearly $\mathring{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} = \{\omega \in \mathbb{S}^3, \ |\omega \cdot \boldsymbol{\alpha}| = 1\}$.

For every $\alpha \in \mathcal{A}$, $\omega \in \mathbb{S}^3$ and $k \in \mathbb{N}$ we define

$$\Psi_{\alpha,k}(\omega) = (\alpha \cdot \omega)^k = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \omega + i\mathbf{b} \cdot \omega)^k$$

Uribe [189] has defined these coherent states for sphere $\mathbb{S}^n$ in any dimension $n$. We shall call them spherical coherent states.

Using definition of $\mathcal{A}$ we see that $\Psi_{\alpha,k}$ is a spherical harmonics of degree $k$ namely it is an eigenfunction of $\Delta_3$ with eigenvalue $(k+1)^2$.

Let us remark that if $\omega$ is not on the geodesic $\mathring{\alpha}$ then we have $|\alpha \cdot \omega| < 1$ hence $\Psi_{\alpha,k}(\omega)$ is exponentially small as $k \to +\infty$, so $\Psi_{\alpha,k}(\omega)$ lives close to the geodesic $\mathring{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ when $k$ is large.

The $L^2$-norm of $\Psi_{\alpha,k}$ in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ is given by

$$\|\Psi_{\alpha,k}\|^2 = \int_{\mathbb{S}^3} |\alpha \cdot \omega|^{2k} \, d\mu_3(\omega)$$

Using hyperspherical coordinates we get

$$\|\Psi_{\alpha,k}\|^2 = 2\pi \int_0^\pi \sin^{2k+2} \chi \, d\chi \int_0^\pi \sin^{2k+1} \theta \, d\theta$$

Using well known expression for the Wallis integrals $w_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n(\theta)\, d\theta$, we get

$$\boxed{\|\Psi_{\alpha,k}\|^2 = \frac{2\pi^2}{k+1}} \tag{9.11}$$

Let us check now the completeness of the coherent states $\Psi_{\alpha,k}$.

**Proposition 112** *The coherent states $\Psi_{\alpha,k}$ form a complete set on the irreducible eigenspace $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ of the modified Laplacian $\Delta_3$ associated with the eigenvalue $\lambda_k$:*

$$P_k = C(k) \int_{\mathring{\alpha} \in \Gamma} |\Psi_{\alpha,k}\rangle\langle\Psi_{\alpha,k}| \, d\mu(\mathring{\alpha}) \tag{9.12}$$

*where $P_k$ is the projector onto $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$ of $\Delta_3$ belonging to the eigenvalue $\lambda_k$, $C(k)$ is a constant of normalization, $\Gamma$ is the space of geodesics $\mathring{\alpha}$, and $d\mu(\mathring{\alpha})$ is the $SO(4)$ invariant probability measure on $\Gamma$. Moreover we can compute $C(k)$:*

$$\boxed{C(k) = \frac{(k+1)^3}{2\pi^2}}$$

*Proof* Let $g \in SO(4)$. One defines

$$g\alpha = g\mathbf{a} + ig\mathbf{b}$$

It is not difficult to see that $SO(4)$ acts on $\mathcal{A}$ transitively so that

$$\mathcal{A} = \left\{ g\alpha_0 \; | g \in SO(4) \right\}$$

where $\alpha_0 \in \mathcal{A}$ is fixed. Then the Haar probability measure $d\mu_H$ on $SO(4)$ induces a pushed forward measure (or image measure) $d\mu(\alpha)$ on $\mathcal{A}$.

The integral operator in the right hand side of (9.12) commutes with any rotation operator $\rho_g$ given by a rotation $g$ in $SO(4)$. Therefore by Schur's lemma this integral operator must be a multiple of the identity on each irreducible subspace $\mathcal{H}_4^{(k)}$.

The computation of $C(k)$ is straightforward taking the trace in (9.12) and using (9.11). □

As we have already remarked for spin coherent states in Chap. 7, the $\Psi_{\alpha,k}$ are not mutually orthogonal. Here it is more difficult to compute $\langle\Psi_{\alpha,k}, \Psi_{\alpha',k}\rangle$ for $\alpha \neq \alpha'$ but it is possible to compute this overlap asymptotically for $k \to +\infty$ as is shown in [191] and [185]. Here we only state the result.

**Proposition 113** *For any $\delta > 0$ we have for $k \to +\infty$*

$$\langle\Psi_{\alpha,k}, \Psi_{\alpha',k}\rangle = \frac{2\pi^2}{k} \left( \frac{\alpha^\star \cdot \alpha'}{2} \right)^k \left(1 + O\left(k^{\delta - \frac{1}{2}}\right)\right) + O\left(k^{-\infty}\right) \tag{9.13}$$

*Remark 52* $\alpha$ and $\alpha'$ define the same geodesic if and only if $|\alpha^\star \cdot \alpha'| = 1$. So (9.13) shows that the overlap is exponentially small if and only if $\mathring{\alpha} \neq \mathring{\alpha}'$.

Notice that on $\mathcal{A}$ the geodesic flow is multiplication by $e^{it}$, $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

## 9.2 The Hydrogen Atom

### 9.2.1 Generalities

We consider the hydrogen atom Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H} := \frac{\hat{P}^2}{2} - \frac{1}{|\hat{Q}|} = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta_{\mathbb{R}^3} - \frac{1}{|x|} \tag{9.14}$$

$\hat{H}$ is the quantization of the Kepler Hamiltonian $H(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2} - \frac{1}{|\mathbf{q}|}$, $(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \backslash \{0\} \times \mathbb{R}^3$.

The notations are the same as in Chap. 1. The first expression is more often used in physics the second in mathematics. $\hat{H}$ is a self-adjoint operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ with domain

$$\mathcal{D}(\hat{H}) = \mathcal{D}(\hat{P}^2) \cap \mathcal{D}\left(\frac{1}{|\hat{Q}|}\right) = H^2(\mathbb{R}^3) \quad \text{(Sobolev space, Kato's result)}$$

For simplicity we have taken $m = e = \hbar = 1$.

It is easy to prove that $\hat{H}$ commutes with the angular momentum operator $\hat{L} = \hat{Q} \wedge \hat{P}$ which is a consequence of its $SO(3)$ symmetry property: $\hat{H}$ commutes with the three generators $\hat{L} = (\hat{L}_1, \hat{L}_2, \hat{L}_3)$ of $SO(3)$.

Other symmetries were discovered a long time ago for the Kepler problem (Laplace, Runge, Lenz) and give, after quantization, symmetries for the hydrogen atom. Let us consider first the classical Hamiltonian setting and introduce the Laplace–Runge–Lenz vector:

$$\mathbf{M} := \mathbf{p} \wedge \mathbf{L} - \frac{\mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|} = (M_1, M_2, M_3) \tag{9.15}$$

where the classical angular momentum is $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{q} \wedge \mathbf{p} = (L_1, L_2, L_3)$. We have the following properties.

1. $\{M_k, H\} = 0$, $k = 1, 2, 3$
2. $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{M} = 0$
3. $\{M_j, L_k\} = \varepsilon_{j,k,\ell} M_\ell$
4. $\{M_j, M_k\} = -2H\varepsilon_{j,k,\ell} M_\ell$

where $\varepsilon_{j,k,\ell}$ is the usual antisymmetric tensor.

In particular we can deduce form these properties that if the energy of $H$ is fixed and negative ($H = E < 0$) then the six integrals $\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{M}$ span a Lie algebra (for the Poisson bracket) isomorphic to the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(4)$ (see Sect. 9.1.2 of this chapter). In these sense the Kepler problem has "hidden symmetries" contained in the Laplace–Runge–Lenz vector $\mathbf{M}$. For an historical point of view about $\mathbf{M}$ we refer to [94].

After quantization we get a Laplace–Runge–Lenz operator:

$$\hat{M} = \frac{1}{2}\big(P \wedge \hat{L} - \hat{L} \wedge P\big) - \frac{X}{|X|}$$

One has the following commutation rules, corresponding to the above classical one (see [182] for detailed computations).

1. $[\hat{L}_j, \hat{L}_k] = i\varepsilon_{jkl}\hat{L}_l$
2. $[\hat{L}_j, \hat{M}_k] = i\varepsilon_{jkl}\hat{M}_l$
3. $[\hat{M}_j, \hat{M}_k] = -2i\varepsilon_{jkl}\hat{M}_l\hat{H}$
4. $\hat{L}\cdot\hat{M} = \hat{M}\cdot\hat{L} = 0$
5. $\hat{M}^2 - 1 = 2\hat{H}(\hat{L}^2 + \mathbb{1})$

It is known that $\hat{H}$ has a purely absolutely spectrum on $[0, +\infty)$ and a negative point spectrum of the form

$$E_n = -\frac{1}{2n^2}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}^*$$

The degeneracy of the eigenvalue $E_n$ is $n^2$. We shall see that this is due to the "hidden symmetries" contained in the Laplace–Runge–Lenz operator **M** commuting with $\hat{H}$ ($\hat{L}$ is also commuting with $\hat{H}$ but it generates apparent spherical symmetries of $\hat{H}$). Let us now recall the usual proof for the following result.

**Lemma 61** *The eigenvalue* $E_n = -\frac{1}{2n^2}$ *of* $\hat{H}$ *has degeneracy* $n^2$.

*Proof* We give here a sketch of proof, for the details we refer to any text book in quantum mechanics.

In spherical coordinates we have

$$\hat{H} = -r\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}r - \frac{1}{r^2}\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^2} - \frac{1}{r}$$

Recall that the spherical harmonics $Y_\ell^m$ satisfy $\hat{L}^2 Y_\ell^m = \ell(\ell+1)Y_\ell^m$ (see Chap. 7).

Eigenvalues are obtained by solving the radial equation

$$-r\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}r + \frac{\ell(\ell+1)}{r^2} - \frac{1}{r}f(r) = Ef(r)$$

So we get the eigenvalues $E_n$ for $n \geq 1$ and a basis of the eigenspace:

$$\mathcal{E}_n := \{\psi_{n,\ell,m},\ -\ell \leq m \leq \ell,\ 0 \leq \ell \leq n\}$$

The degeneracy of $E_n$ equals to the dimension of $\mathcal{E}_n$:

$$\dim(\mathcal{H}_n) = \sum_{p=0}^{n-1}(2p+1)$$

To this sum of odd numbers up to $2n - 1$ we add and subtracts the sum of even numbers up to $2n - 2$. This yields

$$\dim(\mathcal{H}_n) = n(2n-1) - n(n-1) = n^2 \qquad \square$$

In the following section we shall recover this result using the $SO(4)$ symmetry in a transparent way.

### 9.2.2 *The Fock Transformation: A Map from $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ to the Pure-Point Subspace of $\hat{H}$*

We follow a presentation of Bander–Itzykson [14]. Consider the eigenvalue problem of the hydrogen atom:

$$\hat{H}\psi = \left(\frac{P^2}{2} - \frac{1}{|X|}\right)\psi = E\psi$$

In Fourier variable $\mathbf{p}$ one gets

$$\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2} - E\right)\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{1}{2\pi^2}\int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{q})}{|\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{q}|^2}\, d\mathbf{q} \tag{9.16}$$

where we have set $\hbar = 1$ for simplicity and $\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}) = (2\pi)^{-3/2}\int_{\mathbb{R}^3} d\mathbf{q}\, \mathrm{e}^{-i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{p}}\psi(\mathbf{q})\, d\mathbf{q}$.

Since the bound states of the hydrogen atom have negative eigenenergies $E$ we define $p_0 > 0$ such that

$$2E = -p_0^2$$

Then we define the stereographic projection from the momentum space $\mathbb{R}^3$ onto $\mathbb{S}_0^3$ (the sphere $\mathbb{S}^3$ with the north pole $(0, 0, 0, 1)$ removed): consider $\mathbb{S}^3$ divided into two hemispheres by the momentum space $\mathbb{R}^3$. Given a vector $\mathbf{p}/p_0 \in \mathbb{R}^3$ (homogeneous coordinates), take the line from the north pole to this point. It will intersect the sphere $\mathbb{S}^3$ at a point $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{S}_0^3$. We have:

$$\mathbf{w} = (w_1, w_2, w_3, w_4) \tag{9.17}$$

$$w_i = \frac{2p_0}{\mathbf{p}^2 + p_0^2}\, p_i, \quad i = 1, 2, 3 \tag{9.18}$$

$$w_4 = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2 - p_0^2}{\mathbf{p}^2 + p_0^2} \tag{9.19}$$

$\mathbf{w} := F(\mathbf{p})$ defines a new parametrization of the sphere $\mathbb{S}_0^3$. The inverse transformation is simply

$$F^{-1}(\mathbf{w}) = p_i(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{p_0 w_i}{1 - w_4}, \quad i = 1, 2, 3$$

In this parametrization the Euclidean measure $d\mu_3$ of $\mathbb{S}^3$ can be computed using the formula

$$d\mu_3(\mathbf{w}) = \det\left(\left\langle \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_k}, \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_\ell} \right\rangle\right) d^3\mathbf{p}$$

So we get

$$d\mu_3(\mathbf{w}) = 2\delta\big(\mathbf{w}^2 - 1\big)\, d^4\mathbf{w} = \left(\frac{2p_0^2}{\mathbf{p}^2 + p_0^2}\right)^3 d^3\mathbf{p}$$

When $p_0 = k$ we denote by $\mathbf{w}_k(\mathbf{p})$ the corresponding stereographic transformation (9.17).

To the change of variables $F$ is associated the following unitary transform $U_F$ from $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ into $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$:

$$U_F(\tilde{\psi})(\mathbf{w}) := \Phi(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p_0}} \left(\frac{\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{w})^2 + p_0^2}{2p_0}\right)^2 \tilde{\psi}\big(\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{w})\big) \tag{9.20}$$

Now we can show that the $L^2$ norms of $\hat{\psi}$ and $\Phi$ are the same:

$$\|\Phi(\mathbf{w})\|^2_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)} = \int_{\mathbb{S}^3} |\Phi(\mathbf{w})|^2\, d\mu_3(\mathbf{w}) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{\mathbf{p}^2 + p_0^2}{2p_0^2} |\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p})|^2\, d\mathbf{p}$$

Due to the virial theorem[1] one has

$$E \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} |\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p})|^2\, d\mathbf{p} = -\int \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2} |\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p})|^2\, d\mathbf{p} \tag{9.21}$$

Thus

$$\|\Phi(\mathbf{w})\|_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)} = \|\hat{\psi}(\mathbf{p})\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)}$$

One has the following remarkable property (just compute).

**Lemma 62** *Given* $\mathbf{q} \in \mathbb{R}^3$ *we define the point* $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{S}^3_0$ *by the stereographic equations* (9.17) *with* $\mathbf{q}$ *instead of* $\mathbf{p}$ *and the same* $p_0$. *One has*

$$|\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}|^2 = \frac{(\mathbf{p}^2 + p_0^2)(\mathbf{q}^2 + p_0^2)}{(2p_0)^2} |\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{v}|^2$$

Therefore from (9.16) one finds that the equation obeyed by $\Phi$ is simply

$$\Phi(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{1}{2\pi^2 p_0} \int_{\mathbb{S}^3} \frac{\Phi(\mathbf{v})}{|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}|^2}\, d\mu_3(\mathbf{v}) \tag{9.22}$$

[1] Recall that the virial theorem says: if $\psi$ is a bound state of $\hat{H}$ and $\hat{A} = \frac{x\cdot\nabla_x + \nabla_x\cdot x}{2i}$ then $\langle [\hat{H}, \hat{A}]\psi, \psi\rangle = 0$. For the hydrogen atom we have $i^{-1}[\hat{H}, \hat{A}] = -\Delta - \frac{1}{|x|}$. So we have (9.21).

Consider the operator $T$ in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ defined by

$$(T\Phi)(\mathbf{w}) = \int_{\mathbb{S}^3} \frac{\Phi(\mathbf{v})}{|\mathbf{w}-\mathbf{v}|^2}\, d\mu_3(\mathbf{v})$$

Note that $T$ commutes with rotations $\rho_{\mathcal{R}}$ defined by

$$(\rho_{\mathcal{R}}\Phi)(\mathbf{v}) = \Phi\big(\mathcal{R}^{-1}\mathbf{v}\big)$$

with $\mathcal{R} \in SO(4)$. For $n \in \mathbb{N}^*$, $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$ is the finite-dimensional space generated by the harmonic polynomials of degree $n-1$ in the variables $(v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4)$ restricted to $\mathbb{S}^3$. We have shown that the operators $\rho_{\mathcal{R}}$ restricted to the space $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$ give an irreducible representation of $SO(4)$. Thus due to Schur's lemma, the operator $T$ acts as a multiple of the identity in $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$:

$$T|_{\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}} = \lambda_n \mathbb{1}$$

We shall now calculate $\lambda_n$.

**Proposition 114** *One has*

$$\lambda_n = \frac{2\pi^2}{n}$$

It is enough to take a particular function in $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$ say

$$G(\mathbf{v}) = (v_3 + i v_4)^{n-1}$$

solution of

$$G(\mathbf{w}) = \int_{\mathbb{S}^3} \frac{G(\mathbf{v})}{|\mathbf{w}-\mathbf{v}|^2}\, d\mu_3(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda_n G(\mathbf{w})$$

We introduce the spherical coordinates $(\chi, \theta, \phi)$ in $\mathbb{S}^3$:

$$\begin{aligned}
v_1 &= \sin\chi \sin\theta \cos\phi \\
v_2 &= \sin\chi \sin\theta \sin\phi \\
v_3 &= \sin\chi \cos\theta \\
v_4 &= \cos\chi
\end{aligned}$$

and choose $\mathbf{w} = (0, 0, 0, 1)$. We get the following equation:

$$\int_0^{2\pi} d\chi \int_0^{\pi} d\theta \int_0^{\pi} d\phi \frac{(\sin\chi\cos\theta + i\cos\chi)^{n-1}}{2(1-\cos\chi)} \sin^2\chi \sin\theta = \lambda_n i^{n-1}$$

Doing the integration with respect to $\theta, \phi$ we get

$$\frac{2\pi}{n}\int_0^{2\pi} d\chi \frac{\sin\chi}{1-\cos\chi}\sin(n\chi) = \lambda_n$$

which finally yields

$$\lambda_n = \frac{2\pi^2}{n}$$

Comparing with (9.22) we obtain $p_0 = \frac{1}{n}$ and thus

$$E_n = -\frac{1}{2n^2}$$

Thus we recover the point spectrum of the hydrogen atom with its degeneracy: $n^2 = \dim(\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)})$.

We shall now use (9.20) to show that the eigenfunctions of $\hat{H}$ map onto the spherical harmonics defined on $\mathbb{S}^3$.

Recall that $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ is the quantum angular momentum operator, and

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 = \hat{L}_1^2 + \hat{L}_2^2 + \hat{L}_3^2$$

Consider the normalized eigenfunctions of the hydrogen atom $\Psi_{n,\ell,m}$ satisfying:

$$\hat{H}\Psi_{n,\ell,m} = -\frac{1}{n^2}\Psi_{n,\ell,m} \tag{9.23}$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2\Psi_{n,\ell,m} = \ell(\ell+1)\Psi_{n,\ell,m}, \quad \ell = 0, 1, \dots, n-1 \tag{9.24}$$

$$\hat{L}_3\Psi_{n,\ell,m} = m\Psi_{n,\ell,m}, \quad m = -\ell, -\ell+1, \dots, \ell-1, \ell \tag{9.25}$$

Recall that $\mathcal{E}_n$ is the $n^2$-dimensional vector space spanned by the functions

$$\{\Psi_{n,\ell,m} \mid 0 \le l \le n-1,\ -l \le m \le l\}.$$

Let $\mathcal{H}_{pp}$ be the subspace of $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ spanned by the eigenfunctions of $\hat{H}$. We define the operator $U : \mathcal{H}_{pp} \mapsto L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$ using (9.20):

$$\big(U\hat{\Psi}_{n,\ell,m}\big)(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p_0}}\left(\frac{p^2(\mathbf{w}) + p_0^2}{2p_0}\right)^2 \hat{\Psi}_{n,\ell,m}\big(\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{w})\big)$$

and extend $U$ linearly to all the space $\mathcal{H}_{pp}$. Since $U\hat{\Psi}_{n,\ell,m}$ satisfies (9.22) $U\hat{\Psi}_{n,\ell,m}$ must belong to the space $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$, thus one has

$$\Delta_3(U\hat{\Psi}_{n,\ell,m}) = n^2 U\hat{\Psi}_{n,\ell,m}$$

where $\Delta_3$ is the modified Laplacian on $\mathbb{S}^3$ with eigenvalue $n^2$.

Since $U$ preserves the $L^2$ norm and the spaces $\mathcal{E}_n$ and $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$ have the same finite dimension $U$ is an unitary operator from $\mathcal{E}_n$ onto $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$. Furthermore it is a unitary operator from $\mathcal{H}_{pp} = \bigoplus_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \mathcal{E}_n$ onto $L^2(\mathbb{S}^3) = \bigoplus_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$.

Let $\Pi_{pp}$ be the orthogonal projector onto the pure-point spectrum space of $\hat{H}$. One has

$$-\frac{1}{2}\hat{H}^{-1}\Pi_{pp} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^2 \Pi_n$$

where $\Pi_n$ is the projector onto $\mathcal{E}_n$. One has

**Proposition 115**

$$U\big(\hat{H}^{-1}\Pi_{pp}\big)U^{-1} = -2\Delta_3$$

*Proof* Let $\Pi'_n$ be the projector onto $\mathcal{H}_4^{(n-1)}$. One has

$$\Delta_3 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^2 \Pi'_n.$$

Since

$$U\Pi_n U^{-1} = \Pi'_n$$

this yields the result. □

## 9.3 The Coherent States of the Hydrogen Atom

Using the unitary operator introduced in Sect. 9.2, $U : L^2(\mathbb{R}^3) \mapsto L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)$, we define the coherent states of the hydrogen atom as

$$\hat{\Psi}_{\alpha,k} = U^{-1}\Psi_{\alpha,k} \tag{9.26}$$

From now on we define $\Psi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{w}) = c_k(\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w})^k$ where the constant $c_k$ is chosen so that $\|\Psi_{\alpha,k}\|_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^3)} = 1$. It was computed in Sect. 9.1: $c_k^2 = \frac{k+1}{2\pi^2}$.

Equation (9.26) reads using (9.20):

$$\hat{\Psi}_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{p}) = \sqrt{p_0}\left[\frac{2p_0}{\mathbf{p}^2 + p_0^2}\right]^2 \Psi_{\alpha,k}\big(\mathbf{w}_k(\mathbf{p})\big) = c_k\sqrt{p_0}\left[\frac{2p_0}{\mathbf{p}^2 + p_0^2}\right]^2 \big(\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_k(\mathbf{p})\big)^k$$

(we recall that $\mathbf{w}_k(\mathbf{p})$ is the stereographic projection (9.17) for $p_0 = k$).

Let us define the dilation operator $D_k$ in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ as

$$(D_k\Psi)(\mathbf{x}) = k^{3/2}\Psi(k\mathbf{x})$$

or in momentum space

$$\big(D_k\hat{\Psi}\big)(\mathbf{p}) = k^{-3/2}\hat{\Psi}\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{k}\right)$$

Defining $J$ to be the multiplication operator by $(\frac{2}{\mathbf{p}^2+1})^2$ we get

$$\hat{\Psi}_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{p}) = (D_k J \Psi_{\alpha,k})(\mathbf{p}) = c_k D_k\left[\left(\frac{2}{\mathbf{p}^2+1}\right)^2 \big(\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})\big)^k\right] \tag{9.27}$$

Taking the Fourier transform we see that the coherent state for the hydrogen atom in configuration space equals

$$\Psi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{c_k}{(2\pi k)^{3/2}}\int_{\mathbb{R}^3}\exp\left(\frac{i\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{x}}{k}\right)\left(\frac{2}{\mathbf{p}^2+1}\right)^2\big(\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})\big)^k d\mathbf{p}$$

Now we shall consider the state $\Psi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x})$ dilated by $k^2$:

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x}) &:= (D_{k^2}\Psi_{\alpha,k})(\mathbf{x})\\ &= c_k\left(\frac{k}{2\pi}\right)^{3/2}\int_{\mathbb{R}^3}\left(\frac{2}{\mathbf{p}^2+1}\right)^2 \exp\big(ik\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{x} + k\log\big(\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})\big)\big)\,d\mathbf{p}\end{aligned}$$

Note that $\log(\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p}))$ is well defined: if $\alpha_4 = 0$ then $|\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})| \to 0$ as $|\mathbf{p}|\to\infty$ and one thus gets a decrease outside a compact $K$ of $\mathbb{R}^3$. On $K$ the logarithm is defined locally. If $\alpha_4 \neq 0$ then

$$\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p}) = \alpha_4 + O\left(\frac{1}{|\mathbf{p}|}\right)$$

where $\alpha_4 \in \mathbb{C}$. Then there exists $R > 0$ such that for $|\mathbf{p}| > R$ the logarithm is well defined.

The aim is now to show that $\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x})$ concentrates in the neighborhood of a Kepler orbit when $k$ becomes large. This is a semiclassical result since $k$ plays the role of $\frac{1}{\hbar}$. For doing this we use complex stationary phase estimates applied to the integral:

$$\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x}) = c_k\left(\frac{k}{2\pi}\right)^{3/2}\int_{\mathbb{R}^3} d\mathbf{p}\left(\frac{2}{\mathbf{p}^2+1}\right)^2\exp\big(kf(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{p})\big)$$

with

$$f(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{p}) = i\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{p} + \log\big(\alpha\cdot\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})\big) \tag{9.28}$$

The stationary phase condition reads

$$\Re f(\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{p}) = 0 \tag{9.29}$$

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{p}} f(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{p}) = 0 \tag{9.30}$$

But

$$\Re f(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}) = \log\big(|\alpha \cdot \mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})|\big)$$

We have $|\alpha \cdot \mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})| \leq 1$ with equality only when $\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})$ is in the plane generated by $a = \Re\alpha,\ b = \Im\alpha$. Take for simplicity

$$\alpha = \hat{e}_1 + i(\hat{e}_2 \cos\gamma + \hat{e}_4 \sin\gamma)$$

We assume $\gamma \neq \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$. The vectors $\hat{e}_i$ are unit vectors in the direction of the components $w_i$. Thus the first stationary phase condition (9.29) imposes that $\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})$ must satisfy a parametric equation of the form:

$$\mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p}) = \hat{e}_1 \cos\beta + \sin\beta(\hat{e}_2 \sin\gamma + \hat{e}_4 \cos\gamma)$$

The corresponding conditions for the momentum components are

$$p_1 = \frac{\cos\beta}{1 - \sin\beta\sin\gamma}$$
$$p_2 = \frac{\sin\beta\cos\gamma}{1 - \sin\beta\sin\gamma}$$
$$p_3 = 0$$

So $\mathbf{p}$ describes the circle $\mathcal{C}_\gamma$ in the plane $p_3 = 0$: $p_1^2 + (p_2 - \tan\gamma)^2 = \frac{1}{\cos^2\gamma}$.

One sees easily that $\alpha \cdot \mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p}) = \mathrm{e}^{i\beta}$ which is a complex number of modulus 1 as required. Now we consider condition (9.30): it reads

$$ix_j + \frac{2}{(\mathbf{p}^2 + 1)(\alpha \cdot \mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p}))}\big[\alpha_j + \big(\alpha_4 - \alpha \cdot \mathbf{w}_1(\mathbf{p})\big)p_j\big] = 0 \tag{9.31}$$

Thus $\mathbf{x}$ must satisfy the parametric equations:

$$x_1(\beta) = \sin\beta - \sin\gamma$$
$$x_2(\beta) = -\cos\beta\cos\gamma$$
$$x_3 = 0$$

Thus $\mathbf{x}$ must belong to the ellipse $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$ of equation

$$(x_1 + \sin\gamma)^2 + \left(\frac{x_2}{\cos\gamma}\right)^2 = 1 \tag{9.32}$$

of energy $-1/2$:

$$\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2} - \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}|} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

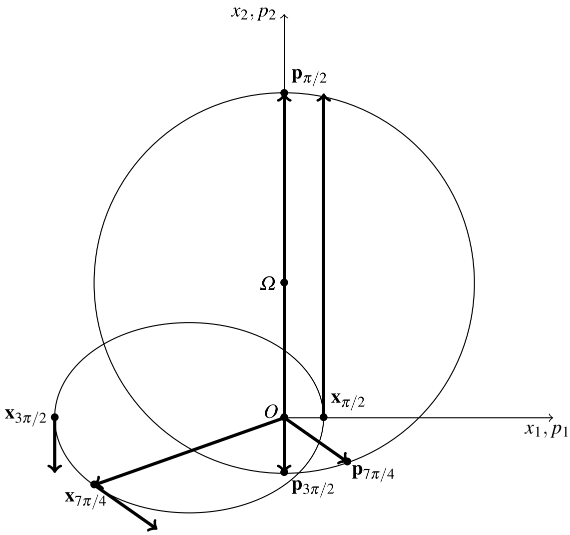



**Fig. 9.2** Kepler ellipse

To apply the saddle point method (see Sect. A.4) one needs to show that the Hessian matrix is non singular at the critical point $(\mathbf{x}(\beta), \mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}(\beta)))$. One calculates the Hessian matrix $H_\beta$

$$H_\beta = \partial^2_{p,p} f\big(\mathbf{x}(\beta), \mathbf{p}\big(\mathbf{x}(\beta)\big)\big)$$

First of all we easily see that if $\mathbf{x}$ is not on the ellipse $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$ then we have

$$\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x}) = O\big(k^{-\infty}\big)$$

A tedious calculation sketched in Sect. A.3 shows that on $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$ we have

$$|\det H_\beta| = (1 - \sin\beta \sin\gamma)^4 \sqrt{\big(\sin^2\gamma + 2\sin\beta\sin\gamma + 1\big)\big(\sin^2\gamma - 2\sin\beta\sin\gamma + 1\big)} \tag{9.33}$$

So we have $\det H_\beta \neq 0$.

From now on it is enough to consider a neighborhood $\mathcal{V}$ of a fixed point $\mathbf{x}_0 := \mathbf{x}(\beta)$ on $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$. $f(x, p)$ being holomorphic in a complex neighborhood of $(\mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_0))$ in $\mathbb{C}^3 \times \mathbb{C}^3$, the saddle point method (see Sect. A.4) can be applied and gives for every $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{V}$,

$$\big|\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x})\big| = Cst\, k^{1/2} \left|\frac{2}{1 + \mathbf{p}^2(\mathbf{x})}\right|^2 \exp\big(kf\big(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x})\big)\big) \frac{1}{\sqrt{|\det H_\beta|}} \big(1 + O\big(k^{-1/2}\big)\big) \tag{9.34}$$

Let us remark that the exponent in (9.34) is fast decreasing in $k$ for $\mathbf{x} \notin \mathcal{E}(\gamma)$.

To analyze more carefully the behavior of $|\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x})|$ nearby $\mathbf{x}_0$ we choose convenient coordinates. Let $\mathbf{x}(\beta,t,s)=\mathbf{x}(\beta)+t\boldsymbol{\nu}_\beta+s\hat{e}_3$ where $\beta\in[0,2\pi[$, $\boldsymbol{\nu}_\beta$ is the normal vector to $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$ at $\mathbf{x}(\beta)$: $\boldsymbol{\nu}_\beta=\sin\beta\cos\gamma\hat{e}_1-\cos\beta\hat{e}_2$. $(t,s)$ are such that $t^2+s^2<\delta^2$ with $\delta>0$ small enough.

We use the shorter notations $\mathbf{x}_0=\mathbf{x}(\beta)$, $\mathbf{x}_{t,s}=\mathbf{x}(\beta,t,s)$, $\mathbf{p}_0=\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_0)$.

Using the Taylor expansion we get

$$\begin{aligned}
&f\big(\mathbf{x}_{t,s},\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})\big)-f(\mathbf{x}_0,\mathbf{p}_0)\\
&\quad=\partial_{\mathbf{x}}f(\mathbf{x}_0,\mathbf{p}_0)\cdot(\mathbf{x}_{t,s}-\mathbf{x}_0)+\frac{1}{2}\partial^2_{\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x}}f(\mathbf{x}_0,\mathbf{p}_0)(\mathbf{x}_{t,s}-\mathbf{x}_0)\cdot(\mathbf{x}_{t,s}-\mathbf{x}_0)\\
&\qquad+\frac{1}{2}\partial^2_{\mathbf{x},\mathbf{p}}f(\mathbf{x}_0,\mathbf{p}_0)(\mathbf{x}_{t,s}-\mathbf{x}_0)\cdot\big(\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})-\mathbf{p}_0\big)\\
&\qquad+\frac{1}{2}\partial^2_{\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}}f(\mathbf{x}_0,\mathbf{p}_0)\big(\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})-\mathbf{p}_0\big)\cdot\big(\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})-\mathbf{p}_0\big)+O\big(|\mathbf{x}_{t,s}-\mathbf{x}_0|^3\big)
\end{aligned}\tag{9.35}$$

and

$$\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})-\mathbf{p}_0=\partial_{\mathbf{x}}p(\mathbf{x}_0)(\mathbf{x}_{t,s}-\mathbf{x}_0)+O\big((t^2+s^2)^{3/2}\big)\tag{9.36}$$

But we have $H_\beta=-i\partial_{\mathbf{p}}\mathbf{x}$ so $\partial_{\mathbf{x}}p(\mathbf{x}_0)=iH_\beta^{-1}$ and we get, taking the real part in the Taylor expansion,

$$\Re f\big(\mathbf{x}_{t,s},\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})\big)=\frac{1}{2}\Re H_\beta^{-1}(t\boldsymbol{\nu}_\beta+s\hat{e}_3)\cdot(t\boldsymbol{\nu}_\beta+s\hat{e}_3)+O\big((t^2+s^2)^{3/2}\big)\tag{9.37}$$

Here we have used that $\partial_x f$ is imaginary and $\partial^2_{x,x}(x_0,p_0)=0$, $\partial^2_{x,p}(x_0,p_0)=i$.

The matrix $\Re H^{-1}$ (real part of $H^{-1}$) has the following form (see computations in Sect. A.3):

$$\Re H^{-1}=-\frac{1}{h(\beta,\gamma)}\begin{pmatrix}\sin^2\beta\cos^2\gamma & -\sin\beta\cos\beta\cos\gamma & 0\\ -\sin\beta\cos\beta\cos\gamma & \cos^2\beta & 0\\ 0 & 0 & \frac{h(\beta,\gamma)}{\sin^2\gamma-2\sin\beta\sin\gamma+1}\end{pmatrix}$$

where

$$h(\beta,\gamma)=(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)^2\big(\sin^2\gamma+2\sin\beta\sin\gamma+1\big)$$

The eigenvectors of $\Re H^{-1}$ are

$$\begin{aligned}
v_1&=(\cos\beta,\sin\beta\cos\gamma,0)\\
v_2&=\boldsymbol{\nu}_\beta=(\sin\beta\cos\gamma,-\cos\beta,0)\\
v_3&=\hat{e}_3=(0,0,1)
\end{aligned}\tag{9.38}$$

with corresponding eigenvalues:

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda_1 &= 0\\ \lambda_2 &= -\frac{\sin^2\beta\cos^2\gamma + \cos^2\beta}{h(\beta,\gamma)}\\ \lambda_3 &= -\frac{1}{\sin^2\gamma - 2\sin\beta\sin\gamma + 1}\end{aligned} \tag{9.39}$$

Since $\lambda_2,\ \lambda_3 < 0$ we see that for $k$ large $|\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x})|^2$ behaves like a Gaussian highly concentrated around the ellipse at the point $\mathbf{x}_0$. Furthermore it decreases in the direction of the eigenvectors $v_2,\ v_3$ namely in the direction perpendicular to the plane of the ellipse and in the plane of the ellipse in the direction normal to the ellipse (note that $\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_0)\cdot v_2 = 0$). More precisely we have

$$\left|\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})\right|^2 = Cst\left|\frac{2}{\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_{t,s})^2+1}\right|^4 \frac{1}{|\det H_{\beta,t,s}|}\mathrm{e}^{kQ(t,s)}k + O\big(k^{-1}\big) \tag{9.40}$$

where

$$Q(t,s) = \frac{1}{2}\Re H_\beta^{-1}(t\nu_\beta + s\hat{e}_3)\cdot(t\boldsymbol{v}_\beta + s\hat{e}_3) + O\Big(\big(t^2+s^2\big)^{3/2}\Big)$$

The quadratic form $Q_0(t,s) := \frac{1}{2}\Re H_\beta^{-1}(t\boldsymbol{v}_\beta + s\hat{e}_3)\cdot(t\boldsymbol{v}_\beta + s\hat{e}_3)$ is definite-negative in the plane $(t,s)$.

Now we shall see that as $k\to+\infty$ the density probability $|\Phi_{\alpha,k}|^2$ converges to a probability measure supported in the ellipse $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$. The following statement is close to [191] (Thesis, Proposition 4.1).

**Proposition 116** *For every continuous and bounded function $\psi$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ we have*

$$\lim_{k\to+\infty}\int_{\mathbb{R}^3}\left|\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x})\right|^2\psi(\mathbf{x})\,d\mathbf{x} = Cst\int_{\mathcal{E}(\gamma)}\psi(e)\,d(e,O)\,d\ell(e) \tag{9.41}$$

*where $d\ell(e)$ is the length measure on the ellipse $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$, $d(e,O)$ is the distance of $e\in\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$ to its focus $O$, $Cst$ is a normalization constant.*

*Proof* From computations already done we have

$$\begin{aligned}&\left|\frac{2}{\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}_0)^2+1}\right|^4\frac{1}{|\det H_\beta|}\\ &\quad= \big(\sin^2\gamma + 2\sin\gamma\sin\beta + 1\big)^{-1/2}\big(\sin^2\gamma - 2\sin\gamma\sin\beta + 1\big)^{-1/2}\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\det Q_0 &= \lambda_2\lambda_3\\ &= \frac{1-\sin^2\gamma\sin^2\beta}{(1-\sin\gamma\sin\beta)^2(\sin^2\gamma + 2\sin\gamma\sin\beta+1)(\sin^2\gamma - 2\sin\gamma\sin\beta+1)}\end{aligned}$$

So we can apply the stationary phase theorem in variables $(t, s)$ to get

$$\begin{aligned}&\lim_{k\to+\infty}\int_{\mathbb{R}^3}\left|\Phi_{\alpha,k}(\mathbf{x})\right|^2\psi(\mathbf{x})\,d\mathbf{x}\\&\quad= Cst\int_0^{2\pi}(1-\sin\gamma\sin\beta)\left(1-\sin^2\gamma\sin^2\beta\right)^{1/2}\psi\left(\mathbf{x}(\beta)\right)d\beta\end{aligned}$$

But for $e = \mathbf{x}(\beta)$ we have $(1 - \sin^2\gamma\sin^2\beta)^{1/2}\psi(\mathbf{x}(\beta))\,d\beta = d\ell(e)$ and $(1-\sin\gamma\sin\beta)$ is the distance between $\mathbf{x}(\beta)$ and $O$.

Let us remark that the speed $v(\beta)$ of a classical particle travelling on $\mathcal{E}(\gamma)$ is

$$v(\beta) = \frac{\sqrt{1-\sin^2\gamma\sin^2\beta}}{1-\sin\gamma\sin\beta}$$

□

# Chapter 10
# Bosonic Coherent States

**Abstract** In a first part we give a brief presentation of general Fock space setting to describe quantum field theory. Bosons are quantum particle with integer spin and have symmetric wave functions; fermions are quantum particle with half-integer spin and are represented with anti-symmetric wave functions. The functional setting is given by symmetric or anti-symmetric tensor product of Hilbert spaces. We describe these spaces and transformations between these spaces. We shall follow the references (Berezin in The Method of Second Quantization, 1966; Bratteli and Robinson in Operator Algebra and Quantum Statistical Mechanics II, 1981). Coherent states are defined by translating the vacuum states with the Weyl operators. This is easily done here for bosons. We shall see in the next chapter how to deal with fermions.

In a second part we give an interesting application of bosonic coherent states to the study of the classical limit as $\hbar \searrow 0$ of non-relativistic boson systems with two body interaction in the neighborhood of a solution of the classical system (here the Hartree equation). The classical limit corresponds here to the mean-field limit as the number of particles goes to infinity.

As we have done for finite systems, we here use Hepp's method, which is a linearization procedure of the quantum Hamiltonian around the classical field. The fluctuations around this solution are controlled by a purely quadratic Hamiltonian. In a series of several important papers (Ginibre and Velo in Commun. Math. Phys. 68:45–68, 1979; Ann. Phys. 128(2):243–285, 1980; Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré, Phys. Théor. 33:363–394, 1980) Ginibre and Velo have proven an asymptotic expansion and remainder estimates for these quantum fluctuations.

Finally, following the paper (Rodnianski and Schlein in Commun. Math. Phys. 291:31–61, 2009) one can show that, in the limit $\hbar \searrow 0$, the marginal distribution of the time-evolved coherent states tends in trace-norm to the projector onto the solution of the classical field equation (Hartree equation) with a uniform remainder estimates in time.

## 10.1 Introduction

This chapter is very different from the others in this book. Until now we have considered coherent states depending on a parameter living in a finite dimensional space

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_10, 

(typically a phase space for a classical mechanical system or more generally a Lie group). But coherent states may also be a useful tool to analyze quantum systems with an infinite number of particles (this was the main motivation for the founder of coherent states, R.J. Glauber). Large number of particles systems are studied in many domains of physics: statistical mechanics, quantum field theory, quantum optics for example. There are many books and papers in the physical literature (Weinberg [194]). There exist also books more rigorous from the mathematical point of view [33] and for a discussion concerning physical and mathematical aspects see the book [78].

## 10.2 Fock Spaces

### *10.2.1 Bosons and Fermions*

Let us start with a quantum system of identical particles. Each particle has its states in the Hilbert space $\mathfrak{h}$. The states of systems of $k$ particles are in the Hilbert space $\mathfrak{h}^{\otimes k} = \mathfrak{h} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathfrak{h}$ and if the number of particles is not fixed (like in quantum field theory) the total Hilbert space is the Fock space

$$\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h}) := \bigoplus_{k \geq 0} \mathfrak{h}^{\otimes k} \tag{10.1}$$

where $\mathfrak{h}^{\otimes 0} = \mathbb{C}$ ("no-particle" space).

Let us recall here that if $\{e_j\}_{j \in J}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathfrak{h}$ then $\{e_{i_1} \otimes e_{i_2} \otimes \cdots \otimes e_{i_k}, |i_1, \ldots, i_k \in J\}$ is an orthonormal basis of $\mathfrak{h}^{\otimes k}$. So if we denote $\psi^{(k)}_{i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_k} = \langle e_{i_1} \otimes e_{i_2} \otimes \cdots \otimes e_{i_k}, \psi^{(k)} \rangle$ then we have

$$\|\psi\|^2 = \sum_{k \geq 0, i_1, \ldots, i_k \in J} \left| \psi^{(k)}_{i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_k} \right|^2 \tag{10.2}$$

Recall that the differences between bosons and fermions are determined by their behavior under permutations (Pauli exclusion principle for fermions). Let us denote $\mathfrak{S}_k$ the group of permutations of $\{1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ and by $\varepsilon_\pi$ the signature of $\pi \in \mathfrak{S}_k$.

The following equalities can be extended in two projections in $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$:

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi_B(\psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k) &= \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{\pi \in \mathfrak{S}_k} \psi_{\pi 1} \otimes \psi_{\pi 2} \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_{\pi k} \\ \Pi_F(\psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k) &= \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{\pi \in \mathfrak{S}_k} \varepsilon_\pi \psi_{\pi 1} \otimes \psi_{\pi 2} \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_{\pi k} \end{aligned} \tag{10.3}$$

where $\psi_1, \ldots, \psi_k \in \mathfrak{h}$. The following notations will be used:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_1 \wedge \psi_2 \wedge \cdots \wedge \psi_k &= \Pi_F(\psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k) \\ \psi_1 \vee \psi_2 \cdots \vee \psi_k &= \Pi_B(\psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k) \end{aligned}$$

**Definition 20** The subspace $\mathscr{F}_B(\mathfrak{h}) := \Pi_B \mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$ is the Fock space of bosons and the subspace $\mathscr{F}_F(\mathfrak{h}) := \Pi_F \mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$ is the Fock space of fermions.

$\mathfrak{h}_{B,F}^{\otimes k} = \Pi_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h}^{\otimes k})$ are the $k$-particles subspaces for bosons (B) or fermions(F).

The number operator **N** is defined as follows:

$$\mathbf{N}\psi^{(k)} = k\psi^{(k)}, \quad \psi^{(k)} \in \mathfrak{h}^{\otimes k} \tag{10.4}$$

**N** can be extended as a self-adjoint operator in $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$ with domain

$$D(\mathbf{N}) = \left\{ \psi \in \mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h}), \sum_{k\geq 0} k^2 \|\psi^{(k)}\|^2 < +\infty \right\} \tag{10.5}$$

Moreover **N** commutes with $\Pi_{B,F}$ so **N** is a self-adjoint operator in the spaces $\mathscr{F}_{F,B}(\mathfrak{h})$.

We can define operators in $\mathscr{F}_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h})$ starting from an Hamiltonian $H$ in $\mathfrak{h}$ by a method known as *second quantization* as follows.

Define $H^{(0)} = 0$ and for $k \geq 1$,

$$\begin{aligned} &H^{(k)}\left(\Pi_{B,F}(\psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k)\right) \\ &= \Pi_{B,F}\left( \sum_{1\leq j\leq k} \psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_{j-1} \otimes H\psi_j \otimes \psi_{j+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k \right) \end{aligned} \tag{10.6}$$

By linearity the direct sum of $H^{(k)}$ defines an operator $\mathbf{H} := \bigoplus_k H^{(k)}$ in $\mathscr{F}_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h})$. **H** is the second quantization of $H$. It is convenient to introduce the dense subspace defined as

$$\mathscr{F}_0(\mathfrak{h}) = \left\{ \psi \in \mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h}) | \psi^{(k)} = 0 \text{ if } k \text{ large enough} \right\}$$

$\bigoplus_k H^{(k)}$ is well defined in $\mathscr{F}_0(\mathfrak{h})$. More precisely we have the following easy to prove lemma.

**Lemma 63** *If $H$ is a self-adjoint operator in $\mathfrak{h}$ then* **H** *can be extended as a unique self-adjoint operator (with dense domain) in $\mathscr{F}_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h})$. This operator is also denoted $d\Gamma(H)$ or* **H**.

*If $U$ is a unitary operator then $\bigoplus_k U^{(k)}$ can be extended in a unique unitary operator in $\mathscr{F}_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h})$. This operator is denoted $\Gamma(U)$ or* **U**.

*Remark 53* If $H = \mathbb{1}$ then we see that $d\Gamma(\mathbb{1}) = \mathbf{N}$, the number operator.

If $U_t = \mathrm{e}^{-itH}$ with $H$ self-adjoint in $\mathfrak{h}$ then we have $\Gamma(U_t) = \mathrm{e}^{-itd\Gamma(H)}$ in other words the infinitesimal generator of $\Gamma(U_t)$ is the second quantization of the generator of $U_t$.

In quantum field theory the number of particles of the system is not constant so we have to define two kinds of observable: annihilation operators and creation operators (other names are absorption and emission operators).

**Definition 21** For every $f \in \mathfrak{h}$ we define the operators $a(f)$ and $a^*(f)$ by the following conditions:

$$a(f)\psi^{(0)} = 0, \qquad a^*(f)\psi^{(0)} = f$$
$$a(f)(\psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k) = (k+1)^{1/2}\langle f, \psi_1\rangle \psi_2 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k$$
$$a^*(f)(\psi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k) = k^{-1/2} f \otimes \psi_1 \otimes \psi_2 \otimes \cdots \otimes \psi_k$$

Remark that $f \mapsto a(f)$ is antilinear and $f \mapsto a^*(f)$ is linear on $\mathfrak{h}$.

**Lemma 64** *For every $\psi^{(k)} \in \mathfrak{h}^{\otimes k}$, $f \in \mathfrak{h}$, we have*

$$\left\|a(f)\psi^{(k)}\right\| \le k^{1/2}\|f\|\left\|\Psi^{(k)}\right\|, \qquad \left\|a^*(f)\psi^{(k)}\right\| \le (k+1)^{1/2}\|f\|\left\|\Psi^{(k)}\right\| \tag{10.7}$$

*$a(f)$ and $a^*(f)$ are defined on the linear space $D(\mathbf{N}^{1/2})$ and satisfy,*

$$\left\|a(f)\psi\right\| \le \|f\|\left\|(\mathbf{N}+1)^{1/2}\psi\right\| \tag{10.8}$$
$$\left\|a^*(f)\psi\right\| \le \|f\|\left\|(\mathbf{N}+1)^{1/2}\psi\right\|, \quad \forall \psi \in D\big(\mathbf{N}^{1/2}\big) \tag{10.9}$$

*$a(f)$ and $a^*(f)$ leave the subspaces $\mathscr{F}_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h})$ invariant. So the annihilation and creation operators for bosons* (*B*) *and fermions* (*F*) *are defined as follows*:

$$\begin{aligned} a_{B,F}(f) &= a(f)\Pi_{B,F} = \Pi_{B,F}a(f) \\ a^*_{B,F}(f) &= a^*(f)\Pi_{B,F} = \Pi_{B,F}a^*(f) \end{aligned} \tag{10.10}$$

*Remark 54* Starting from the vacuum state: $\Omega = (1, 0, \ldots, 0, \ldots)$ we create a particle with state $a^*_{B,F}(f)\Omega = (0, f, 0, \ldots)$. More generally if $h_1, \ldots, h_k \in \mathfrak{h}$ we get $k$ particles in the state $a^*(h_1)a^*(h_2)\cdots a^*(h_k)\Omega$. It is not difficult to prove that $\Omega$ is cyclic, which means that the family $\{a^*(h_1)a^*(h_2)\cdots a^*(h_k)\Omega, |, h_j \in \mathfrak{h}, k \in \mathbb{N}\}$ is dense in $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$ and the same property holds true for bosons and fermions.

In the Fock spaces $\mathscr{F}_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h})$ we have the canonical commutation relations (CCR) for bosons and anticommutation relations (CAR) for fermions. More explicitly, if $H, K$ are two operators, we denote the commutator $[H, K] := HK - KH$ and the anticommutator $[H, K]_+ := HK + KH$. In what follows operators are defined on $\mathscr{F}_{B,F}(\mathfrak{h}) \cap \mathscr{F}_0(\mathfrak{h})$, $h_1, h_2 \in \mathfrak{h}$. We have for bosons

$$(\mathbf{CCR}) \qquad \begin{aligned} \big[a_B(h_1), a^*_B(h_2)\big] &= \langle h_1, h_2\rangle \mathbb{1} \\ \big[a_B(h_1), a_B(h_2)\big] &= \big[a^*_B(h_1), a^*_B(h_2)\big] = 0 \end{aligned}$$

and for fermions

$$(\mathbf{CAR}) \qquad \begin{aligned} \big[a_F(h_1), a^*_F(h_2)\big]_+ &= \langle h_1, h_2\rangle \mathbb{1} \\ \big[a_F(h_1), a_F(h_2)\big]_+ &= \big[a^*_F(h_1), a^*_F(h_2)\big]_+ = 0 \end{aligned}$$

*Remark 55* If an orthonormal basis $\{\varphi_j\}_{i\in I}$ of $\mathfrak{h}$ is given the annihilation/creation operators are determined by $a_i^{(*)} := a^{(*)}(\varphi_i)$ (the subscript $F$, $B$ is erased when the context is clear). In particular the number operator can be written as

$$\mathbf{N} = \sum_{i\in I} a_i^* a_i \tag{10.11}$$

We shall now detail some consequences of relations (CCR) and (CAR).

### *10.2.2 Bosons*

First of all we remark that the Bargmann–Fock realization of quantum mechanics for $n$ particles is isomorphic to the bosonic Fock realization with $\mathfrak{h} = \mathbb{C}^n$.

Recall that we have seen in Chap. 1 that in the Bargmann space $\mathscr{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ we have

$$\left[\zeta_j, \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta_k}\right] = \delta_{j,k}$$

and an orthonormal basis

$$\phi_\alpha^\#(\zeta) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2}(\alpha!)^{-1/2}\zeta^\alpha$$

If $\{e_j\}_{1\le j\le n}$ is the canonical basis of $\mathbb{C}^n$, we get a unitary map $\Phi_B$ from $\mathscr{F}(\mathbb{C}^n)$ onto $\mathscr{F}_B(\mathbb{C}^n)$ by the property

$$\Phi_B\left(\phi_\alpha^\#\right) = \Phi_B(e_{\alpha_1}\otimes e_{\alpha_2}\otimes\cdots\otimes e_{\alpha_k})$$

Note that $\Phi_B(e_{\alpha_1}\otimes e_{\alpha_2}\otimes\cdots\otimes e_{\alpha_k})$ is the symmetric tensor product of the $e_{\alpha_j}$. We have easily

$$a_j = \Phi_B \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta_j}\Phi_B^{-1}, \qquad a_j^* = \Phi_B \hat{\zeta}_j \Phi_B^{-1} \tag{10.12}$$

which proved that bosonic Fock realization and Bargmann–Fock realization of quantum mechanics are equivalent.

In quantum field theory the one particle space is usually the infinite dimensional Hilbert space $\mathfrak{h} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. In physical applications it is convenient to consider field operators depending on a point $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ (each particle has $n$ degree of freedom). They are operator valued distributions on $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. Let $\mathscr{F}_n$ be the bosonic Fock space:

$$\mathscr{F}_n = \bigoplus_{k\ge 0} \overset{k}{\vee} L^2\left(\mathbb{R}^n\right)$$

with

$$\overset{0}{\vee} L^2\left(\mathbb{R}^n\right) = \mathbb{C}, \qquad \overset{k}{\vee} L^2\left(\mathbb{R}^n\right) = \bigotimes_s^k L^2\left(\mathbb{R}^n\right)$$

The subscript $s$ indicates the symmetric tensor product. $\bigotimes_s^k L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the subspace of $\bigotimes^k L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of symmetric functions on $\underbrace{\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \cdots \mathbb{R}^n}_{k \text{ times}}$. So $\overset{k}{\vee} L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the $k$-particles space for bosons.

Recall that a vector $\psi \in \mathscr{F}_n$ is a sequence

$$\psi = \{\psi^{(k)}\}_{k\geq 0}$$

of $k$-particle wavefunctions $\psi^{(k)} \in \overset{k}{\vee} L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. The scalar product in $\mathscr{F}_n$ of two functions $\psi_\alpha$, $\psi_\beta$ is given by

$$\langle \psi_\alpha, \psi_\beta \rangle = \sum_{k\geq 0} \langle \psi_\alpha^{(k)}, \psi_\beta^{(k)} \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{nk})}$$

Recall that the state $\Omega = \{1, 0, \dots, 0, \dots\}$ is called the vacuum.

The creation and annihilation operators $a^*(x)$, $a(x)$ are defined as operator-distribution by

$$\big(a^*(x)\psi\big)^{(k)}(x_1, \dots, x_k) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} \sum_{j=1}^{k} \delta(x - x_j)\psi^{(k-1)}(x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_j, \dots, x_k) \quad (10.13)$$

$$\big(a(x)\psi\big)^{(k)}(x_1, \dots, x_k) = \sqrt{k+1}\psi^{(k+1)}(x, x_1, \dots, x_k) \quad (10.14)$$

where $\hat{x}_j$ means that $x_j$ is absent.

The canonical commutation relations assume the form

$$\big[a(x), a^*(y)\big] = \delta(x-y), \qquad \big[a(x), a(y)\big] = \big[a^*(x), a^*(y)\big] = 0$$

For $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ we recover the definitions:

$$a^*(f) = \int dx\, f(x)a^*(x) \quad (10.15)$$

$$a(f) = \int dx\, \bar{f}(x)a(x) \quad (10.16)$$

The number operator $\mathbf{N}$ has the form

$$\mathbf{N} = \int dx\, a^*(x)a(x) \quad (10.17)$$

Later we shall consider the Hamiltonian of a bosons system with pairwise interactions described by a potential $V = V(x-y)$. $V$ is supposed to be an even, real function on $\mathbb{R}^n$. This Hamiltonian can be written as follows in the Fock space $\mathscr{F}$, where we assume here that $\hbar = 1$:

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{2}\int dx\, \nabla a^*(x) \cdot \nabla a(x) + \frac{1}{2}\int dx\, dy\, V(x-y)a^*(x)a^*(y)a(y)a(x) \quad (10.18)$$

Formula (10.18) needs to be interpreted in the distribution sense. A direct computation shows that restriction $H^{(k)}$ of $\mathbf{H}$ to the $k$-particles space is, as expected:

$$H^{(k)} = -\frac{1}{2}\sum_{1\le j\le k} \Delta_j + \sum_{1\le i<j\le k} V(x_i - x_j) \tag{10.19}$$

where

$$\Delta_j = \underbrace{\mathbb{1}\otimes\cdots\otimes\mathbb{1}}_{j-1}\otimes\Delta\underbrace{\otimes\mathbb{1}\cdots\otimes\mathbb{1}}_{k-j}$$

and $\Delta_j$ is the Laplace operator in variables $x_j \in \mathbb{R}^n$.

Let us explain why representations (10.18) and (10.19) formally coincide. We have to understand the meaning of the r.h.s. in (10.18). We have two terms, the first is the kinetic energy the second is the potential energy. If $\hat{A}$ is an operator in the one particle space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ its second quantization $\mathbf{A}$ can be written as

$$\mathbf{A} = \sum_{j,k\in I} \langle e_j, \hat{A}e_k\rangle a^*(e_j)a(e_k) \tag{10.20}$$

Introduce the distributions $a^*(x)$ and $a(y)$ and the Schwartz integral kernel $K_A$ of $\hat{A}$, we have

$$K_A(x,y) = \sum_{j,k}\langle e_j, \hat{A}e_k\rangle e_j(x)\bar{e}_k(y)$$

so we get

$$\mathbf{A} = \int dx\,dy\,K_A(x,y)a^*(x)a(y)$$

In particular if $K_A$ is null outside the diagonal we can write

$$\mathbf{A} = \int dx\,A(x)a^*(x)a(x)$$

where $A(x)$ is some function or distribution depending in one particle variable. In particular this is true if $\hat{A}$ is a multiplication operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$. Its kernel is $K_A(x,y) = A(x)\delta(x-y)$. If $\hat{A}$ is a convolution operator (like Laplace operator) we have the same interpretation using Fourier transform in variable $x$.

For the potential energy term we have the same interpretation with $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ replaced by $L^2_s(\mathbb{R}^n\times\mathbb{R}^n) = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)\vee L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and using that $\{e_j\vee e_k\}_{j,k\in I}$ is an orthonormal basis. $V = V(x-y)$ acting as a multiplication operator in $L^2_s(\mathbb{R}^n\times\mathbb{R}^n)$. So we have the formal equality

$$\begin{aligned}&\int dx\,dy\,a^*(y)a^*(x)V(x-y)a^*(x)a^*(y)a(x)a(y)\\ &\quad = \sum_{\substack{j,k\in I\\ j',j'}} \langle e_j\vee e_k, V(e_{j'}\vee e_{k'})\rangle a^*(e_j)a^*(e_k)a(e_{k'})a(e_{j'})\end{aligned} \tag{10.21}$$

So we get a rigorous interpretation for (10.18) for $\mathbf{H}$ acting in the finite number dense subspace $\mathscr{F}_0(L^2(\mathbb{R}^n))$. More assumptions will be needed later on $V$.

## 10.3 The Bosons Coherent States

As above, here we forget the subscript $B$, considering only bosons.

We want to extend for infinite number of bosons the coherent states already defined for finite systems (Chap. 1).

The idea is the same: translate by Weyl operators the vacuum (the ground state for coherent states of harmonic oscillator).

We first define the field operator (or Segal operator):

$$\Phi(f) = \frac{a(f) + a^*(f)}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad f \in \mathfrak{h} \tag{10.22}$$

Notice that if we define $\Pi(f) = \Phi(if)$ then we have

$$a(f) = \frac{\Phi(f) + i\Pi(f)}{\sqrt{2}}, \qquad a^*(f) = \frac{\Phi(f) - i\Pi(f)}{i\sqrt{2}}$$

**Lemma 65**

(i) *For every* $f \in \mathfrak{h}$, $\Phi(f)$ *is symmetric on the subspace* $\mathscr{F}_0(\mathfrak{h})$ *and is essentially self-adjoint.*
(ii) $D(\mathbf{N}^{1/2})$ *is in the domain of* $\Phi(f)$ *and for every* $\psi \in D(\mathbf{N}^{1/2})$, $f \mapsto \Phi(f)\psi$ *is continuous on* $\mathfrak{h}$.
(iii) *If* $\psi \in D(\mathbf{N})$ *and* $f, g \in \mathfrak{h}$ *then we have for commutators*:

$$\big[\Phi(f), \Phi(g)\big]\psi = i\Im\langle f, g\rangle\psi$$

*Proof* The only non trivial statement is that $\Phi(f)$ is essentially self-adjoint. Using the Nelson criterium [162] it is enough to prove that each $\psi \in \mathscr{F}_0(\mathfrak{h})$ is an analytic vector for $\Phi(f)$. This a consequence of the estimate

$$\big\|\Phi(f)^n\psi^{(k)}\big\| \le 2^{n/2}(k+n)^{1/2}(k+n-1)^{1/2}\cdots(k+1)^{1/2}\big\|\psi^{(k)}\big\|\|f\|^n$$

It follows that for every $r > 0$ we have

$$\sum_{n\ge 0}\frac{r^n}{n!}\big\|\Phi(f)^n\psi^{(k)}\big\| < +\infty$$

□

The Weyl operators and their companion coherent states are defined as follows:

**Definition 22** For $f \in \mathfrak{h}$ we define the Weyl translation operators:

$$T(f) = \exp\big(a^*(f) - a(f)\big) = \exp\left(\int dx\, \big(f(x)a^*(x) - \bar{f}(x)a(x)\big)\right) \tag{10.23}$$

The coherent state $\Psi(f)$ for every $f \in \mathfrak{h}$ is then defined as

$$\boxed{\Psi(f) = T(f)\Omega}$$

The bosonic coherent states have the following expression (analogue of an expression already given in Chap. 1 for finite systems of bosons):

**Proposition 117** *For every* $f \in \mathfrak{h}$ *we have*

$$\Psi(f) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\|f\|^2}{2}} \sum_{k\geq 0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{k!}} f^{\otimes k}$$

*In particular the probability to have k particles in* $\psi(f)$ *is equal to* $\mathrm{e}^{-\|f\|^2}\|f\|^{2k}/k!$, *where we recognize the Poisson law with mean* $\|f\|^2$.

*Proof* We give formal argument from which it is not difficult to supply rigorous proofs.

One has the useful formula:

$$T(f) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\|f\|^2}{2}} \exp\big(a^*(f)\big)\exp\big(-a(f)\big) \tag{10.24}$$

since the commutator $[a(f), a^*(f)] = \|f\|^2$ commutes with $a(f),\ a^*(f)$. We deduce

$$\Psi(f) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\|f\|^2}{2}} \sum_{k\geq 0} \frac{(a^*(f))^k}{k!}\Omega = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\|f\|^2}{2}} \sum_{k\geq 0} \frac{f^{\otimes k}}{\sqrt{k!}}$$

where $f^{\otimes k}$ is the Fock-vector $\{0, 0, \ldots, f^{\otimes k}, 0, \ldots\}$.

Let $\pi_k$ be the orthogonal projector onto the $k$-particle space $\otimes_s^k \mathfrak{h}$. We have found

$$\pi_k\big(\Psi(f)\big) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\|f\|^2}{2}} \frac{f^{\otimes k}}{\sqrt{k!}}$$

so the probability to have $k$ particles in $\psi(f)$ is equal to $\|\pi_k(\Psi(f))\|^2 = \mathrm{e}^{-\|f\|^2}\|f\|^{2k}/k!$. □

The main properties of Weyl operators and coherent states are given in the following proposition.

**Proposition 118** *Let* $f,\ g \in \mathfrak{h}$.

(i) *$T(f)$ is a unitary operator and one has*

$$T(f)^* = T(f)^{-1} = T(-f)$$

(ii) *The Weyl operator satisfies the commutation relations*:

$$T(f)T(g) = T(g)T(f)\exp\bigl(-2i\Im\langle f, g\rangle\bigr) = T(f+g)\exp\bigl(-i\Im\langle f, g\rangle\bigr)$$

*In particular we have*

$$T(g)\Psi(f) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\Im\langle g, f\rangle}\Psi(g+f)$$

(iii) *We have*

$$T^*(f)a(g)T(f) = a(g) + \langle g, f\rangle\mathbb{1}, \qquad T^*(f)a^*(g)T(f) = a^*(g) + \langle f, g\rangle\mathbb{1}$$

(iv) *The coherent states are eigenfunctions of the annihilation operators*:

$$a(g)\Psi(f) = \langle g, f\rangle\Psi(f)$$

(v) *The expectation of the number operator* $\mathbf{N}$ *in the coherent state* $\Psi(f)$ *is*

$$\bigl\langle\Psi(f), \mathbf{N}\Psi(f)\bigr\rangle = \|f\|^2$$

*also we have for the variance*:

$$\bigl\langle\Psi(f), \mathbf{N}^2\Psi(f)\bigr\rangle - \bigl\langle\Psi(f), \mathbf{N}\Psi(f)\bigr\rangle^2 = \|f\|^2$$

(vi) *The coherent states are normalized but not orthogonal to each other*:

$$\bigl\langle\Psi(f), \Psi(g)\bigr\rangle = \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\bigl(\|f-g\|^2 - i\Im\langle f, g\rangle\bigr)\right)$$

*which implies that*

$$\bigl|\bigl\langle\Psi(f), \Psi(g)\bigr\rangle\bigr| = \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\|f-g\|^2\right)$$

(vii) *The set of operators* $\{T(f),\ f\in\mathfrak{h}\}$ *is irreducible on* $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$: *the only bounded operators* $\mathbf{B}$ *in* $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$ *commuting with* $T(f)$ *for all* $f\in\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$ *are the scalar* $\mathbf{B} = \lambda\mathbb{1}$, $\lambda\in\mathbb{C}$.

*In particular the set of coherent states* $\{\Psi(f),\ f\in\mathfrak{h}\}$ *is total in* $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$.

*Proof* Properties (i) to (ii) are left to the reader. For (iii) we compute

$$\frac{d}{dt}T^*(tf)a(g)T(tf) = T^*(tf)\bigl[a(g), a^*(f)\bigr]T(tf) = T^*(tf)\bigl[\langle g, f\rangle\bigr]T(tf)$$

and we get (iii) integrating in $t$ between 0 and 1. (iv) are (v) are consequences of (iii).

For (vi) we write, using (10.24): $T(f)\Omega = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\|f\|}\mathrm{e}^{a^*(f)}\Omega$. So we get

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle T(f)\Omega, T(g)\Omega\big\rangle &= \big\langle \Omega, T^*(f)T(g)\Omega\big\rangle \\ &= \big\langle \Omega, T(g-f)\Omega\big\rangle \mathrm{e}^{i\Im\langle f,g\rangle} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\|g-f\|^2}\mathrm{e}^{i\Im\langle f,g\rangle}\end{aligned} \tag{10.25}$$

Let us now prove (vii). Remark first that $\mathbf{B}$ commutes with $\Phi(f)$ for every $f \in \mathfrak{h}$ hence with $a(f)$ and $a^*(f)$. In particular $\mathbf{B}$ commutes with the number operator $\mathbf{N}$. Let $\{e_i\}_{i\in I}$ be an orthonormal basis for $\mathfrak{h}$ and $a_i = a(e_i)$. Denote $\psi_{k_1,\dots,k_n} = (k_1!\cdots k_n!)^{-1/2}(a_1^*)^{k_1}\cdots(a_n^*)^{k_n}\Omega$. This is an orthonormal basis for the Fock space $\mathscr{F}_B(\mathfrak{h})$ with the obvious index set. Compute $\langle \psi_{k_1,\dots,k_n}, \mathbf{B}\psi_{j_1,\dots,j_m}\rangle$. This is 0 if the sets $\{k_1,\dots,k_n\}$, $\{j_1,\dots,j_m\}$are not equal. Finally we have, using CCR,

$$\langle \psi_{i_1,\dots,i_n}, \mathbf{B}\psi_{i_1,\dots,i_n}\rangle = \langle \Omega, a_{i_1}\cdots a_{i_n}a_{i_1}^*\cdots a_{i_n}^*\Omega\rangle = \langle \Omega, \mathbf{B}\Omega\rangle$$

hence $\mathbf{B} = \langle \Omega, \mathbf{B}\Omega\rangle \mathbb{1}$. □

The two following lemmas will be useful later. Let us introduce the operator family $\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^r = (\mathbb{1} + \mathbf{N}^2)^{r/2}$ for $r \in \mathbb{R}$.

**Lemma 66** *For every $r \in \mathbb{R}$ and every $f \in \mathfrak{h}$, $\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^r T(f)\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^{-r}$ extends in a bounded operator in the Fock space $\mathscr{F}_B(\mathfrak{h})$. In other words for every $r \geq 0$, $T(f)$ is bounded on the Hilbert space $D(\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^r)$ for the norm $\|\psi\|_r := \|\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^r\psi\|_{\mathscr{F}_B(\mathfrak{h})}$.*

*Proof* From the previous proposition (iii) we have

$$T^*(f)\mathbf{N}T(f) = \mathbf{N} + a(f) + a^*(f) + \|f\|^2\mathbb{1} \tag{10.26}$$

We prove the lemma for $r = \frac{1}{2}$. It is not difficult by iteration and interpolation to prove the result for every $r$.

We have

$$\big\| \langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^{1/2}T(f)\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^{-1/2}\Psi\big\|^2 = \big\langle \Psi, \langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^{-1/2}T^*(f)\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle T(f)\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^{-1/2}\Psi\big\rangle$$

We can replace $\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle$ by $\mathbf{N}$, use (10.26) and Cauchy–Schwarz inequality to get

$$\big\| \langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^{1/2}T(f)\langle \mathbf{N}\rangle^{-1/2}\big\|^2 \leq C\|f\|^2$$ □

**Lemma 67** *Let $\alpha \in \mathscr{C}^1(\mathbb{R}, \mathfrak{h})$, $t \to \alpha(t)$. Then $T(\alpha(t))$ is strongly differentiable in $t$ from $D(\mathbf{N}^{1/2})$ to $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$. The derivative is given by*

$$\frac{d}{dt}T\big(\alpha(t)\big) = T\big(\alpha(t)\big)\big[a^*\big(\dot{\alpha}(t)\big) - a\big(\dot{\bar{\alpha}}\big) + i\Im(\bar{\alpha}\cdot\dot{\alpha})\big] \tag{10.27}$$

*where $\dot{\alpha} = \frac{d}{dt}\alpha$.*

*Proof* It is enough to compute the derivative for $t = 0$. Using Lemma 10.3 the computations can be done for $\psi \in D(\langle\mathbf{N}\rangle^{1/2})$. In what follows $\psi$ will be omitted.

We have $T(\alpha(t)) - T(\alpha(0)) = T(\alpha(0))T^*(\alpha(0))(T(\alpha(t)) - \mathbb{1})$ and

$$T^*\big(\alpha(0)\big)T\big(\alpha(t)\big) = T\big(\alpha(t) - \alpha(0)\big)\mathrm{e}^{i\Im\langle\alpha(0),\alpha(t)\rangle}$$

Using Duhamel formula on $D(\mathbf{N}^{1/2})$ we get

$$T\big(\alpha(t) - \alpha(0)\big) = \mathbb{1} + t\big(a^*\big(\dot\alpha(0)\big) - a\big(\dot\alpha(0)\big)\big) + O\big(t^2\big)$$

hence

$$\frac{d}{dt}T^*\big(\alpha(0)\big)T\big(\alpha(t)\big)\bigg|_{t=0} = a^*\big(\dot\alpha(0)\big) - a\big(\dot\alpha(0)\big) + i\Im\big\langle\alpha(0), \dot\alpha(0)\big\rangle$$

The formula (10.27) follows. □

In the following section we shall study the mean-field behavior of large systems of bosons with weak two particles interactions. For that purpose we introduce one particle density operator $\Gamma_\Psi^{(1)}$ for every $\Psi \in \mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$, as follows. It is defined as a sesquilinear form in $\mathfrak{h}$:

$$(f, g) \mapsto \frac{1}{\langle\Psi, \mathbf{N}\Psi\rangle}\big\langle\Psi, a^*(f)a(g)\Psi\big\rangle := \big\langle f, \Gamma_\Psi^{(1)}g\big\rangle, \quad f, g \in \mathfrak{h}$$

If $\mathfrak{h} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ the Schwartz kernel of $\Gamma_\Psi^{(1)}$ satisfies

$$\Gamma_\Psi^{(1)}(x, y) = \frac{1}{\langle\psi, \mathbf{N}\Psi\rangle}\big\langle\Psi, a^*(x)a(y)\Psi\big\rangle \tag{10.28}$$

Moreover if $\Psi$ is a $k$-particle state then $\Gamma_\Psi^{(1)}$ is the relative trace in $\mathfrak{h} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of the projector $|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$ and we have

$$\Gamma_\Psi^{(1)}(x, y) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n(k-1)}\times\mathbb{R}^{n(k-1)}} dx'\,dy'\,\Psi\big(x', x\big)\bar\Psi\big(y', y\big)$$

We shall be interested to considering the one particle density for $\Psi(t)$ being a time evolution of a coherent state $\Psi(\varphi_\hbar(t))$, where $\varphi_\hbar(t) = \hbar^{-1/2}\varphi(t)$, depending on a small (semi-classical) parameter $\hbar$. We call it $\Gamma_{\hbar,t}^{(1)}$. We shall see that, under some conditions, $\Gamma_{\hbar,t}^{(1)}$ converges in trace-norm operator to $|\varphi(t)\rangle\langle\varphi(t)|$ when $\hbar \searrow 0$ where $\varphi(t)$ follows a classical evolution.

## 10.4 The Classical Limit for Large Systems of Bosons

### *10.4.1 Introduction*

We have already considered the classical limit problem for systems with a finite number of bosons in Chap. 1. It has been a natural question since the early days of quantum mechanics to compare the classical and quantum mechanical descriptions of physical systems. One of the oldest and by now best known relation between the two theories goes back to Ehrenfest [74]. This has been put on a firm mathematical bases by Hepp [113]. He proved that in the limit where the Planck constant $\hbar$[1] tends to zero, the matrix elements of quantum observables between suitable $\hbar$-dependent coherent states tend to the classical values evolving according to the appropriate equation. Moreover he proved that the quantum mechanical fluctuations evolve according to the equation obtained by linearizing the quantum mechanical evolution around the classical solution. Hepp approach covers the case of quantum mechanics (that we have studied in detail in Chap. 4) of boson field theories, both relativistic and nonrelativistic, and more generally of all quantum theories which can be expressed in terms of observables satisfying the Canonical Commutation Relations (CCR). One is led to study a perturbation problem for the evolution of a set of operators satisfying the CCR in a suitable representation. The small parameter which characterizes the perturbation theory is $\hbar^{1/2}$. In the most favorable cases this evolution is implemented by a unitary group of operators $W(t,s)$. The solution of the unperturbed problem is given by a unitary group $U_2(t,s)$, the infinitesimal generator of which is quadratic in the field operators and depends on the classical solution around which one is considering the classical limit. The operator $U_2(t,s)$ describes the evolution of the quantum fluctuations. Hepp's result consists of proving strong convergence of $W(t,s)$ towards $U_2(t,s)$ when $\hbar$ goes to zero. We shall explain the results obtained by Ginibre–Velo [86–88] to estimate the error term in Hepp's results. We also explain results obtained more recently by Rodnianski–Schlein [168] using Hepp's approach to get the convergence of the one particle marginal for evolved coherent states towards a classical field. Note that this result is somehow an extension to the quantum field context of the semi-classical expansion considered before in Chap. 4 for time evolution of Gaussian coherent states for a fixed number of bosons.

### 10.4.2 Hepp's Method

We follow here the presentation given in [87]. We start with the abstract setting of a general Fock space $\mathscr{F}(\mathfrak{h})$ and an orthonormal basis $\{e_i\}_{i\in I}$ in $\mathfrak{h}$. $I=\{1,2,\dots,\nu\}$, $\nu \le +\infty$. Recall that $a_i := a(e_i)$.

So the system is described by the family of quantum operators $\mathbf{a}=(a_i)_{i\in I}$ satisfying the canonical commutation rules:

$$[a_i, a_j] = 0, \qquad [a_i, a_j^*] = \delta_{i,j}$$

[1] In physics $\hbar$ is a constant equal to $1.055 \times 10^{-34}$ J s. As is usual in quantum mechanics we consider here $\hbar$ as an effective Planck constant obtained by scaling, for example $\hbar \mapsto \frac{\hbar}{\sqrt{2m}}$, where $m$ is the mass and $\hbar \searrow 0$ means $m \nearrow +\infty$.

The variables $\mathbf{a}_\hbar$ expected to have a classical limit are related to $\mathbf{a}$ by

$$\mathbf{a}_\hbar = \hbar^{1/2}\mathbf{a} \quad \text{or} \quad a_\hbar(f) = \hbar^{1/2}a(f), \quad f \in \mathfrak{h} \quad \text{or} \quad a_i^\hbar = \hbar^{1/2}a_i.$$

Consider a self-adjoint Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$ in $\mathscr{F}_B(\mathfrak{h})$, suitably regular (for instance polynomial in $\mathbf{a}^*$, $\mathbf{a}$), with no explicit $\hbar$-dependence:

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum C(n_1, \dots, n_k | m_1, \dots, m_\ell)\big(a_1^*\big)^{n_1} \cdots \big(a_1^*\big)^{n_k} a_1^{m_1} \cdots a_\ell^{m_\ell}, \quad C(\bullet|\bullet) \in \mathbb{C}$$

In the Heisenberg picture the time evolution $\mathbf{a}_\hbar(t)$ of $\mathbf{a}_\hbar$ is given by the following equation:

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{a}_\hbar(t) = \big[\mathbf{a}_\hbar(t), H(\mathbf{a}_\hbar)\big], \quad \mathbf{a}_\hbar(0) = \mathbf{a}_\hbar \tag{10.29}$$

We want to relate the time dependent operators $\mathbf{a}_\hbar(t)$ with a family of $\hbar$-independent c-number variables:[2]

$$\varphi(t) = \big\{\varphi_i(t)\big\}_{i\in I}$$

which will appear to be the classical limits. $\varphi(t)$ can be identified with a classical trajectory in the Hilbert space $\mathfrak{h}$ writing $\varphi(t) = \sum_{i\in I}\varphi_i(t)e_i$.

We thus expand $\mathbf{H}$ in power series of $a_i^\hbar - \varphi_i$, $(a_i^\hbar)^* - \bar{\varphi}_i$ in a neighborhood of $\varphi$, $\bar{\varphi}$:

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{a}_\hbar) = H(\varphi) + H_1(\mathbf{a}_\hbar - \varphi) + H_2(\mathbf{a}_\hbar - \varphi) + H_{\geq 3}(\mathbf{a}_\hbar - \varphi) \tag{10.30}$$

where the functions $H_1$, $H_2$, $H_{\geq 3}$ are polynomials in $\mathbf{a}_\hbar - \varphi$, $\mathbf{a}_\hbar^* - \bar{\varphi}$ with total degree 1, 2 and $\geq 3$, respectively, with time dependent coefficients. Defining

$$H_k'(\mathbf{a}) = \big[\mathbf{a}, H_k(\mathbf{a})\big], \quad k = 1, 2, \geq 3$$

we see that $H_k'$ are $\hbar$-independent, that $H_1'(\mathbf{a})$ is a c-number and that $H_2'$ is linear in $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{a}^*$. Equation (10.29) can be rewritten as

$$i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}\varphi + i\hbar\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{a}_\hbar - \varphi) = H_1'(\mathbf{a}_\hbar) + H_2'(\mathbf{a}_\hbar - \varphi) + H_{\geq 3}'(\mathbf{a}_\hbar - \varphi) \tag{10.31}$$

But we have $H_1'(\mathbf{a}_\hbar) = \hbar H_1'(\mathbf{a})$. So we choose $\varphi$ to be a solution of the classical evolution equation associated with Hamiltonian $H$, namely

$$i\frac{d}{dt}\varphi = H_1'(\mathbf{a}) \tag{10.32}$$

We define

$$\varphi_\hbar = \hbar^{-1/2}\varphi$$

[2] A c-number here is a family of time dependent complex numbers indexed by $I$. It be can identified with a vector in $\mathfrak{h}$. In the language of quantum mechanics c-numbers are the opposite of $\Gamma_{\hbar,t}^{(1)}$, operators in an Hilbert space.

Then (10.31) becomes

$$i\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{a}-\varphi_\hbar) = H_2'(\mathbf{a}-\varphi_\hbar) + \hbar^{-1/2}H_{\geq 3}'\big(\hbar^{1/2}(\mathbf{a}-\varphi_\hbar)\big)$$

Let us now introduce the Weyl operator for any $(\alpha_i)_{i\in I}$

$$T(\alpha) = \exp\Big[\sum_{i\in I}\big(\alpha_i a_i^* - \alpha_i^* a_i\big)\Big] = \exp\big(a^*(\alpha) - a(\alpha)\big), \quad \text{where } \alpha = \sum_{i\in I}\alpha_i e_i \tag{10.33}$$

where we have chosen initial time $s = 0$ for solving equation (10.29). Recall that $T(\alpha)$ are unitary and obey

$$T(\alpha)^*\mathbf{a}T(\alpha) = \mathbf{a} + \alpha$$

Note that here we have chosen coordinates in $\mathfrak{h}$. If $f = \sum_{i\in I}\alpha_i e_i$ we have $T(f) = T(\alpha)$.

We define a new variable $\mathbf{b}(t)$ as

$$\mathbf{b}(t) = T\big(\varphi_\hbar(s)\big)^*\big(\mathbf{a}(t) - \varphi_\hbar(t)\big)T\big(\varphi_\hbar(s)\big)$$

The initial value problem for (10.29) then reduces to finding a family $\mathbf{b}(t)$ of operators satisfying the (**CCR**) and the relations

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbf{b}(0) = \mathbf{a} \\ &i\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{b} = H_2'(\mathbf{b}) + \hbar^{-1/2}H_{\geq 3}'\big(\hbar^{1/2}\mathbf{b}\big) \end{aligned} \tag{10.34}$$

Note that the second term in the right hand side of (10.34) is $O(\hbar^{1/2})$ since $H_{\geq 3}'$ has degree at least two. Therefore $\mathbf{b}(t)$ is expected to converge towards the solution of the linearized equation

$$i\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{b}' = H_2'\big(\mathbf{b}'\big), \quad \mathbf{b}'(0) = \mathbf{a} \tag{10.35}$$

which governs the quantum fluctuations around the classical equation. We introduce the propagator $U_2(t,s)$ defined by the quadratic Hamiltonian $\hat{H}_2(t)$:

$$i\frac{d}{dt}U_2(t,s) = \hat{H}_2(t)U_2(t,s), \quad U(s,s) = \mathbb{1}$$

So we have

$$\mathbf{b}'(t) = U_2(t,0)^*\mathbf{a}U_2(t,0)$$

In the same way, the time evolution of operators $\mathbf{b}(t)$ will be implemented by a unitary group $W(t,s)$ such that

$$\mathbf{b}(t) = W(t,0)^*\mathbf{a}W(t,0)$$

where $W(t,s)$ obeys the differential equation

$$i\frac{d}{dt}W(t,s) = \left\{H_2(\mathbf{a}) + \hbar^{-1/2}H_{\geq 3}\left(\hbar^{1/2}\mathbf{a}\right)\right\}W(t,s), \quad W(s,s) = \mathbb{1} \qquad (10.36)$$

One has the following result, which is easily proved using Lemma 67.

**Proposition 119** *One has*

$$W(t,s) = \exp\left(i\omega_\hbar(t,s)\right)\hat{T}\left(\varphi_\hbar(t)\right)U(t-s)\hat{T}\left(\varphi_\hbar(s)\right)$$

*with*

$$U(t-s) = \exp\left\{-i\hbar^{-1}(t-s)H(\mathbf{a}_\hbar)\right\}$$

*and*

$$\omega_\hbar(t,s) = \hbar^{-1}\int_s^t d\tau\,\left\{H\left(\varphi(\tau)\right) - \Re\left\langle\varphi(\tau), H_1'\left(\varphi(\tau)\right)\right\rangle\right\}$$

Therefore we have proven at least formally the following result:

**Proposition 120**

$$T\left(\varphi_\hbar(s)\right)^* U(t-s)^*\left(\mathbf{a}(s) - \varphi_\hbar(t)\right)U(t-s)T\left(\varphi_\hbar(s)\right) = W(t,s)^*\mathbf{a}(s)W(t,s)$$

*with $U(t)$ and $W(t,s)$ given by Proposition* 119.

The difficult mathematical problem is to analyze the unitary propagators $U_2(t,s)$ and $W(t,s)$.

One has the following result (see [113]):

Let $\varphi(t,x)$ be a solution of the classical equation (10.32) with initial data $\varphi$ at $t = s$. For $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ let us define

$$\varphi^\sharp(f,t) = \int dx\, f(x)\varphi^\sharp(t,x)$$

Similarly consider the solutions $\mathbf{b}'(t)$ of the linearized problem (10.35). Let

$$\left(b'\right)^\sharp(t,f) = \sum_{i\in I}\bar{f}_i b_i'(t), \quad \text{if } f = \sum_{i\in I} f_i e_i$$

As usual define the operator valued distributions $(b')^\sharp(t,x)$ such that

$$\left(b'\right)^\sharp(t,f) = \int dx\, f(x)\left(b'\right)^\sharp(t,x)$$

Here $\sharp$ denotes either nothing or $*$.

It is possible to apply the strategy described above to prove semi-classical limit results for boson systems when $\hbar \searrow 0$. The Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$ is defined as

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\hbar}{2}\int dx\, \nabla a^*(x)\cdot\nabla a(x) + \frac{\hbar^2}{2}\int dx\, dy\, V(x-y)a^*(x)a^*(y)a(y)a(x) \quad (10.37)$$

Note that the limit $\hbar \searrow 0$ is equivalent to the mean-field limit $N \nearrow +\infty$ considered in [168] ($N = \hbar^{-1}$) for the Hamiltonian

$$\mathbf{H_N} = \frac{1}{2}\int dx\, \nabla a^*(x)\cdot\nabla a(x) + \frac{1}{2N}\int dx\, dy\, V(x-y)a^*(x)a^*(y)a(y)a(x) \quad (10.38)$$

Here we have

$$H_1' = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\varphi(x) + \varphi(x)\int dy\, V(x-y)\big|\varphi(y)\big|^2 \quad (10.39)$$

so that one requires that the classical evolution $\varphi_t(x) = \varphi(t, x)$ is a solution of the Hartree equation:

$$i\frac{d}{dt}\varphi_t = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\varphi_t + \varphi_t\big(V * |\varphi_t|^2\big) \quad (10.40)$$

To state rigorous results some technical assumptions are needed for the potential $V$. Recall the following definition (see [115] for more details). For simplicity we only consider the case $\mathfrak{h} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$.

**Definition 23** A potential $V(x)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$ is called a Hardy potential if $V$ is real and there exists $C > 0$ such that

$$\|V\varphi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)} \le C\|\varphi\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^3)}, \quad \forall \varphi \in H^1\big(\mathbb{R}^3\big) \quad (10.41)$$

It is well known that if $V(x) = \frac{c}{|x|}$, $c \in \mathbb{R}$ then $V$ is a Hardy potential (by the usual Hardy inequality). Hardy class potentials included the Kato class potentials. (see [115] for details).

The following proposition is a particular case of more general ones concerning Hartree equation [88]. The following proposition is sketched in [168], Remark 1.3. In [86–88] more refined results are given concerning solutions for Hartree equation with singular potentials.

**Proposition 121** *Let $V(x)$ be a Hardy potential. Let $\varphi_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^3)$. Then equation* (10.40) *has a unique solution $\varphi \in \mathscr{C}(\mathbb{R}, H^1(\mathbb{R}^3))$. Furthermore one has the property of conservation of the $L^2$-norm and of the energy*:

$$\|\varphi_t\| = \|\varphi_0\|, \quad \forall t \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$\mathscr{E}(\varphi_t) = \mathscr{E}(\varphi_0), \quad \forall t \in \mathbb{R}$$

*where*

$$\mathscr{E}(\varphi) = \frac{1}{2}\|\nabla\varphi\|^2 + \frac{1}{2}\int dx\,dy\,V(x-y)\big|\varphi(x)\big|^2\big|\varphi(y)\big|^2$$

**Proposition 122** *Let $V(x)$ be an even Hardy potential. Assume that the initial data for the Hartree equation satisfy $\varphi_s \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^3)$. Then one has for $|t-s| < T$:*

(i) *The Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$ is essentially self-adjoint on the dense subspace $\mathscr{F}_{0,0}$ of the finite particle states with compact supported Fourier transform. In particular the time evolutions $U(t)$, $U_2(t,s)$ and $W(t,s)$ are well defined and are unitary operators in the Fock space $\mathscr{F}_B(L^2(\mathbb{R}^3))$.*

(ii) *We have the following limit result for the fluctuation operator around the classical solution $\varphi(t)$:*

$$\mathrm{s}-\lim_{\hbar\to 0} W(t,s) = U_2(t,s) \tag{10.42}$$

(iii) *One also has*

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{s}-\lim_{\hbar\to 0} T(\varphi_\hbar)^* U(t-s)^* \exp\big[\big(a^*(f) - \overline{\varphi_\hbar}(f,t)\big) - \mathrm{h.c.}\big] U(t-s) T(\varphi_\hbar) \\ &\quad = \exp\big[\big(b'\big)^*(f,t) - b'\big(f^*,t\big)\big] \end{aligned} \tag{10.43}$$

*where $\varphi_\hbar = \hbar^{-1/2}\varphi$.*

*Proof* This proposition is essentially due to Hepp [113].

It is well known that for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $\mathbf{H}$ is essentially self-adjoint in $\overset{k}{\vee} L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ so we find that $\mathbf{H}$ is essentially self-adjoint.

(ii) is proved with Duhamel formula and the following weight estimate for $U_2(t,s)$ proved in [87]. In this case the generator $H_2$ of $U_2(t,s)$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} H_2 = &\frac{1}{2}\int dx\,\nabla a^*(x)\cdot\nabla a(x) + \frac{1}{2}\int dx\,dy\,V(x-y)\big|\varphi_t(y)\big|^2 a^*(x)a(x) \\ &+ \frac{1}{2}\int dx\,dy\,\varphi_t(x)V(x-y)\big|\bar{\varphi}_t(y)\big|^2 a^*(x)a(y) + L^* + L \end{aligned} \tag{10.44}$$

where

$$L = \frac{1}{2}\int dx\,dy\,\bar{\varphi}_t(x)V(x-y)\bar{\varphi}_t(y)a(x)a(y) \tag{10.45}$$

**Lemma 68** *For every $\delta > 0$ and every $T > 0$ there exists $C(\delta,T)$ such that*

$$\big\|\langle\mathbf{N}\rangle^\delta U_2(t,s)\langle\mathbf{N}\rangle^{-\delta}\big\| \le C(\delta,T), \quad \text{for } |t-s| \le T \tag{10.46}$$

The Duhamel formula gives

$$W(t,s) = U_2(t,s) - i\int_s^t W(t,\tau)\big(\hbar^{1/2}H_3(\tau,\mathbf{a}) + \hbar H_4(\mathbf{a})\big)U_2(\tau,s)\,d\tau \tag{10.47}$$

where $H_3(t, \mathbf{a}) = A_3(t) + A_3(t)^*$ and

$$A_3(t) = \int dy\, dx\, V(x-y)\bar{\varphi}_t(x)a^*(y)a(y)a(x) \tag{10.48}$$

and

$$H_4 = \int dy\, dx\, V(x-y)a^*(x)a^*(y)a(y)a(x) \tag{10.49}$$

Using that $\mathscr{F}_{0,0}$ is dense in $\mathscr{F}(L^2(\mathbb{R}^3))$ and that $W(t,s)$ is unitary in $\mathscr{F}(L^2(\mathbb{R}^3))$, it is enough to prove that

$$\lim_{\hbar\to 0} W(t,s)\Psi = U_2(t,s)\Psi, \quad \text{for every } \Psi \in \mathscr{F}_{0,0} \tag{10.50}$$

This result is proved using (10.47), (10.48), (10.49), assumptions on $V$ and $\varphi$ and standard estimates.

(iii) is proven using Proposition 120 and (i). □

**Corollary 28** *Let* **A** *be a smooth and bounded function of* **a** *and* **a** (*see* [19]). *Then we have the following semi-classical limit evolution for quantum expectations in coherent states*:

$$\begin{aligned}&\lim_{\hbar\to 0}\big\langle U(t)\Psi(\varphi_\hbar), U(t)\mathbf{A}\big(\mathbf{a}-\varphi_\hbar, \mathbf{a}^*-\bar{\varphi}_\hbar\big)U(t)\Psi(\varphi_\hbar)\big\rangle \\ &\quad = \big\langle \Omega, A\big(\mathbf{b}'(t), \mathbf{b}'(t)^*\big)\Omega\big\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{10.51}$$

*where* $\mathbf{b}'(t) = U_2(t,0)^*\mathbf{a}U_2(t,0)$ *is the linear evolution at the classical evolution* $\varphi(t)$.

*Remark 56* In [88] the authors proved a full asymptotic expansion in $\hbar^{1/2}$ for a dense subset of states $\psi$. We shall see later that we have a better result if $V$ is bounded.

### *10.4.3 Remainder Estimates in the Hepp Method*

Hepp method was revisited by Ginibre–Velo [88, 89] to extend it to singular potential and to get quantum correction in $\hbar$ at any order. The spirit of the works of [88, 89] is to exploit the differential equation (10.36) (and the formula (10.47)) to write a Dyson series expansion for $W(t,s)$. The authors obtain a power series in $\hbar^{1/2}$ and study its analyticity properties in $\kappa := \hbar^{1/2}$. For bounded potentials $V$ this series can be shown to be Borel summable in vector norm when applied to fixed $\hbar$-independent vectors taken from a suitable dense set including coherent states. The potential $V$ is also assumed to be stable, which means that there exists a constant $B \ge 0$ such that

$$H_4 + B\mathbf{N} \ge 0 \tag{10.52}$$

(**N** is the number operator (10.17)).

Roughly speaking it means that the potential is sufficiently repulsive near the origin if attractive somewhere else. More explicitly we can find in [171] a sufficient condition of stability for a potential $V$. $H_4$ has the following expression:

$$(H_4\Psi)^{(k)}(x_1,\ldots,x_k)=\sum_{i<j}V(x_i-x_j)\Psi^{(k)}(x_1,\ldots,x_k)$$

Let $V$ be such that

$$\begin{aligned}V(x)&\geq\varphi_1\big(|x|\big),\quad \text{for } |x|\leq r_1\\ V(x)&\geq-\varphi_2\big(|x|\big),\quad \text{for } |x|\geq r_2\end{aligned}\tag{10.53}$$

where $\varphi_1,\varphi_2$ are positive decreasing on $]0,r_1[$, $[r_2,+\infty[$, respectively, and for some $\nu>3$ we have

$$\int\varphi_1(t)t^{\nu-1}\,dt=+\infty,\qquad\int\varphi_2(t)t^{\nu-1}\,dt<+\infty$$

Then $V$ is stable ([171], Proposition 3.2.8).

Remark that the stability condition is a restriction on the negative part of $V$.

Before to state the summability result let us recall some definitions concerning asymptotic series.

Consider a formal power complex series $f^\sharp(\kappa)=\sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}}\alpha_j\kappa^j$.

**Definition 24**

(i) $f^\sharp$ is a Gevrey series of order $1/s$, $s>0$, if there exist $C>0$, $\rho>0$ such that

$$|\alpha|\leq C\rho^j(j!)^{1/s},\quad\forall j\in\mathbb{N}\tag{10.54}$$

(ii) The $s$-Borel transform of the Gevrey series $f^\sharp$ is defined as

$$\mathscr{B}_sf(\tau)=\sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}}\frac{\alpha_j}{\Gamma(1+\frac{j}{s})}\tau^j\tag{10.55}$$

where the series converges for $\tau\in\mathbb{C}$, $|\tau|<\rho^{-1}$.

(iii) The Gevrey series $f^\sharp$ is said Borel $s$-summable if

(iii)$_1$ its $s$-Borel transform $\mathscr{B}_sf$ has an analytic extension to a neighborhood of the positive real axis,

(iii)$_2$ the following integral:

$$\int_0^\infty du\,\mathscr{B}_sf(u)u^{s-1}\mathrm{e}^{-(\frac{u}{\kappa})^s}$$

converges for $0<\kappa<\kappa_0$.

If this holds then we say that $f^\sharp$ has a $s$-Borel sum $f(\kappa)$ defined by

$$f(\kappa)=s\kappa^{-s}\int_0^\infty du\,\mathscr{B}_sf(u)u^{s-1}\mathrm{e}^{-(\frac{u}{\kappa})^s}\tag{10.56}$$

*Remark 57*

(i) For $s = 1$ the above definition corresponds to the usual Borel summability.
(ii) At the formal level, formula (10.56) is easy to check using definition of $\Gamma$ function and changes of variables.
(iii) $(j!)^{j/s}$ and $\Gamma(1 + \frac{j}{s})$ have the same order as $j \to$ as a consequence of the Stirling formula

$$\Gamma(1+u) = \sqrt{2\pi u}\left(\frac{u}{\mathrm{e}}\right)^u \big(1 + o(1)\big) \quad \text{as } u \to +\infty.$$

We state now a sufficient condition for Borel summability due to Watson, Nevanlinna and Sokal (see [161, 180] and references with extension to any $s > 0$).

**Theorem 46** *Let $f$ be an holomorphic function in the complex domain $D_{s,R} := \{\kappa \in \mathbb{C}, \Re\kappa^{-s} > R^{-s}\}$ for some $s > 0$. Assume that there exist $C > 0$, $\rho > 0$ such that in this domain we have*

$$\left| f(\kappa) - \sum_{0 \le j < N} \alpha_j \kappa^j \right| \le C\rho^N (N!)^{1/s} |\kappa|^N \tag{10.57}$$

*Then the power series $\sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}} \alpha_j \kappa^j$ is $s$-Borel summable and its $s$-Borel sum is equal to $f(\kappa)$ in $D_{s,R}$.*

*In particular on the interval $]0, \kappa_0]$, $f(\kappa)$ is uniquely determined by its asymptotic expansion.*

*Remark 58* Estimate (10.57) on the interval $]0, \kappa_0]$ entails that $f(\kappa)$ is determined by its asymptotic expansion up to an exponentially small error like $\mathrm{e}^{-c\kappa^{-s}}$ $c > 0$. This is easily seen by stopping the series at the order $N \approx \frac{\delta}{\kappa^s}$ with $\delta$ small enough. Adding an analytic condition in a suitable domain as in the above theorem erase this error term so that $f(\kappa)$ is uniquely determined.

The following result gives an accurate asymptotic description for the quantum fluctuation operator $W(t, s)$, improving Proposition 122.

**Theorem 47** *Let $V$ be stable and bounded potential. Let $\varphi \in \mathscr{C}^1(\mathbb{R}, L^2(\mathbb{R}^3))$ be a solution of Hartree equation (10.40). Let $\beta > 0$ and $\Phi \in \mathscr{D}(\exp(\beta N))$. Then there exists $\theta > 0$ such that for all $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$, $t \ge s$ such that $t - s \le \theta$, $W(t, s)\Phi$ is analytic in $\kappa$ in the sector $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \operatorname{Arg}\kappa < 0$, $|z|$ small and has an asymptotic expansion at $\kappa = 0$ which is 2-Borel summable to $W(t, s)\Phi$ itself. The constant $\theta$ depends on $V$, $\beta$, $\varphi$ but can be taken independent of $B$ and uniform in $V$ for $\|V\|_\infty$ and $B$ bounded, and uniform in $\varphi$ for $\|\varphi\|$ bounded.*

*Proof* We only give here the main steps for the proof. We refer to the paper [88] for a detailed proof.

A first step is to consider the Duhamel formula (10.47). By iterating it we get a Dyson series. Then by reordering the Dyson series we get a formal power series in $\hbar^{1/2}$:

$$W^{\sharp}(t,s) = \sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}} \hbar^{j/2} W_j(t,s) \tag{10.58}$$

where the coefficient $W_j(t,s)$ are operators. $W_0(t,s) = U_2(t,s)$.

In a second step, 2-Gevrey type estimates[3] are obtained for $W_j(t,s)\Phi$ where $\Phi \in \mathscr{D}(\mathrm{e}^{\varepsilon \mathbf{N}})$, $\varepsilon > 0$ (Proposition 3.1 in [88]).

In a third step it is proved that $W(t,s)\Phi$ has an analytic expansion in $\kappa := \hbar^{1/2}$ in a domain like $D_{2,R}$. Here the stability condition is used.

The last step consists of estimating the remainder term of the asymptotic expansion of $W(t,s)\Psi$ in $\kappa$ small. To do that the Dyson series expansion is performed in two steps, introducing an auxiliary evolution operator $U_4(t,s)$ obeying

$$i\frac{d}{dt}U_4(t,s) = \big(H_2(t) + \hbar H_4\big)U_4(t,s)$$

Then if $U_2(t,s)$ is the propagator for $H_2(t)$ (which describes the evolution of the quantum fluctuations), one has

$$U_4(t,s) = U_2(t,s) - i\int_s^t d\tau\, U_2(t,\tau)\hbar H_4 U_4(\tau,s)$$
$$W(t,s) = U_4(t,s) - i\int_s^t d\tau\, U_4(t,\tau)\hbar^{1/2} H_3 W(\tau,s)$$

Then it can be proved that the series $\sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}} \hbar^{j/2} W_j(t,s)\Phi$ is 2-Borel summable and its 2-Borel sum is $W(t,s)\Phi$. □

Using similar methods the case of unbounded potentials has been considered in [89]. The authors obtain the same analyticity domain as in [88] of $W(t,s)$ with respect to $\kappa = \hbar^{1/2}$ and see that the series is still asymptotic (in the Poincaré sense) and Gevrey of order 2. It is not known that the series is still 2-Borel summable for singular potentials. Note that $\mathscr{D}(\exp(\beta N))$ contains the coherent states $\Psi(f)$, $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$.

### 10.4.4 Time Evolution of Coherent States

We have seen that Hepp's method concerns the quantum fluctuations in a neighborhood of a classical trajectory. It does not give information on the quantum motion

[3] Notions of Borel summability have been defined before for complex valued series, extension to vector valued series is straightforward.

itself, in particular when the initial state is a coherent state. In Chap. 4 this problem was considered for finite boson systems. Our goal here is to explain an extension of this result for large systems of bosons, following the paper [168].

According to the previous section one has to study the evolution operator $\mathbf{U}(t) = e^{-i\mathbf{H}_\hbar t}$ associated with the Hamiltonian

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{2}\int dx\,\nabla a^*(x)\cdot\nabla a(x) + \frac{\hbar}{2}\int dx\,dy\,V(x-y)a^*(x)a^*(y)a(y)a(x)$$

by the evolution equation

$$i\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{U}(t) = \mathbf{H}\mathbf{U}(t)$$

and apply it to the coherent state $\Psi(\hbar^{-1/2}\varphi)$ where $\varphi_\hbar = \hbar^{-1/2}\varphi$, $\varphi$ is a solution of the Hartree equation (10.40). By definition the Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}$ leaves sectors $\overset{k}{\vee}L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ with fixed number of particles invariant. One thus have

$$U(t)^*\mathbf{N}U(t) = \mathbf{N} \tag{10.59}$$

One has the following result. $\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t}$ (defined at the end of Sect. 10.3) is the marginal operator in the one particle space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ deduced from the quantum evolution $\mathbf{U}(t)\Psi(\varphi_\hbar)$ of the coherent state $\Psi(\varphi_\hbar)$. Recall that in an Hilbert space $\mathfrak{h}$ the trace-norm of an operator $A$ is defined as $\|A\|_{\mathrm{Tr}} = \sqrt{\mathrm{Tr}(A^*A)}$ (see Chap. 1).

**Theorem 48** *Suppose that $V$ is a Hardy potential (see (10.41)). Then there exist constants $C, K > 0$ (only depending on the $H^1(\mathbb{R}^3)$ norm of $\varphi$ and on $C$) such that*

$$\left\|\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t} - |\varphi_t\rangle\langle\varphi_t|\right\|_{\mathrm{Tr}} \le C\hbar e^{Kt}, \quad t \in \mathbb{R} \tag{10.60}$$

*$\varphi_t$ is the solution of Hartree equation (10.40) at time $t$ with $\|\varphi_0\| = 1$.*

*Proof* We shall give here the main ideas of the proof. The details are in the paper [168].

We now write the function $\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t}(x,y)$ using (10.28). One has to calculate the denominator:

$$\left\langle U(t)\psi(\varphi_\hbar)\Omega, \mathbf{N}U(t)\psi(\varphi_\hbar)\Omega\right\rangle$$

Using (10.59) we are left with

$$\left\langle \psi(\varphi_\hbar)\Omega, \mathbf{N}\psi(\varphi_\hbar)\Omega\right\rangle$$

We now use the translation property of the Weyl operator:

$$T(\varphi_\hbar)^*\mathbf{N}T(\varphi_\hbar) = \int dx\,\big(a^*(x) - \bar{\varphi}_\hbar(x)\big)\big(a(x) - \varphi_\hbar(x)\big) \tag{10.61}$$

But using that $a(x)\Omega = 0$ we see that the expectation value of (10.61) in the vacuum simply equals

$$\hbar^{-1}\|\varphi\|^2 = \hbar^{-1}$$

Therefore $\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t}(x,y)$ has the following decomposition:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t}(x,y)\\
&\quad= \hbar\big\langle \Omega, T\big(\hbar^{-1/2}\varphi\big)^* U(t)^* a^*(y)a(x)U(t)T\big(\hbar^{-1/2}\varphi\big)\Omega\big\rangle\\
&\quad= \bar\varphi_t(y)\varphi_t(x) + \hbar^{1/2}\bar\varphi(y)\big\langle \Omega, T(\varphi_\hbar)^* U(t)^*\big(a(x)-\varphi_{t,\hbar}(x)\big)U(t)T(\varphi_\hbar)\Omega\big\rangle\\
&\qquad+ \hbar^{1/2}\varphi_t(x)\big\langle \Omega, T(\varphi_\hbar)^* U(t)^*\big(a^*(x)-\varphi_{t,\hbar}(y)\big)T(\varphi_\hbar)\Omega\big\rangle\\
&\qquad+ \hbar\big\langle \Omega, T(\varphi_\hbar)^* U(t)^*\big(a^*(y)-\bar\varphi_{t,\hbar}(y)\big)\big(a(x)-\varphi_{t,\hbar}(x)\big)U(t)T(\varphi_\hbar)\Omega\big\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Now we use the fact demonstrated in the previous section that

$$T(\varphi_{s,\hbar})^* U(t)^*\big(a(x)-\varphi_{t,\hbar}(x)\big)U(t)T(\varphi_{s,\hbar}) = W(t,s)^* a(x) W(t,s)$$

Thus we get the equality between the two kernels:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t}(x,y) - \varphi_t(x)\bar\varphi_t(y) &= \hbar\big\langle \Omega, W(t,0)^* a^*(y)a(x)W(t,0)\Omega\big\rangle\\
&\quad+ \hbar^{1/2}\varphi_t(x)\big\langle \Omega, W(t,0)^* a^*(y)W(t,0)\Omega\big\rangle\\
&\quad+ \hbar^{1/2}\bar\varphi_t(y)\big\langle \Omega, W(t,0)^* a(x)W(t,0)\Omega\big\rangle \qquad (10.62)
\end{aligned}$$

It is remarked in [168] that here it is enough to estimate the Hilbert–Schmidt norm of $\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t} - |\varphi_t\rangle\langle\varphi_t|$ instead of its trace-norm. So the main technical part of the paper [168] is to show that the $L^2$ norm in $(x,y)$ of the right hand side of (10.62) is bounded above by $C\hbar e^{Kt}$, using suitable approximation of the dynamics $W(t,s)$. As in [88, 89] $W(t,s)$ is compared with the dynamics $U_4(t,s)$ generated by $H_2(t) + \hbar H_4$ (without the $H_3(t)$ term), namely

$$i\frac{d}{dt}U_4(t,s) = \big(H_2(t) + \hbar H_4\big)U_4(t,s)$$

In [168] the following lemmas are proven.

**Lemma 69** *One has*

$$\big\|\big(W(t,0) - U_4(t,0)\big)\Omega\big\| \le C\hbar^{1/2}e^{Kt}$$

**Lemma 70**

$$\big\langle W(t,0)\Omega, \mathbf{N}W(t,0)\Omega\big\rangle \le Ce^{Kt}$$

Now, introducing $U_4(t,s)$, the right hand side of (10.62) is rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t}(x,y) - \varphi_t(x)\bar{\varphi}_t(y) \\
&\quad = \hbar\big\langle \Omega, W(t,0)^* a^*(y) a(x) W(t,0)\Omega\big\rangle \\
&\qquad + \hbar^{1/2}\varphi_t(x)\Big(\big\langle \Omega, W(t,0)^* a^*(y)\big(W(t,0) - U_4(t,0)\big)\Omega\big\rangle \\
&\qquad + \big\langle \Omega, \big(W(t,0)^* - U_4(t,0)^*\big) a^*(y) U_4(t,0)^*\Omega\big\rangle\Big) \\
&\qquad + \hbar^{1/2}\bar{\varphi}_t(y)\Big(\big\langle \Omega, W(t,s)^* a(x)\big(W(t,s) - U_4(t,s)\big)\Omega\big\rangle \\
&\qquad + \big\langle \Omega, \big(W(t,s)^* - U_4(t,s)^*\big) a(x) U_4(t,s)\Omega\big\rangle\Big)
\end{aligned} \tag{10.63}$$

where we use that $U_4(t,s)$ preserves the parity of the number of particles:

$$\big\langle \Omega, U_4(t,s)^* a^*(y) U_4(t,s)\Omega\big\rangle = \big\langle \Omega, U_4(t,s)^* a(x) U_4(t,s)\Omega\big\rangle = 0$$

Then we get from Lemmas 69 and 70 the Hilbert–Schmidt estimate

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^3\times\mathbb{R}^3} dx\, dy\, \big|\Gamma^{(1)}_{\hbar,t}(x,y) - \varphi_t(x)\bar{\varphi}_t(y)\big|^2 \le C\hbar^2 \mathrm{e}^{2Kt}, \quad \forall t \ge 0$$

*Remark 59* In [43] the authors have extended the previous result to the case of arbitrary factorized initial data.

# Chapter 11
# Fermionic Coherent States

**Abstract** This chapter is an introduction to some computation techniques for fermionic states. After defining Grassmann algebras it is possible to get a classical analogue for the fermionic degrees of freedom in a quantum system. Following the basic work of Berezin (The Method of Second Quantization, 1966; Introduction to Superanalysis, 1987), we show that we can compute with Grassmann numbers as we do with complex numbers: derivation, integration, Fourier transform. After that we show that we have quantization formula for fermionic observables. In particular there exists a Moyal product formula. As an application we consider explicit computations for propagators with quadratic Hamiltonians in annihilation and creation operators.

## 11.1 Introduction

We have seen in the Chapter on Bosons that relations (CCR) can be realized with real or complex numbers. We see here that anti-commutation relations (CAR) need to introduce a new kind of number, nilpotent, called a Grassmann number. In some sense, nilpotence is classically equivalent to the Pauli exclusion principle which characterize fermions. This appears to be strange from a physicist point of view because Pauli exclusion principle is a purely quantum property, without classical analogue. Nevertheless such a mathematical model exists. Even if "classical fermions" do not exist in Nature, they are a convenient mathematical tool for computations and allow to put on the same footing bosons and fermions. This is important to elaborate supersymmetric models which will be considered in more details in the next Chapter.

Our main goal here is to introduce fermionic coherent states and to describe their properties. The main difference from the bosonic case considered in Chap. 1 is that we have to replace complex numbers by Grassmann numbers. So the constructions have to be revisited with some care. So we shall study in more details Grassmann algebras and we shall see that many properties and constructions well known for usual numbers can be extended to Grassmann algebras. Our construction of fermionic coherent states mainly follows the paper [37]. We also consider in more details the propagation of Fermions for quadratic evolutions.

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_11, 

In [21] (see the book [156], Chap. 9) the author introduced Fermionic coherent states from another point of view, without Grassmann algebras. He have considered an irreducible representation of the rotation group $SO(2n,\mathbb{R})$ (for a system of $n$ fermions) called the spin representation. We shall see that the two point of views are mathematically equivalent.

## 11.2 From Fermionic Fock Spaces to Grassmann Algebras

It follows from the Chapter on bosons that the fermionic Fock space is the Hilbert space $\mathscr{F}_F(\mathfrak{h}) = \bigoplus_{k\in\mathbb{N}} \wedge^k\mathfrak{h}$, where $\mathfrak{h}$ is the one fermion space and $\wedge^k\mathfrak{h}$ is the anti-symmetric tensor spanned by the states

$$\frac{1}{k!}\sum_{\pi\in\mathfrak{S}_k} \varepsilon_\pi \psi_{\pi 1}\otimes\psi_{\pi 2}\otimes\cdots\times\psi_{\pi k}, \qquad \psi_j\in\mathfrak{h}.$$

The annihilation and creation operators $a(f)$, $a^*(f)$ are bounded operators in $\mathscr{F}_F(\mathfrak{h})$. This is a consequence of the Canonical Anti-commutation Relation

$$a(f_1)a^*(f_2)+a^*(f_1)a(f_2) = \langle f_1, f_2\rangle \mathbb{1}. \tag{11.1}$$

Let us begin with an explicit model to realize CAR relations (11.1) which is called the spin model.

We start with $\mathscr{H}_F = \mathbb{C}^2$ and the matrices

$$\sigma_+ = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1\\ 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}, \qquad \sigma_- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0\\ 1 & 0\end{pmatrix}.$$

So we have (CAR) for $a=\sigma_-$ and $a^*=\sigma_+$:

$$[\sigma_+,\sigma_-]_+ = \mathbb{1}_2, \qquad \sigma_+^2 = \sigma_-^2 = 0.$$

This is a model for one state spin. We have the number operator $N = a^*a = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 0\\ 0 & 0\end{smallmatrix}\right)$ and the ground state is $e_0 = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 0\\ 1\end{smallmatrix}\right)$.

We get a model for $n$ spin states in the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}_H = (\mathbb{C}^2)^{\otimes n} = \mathbb{C}^{2^n}$. The annihilation and creation operators are

$$a_k = \underbrace{\sigma_3\otimes\cdots\sigma_3}_{k-1}\otimes a\otimes\underbrace{\mathbb{1}_2\otimes\cdots\otimes\mathbb{1}_2}_{n-k},$$

$$a_k^* = \underbrace{\sigma_3\otimes\cdots\sigma_3}\otimes a*\otimes\underbrace{\mathbb{1}_2\otimes\cdots\otimes\mathbb{1}_2}_{n-k}.$$

The ground state is here $\Omega_0 = \underbrace{e_0\otimes\cdots\otimes e_0}_{n}$.

This model is unitary equivalent to the fermionic Fock model with $\mathfrak{h} = \mathbb{C}^n$. We have

$$\mathscr{H}_F = \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C}^n \oplus \left(\wedge^2 \mathbb{C}^n\right) \oplus \cdots \oplus \left(\wedge^n \mathbb{C}^n\right).$$

Notice that $\dim(\mathscr{H}_F) = 2^n$.

Let us give now some specific properties for the general fermionic Fock model (for detailed proofs see [33]).

**Proposition 123**

(1) *For every $f \in \mathfrak{h}$, $a(f)$ and $a^*(f)$ are bounded operators in $\mathscr{F}_F(\mathfrak{h})$:*

$$\|a(f)\| = \|a^*(f)\| = \|f\|, \quad \forall f \in \mathfrak{h}. \tag{11.2}$$

(2) *Let $\{\varphi_j\}_{j\in J}$ be an orthonormal basis for $\mathfrak{h}$. The family of states defined as*

$$\psi_{j_1, j_2, \ldots, j_k} = a^*(\varphi_{j_1}) \cdots a^*(\varphi_{j_n})\Omega, \quad j_k \in J,\ n \geq 0,$$

*is an orthonormal basis for $\mathscr{F}_F(\mathfrak{h})$.*

(3) *If $T$ is a bounded operator in $\mathscr{F}_F(\mathfrak{h})$ commuting with all the operators $a(f)$ and $a^*(g)$, $f, g \in \mathfrak{h}$, then $T = \lambda \mathbb{1}$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.*

Property (3) of the proposition means that the Fock representation for Fermion is irreducible.

When the system has $n$ identical particles the creation/annihilation operators are denoted $a_j^{(*)} := a^{(*)}(\varphi_j)$, $1 \leq j \leq n$.

A natural problem is to represent the commutation relations (CAR) with derivative and multiplication operators as can be done for (CCR) with $q$ and $\frac{d}{dq}$ or in the Fock–Bargmann representation (see Chap. 1). In other words we would like to represent anti-commutation relations like

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\theta + \theta\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} = \mathbb{1}. \tag{11.3}$$

This is not possible in the naive sense. This problem is equivalent to build a classical analogue for Fermionic observables. In order to satisfy (11.3) it is necessary to replace the usual real or complex numbers by Grassmann variables as was discovered by Berezin [22]. Let us define the Grassmann algebras.

**Definition 25** The Grassmann algebra $\mathscr{G}_n$ with $n$ generators $\{\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n\}$ is an algebra, with unit 1, a product and a $\mathbb{K}$-linear space ($\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$) such that

$$\theta_j\theta_k + \theta_k\theta_j = 0, \quad \forall j, k = 1, \ldots, n$$

and every $g \in \mathscr{G}_n$ can be written as

$$g = c_0(g) + \sum_{k\geq 1}\sum_{j_1,\ldots,j_k} c_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}(g)\theta_{j_1}\cdots\theta_{j_k}, \tag{11.4}$$

where $c_0(g)$ and $c_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}(g)$ are $\mathbb{K}$-numbers.

This definition has some direct algebraic consequences given below and easy to prove

1. In equality (11.4) the decomposition is not unique. We get a unique decomposition if we add in the sum the condition $j_1 < j_2 < \cdots < j_k$. So we get a basis of $\mathcal{G}_n$, $\{\theta_{j_1}\cdots\theta_{j_k}, j_1 < j_2 < \cdots j_k; 1 \geq k \geq n\}$ and its dimension is $2^n$.

   It is sometimes convenient to introduce $\mathcal{E}[n] = \{0,1\}^n$, $\varepsilon = (\varepsilon_1, \ldots, \varepsilon_n)$ where $\varepsilon_k = 0, 1$, and $\theta^\varepsilon = \theta_1^{\varepsilon_1}\cdots\theta_n^{\varepsilon_n}$. So the above basis can be written as $\{\theta^\varepsilon, \varepsilon \in \mathcal{E}[n]\}$. $|\varepsilon| := \varepsilon_1 + \cdots + \varepsilon_n$ is the number of fermionic states occupied. In particular (11.4) can be written as

$$g = \sum_{\varepsilon \in \mathcal{E}[n]} c_\varepsilon(g)\theta^\varepsilon. \tag{11.5}$$

2. $g \in \mathcal{G}_n$ is invertible if and only if $c_0(g) \neq 0$.
3. Equality (11.4) can be interpreted as a generating function for fermionic states where $c_{j_1,\ldots,j_k}(g)$ are the coefficients of a states in the basis $\{\psi_{j_1,j_2,\ldots,j_k}\}$ of Proposition 123.
4. Derivatives are defined as follows. If $g \in \mathcal{G}_n$ we have $g = g_0 + \theta_j g_1$ where $g_0$ and $g_1$ are independent on $\theta_j$. So we define the (left derivative)

$$\frac{\partial g}{\partial \theta_j} = g_1.$$

   We also a right derivative denoted $g\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j}$ and defined by writing $g = g_0 + g_2\theta_j$, where $g_0$ and $g_2$ are $\theta_j$-independent, so $g_2 =: g\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta_j}$.
5. We have (CAR) relations

$$\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j}, \hat{\theta}_k\right]_+ = \delta_{j,k}, \tag{11.6}$$

   where $\hat{\theta}_k$ is left multiplication by $\theta_k$ in $\mathcal{G}_n$ and $[\bullet]_+$ is the anti-commutator in $\mathcal{G}_n$: $[f, g]_+ = fg + gf$.

   Let us remark that (11.6) are analogue for fermions of the commutation relation for bosons in the holomorphic representation (see Chap. 1).

It is possible to write the relations (CAR) in a real form. For a finite system we introduce the self-adjoint operators:

$$\hat{Q}_j = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{2}}\big(a_{F,j} + a^*_{F,j}\big), \qquad \hat{P}_j = i^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{2}}\big(a_{F,j} - a^*_{F,j}\big). \tag{11.7}$$

So (11.6) is transformed in

$$\big[\hat{Q}_j, \hat{Q}_k\big]_+ = \big[\hat{P}_j, \hat{P}_k\big]_+ = \hbar\delta_{j,k}\mathbb{1}\ \big[\hat{Q}_j, \hat{P}_k\big]_+ = 0, \quad 1 \leq j,k \leq n. \tag{11.8}$$

Equation (11.8) can be compared to the relations (CCR): anti-commutators replace commutator. We have seen in Chap. 1 that (CCR) is a representation of the Weyl–

Heisenberg Lie algebra. (CAR) (11.8) is a representation of the Clifford algebra $\mathrm{Cl}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ which is defined below.

**Definition 26** Let $\Phi$ be a symmetric bilinear form on a linear space $V$ (over $K = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$). The Clifford algebra is the associative algebra with unit 1 denoted, $\mathrm{Cl}(V, \Phi)$, generated by $V$ and such that for every $u, v$ in $V$ we have

$$u \cdot v + v \cdot u = \Phi(u, v) \cdot 1. \tag{11.9}$$

Taking $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ with the canonical basis $\{e_k\}_{1 \le k \le n}$ and $\Phi$ the usual scalar product the Clifford algebra $\mathrm{Cl}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the algebra defined by the relations

$$e_j \cdot e_k + e_k \cdot e_j = \delta_{j,k}. \tag{11.10}$$

Hence we see that the anti-commutation relations (11.8) for $\hbar = 1$ define a representations of the Clifford algebra $\mathrm{Cl}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ as the commutation relations (CAR) are a representation of the Weyl–Heisenberg algebra. We shall see later that $\mathrm{Cl}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$ is not a Lie algebra but a graded Lie algebra or super-Lie algebra.

On the other side the representation (11.6) of (CAR) is equivalent to the representation given in Proposition 123.

**Proposition 124** *Let us consider a system of $n$ identical fermions ($\mathfrak{h} = \mathbb{C}^n$). The linear map $\Phi$ from $\mathscr{F}_F(\mathbb{C}^n)$ onto $\mathscr{G}_n$ is defined by*

$$\Phi(\psi_{j_1,\dots,j_k}) = \theta_{j_1} \cdots \theta_{j_k}.$$

*We have*

$$a_j^* = \Phi^{-1} \hat{\theta}_j \Phi, \quad \text{and} \quad a_j = \Phi^{-1} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j} \Phi. \tag{11.11}$$

## 11.3 Integration on Grassmann Algebra

The construction follows the bosonic construction with the important difference that complex numbers are replaced by Grassmann variables, which are anti-commuting. In particular the classical-quantum correspondence has many differences from the bosonic case. The main tool is derivation-integration over Grassmann variables introduced by Berezin and which can appear to be sometimes strange. But it is the right algebra to preserve similarities with Bosons and to have a classical analogue of Fermions.

### *11.3.1 More Properties on Grassmann Algebras*

A Grassmann algebra can be defined on a field $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$. The Grassmann algebra with $n$ generators $\{\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n\}$ will be denoted $\mathscr{G}_n$ or $\mathbb{K}[\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n]$.

In applications, we have to replace $\mathbb{K}$ itself by a Grassmann algebra $\mathscr{G}_m := \mathbb{K}[\zeta_1, \dots, \zeta_m]$ where $[\zeta_j, \zeta_k]_+ = 0$. In this case we shall consider the right $\mathscr{G}_m$-module: $\mathscr{G}_m[\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n]$ with generators $\{\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n\}$. It will be sometimes denoted $\mathscr{G}_n^m$.

More explicitly a generic element $g$ of $\mathscr{G}_n^m$ can be written as

$$g = \sum_{i_1 < \cdots i_k} \theta_{i_1} \cdots \theta_{i_k} \cdot c_{i_1 \cdots i_k},$$

where $c_{i_1 \cdots i_k} \in \mathbb{K}[\zeta_1, \dots, \zeta_m]$. Multiplication of a vector $v$ in $\mathscr{G}_n^m := \mathscr{G}_m[\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n]$ by a Grassmann number $\lambda \in \mathscr{G}_m$ is $v \cdot \lambda$ where $\cdot$ is multiplication in $\mathbb{K}[\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n, \zeta_1, \dots, \zeta_m]$. We also have a left multiplication $\lambda \cdot v$ which may be different from $v \cdot \lambda$.

Recall here that this rule is important because Grassmann algebras are not commutative.

Because of properties of Grassmann variables, it is suitable to introduce the index set $\mathscr{E}[n] = \{0, 1\}^n$. So if $\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]$ then $\varepsilon = (\varepsilon_1, \dots, \varepsilon_n)$ where $\varepsilon_j = 0, 1$. Let us denote $\theta^\varepsilon = \theta_1^{\varepsilon_1} \cdots \theta_n^{\varepsilon_n}$. So the (right)-module $\mathscr{G}_n^m$ has a basis $\{\theta^\varepsilon\}_{\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]}$.

The parity operator is also very useful; it is the linear operator defined by $\mathbf{P}(\theta^\varepsilon) = (-1)^{|\varepsilon|}\theta^\varepsilon$ where $|\varepsilon| = \varepsilon_1 + \cdots \varepsilon_n$. So we have the direct sum decomposition

$$\mathscr{G}_n^m = \mathscr{G}_{n,+}^m \oplus \mathscr{G}_{n,-}^m,$$

where $\mathbf{P} = \mathbb{1}$ on $\mathscr{G}_{n,+}^m$ and $\mathbf{P} = -\mathbb{1}$ on $\mathscr{G}_{n,-}^m$.

Elements in $\mathscr{G}_{n,+}^m$ are said *even* and elements in $\mathscr{G}_{n,-}^m$ are said *odd*.

Let $A$ be a linear operator in $\mathscr{G} := \mathscr{G}_n^m$. $A$ is said even if $A$ and $\mathbf{P}$ commute: $[A, \mathbf{P}] = 0$. In other words that means that $A$ has the following matrix representation:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_+ & 0 \\ 0 & A_- \end{pmatrix},$$

where $A_\pm : \mathscr{G}_{n,\pm} \to \mathscr{G}_{n,\pm}$. The following lemmas are useful in computations.

**Lemma 71** *Even elements commute with every element: if* $\psi \in \mathscr{G}_{n,+}^m$ *and* $\varphi \in \mathscr{G}_n^m$ *then* $\psi\varphi = \varphi\psi$.

*Odd elements anti-commute: if* $\psi \in \mathscr{G}_{n,-}^m$ *and* $\varphi \in \mathscr{G}_{n,-}^m$ *then we have* $[\psi, \varphi]_+ = \psi\varphi + \varphi\psi = 0$

*Proof* Exercise. □

The Leibniz rule for derivative of products depends on parity:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_k}(\psi\varphi) = (\mathbf{P}\psi)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_k}\varphi\right) + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_k}\psi\right)\varphi. \tag{11.12}$$

If $f$ is a smooth function around 0 and $\mathscr{G}$ a Grassmann algebra we can define $f(\psi)$ for every $\psi \in \mathscr{G}$ by the Taylor formula

$$f(\psi) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{N}} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}\psi^k.$$

We remark that the sum is finite because $\psi^k = 0$ if $k > n$. In particular if $\theta = (\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n)$, $\gamma = (\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_n)$ are $2n$ Grassmann generators then $e^{\theta\cdot\gamma}$ is well defined where $\theta \cdot \gamma = \sum_{1\le k\le n} \theta_k\gamma_k$.

**Lemma 72** *If* $k \geq 2$ *we have*

$$\theta_1\theta_2\cdots\theta_k = (-1)^{\mu(k)}\theta_k\theta_{k-1}\cdots\theta_1, \tag{11.13}$$

*where*

$$\mu(k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \textit{if } k \equiv 2, 3 \bmod(4) \\ 0 & \textit{if } k \equiv 0, 1 \bmod(4) \end{cases} \tag{11.14}$$

$$e^{\theta\cdot\gamma} = 1 + \theta\cdot\gamma + \sum_{\varepsilon\in\mathscr{E}[n],|\varepsilon|\ge 2} (-1)^{\nu(\varepsilon)}\theta^{\varepsilon}\gamma^{\varepsilon} \tag{11.15}$$

*where the integer* $\nu(\varepsilon)$ *is defined as follows*:

$$\nu(\varepsilon) = \begin{cases} 1 & \textit{if } |\varepsilon| \equiv 2, 3 \bmod(4) \\ 0 & \textit{if } |\varepsilon| \equiv 0, 1 \bmod(4) \end{cases} \tag{11.16}$$

*Proof* Equation (11.13) is true for $k = 1, 2$. We get the general case by induction on $k$ using Lemma 71.

(11.15) is proved by induction on $n$ using the identity

$$e^{\theta\cdot\gamma} = \prod_{1\le k\le n} e^{\theta_k\gamma_k} = \prod_{1\le k\le n} (1 + \theta_k\gamma_k).$$

□

## *11.3.2 Calculus with Grassmann Numbers*

We have already defined derivatives in Grassmann algebras in the previous section. To preserve analogy with bosons it is useful to define integration in Grassmann variables.

**Definition 27** Consider a Grassmann algebra $\mathscr{G}_n$ with generators $\{\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n\}$.

Let $\psi \in \mathscr{G}_n$ and $1 \le j_1, \dots, j_k \le n$.

$\int \psi \, d\theta_{j_1} \cdots d\theta_{j_k} \in \mathscr{G}_n$ is defined by the following properties.

(i) $\psi \mapsto \int \psi \, d\theta_{j_1} \cdots d\theta_{j_k} \in \mathscr{G}_n$ is linear
(ii) $\int d\theta_j = 0, \forall j = 1, \ldots, n.$
(iii) $\int \theta_j \, d\theta_k = \delta_{j,k}, \forall j, k.$
(iv) $\int d\theta_j \, d\theta_k = 0, \forall j, k.$
(v) $\int \int \psi(\theta_j)\varphi(\theta_k) \, d\theta_j \, d\theta_k = \int \psi(\theta_j) \, d\theta_j \int \varphi(\theta_k) \, d\theta_k, \forall j, k$

We see that for fermions integration coincides with differentiation; we easily find

$$\int \psi \, d\theta_{j_1} \cdots d\theta_{j_k} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_{j_k}} \cdots \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_{j_1}} \psi(\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n). \tag{11.17}$$

This formula will be used to compute integrals.

**Lemma 73** (Change of variables) *Let $A$ be a real invertible $n \times n$ matrix* ($A$ *may have its coefficient in a Grassmann algebra such that $A$ is even and invertible*). *Then we have*

$$\int \psi(A\theta) \, d\theta = \det(A) \int \psi(\theta) \, d\theta. \tag{11.18}$$

*Proof* If $\theta' = \theta A$ we have

$$\theta'_k = \sum_{1 \le j \le n} \theta_j A_{j,k}.$$

Using definition of determinant we get

$$\theta'_n \cdots \theta'_1 = \theta_n \cdots \theta_1 (\det A).$$

But we have $\int \psi \, d\theta = \psi_{(1,\ldots,1)}$ where $\psi_{(1,\ldots,1)}$ is the component of $\psi$ in its expansion $\psi(\theta) = \sum_{\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} \theta^{\varepsilon} \psi_{\varepsilon}$. Hence we deduce (11.18). □

From the Leibnitz rule we deduce an integration by parts the formula:

$$\int \left( \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \theta_k} \right) \varphi \, d\theta^* \, d\theta = \int \mathbf{P}\psi \left( \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial \theta_k} \right) d\theta^* \, d\theta. \tag{11.19}$$

Remark on notation: here $d\theta^* \, d\theta$ means $\prod_{1 \le j \le n} d\theta_j^* \, d\theta_j$. Sometimes it will be denoted $d^2\theta$.

### *11.3.3 Gaussian Integrals*

In order to preserve analogy with the Bargmann–Fock realization with holomorphic states (see Chap.1) we need to have a complex structure on our Grassmann algebra. So we consider the Grassmann algebra $\mathscr{G}_{2n}$ with generators $\{\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n; \theta_1^*, \ldots, \theta_n^*\}$. In $\mathscr{G}_{2n}$ we can define a complex anti- linear involution such that $\theta_k \mapsto \theta_k^*$. We impose that $\psi \mapsto \psi^*$ is $\mathbb{R}$-linear and satisfies

(i) $(z\alpha)^* = \bar{z}\alpha^*$ if $z \in \mathbb{C}$ and $\alpha$ is a generator
(ii) $(\alpha\beta)^* = \beta^*\alpha^*$ for every $\alpha, \beta \in \mathscr{G}_{2n}$

Let us denote $\theta^* = (\theta_1^*, \dots, \theta_n^*)$. The Grassmann algebra $\mathscr{G}_{2n}$ with its complex structure will be denoted $\mathscr{G}_n^c$.

Integration on $\mathscr{G}_n^c$ is defined as follows:

$$\int \psi \, d\theta \, d\theta^* = \int \psi \, d\theta_1 \, d\theta_1^* \cdots d\theta_n \, d\theta_n^*.$$

We have the following property.

**Lemma 74** *The integral $\int \psi \, d\theta \, d\theta^*$ is invariant under unitary change of variable*: $\theta = U\zeta$, $U \in SU(n)$. *So we have*

$$\int \psi \, d\theta \, d\theta^* = \int \psi\big(\bar{U}\zeta, U\zeta\big) \, d\zeta \, d\zeta^*.$$

*Proof* From the proof of the change of variable lemma we have $\theta_n \cdots \theta_1 = (\det U)\zeta_n \cdots \zeta_1$. Then we get

$$\theta_n^*\theta_n \cdots \theta_1^*\theta_1 = \big(\zeta_n^*\zeta_n \cdots \zeta_1^*\zeta_1\big)\overline{\det U} \det U = \zeta_n^*\zeta_n \cdots \zeta_1^*\zeta_1.$$

The lemma follows. □

**Proposition 125** *Let $B$ be a $n \times n$ Hermitian matrix. Then we have*

$$\int \mathrm{e}^{-\theta^* \cdot B\theta} \, d\theta^* \cdot d\theta = \det B. \tag{11.20}$$

*Proof* There exists a unitary matrix $U$ such that $UBU^* = D$ where $D$ is the diagonal matrix $D = (b_1, \dots, b_n)$. Using the change of variables $\eta = U\theta$ we get

$$\int \mathrm{e}^{-\theta^* \cdot B\theta} \, d\theta^* \cdot d\theta = \int \mathrm{e}^{-\eta^* \cdot D\eta} \, d\eta^* \cdot d\eta = \prod_{1 \le j \le n} \int \mathrm{e}^{-b_j \eta_j^* \eta_j} \, d\eta_j^* \, d\eta_j = \det B.$$
□

We can extend the above proposition to more general Gaussian integrals.

**Proposition 126** *Let $\mathbb{C}[\gamma, \gamma^*]$ be an other copy of the complex Grassmann algebra $\mathscr{G}_n^c$ and $B$ a $n \times n$ Hermitian matrix. Then we have*

$$\int \mathrm{e}^{-\theta^* \cdot B\theta} \mathrm{e}^{\gamma^* \cdot \theta + \theta^* \cdot \gamma} \, d\theta^* \cdot d\theta = (\det B) \mathrm{e}^{\gamma^* \cdot B^{-1} \gamma}. \tag{11.21}$$

*Proof* As in the proof of Proposition 125 we begin by a unitary change of variable to diagonalize $B$. Then we get the result after some computations (reduction to the case $n = 1$) left to the reader. □

Another useful Gaussian integral computation is

**Proposition 127** *Let us consider a quadratic form in* $(\gamma, \gamma^*)$:

$$\Phi\big(\gamma,\gamma^*\big) = \frac{1}{2}\big(\gamma\cdot K\gamma + \gamma^*\cdot L\gamma^* + 2\gamma^*\cdot M\gamma\big),$$

*where* $K, L$ *are anti-symmetric matrices. So the following matrix* $\Lambda$ *of* $\Phi$ *is anti-symmetric*:

$$\Lambda = \begin{pmatrix} K & -M^T \\ M & L \end{pmatrix}.$$

*Assume* $\Lambda$ *is non-degenerate. Then we have the Fourier transform result*

$$\int \mathrm{e}^{\Phi(\gamma,\gamma^*)}\mathrm{e}^{\gamma^*\cdot\xi-\xi^*\cdot\gamma}\,d\gamma^*\,d\gamma = \mathrm{Pf}\,\Lambda \mathrm{e}^{\Phi^{(-1)}(\xi^*,\xi)}, \tag{11.22}$$

*where* $\mathrm{Pf}\,\Lambda$ *is the Pfaffian of* $\Lambda$ *and* $\Phi^{(-1)}$ *is the quadratic form with the matrix* $\Lambda^{-1}$.

*Proof* For $\xi = 0$ it is well known that the integral is equal to $\mathrm{Pf}\,\Lambda$ which is the Pfaffian of $\Lambda$ (see [207]). Recall that $\mathrm{Pf}\,\Lambda^2 = \det\Lambda$.

Then by a usual trick we can eliminate the linear terms in the integral. We do that by performing a change of Grassmann variables $\gamma = \theta - \alpha_\xi$, $\gamma^* = \zeta - \beta_\xi$. $\theta$ and $\zeta$ are new Grassmann integration variables (not necessarily conjugated) and $\alpha_\xi$, $\beta_\xi$ are computed such that the linear terms are eliminated. So we find

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha_\xi \\ \beta_\xi \end{pmatrix} = \Lambda^{-1}\begin{pmatrix} \xi^* \\ \xi \end{pmatrix}.$$

The formula (11.22) follows. □

## 11.4 Super-Hilbert Spaces and Operators

As in the bosonic case we want to find a space to represent fermionic states as functions in some $L^2$-space.

### *11.4.1 A Space for Fermionic States*

Let us define $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ the subspace of $\mathscr{G}_{2n}$ of holomorphic functions in $\theta = (\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n)$. $\psi \in \mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ means $\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta_k^*}\psi = 0$ for $1 \le k \le n$.

$\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ is a complex vector space of dimension $n$ with the basis $\{\theta^\varepsilon, \varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]\}$. Moreover $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ is a Hilbert space for the scalar product

$$\langle\psi,\varphi\rangle := \int \mathrm{e}^{\theta^*\cdot\theta}\psi(\theta)^*\varphi(\theta)\,d\theta\,d\theta^*$$

and $\{\theta^\varepsilon, \varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]\}$ is an orthonormal basis. We shall denote $e_\varepsilon(\theta) = \theta^\varepsilon$ for $\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]$. The space $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ has dimension $2^n$ over $\mathbb{C}$ and is isomorphic to the Fock space $\mathscr{H}_F^{(n)}$.

*Remark 60* The notation $\psi^*$ for the complex involution is sometimes replaced by the more suggestive notation $\bar{\psi}$ which may be sometimes confusing.

The creation/annihilation operators in $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ are

$$\left(a_j^*\psi\right)(\theta) = \theta_j \psi(\theta), \qquad a_j\psi(\theta) = \frac{\partial}{\partial\theta_j}\psi(\theta).$$

They satisfy anti-commutation rules (CAR) and $a_k^*$ is the hermitian adjoint of $a_k$ for every $1 \le k \le n$.

The Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ is not large enough to represent Fermionic states and to compute with them. As usual in Grassmann calculus we need to add new Grassmann generators $(\gamma, \gamma^*)$, $\gamma = (\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_n)$. Let us denote $\Gamma_n^c := \mathbb{C}[\gamma, \gamma^*]$.

As above we introduce $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ the sub-Grassmann algebra of $\mathscr{G}_n^c \otimes \Gamma_n^c$ of holomorphic elements in $\theta$.

$\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ will be seen as a module[1] over the algebra $\Gamma_n^c$ with basis $\{\theta^\varepsilon, \varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]\}$. $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ is a kind of linear space where the complex field number is replaced by the Grassmann algebra numbers: $\Gamma_n^c$. The following operations make sense because they are well defined in $\mathscr{G}_n^c \otimes \Gamma_n^c$, with usual properties easy to state: if $\psi, \varphi \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$, $\lambda \in \Gamma_n^c$, then $\psi + \varphi \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ and $\lambda\psi, \psi\lambda \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$. In particular every $\tilde{\psi} \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ can be decomposed as

$$\psi = \sum_{\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} \theta^\varepsilon c_\varepsilon(\psi),$$

where $c_\varepsilon(\psi) \in \Gamma_n^c$.

The scalar product in $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ can be extended as a sesquilinear form to $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ by the formula

$$\langle\psi, \varphi\rangle := \int \psi(\theta)^* \varphi(\theta) \mathrm{e}^{\theta^* \cdot \theta} \, d\theta \, d\theta^*$$

but now $\langle\psi, \varphi\rangle$ is a Grassmann number in $\Gamma_n^c$ and not always a complex number. The map $(\psi, \varphi) \mapsto \langle\psi, \varphi\rangle$ has usual properties: it is sesquilinear and non negative. But it is degenerate and only its restriction to the Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ is non-degenerate. Here we do not use the general theory of super-space, on our examples direct computations can be done (see the book [62] for more details concerning super-Hilbert spaces).

Let us remark that every linear operator in $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ can be extended as a linear operator in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$. In particular the parity operator $\mathbf{P}$ in variables $\theta$ is well defined.

[1]A module over some ring or algebra is like a linear space where the field number $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$ is replaced by a ring or an algebra (see any textbook in advanced algebra).

As a first application let us consider the Fermionic Dirac distribution at $\theta$. It is not difficult to establish the following identity for every $\psi \in \mathscr{H}^{(n)}$:

$$\psi(\theta) = \int \psi(\gamma) \mathrm{e}^{-(\theta-\gamma)\cdot\gamma^*} d\gamma^* d\gamma. \tag{11.23}$$

In other words the identity is an integral operator with a kernel

$$E(\theta, \gamma) := \mathrm{e}^{-(\theta-\gamma)\cdot\gamma^*} = \prod_{1 \le k \le n} \big(1 - (\theta_k - \gamma_k)\gamma_k^*\big). \tag{11.24}$$

It is usual to denote $E(\theta, \gamma) = \delta(\theta - \gamma)$. We have also the more symmetric form

$$\delta(\theta - \gamma) = \prod_{1 \le k \le n} (\theta_k - \gamma_k)\big(\theta^* - \gamma_k^*\big).$$

This could be used to prove that every linear operator in $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ has a kernel.

### *11.4.2 Integral Kernels*

**Proposition 128** *For every linear operator $\hat{H} : \mathscr{H}^{(n)} \to \mathscr{H}^{(n)}$*[2] *there exists $K_H \in \mathbb{C}[\theta, \gamma^*]$ such that*

$$\hat{H}\psi(\theta) = \int K_H\big(\theta, \gamma^*\big)\psi(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{\gamma^*\cdot\gamma} d\gamma\, d\gamma^*, \quad \forall\psi \in \mathscr{H}^{(n)}. \tag{11.25}$$

*Moreover $K_H \in \mathbb{C}[\theta, \gamma^*]$ can be computed as follows*:

$$K_H\big(\theta, \gamma^*\big) = \sum_{\varepsilon', \varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} \big\langle e_{\varepsilon'}, \hat{H} e_\varepsilon \big\rangle e_{\varepsilon'}(\theta) e_\varepsilon(\gamma)^*. \tag{11.26}$$

*Proof* Using that $\{e_\varepsilon\}$ is an orthonormal system it is not difficult to prove that (11.25) is satisfied for $\psi = e_\varepsilon$ with $K_H$ given by (11.26). So we get the result for every $\psi$. □

**Corollary 29** *Every linear operator $\hat{H} : \mathscr{H}^{(n)} \to \mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ has a unique decomposition like*

$$\hat{H} = \sum_{\varepsilon', \varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} H_{\varepsilon,\varepsilon'} a^{*\varepsilon'} a^\varepsilon, \tag{11.27}$$

*where $H_{\varepsilon,\varepsilon'} \in \mathbb{C}$.*

[2] As for bosons, when we consider quantization of observables, it is convenient to denote operators with a hat accent to make a difference between classical and quantum observables. Sometimes this rule is not applied when the context is clear.

These results can be easily extended to linear operators in the super-Hilbert space $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$.

**Proposition 129** *For every linear operator $\hat{H} : \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)} \to \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ there exists $K_H \in \mathbb{C}[\theta, \gamma, \gamma^*]$ such that*

$$\hat{H}\psi(\theta) = \int K_H\big(\theta, \gamma^*\big)\psi(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{\gamma^*\cdot\gamma}\, d\gamma\, d\gamma^*, \quad \forall\psi \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}. \tag{11.28}$$

*Moreover $K \in \mathbb{C}[\theta, \gamma, \gamma^*]$ can be computed as follows:*

$$K\big(\theta, \gamma^*\big) = \sum_{\varepsilon', \varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} e_{\varepsilon'}(\theta)\big\langle e_{\varepsilon'}, \hat{H} e_{\varepsilon}\big\rangle e_{\varepsilon}(\gamma)^*, \tag{11.29}$$

*and every linear operator $\hat{H}$ in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ has a unique decomposition*

$$\hat{H} = \sum_{\varepsilon', \varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} H_{\varepsilon, \varepsilon'} a^{*\varepsilon'} a^{\varepsilon} \tag{11.30}$$

*where $H_{\varepsilon,\varepsilon'} \in \Gamma_n^c$. This representation, with annihilation operators, first is called the normal representation of $\hat{H}$.*

We denote by $\mathrm{End}(\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)})$ the space of linear operators in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$.

**Corollary 30** *Every linear operator $\hat{H}$ in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ has an hermitian conjugate $\hat{H}^*$:*

$$\big\langle\psi, \hat{H}\varphi\big\rangle = \big\langle\hat{H}^*\psi, \varphi\big\rangle, \quad \forall\psi, \varphi \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}. \tag{11.31}$$

*Moreover $\hat{H} \mapsto \hat{H}^*$ is a linear complex involution in $\mathrm{End}(\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)})$, satisfying for every linear operator $\hat{H}, \hat{F}$ in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ and $\lambda \in \Gamma_n^c$,*

- $(\hat{H}\hat{F})^* = \hat{F}^*\hat{H}^*$.
- $(\lambda\hat{H})^* = \hat{H}^*\lambda^*$, $(\hat{H}\lambda)^* = \lambda^*\hat{H}^*$.
- $a_k^*$ *is the hermitian conjugate of* $a_k$ *for* $1 \le k \le n$.

It is convenient to define a fermionic Fourier transform which is a kind of Fourier-symplectic transform. This will be used for fermionic quantization.

### 11.4.3 A Fourier Transform

**Definition 28** For any $\psi \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ the Fourier transform is defined as

$$\psi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\xi^*\cdot\alpha - \alpha^*\cdot\xi}\psi(\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi.$$

The following properties are easy to prove:

1. $\psi(\xi) = \int e^{(\alpha^*\cdot\xi - \xi^*\cdot\alpha)} \psi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)\, d\alpha^*\, d\alpha$ (inverse formula). The Fourier transform is idempotent: $(\psi^{\mathscr{F}})^{\mathscr{F}} = \psi$.
2. $1^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) = \alpha^* \cdot \alpha$, $\xi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) = \alpha$, $\xi^{*\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) = -\alpha^*$.
3. $\int \psi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)(\varphi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha))^*\, d\alpha^*\, d\alpha = \int \psi(\xi)(\varphi(\xi))^*\, d\xi^*\, d\xi$ (Parseval's relation 1).
4. $\int \psi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)\varphi^{\mathscr{F}}(-\alpha)\, d\alpha^*\, d\alpha = \int \psi(\xi)\varphi(\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi$ (Parseval's relation 2).
5. $(\psi\varphi)^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) = \int \psi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha - \beta)\varphi^{\mathscr{F}}(\beta)\, d\beta^*\, d\beta$ (Fourier-convolution).
6. $(\tau_\zeta \psi)^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) = \psi^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) e^{\zeta^*\cdot\alpha - \alpha^*\cdot\zeta}$ (translation-modulation), where $\tau_\zeta \psi(\xi) = \psi(\xi - \zeta)$.

Let us remark that these properties are also satisfied if $\psi$, $\varphi$ are replaced by linear operators in $\mathrm{End}(\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)})$ depending on Grassmann variables.

## 11.5 Coherent States for Fermions

As in the previous section we consider two complex Grassmann algebras $\mathscr{G}_n^c = \mathbb{C}[\theta, \theta^*]$ and $\Gamma_n^c = \mathbb{C}[\gamma, \gamma^*]$. $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ (and $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$) are spaces of holomorphic states in variables $\theta$.

### *11.5.1 Weyl Translations*

The Weyl translations are defined as usual:

$$\hat{T}(\gamma) = e^{a^*\cdot\gamma - \gamma^*\cdot a}, \quad \gamma = (\gamma_1, \ldots, \gamma_n). \tag{11.32}$$

Remark that $\hat{T}(\gamma)$ depends on the $2n$ independent Grassmann variables $(\gamma, \gamma^*)$. Nevertheless we simply note $\hat{T}(\gamma)$ and sometimes $\hat{T}(\gamma, \gamma^*)$ if necessary. They are translations in the phase space and in particular we have

$$\hat{T}(0, \gamma^*)\psi(\theta) = \psi(\theta - \gamma^*), \qquad \hat{T}(\gamma, 0)\psi(\theta) = e^{\theta\cdot\gamma}\psi(\theta).$$

Recall that $\gamma \cdot a = \sum_{1\le k\le n} \gamma_k a_k$ and $a^* \cdot \gamma = \sum_{1\le k\le n} a_k^* \gamma_k$ (beware of the order!).

Using anti-commutations relations (CAR) we have the commutation relations:

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_j a_j &= -a_j \alpha_j \quad \text{for } \alpha_j = \gamma_j, \gamma_j^*, \\ \left[a_j^* \gamma_j, \gamma_k^* a_k\right] &= \gamma_j \gamma_k^* \delta_{j,k}, \\ \left[a_j, a_k^* \gamma_k\right] &= \gamma_k \delta_{j,k}, \\ [a_j, a_k \gamma_k] &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{11.33}$$

We have a similar relation inverting $a$ and $a^*$ and using $[A, B]^* = -[A^*, B^*]$. From these relations we get

$$\hat{T}(\gamma) = \prod_{1\le k\le n} \mathrm{e}^{a_k^*\gamma_k - \gamma_k^* a_k} = \prod_{1\le k\le n}\left(1 + a_k^*\gamma_k - \gamma_k^* a_k + \left(a_k^* a_k - \frac{1}{2}\right)\gamma_k^*\gamma_k\right). \tag{11.34}$$

The following properties are easily obtained with little algebraic computations similar to the bosonic case (see Chap. 1). In particular we also have a Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula:

**Lemma 75** *Let $A, B$, be $\Gamma_n^c$-linear operators in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ such that $[A, B]$ commutes with $A, B$. Then*

$$\mathrm{e}^A\mathrm{e}^B\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}[A,B]} = \mathrm{e}^{A+B}.$$

*Proof* Let us remark first that $\mathrm{e}^A$ is well defined by the Taylor series because $\dim[\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}] < +\infty$ and $\mathrm{e}^A$ is a $\Gamma_n^c$-linear operator. Hence the result follows as in Lemma 1 of Chap. 1. □

Now we state mains properties of the translation operators $\hat{T}(\gamma)$.

1. $\hat{T}(\gamma)$ is $\Gamma_n^c$-linear in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ (on right and left).
2. $\hat{T}(\alpha+\gamma) = \hat{T}(\alpha)\hat{T}(\gamma)\exp(\frac{1}{2}(\alpha^*\cdot\gamma + \alpha\cdot\gamma^*))$.
3. $(\hat{T}(\gamma))^{-1} = \hat{T}(-\gamma) = \hat{T}(\gamma)^*$. In particular $\hat{T}(\gamma)$ is a unitary operator in the super-Hilbert space, which means that the super-inner product is preserved:

$$\left\langle \hat{T}(\gamma)\psi, \hat{T}(\gamma)\varphi\right\rangle = \langle\psi, \varphi\rangle.$$

4. Translation property:

$$\hat{T}(\gamma)^* a \hat{T}(\gamma) = a + \gamma, \tag{11.35}$$

$$\hat{T}(\gamma)^* a^* \hat{T}(\gamma) = a^* + \gamma^*. \tag{11.36}$$

## 11.5.2 Fermionic Coherent States

Now we can give a definition for Fermionic coherent states.

**Definition 29** For every Grassmann generator $\gamma$ we associate a state in the super-Hilbert space $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ denoted $\psi_\gamma = |\gamma\rangle$ by the formula

$$\psi_\gamma = \hat{T}(\gamma)\psi_\emptyset, \tag{11.37}$$

where $\psi_\emptyset(\theta) = e_{0,\dots,0}(\theta)$ is the vacuum state, usually denoted $|0\rangle$.

First properties of coherent states $\psi_\gamma$ are easily deduced from properties of the translation $\hat{T}(\gamma)$.

1. $\psi_\gamma$ are eigenvectors of annihilation operators $a$: $a\psi_\gamma = \gamma\psi_\gamma$ where $a = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$ and $\gamma = (\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_n)$.
2. The inner product of two coherent states satisfies

$$\langle \psi_\gamma, \psi_\alpha \rangle = \exp\left(\gamma^* \cdot \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\left(\gamma^* \cdot \gamma + \alpha^* \cdot \alpha\right)\right). \tag{11.38}$$

3.

$$\hat{T}(\gamma)\psi_\alpha = \exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(\alpha^* \cdot \gamma - \gamma^* \cdot \alpha\right)\right)\psi_{\alpha+\gamma}. \tag{11.39}$$

We can give a more explicit formula for $\psi_\gamma$ which is very similar to that obtained in the Bargmann representation for bosons (Chap. 1).

From the above computations we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi_\gamma(\theta) &= \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^* \cdot \gamma/2} \prod_{1\le k\le n} \left(1 + a_k^* \gamma_k\right)\psi_\emptyset \\
&= \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^* \cdot \gamma/2} \sum_{k_1<k_2<\cdots k_j} a_{k_1}^* \gamma_{k_1} \cdots a_{k_j}^* \gamma_{k_j} \psi_\emptyset \\
&= \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^* \cdot \gamma/2} \sum_{\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} (-1)^{\nu(\varepsilon)} \theta^\varepsilon \gamma^\varepsilon \\
&= \mathrm{e}^{(\theta - \frac{\gamma^*}{2})\cdot\gamma},
\end{aligned}$$

where $\nu(\varepsilon)$ was defined in (11.15). In particular we have proved that

$$\langle e_\varepsilon, \psi_\gamma \rangle = (-1)^{\nu(\varepsilon)} \gamma^\varepsilon \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^* \cdot \gamma/2}. \tag{11.40}$$

Then for every $\psi \in \mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ we have

$$\langle \psi_\gamma, \psi \rangle = \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^* \cdot \gamma/2} \sum_{\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} \gamma^{*\varepsilon} \psi_\varepsilon. \tag{11.41}$$

*Remark 61* Let us remark that the chirality operator[3] $\chi$ on coherent state $\psi_\gamma$ gives $\chi\psi_\gamma = \psi_{-\gamma}$.

One of the most useful property of coherent states is their completeness:

**Proposition 130** *For every $\psi \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ we have*

$$\psi(\theta) = \int \langle \psi_\gamma, \psi \rangle \psi_\gamma(\theta)\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma. \tag{11.42}$$

[3] A definition of the chirality operator is given in the next section.

*Proof* It is enough to prove (11.42) for $\psi = e_\varepsilon$ for every $\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]$. Computing the integrand in the right hand side of (11.42) using (11.40) and (11.41) we get

$$\langle \psi_\gamma, e_\varepsilon \rangle \psi_\gamma(\theta) = \sum_{\varepsilon' \in \mathscr{E}[n]} (-1)^{\nu(\varepsilon)+\nu(\varepsilon')} e^{\gamma \cdot \gamma^*} \theta^{\varepsilon'} \gamma^{\varepsilon'} \big(\gamma^{\varepsilon}\big)^*. \tag{11.43}$$

Then using orthogonality relations in Grassmann variables $\gamma$ we get

$$\int \langle \psi_\gamma, e_\varepsilon \rangle \psi_\gamma(\theta)\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma = \theta^{\varepsilon}. \tag{11.44}$$

□

*Remark 62* Coherent states are obtained by translations from a fixed state. Instead of the vacuum $\psi_\emptyset$ we could start from the state $\psi_{\mathbb{1}}(\theta) = \theta_1 \cdots \theta_n$ (all modes are occupied). So we define another family of coherent states:

$$\psi'_\gamma = \hat{T}(\gamma)\psi_{\mathbb{1}}. \tag{11.45}$$

Any property of $\psi_\gamma$ can be translated in a property of $\psi'_\gamma$:

- $a_k^* \psi'_\gamma = \gamma_k^* \psi'_\gamma$ ($\psi'_\gamma$ is an eigenstate of the creation operators).
- Expansion in the orthonormal basis:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi'_\gamma(\theta) &= e^{\frac{\gamma^* \cdot \gamma}{2}} \sum_{\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} \theta_1^{1-\varepsilon_1} \big(\gamma_1^*\big)\varepsilon_1 \cdots \theta_n^{1-\varepsilon_n} \big(\gamma^*\big)^{\varepsilon_n} \\ &= e^{\frac{\gamma^* \cdot \gamma}{2}} \sum_{\varepsilon \in \mathscr{E}[n]} (-1)^{\nu'(\varepsilon)} \theta^{\varepsilon^c} \big(\gamma^*\big)^{\varepsilon}, \end{aligned} \tag{11.46}$$

  where $\varepsilon^c = (1 - \varepsilon_1, \ldots, 1 - \varepsilon_n)$ and $\nu'(\varepsilon)$ is 0 or 1.
- Completeness: for every $\psi \in \tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$,

$$\psi(\theta) = \int \psi'_\gamma(\theta) \langle \psi'_\gamma, \psi \rangle\, d\gamma\, d\gamma^*. \tag{11.47}$$

We shall see in the next section that fermionic coherent states are related with a fermionic harmonic oscillator.

## 11.6 Representations of Operators

Besides their integral kernels, operators can be represented by several other functions or (Schwartz distributions) often called "symbols" as it is for finite bosons systems Weyl (covariant, contravariant), Wick, anti-Wick, Wigner functions (see Chap. 2). We shall see now that this can be also defined for finite systems of fermions.

A useful tool to compute with operators (quantum observables) is the trace which is an important spectral invariant.

### 11.6.1 Trace

The trace of any linear operator $\hat{H}$ in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ is defined as usual by the sum of diagonal elements

$$\operatorname{Tr}\hat{H} = \sum_{\varepsilon\in\mathscr{E}[n]} \langle e_\varepsilon, \hat{H} e_\varepsilon\rangle. \tag{11.48}$$

The parity operator $\mathbf{P}$ defined a $\Gamma_n^c$ linear operator in the super-space $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ and another useful invariant is the super-trace defined as follows. Let us denote $\mathbf{P}_\pm$ the orthogonal projection on even/odd states in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$. So every operator $\hat{H}$ can be decomposed as

$$\hat{H} = \mathbf{P}_+\hat{H}\mathbf{P}_+ + \mathbf{P}_-\hat{H}\mathbf{P}_- + \mathbf{P}_+\hat{H}\mathbf{P}_+ + \mathbf{P}_-\hat{H}\mathbf{P}_+.$$

In matrix form this is written as

$$\hat{H} = \begin{pmatrix} \hat{H}_{++} & \hat{H}_{+-} \\ \hat{H}_{-+} & \hat{H}_{--} \end{pmatrix}.$$

So we have $\operatorname{Tr}\hat{H} = \operatorname{Tr}(\hat{H}_{++}) + \operatorname{Tr}(\hat{H}_{--})$.

**Definition 30** (Super-trace) The super-trace of $\hat{H}$ is defined as

$$\operatorname{Str}\hat{H} = \operatorname{Tr}(\hat{H}_{++}) - \operatorname{Tr}(\hat{H}_{--}).$$

Or if we introduce the chirality operator $\chi = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{1} & 0 \\ 0 & -\mathbb{1} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ we have

$$\operatorname{Str}\hat{H} = \operatorname{Tr}(\hat{H}\chi).$$

*Remark 63* If $\hat{A}$ is a linear invertible operator in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ and if $\hat{A}$ is even: $\hat{A}\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P}\hat{A}$ then

$$\operatorname{Str}(\hat{A}^{-1}\hat{H}\hat{A}) = \operatorname{Str}\hat{H}.$$

In particular the super-trace is invariant under even unitary transformations of $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$.

More generally we have

$$\operatorname{Str}(\hat{A}\hat{B}) = (-1)^\varepsilon \operatorname{Str}(\hat{B}\hat{A}),$$

where $\varepsilon = 1$ if $\hat{A}$ and $\hat{B}$ are odd, $\varepsilon = 1$ otherwise.

Recall that the trace and determinant are related through the usual trace-determinant relation: $e^{\operatorname{Tr} H} = \det(e^H)$. To the super-trace is associated a super-determinant $\operatorname{Ber}(\hat{H})$ (found by Berezin [20]) such that

$$\exp(\operatorname{Str}\hat{H}) = \operatorname{Ber}(\exp\hat{H}).$$

Assume for simplicity that $\hat{H}$ has complex coefficients.

**Definition 31** Let $\hat{H} = \begin{pmatrix} \hat{H}_{++} & \hat{H}_{+-} \\ \hat{H}_{-+} & \hat{H}_{--} \end{pmatrix}$ be such that $\hat{H}_{--}$ is invertible.

The Berezian $\mathrm{Ber}(\hat{H})$ of $\hat{H}$ is defined by

$$\mathrm{Ber}(\hat{H}) = \det(\hat{H}_{++} - \hat{H}_{+-}\hat{H}_{--}^{-1}\hat{H}_{-+}) \det(\hat{H}_{--})^{-1}.$$

The following property is an easy consequence of the definition: if $\hat{H}$ and $\hat{L}$ are super-operators then

$$\mathrm{Ber}(\hat{H}\hat{L}) = \mathrm{Ber}(\hat{H})\mathrm{Ber}(\hat{L}).$$

**Proposition 131** *Let $\hat{H}$ be as above. Then we have*

$$\exp(\mathrm{Str}\,\hat{H}) = \mathrm{Ber}(\exp\hat{H}). \tag{11.49}$$

*Proof* If $\hat{H}_{+-} = \hat{H}_{-+} = 0$ (11.49) is a consequence of the trace-determinant relation. The general case can be deduced from this case. □

**Proposition 132** *Let $\hat{H}$ be a linear operator in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ and $K_H(\theta, \gamma^*)$ its integral kernel. We assume that the element of matrix of $\hat{H}$ are even in $\Gamma_n^c$. Then we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\,\hat{H} = \int K_H(\theta, -\theta^*)\mathrm{e}^{\theta^*\cdot\theta}\,d\theta\,d\theta^*, \tag{11.50}$$

$$\mathrm{Str}\,\hat{H} = \int K_H(\theta, \theta^*)\mathrm{e}^{\theta^*\cdot\theta}\,d\theta\,d\theta^*. \tag{11.51}$$

*Proof* By assumption $\langle e_{\varepsilon'}, \hat{H}e_\varepsilon\rangle$ are even Grassmann numbers, so we have

$$\int K_H(\theta, \theta^*)\mathrm{e}^{\theta^*\cdot\theta}\,d\theta\,d\theta^* = \sum_\varepsilon \langle e_\varepsilon, \hat{H}e_\varepsilon\rangle e_\varepsilon(\theta)e_\varepsilon(\theta)^*\mathrm{e}^{\theta^*\cdot\theta}\,d\theta\,d\theta^*.$$

Splitting the sum according to the parity of $\varepsilon$ we get

$$\int K_H(\theta, \theta^*)\mathrm{e}^{\theta^*\cdot\theta}\,d\theta\,d\theta^* = \sum_{|\varepsilon|\text{even}} \langle e_\varepsilon, \hat{H}e_\varepsilon\rangle - \sum_{|\varepsilon|\text{odd}} \langle e_\varepsilon, \hat{H}e_\varepsilon\rangle \tag{11.52}$$

$$= \mathrm{Str}\,\hat{H}. \tag{11.53}$$

The same computation gives the expression for the trace formula. □

The integral kernel of operators are closely related with the matrix elements on coherent states (see Chap. 1 concerning Bargmann representation):

**Proposition 133** *Under the same assumption on $\hat{H}$ as in Proposition 132 we have*

$$\langle\psi_\alpha, \hat{H}\psi_\beta\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\alpha\cdot\alpha^*+\beta\cdot\beta^*)} K_H(\alpha^*, \beta), \tag{11.54}$$

*where $\alpha, \beta$ are independent Grassmann generators with their complex conjugate $(\alpha^*, \beta^*)$.*

*In particular the integral kernel of the identity operator is the following expression of the delta function*:

$$\delta(\theta - \gamma^*) = \mathrm{e}^{\theta\cdot\gamma^*}. \tag{11.55}$$

*Proof* Using the Parseval relation we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle\psi_\alpha, \hat{H}\psi_\beta\rangle &= \sum_\varepsilon \langle e_\varepsilon, \psi_\alpha\rangle^* \langle e_\varepsilon, \hat{H}\psi_\beta\rangle \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\alpha\cdot\alpha^*+\beta\cdot\beta^*)}\left(\sum_{\varepsilon',\varepsilon}(-1)^{\nu(\varepsilon)+\nu(\varepsilon')}\langle\varepsilon, \hat{H}e_{\varepsilon'}\rangle\alpha^{*\varepsilon}\beta^{\varepsilon'}\right).\end{aligned} \tag{11.56}$$

Putting $\alpha = \theta^*, \beta = \gamma^*$ we recognize the integral kernel of $H$.

Formula (11.55) is easily obtained using properties of coherent states. Note that this expression for the Dirac function is different from that found before because the measure on the space is different. □

$H_c(\alpha, \beta) := \langle\psi_\alpha, \hat{H}\psi_\beta\rangle$ plays the role of a covariant-Wick symbol for $\hat{H}$. We shall see later that we also have contravariant Wick symbols.

**Corollary 31** *We have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\,\hat{H} = \int H_c(\theta, -\theta)\, d\theta^*\, d\theta, \tag{11.57}$$

$$\mathrm{Str}\,\hat{H} = \int H_c(\theta, \theta)\, d\theta^*\, d\theta. \tag{11.58}$$

*In particular for rank one operators $\Pi_{\eta,\varphi}\psi = \eta\langle\varphi, \psi\rangle$ we have*

$$\mathrm{Str}(\Pi_{\eta,\varphi}) = \langle\varphi, \eta\rangle, \tag{11.59}$$

$$\mathrm{Tr}(\Pi_{\eta,\varphi}) = \langle\chi\varphi, \eta\rangle = \langle\varphi, \chi\eta\rangle, \tag{11.60}$$

*where $\chi$ is the chirality operator.*

*Proof* Let us prove (11.59). The super-trace formula follows from completeness relation for coherent states and (11.57). So we have

$$\mathrm{Str}\,\Pi_{\eta,\varphi} = \int \langle\psi_\alpha, \eta\rangle\langle\varphi, \psi_\alpha\rangle = \langle\varphi, \eta\rangle.$$

We get the trace formula using the $\mathrm{Tr}(\Pi_{\eta,\varphi}) = \mathrm{Str}(\chi\Pi_{\eta,\varphi})$. □

*Remark 64* As usual we have the following relation between the trace and matrix-elements:

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\Pi_{\beta,\gamma}\big) = \langle \psi_{-\gamma}, \hat{H}\psi_\beta \rangle,$$

where $\Pi_{\beta,\gamma}(\psi) = \psi_\beta \langle \psi_\gamma, \psi \rangle$. Furthermore if $\hat{H}$ is even, we have

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\Pi_{\beta,\gamma}\big) = \langle \psi_\gamma, \hat{H}\psi_{-\beta} \rangle.$$

Concerning the super-trace we have

$$\mathrm{Str}\,\big(\hat{H}\Pi_{\beta,\gamma}\big) = \langle \psi_\gamma, \hat{H}\psi_\beta \rangle.$$

Now we define Weyl symbols for fermionic operators.

### *11.6.2 Representation by Translations and Weyl Quantization*

**Definition 32** The operator $\hat{H}$ has a covariant Weyl symbol $H_w$ if we have the operator equality:

$$\hat{H} = \int H_w(\xi)\hat{T}(-\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi, \tag{11.61}$$

where the symbol $H_w \in \Gamma_n^c$, complex Grassmann algebra with generators $(\xi, \xi^*)$.

Let us remark that $H_w$ depends on the $2n$ independent Grassmann variables $(\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n; \xi^*, \dots, \xi_n^*)$. Nevertheless for simplicity we note $H_w(\xi)$.

**Proposition 134** *Every linear operator* $\hat{H}$ *in* $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ *has a covariant Weyl symbol. This symbol is unique and given by the formula*

$$H_w(\xi) = \mathrm{Str}\big(\hat{H}\hat{T}(\xi)\big). \tag{11.62}$$

*Proof* The proof is done in three steps.

First we remark that identity operator $\mathbb{1}$ and creation operators have Weyl symbols. Direct computations give

$$\mathbb{1}_w(\xi) = \xi \cdot \xi^*, \qquad a_{k,w}(\xi) = \xi_k, \qquad a^*_{k,w}(\xi) = -\xi^*_k.$$

We remark that if $\hat{H}$, $\hat{L}$ have Weyl symbols, $H_w$, $L_w$ then $\hat{H}\hat{L}$ and $\hat{H}^*$ have Weyl symbols (it is possible to give a formula, this is left to the reader).

It results that every operator $\hat{H}$ has a Weyl symbol because $\hat{H}$ is a sum of product of $\hat{a}_k^*, \hat{a}_j$.

To compute the symbol of $\hat{H}$ we first compute the diagonal matrix element of translation operators. We easily get

$$\langle\psi_\alpha, \hat{T}(\gamma)\psi_\alpha\rangle = \exp\left(\alpha^* \cdot \gamma - \gamma^* \cdot \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\gamma^* \cdot \gamma\right). \tag{11.63}$$

Remark that we have an analogous formula for anti-diagonal element

$$\langle\psi_\alpha, \hat{T}(\gamma)\psi_{-\alpha}\rangle = \exp\left(\alpha^* \cdot \gamma + \gamma^* \cdot \alpha - 2\alpha^* \cdot \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\gamma^* \cdot \gamma\right). \tag{11.64}$$

Using formula (11.61) we get after straightforward computations

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathrm{Str}\big(\hat{H}\hat{T}(\alpha)\big)\\ &\quad = \int H_w(\xi)\exp\left(\left(\beta^* + \frac{\xi^*}{2}\right)\cdot(\alpha - \xi) - \left(\alpha^* - \xi^*\right)\cdot\left(\beta + \frac{\xi}{2}\right)\right) d^2\xi\, d^2\beta.\end{aligned} \tag{11.65}$$

Computing first integral in $\beta$ we have

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathrm{Str}\big(\hat{H}\hat{T}(\alpha)\big)\\ &\quad = \int H_w(\xi)(\xi - \alpha)\cdot\left(\xi^* - \alpha^*\right)\exp\left(\frac{\xi^*}{2}\cdot(\alpha - \xi) - \left(\alpha^* - \xi^*\right)\cdot\frac{\alpha}{2}\right) d^2\xi.\end{aligned} \tag{11.66}$$

Hence a computation using Grassmann algebra rules gives that

$$\mathrm{Str}\big[\hat{H}\hat{T}(\alpha)\big] = H_w(\alpha). \tag{11.67}$$

□

*Remark 65* A direct consequence of our computations is that

$$\mathrm{Str}\big(\hat{T}(-\xi)\hat{T}(\gamma)\big) = \delta(\gamma - \xi).$$

As usual we have the following relation between the trace and matrix-elements:

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\Pi_{\beta,\gamma}\big) = \langle\psi_\gamma, \hat{H}\psi_{-\beta}\rangle,$$

where $\Pi_{\beta,\gamma}(\psi) = \psi_\beta\langle\psi_\gamma, \psi\rangle$.

Now we get the contravariant Weyl symbol as Fourier transform of the covariant symbol

**Proposition 135** *For every linear operator $\hat{H}$ we have*

$$\hat{H} = \int H^w(\alpha)\hat{T}^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)\, d^2\alpha, \tag{11.68}$$

*where* $H^w(\alpha) = H_w^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)$ *and*

$$\hat{T}^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha) = \int e^{(a^*-\alpha^*)\cdot\gamma + (a-\alpha)\cdot\gamma^*}\, d^2\gamma.$$

*In particular we have the following formula*:

$$1^w = 1, \qquad a^w(\alpha) = \alpha, \qquad a^{*w}(\alpha) = \alpha^*. \tag{11.69}$$

*Proof* Formula (11.68) is a direct application of the Parseval relation 2 for Fourier transform. □

**Corollary 32** *The super-trace of* $\hat{H}$ *is equal to the integral of the contravariant Weyl symbol* $H^w$:

$$\operatorname{Str}\hat{H} = \int H^w(\alpha)\, d^2\alpha. \tag{11.70}$$

*More generally we have the following super-trace product formula*:

$$\operatorname{Str}\big(\hat{H}\hat{G}\big) = \int H^w(\alpha) G^w(\alpha)\, d^2\alpha. \tag{11.71}$$

*Proof* Using the Fourier transform we get

$$\operatorname{Str}\hat{H} = H_w(0) = \int H^w(\alpha)\, d^2\alpha,$$

so we have (11.70).

We have for the product

$$\hat{H}\hat{G} = \int H^w(\alpha)\hat{T}^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)\hat{G}\, d^2\alpha \quad \Rightarrow \quad \operatorname{Str}\big(\hat{H}\hat{G}\big) = \int H^w(\alpha)\operatorname{Str}\big(\hat{T}^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)\hat{G}\big)\, d^2\alpha.$$

But $\operatorname{Str}(\hat{T}^{\mathscr{F}}(\alpha)\hat{G})$ is the Fourier transform of $\operatorname{Str}(\hat{T}(\alpha)\hat{G})$ which is the Weyl symbol $G^w$. So we get (11.71). □

Weyl symbols and integral kernel are closely related.

**Proposition 136** *For every operator* $\hat{H}$ *its integral kernel* $K_H$ *and its covariant Weyl symbol* $H_w$ *satisfy*

$$K_H\big(\theta, \gamma^*\big) = e^{\theta\cdot\gamma^*} \int H_w(\xi) e^{\frac{\xi\cdot\xi^*}{2}} e^{\xi^*\cdot\gamma^* - \theta\cdot\xi}\, d\xi^*\, d\xi, \tag{11.72}$$

$$H_w(\xi) = e^{\frac{\xi^*\cdot\xi}{2}} \int e^{\alpha\cdot\alpha^*} K_H\big(\alpha^*, \alpha\big) e^{\alpha^*\cdot\xi - \xi^*\cdot\alpha}\, d\alpha^*\, d\alpha. \tag{11.73}$$

*Proof* Remark that the two formulas are clearly equivalent using Fourier and inverse Fourier transform. To prove the first formula we compute the integral kernel of any translation operator $\hat{T}(\zeta)$.

From the relation

$$\psi(\theta) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\theta\cdot\gamma^*}\psi(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{\gamma^*\cdot\gamma}\, d\gamma\, d\gamma^*$$

we get

$$K_{T(\zeta)}\big(\theta, \gamma^*\big) = \mathrm{e}^{\zeta\cdot\zeta^*}\mathrm{e}^{(\theta-\zeta^*)\cdot\gamma^*+\theta\cdot\zeta}.$$

Using that $\hat{H}$ is a superposition of translations with density $H_w(\zeta)$ we get the first formula (11.72). □

One of the more useful tool to analyze mean value of observables for a $n$-bosons system are Wigner–Weyl functions because of the following well known formula:

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\rho\hat{O}\big) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n}\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} W_\rho(X)O(X)\,dX, \tag{11.74}$$

where $\rho$ is a density operator, $\hat{O}$ a quantum observable, $W_\rho(X)$ and $O(X)$ are the Wigner–Weyl symbols, defined in the phase space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, for $\rho$ and $\hat{O}$. Our goal now is to find fermionic analogues for formula (11.74). Here we have to overcome algebraic problems to deal with Grassmann variables. We again follow the paper [37].

### *11.6.3 Wigner–Weyl Functions*

Ordering is always a problem for computations in non commutative algebras in particular for quantization of observables. With fermions even classical variables do not commute.

To prepare further computations we introduce now two families of operators from which we can get different quantization procedures with interesting connections between them,

$$\hat{T}_N(\gamma) = \hat{T}_1(\gamma) = \mathrm{e}^{a^*\cdot\gamma}\mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^*\cdot a} \quad \text{(normal ordering)}, \tag{11.75}$$

$$\hat{T}_A(\gamma) = \hat{T}_{-1}(\gamma) = \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^*\cdot a}\mathrm{e}^{a^*\cdot\gamma} \quad \text{(anti-normal ordering)}. \tag{11.76}$$

We have

$$\hat{T}_N(\gamma) = \hat{T}(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\gamma^*\cdot\gamma}{2}} = \hat{T}_1(\gamma), \tag{11.77}$$

$$\hat{T}_A(\gamma) = \hat{T}(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\gamma^*\cdot\gamma}{2}} = T_{-1}(\gamma), \quad \text{where} \tag{11.78}$$

$$\hat{T}_s(\gamma) = \hat{T}(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{s\frac{\gamma^*\cdot\gamma}{2}}, \quad s\in\mathbb{R}. \tag{11.79}$$

We also define

$$\hat{R}_A(\xi) = \hat{R}_{-1}(\xi) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot\gamma^* - \gamma\cdot\xi^*} \Pi_{\gamma,-\gamma}\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma, \tag{11.80}$$

$$\hat{R}_N(\xi) \ = \hat{R}_1(\xi) \ = \hat{R}_{-1}(\xi)\mathrm{e}^{\xi^*\cdot\xi}. \tag{11.81}$$

Remark that $\hat{R}_{-1}(\xi)$ is the Fourier transform in $\gamma$ of $\Pi_{\gamma,-\gamma}$. We also introduce

$$\hat{R}_s(\xi) = \exp\left(\frac{1+s}{2}\xi^*\xi\right)\hat{R}_{-1}(\xi), \quad s \in \mathbb{R}. \tag{11.82}$$

We now show that $\hat{R}_s$ generates a quantization for each $s$ as well as the translations $\hat{T}_s$ do and that there exists a kind of duality between them.

**Proposition 137** *For every linear operator $\hat{H}$ in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ and every real number $s$ there exist unique symbols $H_{\mathscr{G},s}$, $H_{w,s}$ in $\Gamma_n^c$ such that*

$$\hat{H} = \int H_{\mathscr{G},s}(\xi)\hat{R}_{-s}(-\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi, \tag{11.83}$$

$$\hat{H} = \int H_{w,s}(\xi)\hat{T}_{-s}(-\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi. \tag{11.84}$$

*Moreover we have*

$$H_{\mathscr{G},s}(\xi) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{T}_s(\xi)\hat{H}\big), \tag{11.85}$$

$$H_{w,s}(\xi) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{R}_s(\xi)\hat{H}\big). \tag{11.86}$$

*Proof* The proof will be done following the method of Sect. 5.2. For simplicity we only consider the case $s = 1$ and the symbol $H_{\mathscr{G},1}$. The general case is not more difficult.

First compute the action of $\hat{R}_{-1}(-\xi)$ on coherent states. Using the properties of the coherent state, we get

$$\hat{R}_{-1}(-\xi)\psi_\alpha(\theta) = \mathrm{e}^{(\xi+\alpha)\cdot(\theta+\xi^*)}. \tag{11.87}$$

Hence we get the matrix elements

$$\big\langle\psi_\beta, \hat{R}_{-1}(-\xi)\psi_\alpha\big\rangle = \exp\left((\xi+\alpha)\cdot\big(\xi^*+\beta^*\big) - \frac{1}{2}\big(\beta^*\cdot\beta + \alpha^*\cdot\alpha\big)\right). \tag{11.88}$$

In particular we get the following representation formula for operators $\mathbb{1}, a_k, a_k^*$:

$$\mathbb{1} = \int \big(1 - \xi\cdot\xi^*\big)\hat{R}_{-1}(\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi, \tag{11.89}$$

$$a_k = \int (-\xi_k)\hat{R}_{-1}(\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi, \tag{11.90}$$

$$a_k^* = \int \xi_k^*\hat{R}_{-1}(\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi. \tag{11.91}$$

From this, using that every operator is a polynomial in $a$ and $a^*$, we find that for any operator $\hat{H}$ there exists $H_{\mathscr{G},-1}$ satisfying (11.83).

To get (11.85) we apply the following lemma where we see a duality between quantization by translations and quantization by coherent states. □

**Lemma 76** *For every $s \in \mathbb{R}$ we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{T}_s(\xi)\hat{R}_{-s}(-\zeta)\big) = \delta(\xi - \zeta). \tag{11.92}$$

*Proof* Using the trace formula with coherent states, we have

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{T}_s(\xi)\hat{R}_{-s}(-\zeta)\big) = \int \big\langle \hat{T}_s(-\xi)\psi_{-\gamma}, \hat{R}_{-s}(-\zeta)\psi_\gamma\big\rangle d^2\gamma. \tag{11.93}$$

In (11.93) we use the properties (11.39), (11.38), (11.87) and after a Berezin integral computation we get (11.92). □

Let us consider a density operator $\hat{\rho}$ which means that $\hat{\rho}$ is a linear, non negative, hermitian operator in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ such that $\mathrm{Tr}\ \rho = 1$.

For physical reason (see [37]) we assume that $\hat{\rho}$ is even (it commutes with the parity operator $\mathbf{P}$).

We introduce the characteristic function $\chi_\rho$ defined as

$$\chi_\rho(\xi) := \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot a^* - a\cdot\xi^*}\big). \tag{11.94}$$

We can easily see that from properties of trace and translation operators we also have

$$\chi_\rho(\xi) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\hat{T}(\xi)\big) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\hat{T}(-\xi)\big).$$

In particular $\chi_\rho$ is even. The normal and anti-normal characteristic functions are

$$\chi_{\rho,1}(\xi) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot a^*}\mathrm{e}^{-a\cdot\xi^*}\big), \tag{11.95}$$

$$\chi_{\rho,-1}(\xi) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\mathrm{e}^{-a\cdot\xi^*}\mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot a^*}\big). \tag{11.96}$$

Using a trace computation with coherent states we have

$$\chi_{\rho,-1}(\xi) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot\beta^* - \beta\cdot\xi^*}\langle\psi_\beta, \hat{\rho}\psi_{-\beta}\rangle\, d\xi^*\, d\xi. \tag{11.97}$$

So $\chi_{\rho,-1}(\xi)$ is the Fourier transform of the matrix element $\langle\psi_\beta, \hat{\rho}\psi_{-\beta}\rangle$.

Introduce now the "Fourier transform operator":

$$\hat{T}_s^{\mathscr{F}}(\gamma) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot\gamma^* - \gamma\cdot\xi^*}\hat{T}_s(\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi, \tag{11.98}$$

$$\hat{R}_s^{\mathscr{F}}(\gamma) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\gamma\cdot\xi^* - \xi\cdot\gamma^*}\hat{R}_s(\xi) d\xi^* d\xi. \tag{11.99}$$

In particular we can easily compute:

$$\hat{R}^{\mathscr{F}}_{-1}(\gamma) = \Pi_{\gamma,-\gamma}, \qquad \hat{R}^{\mathscr{F}}_{1}(\gamma) = \Pi'_{\gamma,-\gamma}, \tag{11.100}$$

where

$$\Pi'_{\gamma,\beta}(\psi) = \psi'_\gamma \langle \psi'_\beta, \psi \rangle.$$

From Parseval's relation we get the following representation formula:

$$\hat{H} = \int H^{w,-s}(\alpha)\hat{T}^{\mathscr{F}}_s(\alpha)\, d\alpha^*\, d\alpha, \tag{11.101}$$

$$\hat{H} = \int H^{\mathscr{G},-s}(\alpha)\hat{R}_s(\alpha)^{\mathscr{F}}\, d\alpha^*\, d\alpha, \tag{11.102}$$

where

$$H^{w,-s}(\alpha) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot\alpha^* - \alpha\cdot\xi^*}\, \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{R}_{-s}(\xi)\big)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi, \tag{11.103}$$

$$H^{\mathscr{G},-s}(\alpha) = \int \mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot\alpha^* - \alpha\cdot\xi^*}\, \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{T}_{-s}(\xi)\big)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi. \tag{11.104}$$

Recall that

$$\delta(\xi - \zeta) = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{T}_s(\xi)\hat{R}_{-s}(-\zeta)\big).$$

So we get

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{G}\big) = \int \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{R}_{-s}(\xi)\big)\,\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{G}\hat{T}_{-s}(-\xi)\big)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi \tag{11.105}$$

for any operators $H$, $G$. Applying the Parseval relation we get

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{G}\big) = \int H^{R,-s}(\gamma)G^{w,s}(\gamma)\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma. \tag{11.106}$$

Applying this to the density operator $\hat{\rho}$ we have

$$\hat{\rho} = \int \chi_{\rho,s}(\xi)\hat{R}_{-s}(-\xi)\, d\xi^*\, d\xi. \tag{11.107}$$

Now we introduce the Wigner–Weyl function or quasi-probability as the Fourier transform of the characteristic function

$$W_{\rho,s}(\gamma) = \int \chi_{\rho,s}(\xi)\mathrm{e}^{\gamma\cdot\xi^* - \xi\cdot\gamma^*}\, d\xi^*\, d\xi. \tag{11.108}$$

We see that $W_{\rho,s}(\gamma) = \rho^{\mathscr{G},s}(\gamma)$ hence

$$\hat{\rho} = \int W_{\rho,s}(\gamma)\hat{R}^{\mathscr{F},-s}(\gamma)\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma \tag{11.109}$$

and for every observable $\hat{A}$,

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\hat{A}\big) = \int W_{\rho,s}(\gamma) A^{w,-s}\, d^2\gamma. \tag{11.110}$$

This is why $W_{\rho,s}(\gamma)$ is called a quasi-probability.

In particular for $s = 1$ (normal ordering) and $s = -1$ (anti-normal ordering) we have

$$\hat{\rho} = \int P_\rho(\gamma) \Pi_{\gamma,-\gamma}\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma = \int Q_\rho(\gamma) \Pi'_{\gamma,-\gamma}\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma, \tag{11.111}$$

where $P_\rho(\gamma) = W_{\rho,1}(\gamma)$ and $Q_\rho(\gamma) = W_{\rho,-1}(\gamma)$. These functions are quasi-probabilities and are similar to anti-Wick symbols or contravariant Wick symbols.

A main application of above fermionic symbolic calculus is computation of mean values of observables. We know that every observable $G$ on the super-Hilbert space $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$ is a linear expression in $(a^*)^\varepsilon a^{\varepsilon'}$ ($\varepsilon, \varepsilon' \in \mathscr{E}[n]$).

**Theorem 49** *For any $\varepsilon, \varepsilon' \in \mathscr{E}[n]$ we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\big(a^*\big)^\varepsilon a^{\varepsilon'}\big) = \int P_\rho(\gamma)\big(\gamma^*\big)^\varepsilon \gamma^{\varepsilon'}\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma, \tag{11.112}$$

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho} a^\varepsilon \big(a^*\big)^{\varepsilon'}\big) = \int Q_\rho(\gamma)\gamma^\varepsilon \big(\gamma^*\big)^{\varepsilon'}\, d\gamma^*\, d\gamma. \tag{11.113}$$

*Proof* In the normal case we easily compute the matrix elements of $G = (a^*)^\varepsilon a^{\varepsilon'}$ on coherent states then we apply the trace formula with coherent state. The proof is analogous in the anti-normal case. □

Concerning the Weyl symbols ($s = 0$) we have the following useful result:

**Proposition 138** *Let $\hat{H}, \hat{G}$ be two operators in $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}_n$. Then we have*

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{G}\big) = 2^{-n} \int H^w(\zeta) G_w(2\zeta)\, d^2\zeta, \quad \text{where } \zeta \in \mathscr{G}_n^c. \tag{11.114}$$

*Proof* From definition of covariant and contravariant Weyl symbol we have

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{G}\big) = \int d^2\gamma\, d^2\zeta\, H^w(\gamma) G_w(\zeta)\, \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{T}(-\zeta)\hat{T}^{\mathscr{F}}(\gamma)\big).$$

A computation using coherent states gives

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{T}(-\zeta)\hat{T}(\eta)\big) = \int d^2\theta \big\langle \hat{T}(\zeta)\psi_\theta, \hat{T}(\eta)\psi_{-\theta}\big\rangle = 2^n \mathrm{e}^{1/2(\zeta^*\cdot\eta - \eta^*\cdot\zeta)}. \tag{11.115}$$

Using the Fourier transform we get

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}\hat{G}\big) = 2^n \int H^w\left(\frac{\zeta}{2}\right) G_W(\zeta)\, d^2\zeta$$

and a change of fermionic variables gives (11.114). □

We have to note a difference from the bosonic case concerning the trace of a product.

### 11.6.4 The Moyal Product for Fermions

We have seen before several phase space representations for operators acting in fermionic spaces. That means that if $\hat{G}$ is a quantum (fermionic) observable then $\hat{G}$ has an integral representation on the phase space, with some symbol $G$, for example $G = G_w$ or $G = G^w$ for Weyl quantizations.

As we have already seen for bosons, these representations give what it is called a symbolic calculus. In particular there exists a formula to compute the symbol of the product of two operators $\hat{G}\hat{H}$. That means that we have $\hat{G}\hat{H} = \widehat{G \circledast H}$, where $G \circledast H$ is a non commutative product of $G$ and $H$ (it can be interpreted as a twist convolution). Moyal [145] gave an explicit integral formula to compute $G \circledast H$ for bosons (see Chap. 2). Our aim here is to give an analogous formula for fermions. These kinds of formula were discussed in many places, see for examples the book [19] and the papers [79, 114] and their bibliographies.

Let us start with two operators $\hat{G}$, $\hat{H}$ in the super Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}^n$, with their covariant and contravariant Weyl symbols $G_w, G^w, H_w, H^w$.

We have the following lemma.

**Lemma 77** *For every Grassmann variables $\xi = (\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n)$ we have the following properties*:

$$\hat{G}\hat{T}(\xi) = \widehat{G^{\xi}_w}, \quad \text{where } G^{\xi}_w(\beta) = G_w(\beta + \xi)\mathrm{e}^{1/2(\beta^* \cdot \xi + \beta \cdot \xi^*)},$$

$$\hat{T}(\eta)\hat{G} = \widehat{G_{w,\eta}}, \quad \text{where } G_{w,\eta}(\beta) = G(\beta + \eta)\mathrm{e}^{-1/2(\beta^* \cdot \eta + \beta \cdot \eta^*)},$$

$$\hat{T}(-\xi)\hat{G}\hat{T}(\xi) = \widehat{(\mu_\xi G)}, \quad \text{where } (\mu_\xi G)_w(\beta) = \mathrm{e}^{\beta^* \cdot \xi + \beta \cdot \xi^*} G_w(\beta).$$

*Proof* We have

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{G}\hat{T}(\xi) &= \int G_w(\alpha)\hat{T}(-\alpha)\hat{T}(\xi)\, d^2\alpha \\ &= \int G_w(\alpha)\hat{T}(\xi - \alpha)\mathrm{e}^{1/2(\alpha^* \cdot \xi + \alpha \cdot \xi^*)}\, d^2\alpha \\ &= \int G_w(\beta + \xi)\hat{T}(-\beta)\mathrm{e}^{1/2(\beta^* \cdot \xi + \beta \cdot \xi^*)}\, d^2\beta. \end{aligned} \tag{11.116}$$

We get the first formula. The two other formulas are easily deduced. □

Let us now give a formula for the Moyal product for covariant Weyl symbols.

**Lemma 78** *Here $G_w \circledast H_w$ denotes the covariant Weyl symbol of $\hat{G}\hat{H}$. Then we have*

$$(G_w \circledast H_w)(\gamma) = \int G_w(\gamma - \xi) H_w(\xi) \mathrm{e}^{-1/2(\gamma\cdot\xi^* + \gamma^*\cdot\xi)}\, d^2\xi. \tag{11.117}$$

*Proof* From Lemma 77 we have

$$\hat{G}\hat{T}(-\xi) = \int G_w(\alpha - \xi) \mathrm{e}^{-1/2(\alpha\cdot\xi^* + \alpha^*\cdot\xi)} \hat{T}(-\alpha)\, d^2\alpha. \tag{11.118}$$

We have

$$\hat{G}\hat{H} = \int \hat{G}\hat{T}(-\xi) H_w(\xi)\, d^2\xi.$$

So we get

$$\hat{G}\hat{H} = \iint G_w(\gamma - \xi) H_w(\xi) \mathrm{e}^{-1/2(\gamma\cdot\xi^* + \gamma^*\cdot\xi)} \hat{T}(-\gamma)\, d^2\xi\, d^2\gamma. \tag{11.119}$$

The lemma follows. □

Now we shall deduce the Moyal formula for contravariant Weyl symbols by applying a Fourier transform on the covariant Moyal formula.

We need some preliminaries. Left derivative $\partial_\theta$ was defined putting the fermionic variable $\theta$ on the left. It will be denoted $\overrightarrow{\partial_\theta}$ and its action on a function $G$ is denoted $\overrightarrow{\partial_\theta} G$. We have also a right derivative defined by putting $\theta$ on the right and its action on a function $\psi$ is denoted $G\overleftarrow{\partial_\theta}$. We have the following relationship between these derivatives:

$$G\overleftarrow{\partial_\theta} = (-1)^{1+\pi(G)} \overrightarrow{\partial_\theta} G. \tag{11.120}$$

In particular the signs are opposite if $G$ is even.

We also need a fermionic analogue of Fourier multipliers. Let $M$ be an even polynomial in Grassmann variables $(\zeta, \zeta^*)$. It defines a Fourier multiplier by the usual formula,

$$\hat{M}G(\xi) = \int G^{\mathscr{F}}(\zeta, \zeta^*) M(\zeta, \zeta^*) \mathrm{e}^{\zeta\cdot\xi^* + \zeta^*\cdot\xi}\, d^2\zeta. \tag{11.121}$$

We have the following formula:

$$\hat{M}G = M(\partial_{\xi^*}, \partial_\xi) G. \tag{11.122}$$

Now we can state the following result.

**Proposition 139** *Let $\hat{G}, \hat{H}$ be two linear operators in the super-Hilbert space $\tilde{\mathscr{H}}^{(n)}$. Then the contravariant symbol $G^w \circledast H^w$ of $\hat{G}\hat{H}$ is given by the following*

*Moyal formula*:

$$\big(G^w \circledast H^w\big)(\alpha) = G^w(\alpha)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\overleftarrow{\partial_{\alpha^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\alpha}+\overleftarrow{\partial_\alpha}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\alpha^*}})}H^w(\alpha). \tag{11.123}$$

To compute with formula (11.123) it is useful to note that $\overleftarrow{\partial_{\alpha_j^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\alpha_j}} = -\overrightarrow{\partial_{\alpha_j}}\cdot\overleftarrow{\partial_{\alpha_j^*}}$.

*Proof* Using (11.117) we have

$$\begin{aligned}\big(G^w \circledast H^w\big)(\alpha) &= \int G_w(\gamma-\xi)H_w(\xi)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(\gamma\cdot\xi^*+\gamma^*\cdot\xi)}\mathrm{e}^{\alpha\cdot\gamma^*+\alpha^*\cdot\gamma}\,d^2\xi\,d^2\gamma \\ &= \int G_w(\beta)H_w(\xi)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(\beta\cdot\xi^*+\beta^*\cdot\xi)}\mathrm{e}^{\xi\cdot\alpha^*+\xi^*\cdot\alpha+\beta\cdot\alpha^*+\beta^*\cdot\alpha}\,d^2\xi\,d^2\beta.\end{aligned} \tag{11.124}$$

Now we see that the right hand side of this formula can be seen as a Fourier multiplier in the variables $\zeta = (\beta, \xi)$ with the multiplier $M(\zeta, \zeta^*) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(\beta\cdot\xi^*+\beta^*\cdot\xi)}$, using that $G_w(\beta)H_w(\xi) = (G^w \otimes H^w)^{\mathscr{F}}(\beta, \xi)$ ($\beta$ and $\xi$ are independent Grassmann variables and $\otimes$ is the associated tensor product). Hence we get (11.123) using properties (11.121), (11.122) and (11.120). □

*Remark 66* From the formula (11.123) we can compute the Weyl symbol of the commutator $[\hat{G}, \hat{H}]$. Expanding the exponential in a Taylor series we see that the first term for the symbol of $\frac{1}{i}[\hat{G}, \hat{H}]$ is the Poisson bracket $\{G, H\}$ as expected where

$$\{G, H\} = i(\partial_\alpha G\cdot\partial_{\alpha^*}H - \partial_\alpha H\cdot\partial_{\alpha^*}G)$$

if we assume $G, H$ even.

## 11.7 Examples

### 11.7.1 The Fermi Oscillator

We shall see in the next chapter that the fermionic analogue of the harmonic oscillator is $\hat{H}_{fos} = \omega a^* a$, $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. We can compute the Weyl symbol of $\hat{H}_{fos}$ using the Moyal formula. We get

$$\big(a^* \circledast a\big)(\alpha) = \alpha^*\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\overleftarrow{\partial_{\alpha^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\alpha}\right)\alpha = \alpha^*\alpha + \frac{1}{2}. \tag{11.125}$$

Let us compute the Weyl symbol of $\mathrm{e}^{za^*a}$ for $z \in \mathbb{C}$.

Using that $(a^*a)^2 = a^*a$ and a Taylor expansion we have

$$\mathrm{e}^{za^*a} = 1 + \big(\mathrm{e}^z - 1\big)a^*a.$$

The Weyl symbol of $a^*a$ is $\alpha^*\alpha + \frac{1}{2}$. So we get a formula analogous to the bosonic case,

$$\left(\mathrm{e}^{za^*a}\right)^w(\alpha) = \frac{\mathrm{e}^z + 1}{2}\mathrm{e}^{2\tanh(z/2)\alpha^*\alpha}. \tag{11.126}$$

Remark that here the right hand side is everywhere smooth, even if $z = i\frac{\pi}{2}$, this is not true for the bosonic case.

### 11.7.2 The Fermi–Dirac Statistics

The most popular example is an ensemble of independent fermions in thermal equilibrium with a reservoir. This system is described by means of the grand canonical ensemble with the density operator

$$\hat{\rho} = Z(\beta, \mu)^{-1}\mathrm{e}^{-\beta(\hat{H}-\mu\hat{N})}, \tag{11.127}$$

where

$$Z(\beta,\mu) = \mathrm{Tr}\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\beta(\hat{H}-\mu\hat{N})}\right), \qquad \hat{H} = \sum_{1\le k\le n} \omega_k a_k^* a_k, \qquad \hat{N} = \sum_{1\le k\le n} a_k^* a_k.$$

To compute $Z(\beta,\mu)$ we first compute the action of $\mathrm{e}^{-\beta(\hat{H}-\mu\hat{N})}$ on coherent states.

Introduce the following notations for $z_k \in \mathbb{C}$, $\gamma_k \in \Gamma_n^c$: $z_k = -\beta(\omega_k - \mu)$, $Z_k = \mathrm{e}^{z_k} - 1$, $z = (z_1, \ldots, z_n)$, $\gamma(z) = (\mathrm{e}^{z_1}\gamma_1, \ldots, \mathrm{e}^{z_n}\gamma_n)$, $\hat{H}(z) = \sum_{1\le k\le n} z_k a_k^* a_k$, we have

**Lemma 79**

$$\mathrm{e}^{\hat{H}(z)}\psi_\gamma(\theta) = \psi_{\gamma(z)}(\theta)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\gamma(z)^*\cdot\gamma(z) - \gamma^*\cdot\gamma)}. \tag{11.128}$$

*Proof* It is a simple Grassmann computation.

First using that $(a_k^* a_k)^2 = a_k^* a_k$ and Taylor expansion we have

$$\mathrm{e}^{z_k a_k^* a_k} = 1 + \left(\mathrm{e}^{z_k} - 1\right)a_k^* a_k = 1 + Z_k a_k^* a_k.$$

Using that $\psi_\gamma$ is an eigenvector for $a_k$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{e}^{\hat{H}(z)}\psi_\gamma(\theta) &= \prod_{k=1}^{n}\left(1 + Z_k a_k^* a_k\right)\psi_\gamma(\theta) \\
&= \sum_{k_1<k_2<\cdots<k_m} Z_{k_1}\cdots Z_{k_m}(\theta_{k_1}\gamma_{k_1})\cdots(\theta_{k_m}\gamma_{k_m})\psi_\gamma(\theta) \\
&= \mathrm{e}^{\theta\cdot\gamma(z)}\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\gamma^*\cdot\gamma} \\
&= \psi_{\gamma(z)}(\theta)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\gamma(z)^*\cdot\gamma(z) - \gamma^*\cdot\gamma)}.
\end{aligned} \tag{11.129}$$

□

*Remark 67* Equality (11.128) gives evolution by quadratic Hamiltonian of coherent states with $z_k = -it\omega_k$.

Then using the overlap formula for coherent states we get

$$\langle \psi_{-\gamma}, \mathrm{e}^{\hat{H}(z)} \psi_\gamma \rangle = \mathrm{e}^{\gamma(z)\cdot\gamma^* + \gamma\cdot\gamma^*}. \tag{11.130}$$

So we get for the trace

$$\mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathrm{e}^{\hat{H}(z)}\big) = \int \langle \psi_{-\gamma}, \mathrm{e}^{\hat{H}(z)} \psi_\gamma \rangle d\gamma^* d\gamma = \prod_{1\le k\le n} \big(1 + \mathrm{e}^{z_k}\big). \tag{11.131}$$

In particular we have

$$\boxed{Z(\beta,\mu) = \prod_{1\le k\le n} \big(1 + \mathrm{e}^{-\beta(\omega_k-\mu)}\big)}. \tag{11.132}$$

An analogous computation gives the mean number $\langle \hat{N} \rangle$ of Fermions:

$$\langle \hat{N} \rangle = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{\rho}\hat{N}\big) = \sum_{1\le k\le n} \frac{1}{1 + \mathrm{e}^{\beta(\omega_k-\mu)}}. \tag{11.133}$$

### *11.7.3 Quadratic Hamiltonians and Coherent States*

A general quadratic self-adjoint fermionic Hamiltonian has the following form:

$$\hat{H} = \frac{1}{2}\big(a^* \cdot Ma + a^* \cdot La^* - a \cdot \bar{L}a\big) - \frac{\mathrm{Tr}\, M}{4}, \tag{11.134}$$

where $a = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$, $L, M$ are $n \times n$ matrices, $M$ is hermitian, $L$ is anti-symmetric ($\bar{L}$ is the complex conjugate of $L$, so $\bar{L} = (L^*)^T$ where $A^T$ is the transpose matrix of $A$). We assume for simplicity that $L, M$ are time independent; extension to time dependent Hamiltonians is straightforward.

The Weyl symbol of $\hat{H}$ is

$$H(\alpha) = \frac{1}{2}\big(\alpha^* \cdot M\alpha + \alpha^* \cdot L\alpha^* - \alpha \cdot \bar{L}\alpha\big).$$

We also introduce the matrix of the quadratic form $H$:

$$\Xi = \begin{pmatrix} -\bar{L} & -\frac{M^T}{2} \\ \frac{M}{2} & L \end{pmatrix}.$$

Our goal here is to compare the quantum evolution of $\hat{H}$ and the pseudo-classical evolution for the Hamiltonian $H = H^w$.

The equations of motion are

$$\dot{\alpha} = \{\alpha, H\} = i\partial_{\alpha_j^*} H, \tag{11.135}$$

$$\dot{\alpha}^* = \left\{\alpha^*, H\right\} = i\partial_{\alpha_j} H. \tag{11.136}$$

We have to remark here that the Poisson bracket {, } is defined according the usual quantization rule

$$\widehat{\{G, H\}} = \frac{1}{i}\big[\hat{G}, \hat{H}\big].$$

To solve this problem we introduce an other set of $2n$ Grassmann variables $(\eta, \eta^*)$ so that $\alpha = \alpha_t = A_t\eta + B_t\eta^*$, $\alpha_t^* = \bar{B}_t\eta + \bar{A}_t\eta^*$ where $A_t, B_t$ are complex $n \times n$ matrices depending on the time $t$.

Using that $\{\alpha, H\} = i(L\alpha^* + \frac{M}{2})$ and $\{\alpha^*, H\} = -i(\bar{L}\alpha + \frac{\bar{M}}{2})$ the equations of motion (11.135) are

$$\dot{A}_t = i\left(L\bar{B}_t + \frac{M}{2}A_t\right), \qquad \dot{B}_t = i\left(L\bar{A}_t + \frac{M}{2}B_t\right). \tag{11.137}$$

Or, equivalently,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ \bar{B}_t & \bar{A}_t \end{pmatrix} = i\begin{pmatrix} \frac{M}{2} & L \\ -\bar{L} & -\frac{\bar{M}}{2} \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ \bar{B}_t & \bar{A}_t \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11.138}$$

The matrix $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{M}{2} & L \\ -\bar{L} & -\frac{\bar{M}}{2} \end{pmatrix}$ is hermitian. So the "classical evolution" $F_t$ is unitary (in fermionic pseudo-classical mechanics unitarity replaces symplecticity for evolution in the phase space).

The $2n \times 2n$ matrix $F_t = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ \bar{B}_t & \bar{A}_t \end{pmatrix}$ is a representation of the classical flow because we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} \alpha_t \\ \alpha_t^* \end{pmatrix} = i\begin{pmatrix} \frac{M}{2} & L \\ -\bar{L} & -\frac{\bar{M}}{2} \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_t \\ \alpha_t^* \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{with } \alpha_0 = \eta, \alpha_0^* = \eta^*.$$

Note that $F_t$ has a natural action in the Grassmann algebra $\mathbb{C}[\eta, \eta^*]$. We shall see in the next chapter that $\mathbb{C}[\eta, \eta^*]$ can be seen as the space of smooth function on the fermionic phase space so any element $g \in \mathbb{C}[\eta, \eta^*]$ is a classical observable in the fermionic sense. So the natural action of $F_t$ in $\mathbb{C}[\eta, \eta^*]$ is $(F_t g)(\eta, \eta^*) = g(F_t(\eta, \eta^*))$.

But $F_t$ has a natural action in $\mathbb{C}^n$: $\zeta \mapsto A_t\zeta + B_t\zeta^*$ and $\mathbb{C}^n$ is identified with $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ by $\zeta = x + iy$, $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$. It is not difficult to prove that $F_t$ is an isometry in $\mathbb{C}^n$ if and only if the matrix $F_t$ is a unitary $2n \times 2n$ matrix. So $F_t$ can be considered as a rotation in $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ and belongs to the classical Lie group $SO(2n)$. Conversely for any $G \in SO(2n)$ there exists a flow $F_t$ such that $F_1 = G$. This can be proved using a complex diagonal form for $G$.

Now we compute the quantum evolution for quadratic Hamiltonians as we did in the bosonic case. Let us first consider the quantum evolution for the annihilation/creation operators $a$ and $a^*$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_t \\ a_t^* \end{pmatrix} = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ a^* \end{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{it\hat{H}}. \tag{11.139}$$

Then we find

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_t \\ a_t^* \end{pmatrix} = F_t \begin{pmatrix} a \\ a^* \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11.140}$$

As an application, we can define a fermionic analogue for the metaplectic representation which is called the *spin representation*. For more details about the spin group we refer to the book [190], Chap. 5. We comment here about its fermionic interpretation. In the e-preprint [67] the authors compare bosonic and fermionic Gaussian states.

To any $F \in SO(2n)$ we can associate a unitary (even) operator $\hat{S}(F)$ in the super-Hilbert space $\mathscr{H}^{(n)}$ such that

$$\hat{S}^*(F) \begin{pmatrix} a \\ a^* \end{pmatrix} \hat{S}(F) = F \begin{pmatrix} a \\ a^* \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11.141}$$

Formula (11.141) is known in the physics literature as a Bogoliubov transformation and in mathematics as a Shale–Weil representation formula.

The map $F \mapsto \hat{S}(F)$ is a projective representation: if $F \in SO(2n)$ and if $\hat{S}_1(F)$ and $\hat{S}_2(F)$ are to operators satisfying (11.141) then there exists $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, $|\lambda| = 1$ such that $\hat{S}_1^*(F) = \lambda \hat{S}_2^*(F)$. This is true because the Fock representation is irreducible.

As in the bosonic case it is possible to determine the spin representation up to a sign and we have $\hat{S}(F^1F^2) = \pm\hat{S}(F^1)\hat{S}(F^2)$. This can be proved using propagation of coherent states which will be now studied.

We have seen (11.128) that the Fermi oscillator propagates a coherent state in a coherent state following the classical motion. We prove now that this is true for any quadratic Hamiltonian if we replace coherent states by squeezed coherent states as in the bosonic case.

Let us denote $\psi_{\gamma,t} = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}}\psi_\gamma$. It is enough to consider the case $\psi_\gamma = \psi_0 = 1$ because we have

$$\mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}}\psi_\gamma = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}}\hat{T}(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{it\hat{H}}\mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}}\psi_0.$$

From the first part we have $\mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}}\hat{T}(\gamma)\mathrm{e}^{it\hat{H}} = \hat{T}(F_t\gamma)$. So it is enough to compute $\psi_{0,t} = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}}\psi_0$. Imitating the bosonic case we consider the following ansatz:

$$\psi_{0,t}(\theta) = s(t)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}\theta\cdot\Gamma_t\theta},$$

where $\Gamma_t$ is an anti-symmetric complex $n \times n$ matrix. We compute

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\theta\cdot\Gamma_t\theta}\frac{d}{dt}\psi_{0,t} = \dot{s}(t) + s(t)\theta\cdot\frac{\dot{\Gamma}_t}{2}\theta \tag{11.142}$$

and

$$e^{-\frac{1}{2}\theta\cdot\Gamma_t\theta}\hat{H}\psi_{0,t} = \frac{1}{2}\left[\theta\cdot(M\Gamma_t + L)\theta + \theta\cdot\Gamma_t\bar{L}\Gamma_t\theta - \operatorname{Tr}\bar{L}\Gamma_t - \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr}M\right]s(t). \tag{11.143}$$

Identification between anti-symmetric matrices gives the following Riccati equation for $\Gamma_t$:

$$i\dot{\Gamma}_t = \frac{1}{2}\big(M\Gamma_t + \Gamma_t\bar{M}\big) + L + \Gamma_t\bar{L}\Gamma_t, \quad \Gamma_0 = 0, \tag{11.144}$$

and the Liouville equation for the prefactor $s$:

$$i\dot{s}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr}\left(\bar{L}\Gamma_t + \frac{M}{2}\right)s(t), \quad s(0) = 1. \tag{11.145}$$

If $\Gamma_t = V_t W_t^{-1}$ we see that $\Gamma_t$ solves (11.144) if the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} V_t & \bar{W}_t \\ W_t & \bar{V}_t \end{pmatrix}$ solves

$$i\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} V_t & \bar{W}_t \\ W_t & \bar{V}_t \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{M}{2} & L \\ -\bar{L} & -\frac{\bar{M}}{2} \end{pmatrix}\cdot\begin{pmatrix} V_t & \bar{W}_t \\ W_t & \bar{V}_t \end{pmatrix}.$$

We have to solve this linear differential equation with the initial data $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbb{1} \\ \mathbb{1} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$. So we find

$$\begin{pmatrix} V_t & \bar{W}_t \\ W_t & \bar{V}_t \end{pmatrix} = F_t^*\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbb{1} \\ \mathbb{1} & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} B_t^T & A_t^* \\ A_t^T & B_t^* \end{pmatrix}.$$

So we get $V_t = B_t^T$ and $W_t = A_t^T$ and hence $\Gamma_t = B_t^T(A_t^T)^{-1}$ as far as $A_t$ is invertible.

Concerning the prefactor $s$ we get

$$\dot{s}(t) = \frac{i}{2}\operatorname{Tr}\left(\bar{L}\Gamma_t + \frac{M}{2}\right)s(t) = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr}\big(\dot{W}_t W_t\big)s(t) = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr}\big(\dot{A}_t A_t^{-1}\big)s(t),$$

hence using the Liouville formula, we have

$$s(t) = \det(A_t)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \tag{11.146}$$

Finally we get the following result:

**Proposition 140** *For any Grassmann generators $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ the evolution of the coherent state $\psi_\alpha$, $\psi_{\alpha,t} := e^{-it\hat{H}}\psi_\alpha$, for the quadratic Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ obeys the following formula for $0 \le t < T_c$, with $T_c \in ]0,\infty]$:*

$$\psi_{\alpha,t}(\theta) = \det(A_t)^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{\alpha_t(\frac{\alpha_t^*}{2}-\theta)} e^{(\theta-\alpha_t^*)\cdot\frac{\Gamma_t}{2}(\theta-\alpha_t^*)}, \tag{11.147}$$

*where* $T_c = \inf\{t > 0 \mid \det A_t = 0\}$ *and*

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha_t \\ \alpha_t^* \end{pmatrix} = F_t \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ \alpha^* \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_t & B_t \\ \bar{B}_t & \bar{A}_t \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ \alpha^* \end{pmatrix}$$

*is the pseudo-classical flow and* $\Gamma_t = B_t^T (A_t^T)^{-1}$.

*Moreover the formula* (11.147) *extends holomorphically for* $t \in \mathbb{C} \backslash \mathscr{Z}$ *where* $\mathscr{Z} := \{t \in \mathbb{C}, \det A_t = 0\}$ *is a discrete subset of* $\mathbb{C}$.

*Proof* $t \mapsto \psi_{\alpha,t}$ is clearly holomorphic in $\mathbb{C}$. So it is enough to prove the formula (11.147) for $0 < t < T_c$. We have already proved (11.147) when $\alpha = 0$ using that $A_t$ is invertible for $t$ small enough. Now we have

$$\psi_{\alpha,t} = \hat{T}(\alpha_t)\psi_{0,t}.$$

Using that

$$\hat{T}(\gamma) = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\gamma \cdot \gamma^*}{2}} \mathrm{e}^{a^* \cdot \gamma} \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^* \cdot a}$$

and $\mathrm{e}^{-\gamma^* \cdot a} f(\theta) = f(\theta - \gamma^*)$ we get (11.147) for any $\alpha$. □

*Remark 68* The solution $\psi_{\alpha,t}$ is everywhere smooth in time $t \in \mathbb{R}$ but its Gaussian shape breaks down when $A_t$ stops to be invertible. We do not analyze here what happens in general when $\det(A_t)$ vanishes, even if it is an interesting question. An important difference from the bosonic case is the sign of the $\frac{1}{2}$-power of the determinant for the prefactor.

Let us consider the particular cases when $L = 0$ or $M = 0$.

If $L = 0$ we find $A_t = \mathrm{e}^{itM/2}$ and $B_t = 0$. Then $\Gamma_t = 0$ at every time and the shape of the coherent state is constant.

If $M = 0$, we have

$$F_t = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(itL) & \sin(itL) \\ -\sin(itL) & \cos(itL) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The spectrum of $L$ is $\{i\nu_j\}_{1 \le j \le n}$, $\nu_j \in \mathbb{R}$, hence

$$\det(A_t) = 0 \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad t = \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2\nu_j}, \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

The shape of the coherent states breaks down at these times as we clearly see in the following example.

Assume that $n = 2$ and $L = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} := J$. We find

$$A_t = \cos(itJ), \qquad B_t = -\sin(itJ), \qquad \Gamma_t = \tan(itJ),$$

where we have used $\cos(itJ) = \cos t(\mathbb{1})$ and $\sin(itJ) = iJ\sin t$. Hence we have

$$\psi_{0,t}(\theta_1,\theta_2) = \cos t\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{i}{2}\theta\cdot\tan(itJ)\theta} = \cos t\big(1+\tan(itJ)\theta_1\theta_2\big).$$

For $t=\frac{\pi}{2}$, $\psi_{0,t}(\theta_1,\theta_2) = i\theta_1\theta_2$ which is no more a Gaussian (a Gaussian function of Grassmann variables is always invertible). We can only say that it is a degenerate Gaussian.

In the next paragraph we want to compute the matrix elements $\langle\psi_\beta, U_t\psi_\alpha\rangle$ where $U_t = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}}$ and deduce from that a computation of the integral kernel of $U_t$ (fermionic analogue of the Mehler formula), hence a formula for the Weyl symbol of $U_t$ (fermionic analogue of the Mehlig–Wilkinson formula).

### 11.7.4 More on Quadratic Propagators

**Proposition 141** *With the notations of the previous section, for every pair of Grassmann generators* $\alpha = (\alpha_1,\ldots,\alpha_n)$, $\beta = (\beta_1,\ldots,\beta_n)$, *we have*

$$\langle\psi_\beta, U_t\psi_\alpha\rangle = \det(A_t)^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta\cdot\beta^*+\alpha_t\cdot\alpha_t^*)+\beta^*\cdot\alpha_t}\,\mathrm{e}^{(\beta^*-\alpha_t^*)\cdot(\frac{\Gamma_t}{2})(\beta^*-\alpha_t^*)} \tag{11.148}$$

*for* $t\in\mathbb{C}\backslash\mathscr{Z}$.

*Proof* It is enough to prove (11.148) for $\alpha = 0$ using the formula

$$\langle\psi_\beta, U_t\psi_\alpha\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta\cdot\alpha_t^*+\beta^*\cdot\alpha_t)}\langle\psi_{\beta-\alpha_t}, U_t\psi_0\rangle.$$

Let us introduce the notations: $\eta_\gamma(\theta) = \mathrm{e}^{\theta\cdot\gamma}$ and

$$f_t\big(\gamma^*\big) = \langle\eta_\gamma, U_t\eta_0\rangle.$$

Our strategy to compute $f_t$ is to show that it satisfies a quadratic Schrödinger equation, noticing that $f_0(\gamma^*) = 1$.

We have $i\partial_t f_t = \langle\hat{H}\eta_\gamma, U_t\eta_0\rangle$. An easy computation using $a^*\eta_\gamma(\theta) = \theta\eta_\gamma(\theta)$ and $a\eta_\gamma(\theta) = \gamma\eta_\gamma(\theta)$ gives that

$$\hat{H}\eta_\gamma(\theta) = \frac{1}{2}\left(\theta\cdot M\gamma + \theta\cdot L\theta - \gamma\cdot\bar{L}\gamma - \frac{\operatorname{Tr} M}{2}\right)\eta_\gamma(\theta). \tag{11.149}$$

Plugging this formula in $\langle\hat{H}\eta_\gamma, U_t\eta_0\rangle$ and the formula

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\gamma_j}f\right)^* = (-1)^{1+\pi(f)}\frac{\partial}{\partial\gamma_j^*}f$$

we get

$$i\partial_t f_t\big(\gamma^*\big) = \big(\hat{H}f_t\big)\big(\gamma^*\big).$$

Using the previous section's main result we get

$$f_t(\gamma^*) = \det(A_t)^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{\gamma^* \cdot \frac{\Gamma_t}{2} \gamma^*}.$$

This proves (11.148) for $\alpha = 0$ hence for any $\alpha$. □

Using formula (11.54) we get a kind of fermionic analogue of the Mehler formula for oscillators.

**Corollary 33** *The integral kernel $K_t(\theta, \gamma^*)$ of the quadratic propagator $U_t$ has the following expression, for $t \in \mathbb{C} \backslash \mathscr{Z}$:*

$$K_t(\theta, \gamma^*) = \det(A_t)^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{\theta \cdot \gamma_t^* + \frac{1}{2}(\gamma_t^* \cdot \gamma_t - \gamma^* \cdot \gamma)} e^{(\theta - \gamma_t) \cdot \frac{\Gamma_t}{2} (\theta - \gamma_t)}. \tag{11.150}$$

To conclude this section on quadratic propagators for fermions we now compute the contravariant Weyl symbols $U_t^w$ of the quadratic propagator $\hat{U}_t = e^{-it\hat{H}}$. All the computations can be extended to time dependent Hamiltonians $H(t)$.

Let us introduce the notations: $\mathrm{Sp}\, \Sigma$ the spectrum of the Hermitian matrix $\Sigma$ of $H$ and

$$\mathscr{Z}_H = \left\{ \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{\lambda}, \lambda \in \mathrm{Sp}\, \Sigma, k \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}.$$

**Theorem 50** *Let us consider a quadratic fermionic Hamiltonian like* (11.134). *Then the contravariant Weyl symbol $U_t^w$ of $e^{-it\hat{H}}$ is given by the formula*

$$U_t^w(\xi) = \det\left(\frac{F_t + \mathbb{1}}{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \exp\left(\begin{pmatrix} \xi^* \\ \xi \end{pmatrix} \cdot (F_t - \mathbb{1})(F_t + \mathbb{1})^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} \xi \\ \xi^* \end{pmatrix}\right) \tag{11.151}$$

*for $t$ such that $|t| < T_1$ where $T_1$ is the first time when* $\det(F_t + \mathbb{1}) = 0$.

*More generally the formula* (11.151) *is satisfied for every $t \in \mathbb{C} \backslash \mathscr{Z}_H$.*

*Proof* First remark that $t \mapsto U_t^w(\xi)$ is holomorphic in $t \in \mathbb{C}$, so it is enough to prove formula (11.151) for $0 \le t < T_1$.

It could be possible to compute the Weyl symbol $U_t^w$ from the kernel of $\hat{U}_t$ using Fourier computation of Gaussians but in this way it does not seem easy to have a direct expression with the flow $F_t$. So we choose a more direct approach, as we did for bosons, making the following ansatz:

$$U_t^w(\xi) = f(t) \exp\left(\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \xi \\ \xi^* \end{pmatrix} \cdot \Lambda_t^w \begin{pmatrix} \xi \\ \xi^* \end{pmatrix}\right),$$

where $f(t)$ is a complex valued function and $\Lambda_t^w$ is a $2n \times 2n$ anti-symmetric matrix. Applying the Moyal formula (11.123) to the equation

$$\partial_t U_t^w = H \circledast U_t^w$$

we get

$$i\big(\dot f(t) + f(t)\Phi_t^w(\xi)\big)U_t^w(\xi) = H(\xi)U_t^w(\xi) + \frac{1}{2}H\Big(\overleftarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\xi} + \overleftarrow{\partial_\xi}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\Big)U_t^w + \frac{1}{8}H\Big(\overleftarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\xi} + \overleftarrow{\partial_\xi}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\Big)^2 U_t^w, \qquad (11.152)$$

where $\Phi_t^w$ is the quadratic form associated with the matrix $\Lambda_t^w$:

$$\Phi_t^w(\xi) = \frac{1}{2}\xi\cdot E_t\xi + \xi^*\cdot K_t\xi^* + \xi^*\cdot G_t\xi \quad \text{and} \quad \Lambda_t^w = \begin{pmatrix} E_t & -\frac{G^T}{2} \\ \frac{G}{2} & K_t \end{pmatrix}. \qquad (11.153)$$

We also introduce the matrix of the quadratic form $H$:

$$\Xi = \begin{pmatrix} -\bar L & -\frac{M^T}{2} \\ \frac{M}{2} & L \end{pmatrix},$$

the matrix $\mathscr{J} = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & \mathbb{1} \\ \mathbb{1} & 0 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ and $\Sigma = \mathscr{J}\,\Xi$ the generator of the flow $F_t = e^{it\Sigma}$.

It will be useful to remark that $\mathscr{J}$ is the fermion analogue of the $J$ matrix of the symplectic form and that the flow $F_t$ leaves $\mathscr{J}$ invariant: $F_t^T\,\mathscr{J}\,F_t = \mathscr{J}$.

Now we can compute the right hand side of (11.152) applying carefully the fermionic computation rules we get, with $X = \left(\begin{smallmatrix} \xi \\ \xi^* \end{smallmatrix}\right)$,

$$H\Big(\overleftarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\xi} + \overleftarrow{\partial_\xi}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\Big)U_t^w = -\mathscr{J}\,\Xi X\cdot\Lambda_t^w X U_t^w, \qquad (11.154)$$

$$H\Big(\overleftarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\xi} + \overleftarrow{\partial_\xi}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\xi^*}}\Big)^2 U_t^w = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\mathscr{J}\,\Xi\,\mathscr{J}\,\Lambda_t^w\big) + \Lambda_t^w X\cdot\mathscr{J}\,\Xi\,\mathscr{J}\,\Lambda_t^w X. \qquad (11.155)$$

Plugging this into (11.152) and identifying the quadratic and the constant parts in $X$ we get for $\Lambda_t^w$ a Riccati equation and for $f$ a Liouville equation as is expected:

$$i\dot\Lambda_t^w = \Xi - \frac{1}{2}\big(\Lambda\,\mathscr{J}\,\Xi - \Xi\,\mathscr{J}\,\Lambda_t^w\big) - \frac{1}{4}\Lambda_t^w\,\mathscr{J}\,\Xi\,\mathscr{J}\,\Lambda_t^w. \qquad (11.156)$$

It is convenient here to introduce $\Theta_t = \mathscr{J}\,\Lambda_t^w$. So we get

$$i\dot\Theta_t = \frac{1}{4}(2-\Theta_t)\Sigma(2+\Theta_t), \quad \Theta_0 = 0. \qquad (11.157)$$

Equation (11.157) is easily solved by a Cayley transform: $\Theta_t = 2(\mathscr{N}_t - \mathbb{1})(\mathscr{N}_t + \mathbb{1})^{-1}$. So we find $\mathscr{N}_t = F_t^{-1}$ and we get

$$\Lambda_t^w = 2\mathscr{J}(F_t - \mathbb{1})(F_t + \mathbb{1})^{-1}. \qquad (11.158)$$

Using this result we find for $f$ the Liouville equation

$$\dot f = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Tr}\big(\dot F_t(F_t + \mathbb{1})^{-1}\big)f(t), \quad f(0) = 1, \qquad (11.159)$$

and we get

$$f(t) = \det\left(\frac{F_t + \mathbb{1}}{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \tag{11.160}$$

This achieves the proof of (11.151). □

From this result we can compute the covariant Weyl symbol $U_{t,w}$ using the Fourier Gauss formula in Proposition 127.

**Corollary 34** *Assume that the quadratic form $H$ is non-degenerate* (*so the matrices $\Xi$ and $\Sigma$ are non-degenerate*).

*Let $T_2$ be the smallest time $t > 0$ such that* $\det(F_t - \mathbb{1}) = 0$. *Then for* $0 < t < T_2$ *we have the formula*

$$U_{t,w}(\gamma) = f^w(t) \exp\left(\frac{1}{4}\begin{pmatrix}\gamma\\ \gamma^*\end{pmatrix} \cdot \mathscr{J}(F_t + \mathbb{1})(F_t - \mathbb{1})^{-1}\begin{pmatrix}\gamma\\ \gamma^*\end{pmatrix}\right), \tag{11.161}$$

*where* $f^w(t)^2 = \det(F_t - \mathbb{1})$.

*The formula* (11.161) *is also true for* $t \in \mathbb{C}$, $t \neq \frac{2k\pi}{\lambda}$, $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, $\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp} \Sigma$.

# Chapter 12
# Supercoherent States—An Introduction

**Abstract** In previous chapters we have considered coherent states systems for bosons and for fermions separately. Here we introduce superspaces, where it is possible to consider simultaneously bosons and fermions. Our aim is to give a short introduction to this deep and difficult subject by considering some elementary examples where coherent states and quantization are involved.

## 12.1 Introduction

We have seen before that a general setting for coherent states is related to unitary irreducible representations of Lie-groups. Then we have defined fermionic coherent states associated with a "group of translations in fermions coordinates". Here we shall consider states of systems mixing bosons and fermions. This is more difficult but very essential to give a mathematical model of supersymmetry. Recall that supersymmetry is a mathematical theory built to describe transformations which exchange bosons and fermions. Up to now it is not known if such transformations exist in Nature.

Anyway it is useful to understand mixed systems with bosons and fermions from a classical and a quantum point of view as well and to compare them.

In short, superspaces are spaces where it is possible to define classical supersymmetry.

Supercoherent states are a useful tool to build a bridge between the classical world and the quantum world as they do in the more familiar case for finite number bosons systems. So we shall construct here a family of supercoherent states and we shall see that they have many similarities with the coherent states of the harmonic oscillator. In particular they can be obtained in several ways: by translations through a super Weyl–Heisenberg group, as eigenfunctions of a super annihilation operator or by a minimum uncertainty principle.

We do not give here the more general setting, our aim here is to give a first approach and compute some interesting examples, in particular concerning the Bose–Fermi oscillator or super-harmonic oscillator.

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0_12, 

## 12.2 Quantum Supersymmetry

At the formal mathematical level quantum supersymmetry can be easily implemented with a unitary involution $\tau$ in an Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ (see [184, 200] for details). Denote $\mathcal{H}_B = \ker(\tau - \mathbb{1})$ and $\mathcal{H}_F = \ker(\tau + \mathbb{1})$. If $\Pi_\pm = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbb{1} \pm \tau)$ then $\Pi_\pm$ are orthogonal projectors and we have $\mathcal{H}_B = \Pi_+\mathcal{H}$, $\mathcal{H}_F = \Pi_-\mathcal{H}$.

**Definition 33** Let $\hat{H}$ be a self-adjoint operator in $\mathcal{H}$ with a $\tau$-invariant domain $D(\hat{H})$.

$\hat{H}$ is said to be even if $[\hat{H}, \tau] = 0$ ($\hat{H}$ and $\tau$ commute).

$\hat{H}$ is said to be odd if $[\hat{H}, \tau]_+ = 0$ ($\hat{H}$ and $\tau$ anti-commute).

Every Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ in $\mathcal{H}$ have a matrix representation in the decomposition $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_B \oplus \mathcal{H}_F$,

$$\hat{H} = \begin{pmatrix} \hat{H}_{++} & \hat{H}_{+-} \\ \hat{H}_{-+} & \hat{H}_{--} \end{pmatrix}$$

So $\hat{H}$ is odd if and only if $\hat{H}_{++} = \hat{H}_{--} = 0$ and $\hat{H}$ is even if and only if $\hat{H}_{-+} = \hat{H}_{+-} = 0$.

A supersymmetry is determined by its generators $\{\hat{Q}_k\}_{1 \le k \le N}$ where the $\hat{Q}_k$ are self-adjoint and odd operators, so we have $[\hat{Q}_k, \tau]_+ = 0$, and $\hat{Q}_k$ send bosons on fermions and vice versa.

The Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ is said supersymmetric if $[\hat{H}, \hat{Q}_k] = 0$ for $1 \le k \le N$. But to have better algebraic properties it is assumed that $[\hat{Q}_k, \hat{Q}_j]_+ = 2H\delta_{j,k}, \le j, k \le N$. Here for simplicity suppose that $N = 2$. We write the Hamiltonian in the symmetric form

$$\hat{H} = \frac{1}{2}(\hat{Q}_1^2 + \hat{Q}_2^2)$$

or, if we denote $\hat{Q} = \frac{\hat{Q}_1 + i\hat{Q}_2}{\sqrt{2}}$, we have the complex form:

$$\hat{H} = \frac{1}{2}[\hat{Q}, \hat{Q}^*]_+, \quad \text{with the relations}$$
$$\left[\hat{H}, \hat{Q}\right] = \left[\hat{H}, \hat{Q}^*\right] = 0, \ \hat{Q}^2 = \left(\hat{Q}^*\right)^2 = 0 \tag{12.1}$$

$\hat{Q}$ is usually called a supercharge for $\hat{H}$.

The main physical problem in supersymmetry is to check if it is broken or preserved. In [200], E. Witten said:

"The most important question about supersymmetry theory is the question whether there exists in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ a state $|\Omega\rangle$ which is annihilated by the supersymmetry operators $Q_i$, $Q_i|\Omega\rangle = 0$."

Assume the spectrum of $\hat{H}$ is purely discrete. So its energy levels are non negative real numbers $E$. If $E > 0$ the eigenstates for $E$ are pair $(\psi_B, \psi_F)$ where $\psi_F = \hat{Q}\psi_B$.

If $E = 0$ then $\hat{H}\psi = 0$ if and only if $\hat{Q}_1\psi = \hat{Q}_2\psi = 0$ then it is said that supersymmetry is preserved.

But if there exists $\psi \in D(\hat{Q}) \cap D(\hat{Q}^*)$ such that $\hat{Q}\psi = 0$ and $\hat{Q}^*\psi \neq 0$ then we say that supersymmetry is broken. Then the vacuum energy $E$ satisfies $E > 0$.

Let us now consider the well known Witten example of a quantum mechanical system with supersymmetry.

It is a spin $\frac{1}{2}$ exchange model in one degree of freedom.

So $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}^2)$ with the unitary involution $\sigma_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$. The supercharge is

$$\hat{Q} = \frac{1}{i}\left(\frac{d}{dx} + V'(x)\right)\sigma_-, \quad \sigma_- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{12.2}$$

$$\hat{Q}^* = \frac{1}{i}\left(\frac{d}{dx} - V'(x)\right)\sigma_+, \quad \sigma_+ = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{12.3}$$

An easy computation gives the following Hamiltonian:

$$\hat{H} = \frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + V'(x)^2\right)\mathbb{1}_2 - \frac{\sigma_3}{2}V''(x) \tag{12.4}$$

Assume for simplicity that $V(x)$ is a polynomial of even degree: $V(x) = c_0x^{2k} + \cdots c_m x^{2k+m}$ with $c_0 > 0$. Then $\hat{H}$ is a self-adjoint operator with a discrete spectrum.

It is easy to solve equations $\hat{Q}\psi = 0$ and $\hat{Q}^*\psi = 0$. We find

$$\hat{Q}\psi = 0 \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \psi(x) = \psi(x_0)\mathrm{e}^{V(x_0)-V(x)} \tag{12.5}$$

$$\hat{Q}^*\psi = 0 \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \psi(x) = \psi(x_0)\mathrm{e}^{V(x)-V(x_0)} \tag{12.6}$$

So we see that $\hat{Q}\psi = 0$ has non-zero $L^2$ solution and $\hat{Q}^*\psi = 0$ has no non-zero $L^2$ solution, hence the supersymmetry is broken.

A supersymmetric harmonic oscillator is obtained with $V(x) = \frac{\omega x^2}{2}$, $\omega > 0$. So we get the Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H}_{sos} = \frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + \omega^2 x^2\right)\mathbb{1}_2 - \frac{\omega}{2}\sigma_3$$

It is easy to get the spectral decomposition for $\hat{H}_{sos}$ using the Hermite basis $\{\psi_k\}_{k\in\mathbb{N}}$ (see Chap. 1). Denote $\psi_k(1/2, x) = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_k(x) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\psi_k(-1/2, x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \psi_{k-1}(x) \end{pmatrix}$, with $\psi_{-1} = 0$.

For $k \geq 1$, $\{\psi_k(1/2, \cdot), \psi_k(-1/2, \cdot)\}$ is a basis of eigenvectors for the eigenvalue $k$ of multiplicity two and 0 is a non degenerate eigenvalue with eigenvector $\begin{pmatrix} \psi_0(x) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$.

Let us remark that besides the position $x$ we have here another degree of freedom $s = 1/2, -1/2$ which is discrete and represents the spin of a fermion.

We can rewrite the supersymmetric harmonic oscillator with creation and annihilation operators for bosons and fermions:

$$a_B = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\omega_B}}\left(\omega_B q + \hbar\frac{d}{dq}\right), \qquad a_F = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\omega_F}}\sigma_+ \tag{12.7}$$

$$a_B^* = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\omega_B}}\left(\omega_B q - \hbar\frac{d}{dq}\right), \qquad a_F^* = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\omega_F}}\sigma_- \tag{12.8}$$

We get the super-harmonic oscillator,

$$\hat{H} = \omega_B[a_B^*, a_B]_+ + \omega_F[a_F^*, a_F] \tag{12.9}$$

where $(a_B^*, a_B)$ satisfies (CCR) or Weyl–Heisenberg algebra relations and $(a_F^*, a_F)$ satisfies (CAR) or Clifford algebra relations. We shall see that $\hat{H}$ is supersymmetric if $\omega_B = \omega_F$.

It is possible to consider systems with $n$ bosons generators and $m$ fermions generators as well, writing $a_B = (a_{B,1}, \ldots, a_{B,n})$ and $a_F = (a_{F,1}, \ldots, a_{F,m})$ satisfying (CCR) relations for $a_B$, (CAR) relations for $a_F$.

The goal of a supersymmetry theory is to put bosons and fermions on the same footing. For example we would like to consider the parameter $s$ for the spin as a classical variable on the same footing as $x$ for the position. In other words the question is to find a kind of classical analogue for the spin. The question seems strange because the spin is purely quantal and disappears in the usual semi-classical limit.

Nevertheless Berezin has invented new spaces where this is possible after quantization; he called them superspaces with different super-structures (linear spaces, algebras, groups and manifolds (see [20])). We shall give here an introduction to this wide subject, explaining only enough details to understand some semi-classical properties of supercoherent states. Concerning a more complete presentation we refer to the wealth of literature [20, 65, 132, 190].

## 12.3 Classical Superspaces

The problem considered here is to find a classical analog for the algebra defined in (12.1). In other words we want to construct classical spaces mixing bosons and fermions. We already know classical spaces for bosons: real or complex vector spaces or manifolds and classical spaces for fermions: Grassmann algebras $\mathbb{K}[\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n]$, $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$.

It is not obvious to understand in geometrical terms what is a classical space for fermions. We shall come back to this point later. First notice here that it is not the algebra $\mathbb{K}[\theta]$ but instead a mysterious space $B$ such that the space of "smooth functions" on B with values in the Grassmann algebra $\mathbb{K}$ is $\mathbb{K}[\theta]$. In particular $B$ is a set of dimension 0. This was more or less implicit in the previous sections.

### *12.3.1 Morphisms and Spaces*

The configuration space of a classical system with $n$ bosons and $m$ fermions will be a symbolic space denoted $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$ such that

$$C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m}) := C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)[\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n] := C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n) \otimes \mathcal{G}_m$$

where $\mathcal{G}_m$ is the Grassmann algebra with $m$ generators. In other words $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m})$ is a $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ module with basis $\{\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_n\}$.

$(x, \theta)$ is interpreted as a coordinates system of a point in the symbolic space $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$; $x = (x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ are the even coordinates and $\theta = (\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_m)$ are the odd coordinates. As for Grassmann algebras, $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m})$ is a super-module, with a parity operator $\mathbf{P}$, $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$-linear. So

$$C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m}) = \left[C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m})\right]_+ \oplus \left[C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m})\right]_-$$

where $[\bullet]_+$ is the even part and $[\bullet]_-$ is the odd part.

For applications we need to understand transformation map between different superspaces $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$, $\mathbb{R}^{r|s}$.

A first approach to define a map $\Phi : \mathbb{R}^{n|m} \to \mathbb{R}^{r|s}$ is to use coordinates system: $\Phi(y, \eta) = (x, \theta)$ where $x, y$ are even coordinates, $\theta, \eta$ are odd coordinates. But the symbolic spaces are defined implicitly by the $C^\infty$ functions defined on them. So we interpret $\Phi$ as a change of variables in functions $f \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{r|s})$,

$$\Phi^\star(f)(x, \theta) = f\big(\Phi(x, \theta)\big) \tag{12.10}$$

where $f \mapsto \Phi^\star(f)$ is a linear map. It is important to underline here that the meaning of the right hand side in (12.10) is given by the left hand side because superspaces are only symbolic and are defined by their algebra of functions and not by a well identified geometrical object in the usual sense.

To define supermanifolds it is necessary to define local superspaces in an open set $U$ of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then $U^{n|m}$ is the superspace defined by its algebra of $C^\infty$ functions: $C^\infty(U^{n|m}) := C^\infty(U) \otimes \mathcal{G}_m$. So we have a natural definition for morphisms from $U^{n|m}$ in $V^{s|r}$ where $V$ is an open set of $\mathbb{R}^s$. Let us give now some more formal definitions following [20, 132, 190].

### *12.3.2 Superalgebra Notions*

**Definition 34** (Superlinear spaces) A superlinear space $V$ is a vector space on $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$ with a decomposition ($\mathbb{Z}_2$-grading) $V = V_0 \oplus V_1$. $V_0$ is the set of even vector, $V_1$ is the set of odd vectors. Then on $V$ there exists a parity (linear) operator $\mathbf{P}$, defined by $\mathbf{P}\mathbf{v} = v$ for $v \in V_0$, $\mathbf{P}\mathbf{v} = -v$ for $v \in V_1$. Elements in $V_0 \cup V_1$ are called homogeneous.

A linear map $F$ from the superlinear space $V$ into the superlinear space $W$ is said superlinear, or even, if it preserves parities, so $F$ sends $V_j$ in $W_j$, $j = 0, 1$. A linear map from $V$ into $W$ is said odd if $F(V_j) \subseteq W_{j+1}$ ($j \in \mathbb{Z}_2$).

The parity number $\pi(v)$ is defined for homogeneous elements: $\pi(v) = 0$ if $v \in V_0$; $\pi(v) = 1$ if $v \in V_1$.

Let us remark that every linear map from $V$ into $W$ is the sum of an even map and an odd map. The following notations will be used:

SHom$(V, W)$ is the linear space of even maps $V$ into $W$ and Hom$(V, W)$ is the space of all linear maps from $V$ into $W$. Then Hom$(V, W)$ is again a superlinear space and it even part is the space of even maps from $V$ into $W$.

$$\big(\mathrm{Hom}(V, W)\big)_0 = \mathrm{SHom}(V, W)$$

**Definition 35** (Superalgebras) A superalgebra is a linear space $\mathcal{A}$ with an associative multiplication with unit 1 $(fg) \mapsto f \cdot g$, such that for every $f, g \in \mathcal{A}_+ \cup \mathcal{A}_-$ we have the parity condition:

$$\pi(f \cdot g) = \pi(f) + \pi(g)$$

The superalgebra $\mathcal{A}$ is said (super)commutative if

$$f \cdot g = (-1)^{\pi(f)\pi(g)} g \cdot f$$

Examples: Grassmann algebras $\mathbb{K}[\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n]$ are super-commutative algebras.

**Definition 36** (Superspace) If $B$ is a superspace (for example defined by a Grassmann algebra) the set of $B$-points of the superspace $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$ is the set $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B)$ defined by the following equality:

$$\mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B) = \mathrm{Hom}\big(C^\infty\big(\mathbb{R}^{n|m}\big), C^\infty(B)\big)$$

The interpretation is that $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B) = \mathrm{Hom}(B, \mathbb{R}^{n|m})$ so $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B)$ can be seen as the "points of $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$" parametrized by $B$. An other important trick for a correct interpretation of superspace concerns the product of superspaces. We should like to have for example $\mathbb{R}^{n|m} = \mathbb{R}^{n|0} \times \mathbb{R}^{0|m}$ (of course $\mathbb{R}^{n|0}$ is the usual space $\mathbb{R}^n$ and $\mathbb{R}^{0|m}$ is the space whose $C^\infty$-functions are $\mathbb{R}[\theta_1, \dots, \theta_m]$).

Let us consider 3 classical superspaces $X, Y_1, Y_2$. We can understand identification between Hom$(X, Y_1 \times Y_2)$ and Hom$(X, Y_1) \times$ Hom$(X, Y_2)$ through identification between Hom$(C^\infty(Y_1 \times Y_2), C^\infty(X))$ and Hom$(C^\infty(Y_1), C^\infty(X)) \times$ Hom$(C^\infty(Y_2), C^\infty(X))$. This is done as follows.

If $\Phi_k^*$ is a morphism from $C^\infty(Y_k)$ into $C^\infty(X)$ then we get a unique morphism $\Pi^*$ from $C^\infty(Y_1 \times Y_2)$ into $C^\infty(X)$ satisfying

$$\Phi^*(f_1 \otimes f_2) = \Phi_1^*(f_1)\Phi_2^*(f_2), \quad \text{for } f_k \in \mathbb{C}^\infty(Y_k) \tag{12.11}$$

Conversely if $\Phi^*$ is given we get $\Phi_1^*(f_1) = \Phi^*(f_1 \otimes 1)$ and $\Phi_2^*(f_2) = \Phi^*(1 \otimes f_2)$.

So the identification is determined by (12.11).

### *12.3.3 Examples of Morphisms*

We compute here morphism between some superspaces.

(1) $\Phi$ is a morphism from $\mathbb{R}^n$ in $\mathbb{R}^r$. It is known that we have $\Phi^\star(f)(x) = f(\Phi(x))$ with $\Phi$ smooth function $\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^r$.

(2) $\Phi$ is a morphism from $\mathbb{R}^{0|1}$ into $\mathbb{R}$. Using parity we have $\Phi^\star(f) = b_0(f)$ where $b_0(f)$ is real, linear and multiplicative in $f$. So there exists $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\Phi^\star(f) = f(x_0)$, which means that $\Phi$ is constant, as it should.
(3) $\Phi$ is a morphism from $\mathbb{R}^{1|1}$ into $\mathbb{R}$. Using parity, we have $\Phi^\star(f) = c_0(f)$ where $c_0$ is a morphism from $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ in $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$. Hence there exists a smooth function $\Phi : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ such that $\Phi^\star(f) = f \circ \Phi$.
(4) $\Phi$ is a morphism from $\mathbb{R}^{1|1}$ into $\mathbb{R}^{0|1}$. Using parity, we have $\Phi^\star(1) = 1$ and $\Phi^\star(\theta) = c_1\theta$. (1 is the constant function 1). So we have $\Phi^\star(b_0 + b_1\theta) = b_0 + b_1c_1\theta$.

From (3) and (4) we clearly see that $(x, \theta)$ are coordinates for $\mathbb{R}^{1|1}$.
(5) $\Phi$ is a morphism from $\mathbb{R}^{1|2}$ into $\mathbb{R}^1$. We have

$$\Phi^\star(f) = b_0(f) + b_1(f)\theta_1\theta_2$$

The superalgebra even morphism conditions give

$$b_0(fg) = b_0(f)b_0(g), \quad f, g \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}),\ b_0(1) = 1 \tag{12.12}$$

$$b_1(fg) = b_0(f)b_1(g) + b_1(f)b_0(g) \tag{12.13}$$

From the first condition, there exists $\varphi : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ such that $b_0(f) = f \circ \varphi$. Then the second condition means that $b_1$ is a derivation at $\varphi(x)$. So there exists $\chi(x, t)$, smooth in a neighborhood of the graph of $\varphi$ such that

$$b_1(f)(x) = \chi(x, t)\frac{df}{dt}\bigg|_{t=\varphi(x)} \tag{12.14}$$

## 12.4 Super-Lie Algebras and Groups

Standard symmetries (at the classical or quantum level as well) are described through the group action. Supersymmetries will be described through the action of super-groups. Moreover these super-groups are derived by exponentiating super-Lie algebras as in the usual case of Lie groups.

### *12.4.1 Super-Lie Algebras*

**Definition 37** A super-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{s}$ is a superlinear space on $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}$ with a bilinear bracket $(A, B) \mapsto [A, B]$ satisfying the following identities for homogeneous elements $A, B, C$:

$$[A, B] = (-1)^{1+\pi(A)\pi(B)}[B, A] \tag{12.15}$$

$$\pi\big([A, B]\big) = \pi(A) + \pi(B) \tag{12.16}$$

$$(-1)^{\pi(A)\pi(C)}\big[A, [B, C]\big] + (-1)^{\pi(B)\pi(A)}\big[B, [C, A]\big] + (-1)^{\pi(C)\pi(B)}\big[C, [A, B]\big] = 0 \tag{12.17}$$

*Remark 69* The first equality means that $[A, B]$ is anticommutative excepted if $A$ and $B$ are odd. In this case the bracket is commutative.

The second identity means that the bracket of two even or two odd elements is even and the bracket of an even and odd element is odd.

The third identity is the super-Jacobi identity.

As in the standard case of Lie algebras, many examples of a super-Lie algebra are realized as matrix superalgebras. Let us consider a supervector space on the field $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}$, $V = V_0 \oplus V_1$ where the even space $V_0$ has dimension $n$ and the odd space $V_1$ has dimension $m$. Any superlinear operator $A$ in $V$ has a matrix representation

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{++} & A_{+-} \\ A_{-+} & A_{--} \end{pmatrix}$$

Denote $\mathrm{End}(V)$ the space of all superlinear operators in $V$. We have seen that $\mathrm{End}(V)$ is a supervector space with parity $\pi$. It is a super-Lie algebra for the super-bracket:

$$[A, B] = AB - (-1)^{\pi(A)\pi(B)}BA$$

Choosing basis in $V_0$ and $V_1$ the superspace $V$ is isomorphic to $\mathbb{K}^n \oplus K^m$. This space is denoted $\mathbb{K}^{n,m}$ (not the same meaning as $\mathbb{K}^{n|m}$) and the super-Lie algebra is denoted $\mathfrak{gl}(n|m)$.

We denote $\mathfrak{sl}(n, m)$ the sub-super-Lie algebra of $\mathfrak{gl}(n|m)$ defined by the super-traceless condition: $\mathrm{Str}A = 0$.

$\mathfrak{su}(n, m)$ is the sub-super-Lie algebra of matrix $A$ such that

$$A_{++} = -A^*_{++}, \qquad A_{-+} = -iA^*_{+-}$$

For $m = 0$ we recover the classical Lie algebras $\mathfrak{gl}(n), \mathfrak{sl}(n), \mathfrak{su}(n)$.

**Definition 38** Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a superalgebra (not necessarily associative). A linear operator $D$ in $\mathcal{A}$ is called a superderivation if it satisfies, for every homogeneous elements $f, g$ in $\mathrm{End}(\mathcal{A})$,

$$D(f \cdot g) = D(f) \cdot g + (-1)^{\pi(D)\pi(f)} f \cdot D(g) \tag{12.18}$$

The basic example is $D = \mathrm{ad}_A$ where $\mathcal{A}$ is a super-Lie algebra and $\mathrm{ad}_A(B) = [A, B]$ (like in standard Lie algebras).

In the superalgebra $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m})$, $X_j = \frac{\partial}{\partial_{x_j}}$ and $\Theta_k = \frac{\partial}{\partial_{\theta_k}}$ are superderivations (the first is even, the second is odd). And if $h \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m})$, $hX_j$ and $h\Theta_k$ are again superderivations.

## 12.4.2 Supermanifolds, a Very Brief Presentation

To define supermanifolds it is necessary to define local superspaces in an open set $U$ of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then we denote $U^{n|m}$ the superspace defined by its $C^\infty$ functions: $C^\infty(U^{n|m}) := C^\infty(U) \otimes \mathcal{G}_m$. So we have a natural definition for morphisms from $U^{n|m}$ in $V^{s|r}$ where $V$ is an open set of $\mathbb{R}^s$. $U^{n|m}$ is a superspace of dimension $n|m$.

As for a standard manifold, a supermanifold $M$ of dimension $n|m$ is a topological space $M_0$ (called the underlying space) such that for each point $m \in M_0$ we have an open neighborhood $U$ and a superalgebra $\mathcal{R}_U$ isomorphic to $C^\infty(V^{n|m})$, where $V$ is an open set of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Moreover a gluing condition has to be satisfied (see [190], p. 135). In particular $M_0$ is a standard manifold of dimension $n$.

We have discussed here the super-analogue of real $C^\infty$ manifolds. It is possible to define real analytic or holomorphic supermanifolds. For that we have to replace $C^\infty(U)$ by the space $C^\omega(U)$ of analytic functions in $U$. In the complex case $U$ is an open set of $\mathbb{C}^n$ (recall that complex analytic = holomorphic).

Nowadays there exist essentially two kinds of (almost) equivalent definitions of supermanifolds. One defines supermanifold by its morphisms [22, 132, 190], it is called the algebro-geometrical approach; the other is closer to the standard definition where a manifold is a set of points but the field of real numbers is replaced by a non-commutative and infinite dimensional Banach algebra [62, 169]. Here we shall use the terminology of the algebro-geometrical approach. See [169] for a discussion about comparison of these two definitions.

We only give here a very brief and sketchy introduction to this rich subject. Our goal is only to have a better intuition of what is going on some few examples, in particular concerning the Fermi–Bose (or super) oscillator.

**Definition 39** Roughly speaking, a $\mathcal{C}^\infty$-supermanifold of dimension $n|m$ is a superspace $M$ defined by an underlying manifold of dimension $n$ such that $M$ is locally isomorph to $U^{n|m}$, where $U$ is a chart (open set in $\mathbb{R}^n$) of the underlying manifold $M_0$. There are gluing compatibility conditions between the charts as for manifolds where $\mathcal{C}^\infty(U^{n|m})$ replaces $\mathcal{C}^\infty(U)$.

If $U$ is an open set of $\mathbb{R}^n$, the supermanifold $U^{n|m}$ is defined by the underlying space $U$ and with $\mathcal{C}^\infty(U^{n|m}) = \mathcal{C}^\infty(U)[\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_m]$, $\theta_1, \ldots, \theta_m$ are generators of a real Grassmann algebra.

**Definition 40** A vector field in the super domain $U^{n|m}$ is a derivation in the superalgebra $\mathcal{C}^\infty(U^{n|m})$.

As in the standard case the set $\mathcal{V}(U^{n|m})$ of vector fields in $U^{n|m}$ is a super-Lie algebra. Note that it is a module over $\mathcal{C}^\infty(U^{n|m})$ with the following basis in coordinates $(x,\theta)$:

$$\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\cdots\frac{\partial}{\partial x_n};\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_1},\ldots,\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_m}\right\}$$

In a supermanifold $M$ the tangent superspace at "$P \in M$" of coordinates $(x,\theta)$ is defined locally in a chart $U^{n|m}$ as the space $\mathcal{V}(U^{n|m})$ restricted at $(x,\theta)$ (see [190] for a more precise definition).

### *12.4.3 Super-Lie Groups*

In short, a super-Lie group is a supermanifold and a super-group where the group operations are morphims. It is not the place here to define rigorously all these terms; we refer to [62, 132, 169, 190] for a detailed study of supermanifolds and super-groups.

A super Lie-group is defined as a supermanifold where the group structure is defined by morphisms

$$\mu : G\times G \to G, \qquad \iota = G \to G, \qquad \nu_0 : \mathbb{R}^{0|0} \to G$$

These morphisms define, respectively, the multiplication, the inverse element and the unit element. Of course we need conditions to translate the group properties on morphisms (see [190] for details).

We have defined before the superspace $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$. It is a commutative Lie group for the "natural" addition with the following morphisms:

$$(x,\theta)+(y,\zeta) = (x+y,\theta+\zeta) \tag{12.19}$$

Addition rule has to be defined in terms of morphisms as follows.

Recall that the space $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$ is defined by its morphisms and for every superspace $B$, $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B)$ is the set of $B$ points of $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$, $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B) = \mathrm{Hom}(C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n|m}), C^\infty(B))$. Addition in $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B)$ is defined as follows. It is first noticed that a morphism $\psi^\star \in \mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B)$ is determined by its images on the following generators of $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$:

$$f_j(x,\theta) = x_j, \qquad g_k(x,\theta) = \theta_k, \quad 1\le j\le n,\ 1\le k\le m$$

$\psi^\star(f_j)$ and $\psi^\star(g_k)$ determine $\psi^\star$. Hence the additive group $\{\mathbb{R}^{n|m},+\}$ is defined by the rule, $\psi_1^\star, \psi_2^\star \in \mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B)$,

$$\left(\psi_1^\star+\psi_2^\star\right)(f) = \psi_1^\star(f)+\psi_2^\star(f), \quad \text{for } f = f_j,\ g_k,$$

for any $\psi_1^\star, \psi_2^\star \in \mathbb{R}^{n|m}(B)$ and any superspace $B$.

For simplicity, assume $n = m = 1$. Practically if $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{1|1})$ we have $f(x,\theta) = f_0(x) + f_1(x)\theta$ and the meaning of (12.19) is

$$\mu^\star(f)(t,s,\theta,\zeta) = f_0(t+s) + f_1(t+s)\theta + f_1(t+s)\zeta$$

It is easy to explicitly write $\iota^\star$ and $\nu_0^\star$.

As in the standard case, it is very important to have connections between super-Lie algebras and super-groups. Without going into details of the theory of super-Lie groups, (see [22, 190]), let us recall here a definition (up to super-isomorphism) of the super-Lie algebra of a super-group SG of dimension $n|m$.

**Definition 41** The super-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sg}$ of the super-group SG is the superlinear space of left invariant derivations in the algebra $\mathcal{C}^\infty(U^{n|m})$ where $U$ is a neighborhood 1 of the underlying Lie group $G_0$.

The easiest example is the superlinear group $\mathrm{GL}(n,m)$ corresponding to the super-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{gl}(n,m)$. The details can be found in [22].

Elements $g$ of $\mathrm{GL}(n,m)$ are superlinear isomorphisms in $\mathbb{R}^{n|m}$. They are parametrized by matrices

$$A(g) = \begin{pmatrix} A_{++} & A_{+-} \\ A_{-+} & A_{--} \end{pmatrix}$$

where the matrices $A_{++}, A_{--}$ have even elements and $A_{+-}, A_{-+}$ have odd elements. The real component of $A(g)$ is

$$A_0(g) = \begin{pmatrix} A_{++} & 0 \\ 0 & A_{--} \end{pmatrix}$$

$A_0(g)$ is invertible if and only if $\det(A_{++})\det(A_{--}) \neq 0$. Denote $G_0 = \mathrm{GL}(n) \times \mathrm{GL}(m)$. $G_0$ is a standard manifold of dimension $n^2 + m^2$. So we see that the supermanifold $\mathrm{GL}(n,m)$ is defined by the sheaf of smooth function

$$\mathcal{C}^\infty\big(\mathrm{GL}(n,m)\big) := \mathcal{C}^\infty(G_0) \otimes \mathbb{R}^{2nm}$$

It can be proved that it is a super Lie group [22].

*Remark 70* One very useful tool to compute in superanalysis is what Berezin called "the Grassmann analytic continuation principle" [22]. It was sometimes applied implicitly above and we shall often apply it later without more justifications. There exist several ways to explain this principle in a more mathematical rigorous approach (see [65, 105]).

The practical rule is the following. Let $f$ be a real function of $n$ real variables $x_1, \dots, x_n$ and $n$ nilpotent Grassmann numbers $\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n$. That means that $\xi_j \in \mathcal{G}_n$ and $\xi_j = \sum_{|\varepsilon|>0} a_\varepsilon^j \theta^\varepsilon$ where $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n$ are generators of $\mathcal{G}_n$. Denote $x =$

$(x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ and $\xi = (\xi_1, \ldots, \xi_n)$ (using the usual notation in several variable functions), the Grassmann analytic continuation principle says

$$f(x + \xi) = \sum_\alpha \frac{\xi^\alpha}{\alpha!} \frac{\partial^\alpha}{\partial x^\alpha} f(x) \tag{12.20}$$

Recall that $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \ldots \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{N}^n$, $\xi^\alpha = \xi_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots \xi_n^{\alpha_n}$, hence we have $\xi^\alpha = 0$ for $|\alpha| \geq 2n$ so the Taylor expansion (12.20) is finite.

We consider now more interesting examples, where even and odd coordinates are mixed, which gives supersymmetries after quantization.

Let us begin by the toy model $\mathbb{R}^{1|1}$ with the law super-group:

$$(t, \theta) \cdot (s, \zeta) = (t + s - i\theta\zeta, \theta + \zeta) \tag{12.21}$$

Let us denote SG(1|1) this super-group (it is easy to prove that it is a super-group with a non-commutative product) and $\mathfrak{sg}(1|1)$ its Lie algebra.

If $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{1|1})$, $f(t, \theta) = f_0(t) + \theta f_1(t)$, and $(s, \eta)$ the coordinates of a super-vector $v$ in $\mathbb{R}^{1|1}$, the left translation of $f$ by $v$ is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} {}^\ell\tau_{(s,\eta)} f(t, \theta) &= f(t - s + i\eta\theta, \theta - \eta) \\ &= f_0(t - s) + i\eta\theta f_0'(t - s) + (\theta - \eta) f_1(t - s) \end{aligned} \tag{12.22}$$

Here we have used the Grassmann analytic extension principle. But we have the group property: ${}^\ell\tau_{(s,\eta)} ={}^\ell \tau_{(s,0)} \circ{}^\ell \tau_{(0,\eta)}$ and

$${}^\ell\tau_{(s,0)} f(t, \theta) = f(t - s, \theta), \quad \text{(usual translation by a real number } s) \tag{12.23}$$

$${}^\ell\tau_{(0,\zeta)} f(t, \theta) = f(t, \theta) + \zeta \left( i\theta \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \right) f(t, \theta) \tag{12.24}$$

So we can conclude that the super-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sg}(1|1)$, has the two generators $\{\partial_t, \mathcal{D}_\theta\}$, where $\partial_t = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}$ is even, $\partial_\theta = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}$, and $\mathcal{D}_\theta = i\theta\partial_t - \partial_\theta$ are odd. We have the commutation rule

$$[\mathcal{D}_\theta, \mathcal{D}_\theta]_+ = -2i\partial_t$$

By analogous computations we get a basis for right invariant vector fields. Only the odd parts is modified. We get

$$\mathcal{Q}_\theta = i\theta\partial_t + \partial_\theta$$

Only the last commutation rule is changed:

$$[\mathcal{Q}_\theta, \mathcal{Q}_\theta]_+ = 2i\partial_t \tag{12.25}$$

Moreover we have the following commutation:

$$[\mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{D}] = 0 \tag{12.26}$$

In mechanics the generator of the time translations is the Hamiltonian $H$. So equation (12.25) is a classical analogue for a supersymmetric system.

Consider now a more physical example leading to a classical analogue for the Witten model [200]. This kind of model was considered before by several physicists in the 1970s (Wess, Zumino, Salam).

On $\mathbb{R}^{1|2}$ define the following multiplication (non-commutative) rule:

$$(t,\theta,\theta^*)(s,\zeta,\zeta^*) = \big(t+s-i(\theta\zeta^*-\zeta\theta^*), \theta+\zeta, \theta^*+\zeta^*\big) \tag{12.27}$$

For $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{1|2})$ we have $f(t,\theta,\theta^*) = f_0(t) + f_1(t)\theta + f_2(t)\theta^* + f_3(t)\theta\theta^*$. The multiplication morphism $\mu^*$ is determined by $\mu^*(f_j)$ for $1 \le j \le 3$ (recall that $\mu^*$ is a superalgebra morphism). For every $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ the meaning of (12.27) is

$$\begin{aligned}\mu^\star(f)(t,s,\theta,\theta^*,\zeta,\zeta^*) &= f(t+s-i(\theta\zeta^*-\zeta\theta^*), \theta+\zeta, \theta^*+\zeta^*)\\ &= f(t+s) - i(\theta\zeta^*-\zeta\theta^*)f'(t+s) - \theta\theta^*\zeta\zeta^* f''(t+s)\end{aligned}$$

$\iota^\star$ and $\nu_0^\star$ are easily computed such that $\{\mathbb{R}^{1|2}, \mu\}$ is a super Lie group that we shall denote $\mathrm{SG}(1|2)$.

As we have done for $\mathrm{SG}(1|1)$ we can compute generators for the super-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sg}(1|2)$ by identifying left invariant vector fields.

Denote ${}^\ell\tau_{s,\eta,\eta^*}$ the left translation by $(s,\eta,\eta^*)$, ${}^\ell\tau_\eta$ the left translation by $(0,\eta,0)$ and ${}^\ell\tau_{\eta^*}$ the translation by $(0,0,\eta^*)$. As above we get easily for every $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{1|2})$,

$${}^\ell\tau_\eta f(t,\theta) = f(t,\eta) + \eta(i\theta^*\partial_t - \partial_\theta)f(t,\theta) \tag{12.28}$$

$${}^\ell\tau_{\eta^*} f(t,\theta) = f(t,\eta) + \eta(i\theta\partial_t - \partial_{\theta^*})f(t,\theta) \tag{12.29}$$

So we have got the following basis for $\mathfrak{sg}(1|2)$:

$$\partial_t, \qquad \mathcal{D}_\theta = i\theta^*\partial_t - \partial_\theta, \qquad \mathcal{D}_{\theta^*} = i\theta\partial_t - \partial_{\theta^*}$$

with one even and two odd generators. The commutation rules of this algebra are

$${\mathcal{D}_\theta}^2 = {\mathcal{D}_{\theta^*}}^2 = 0 \tag{12.30}$$

$$[\mathcal{D}_\theta, \partial_t] = [\mathcal{D}_{\theta^*}, \partial_t] = 0 \tag{12.31}$$

$$[\mathcal{D}_\theta, \mathcal{D}_{\theta^*}]_+ = -2i\partial_t \tag{12.32}$$

By analogous computations we get a basis for right invariant vector fields. Only the odd parts is modified. We get

$$\mathcal{Q}_\theta = i\theta^*\partial_t + \partial_\theta, \qquad \mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*} = i\theta\partial_t - \partial_{\theta^*}$$

Only the last commutation rule is changed:

$$[\mathcal{Q}_\theta, \mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*}]_+ = 2i\partial_t \tag{12.33}$$

Moreover we have the commutation

$$[\mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{D}] = 0 \tag{12.34}$$

So (12.33) is a classical analogue for the quantum supersymmetric system of Witten. This will become more explicit later.

## 12.5 Classical Supersymmetry

### 12.5.1 A Short Overview of Classical Mechanics

There are many books concerning this very well known subject. For our purpose we recall here some basic facts concerning Lagrangians and Hamiltonians. We refer for more details to the following books [7, 92, 182].

In physics classical dynamical systems are usually introduced with their Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}$ and their action integral $S = \int dx\, \mathcal{L}(x)$ if $x$ is a coordinate system for classical paths. For a point particle moving in $\mathbb{R}^n$ with coordinates $q = (q_1, \ldots, q_n)$ we have $S = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} dt\, \mathcal{L}(q, \dot{q})$, $\dot{q}$ is the time derivative of $q$. The equations of motion (Euler–Lagrange equations) are deduced from the least action principle,

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{q}}\right) = 0 \tag{12.35}$$

Euler–Lagrange equation may be very difficult to solve. Much information of its solutions can be obtained studying its symmetries. According the Noether famous theorem, symmetries give integral of motions $I$, functions of $q, \dot{q}$ conserved along the motion $\frac{d}{dt} I(q, \dot{q}) = 0$. In particular the Hamiltonian energy function $H$ is conserved:

$$H(q, \dot{q}) = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{q}} \cdot \dot{q} - \mathcal{L}(q, \dot{q}) \tag{12.36}$$

The canonical conjugate momentum $p$ is defined as

$$p = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{q}}$$

$p$ is a cotangent vector in $(\mathbb{R}^n)^*$. We consider here for simplicity systems without constraints and that the configuration space is the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^n$ (see [7] for manifolds).

Let us recall now a statement for the Noether theorem concerning symmetries and integrals of motion.

**Theorem 51** *Let* $V(q) = \sum_{1 \le j \le n} v_j(q) \frac{\partial}{\partial q_j}$ *be a vector field and* $\phi_V^s$ *its flow*:

$$\frac{d}{ds}\phi_V^s(q_s) = v(q_s), \quad q_0 = q, \quad \text{where } v(q) = \big(v_1(q), \ldots, v_n(q)\big) \tag{12.37}$$

(NI) *Assume that* $\mathcal{L}$ *is invariant under* $\phi_V^s$ *for* $s$ *close to* 0. *Then*

$$I_V(q,\dot{q}) = v(q)\cdot\frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\dot{q}}$$

*is an integral of motion*: $\frac{dI_V}{dt}=0$.

(NII) *Assume that there exists a smooth function* $K$ *on* $\mathbb{R}^n\times\mathbb{R}^n$ *such that*

$$v(q)\cdot\frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\dot{q}} + \dot{v}(q)\frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial q} = \frac{d}{dt}K(q,\dot{q}) \tag{12.38}$$

*then* $I = v(q)\cdot\frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\dot{q}} - K(q,\dot{q})$ *is an integral of motion.*

*Remark 71* It is convenient to state Noether's theorem with finite small deformations of size $\varepsilon$. Denote $\delta_\varepsilon q = \varepsilon v(q)$, $\delta_\varepsilon\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}(q+\delta_\varepsilon q, \dot{q}+\delta_\varepsilon\dot{q}) - \mathcal{L}(q,\dot{q})$. The invariance assumptions (12.38) means that

$$\delta_\varepsilon\mathcal{L} = \varepsilon\frac{d}{dt}K(q,\dot{q}) + O\big(\varepsilon^2\big) \tag{12.39}$$

The energy Hamiltonian $H$ was defined as a function of $(q,\dot{q})$. It is convenient to replace the velocity $\dot{q}$ by the momentum $p$ using the Legendre transform in $\dot{q}\mapsto p$.

$$H(q,p) = p\cdot\dot{q}(q,p) - \mathcal{L}\big(q,\dot{q}(q,p)\big) \tag{12.40}$$

If the matrix $\frac{\partial^2\mathcal{L}}{\partial\dot{q}\partial\dot{q}}$ is non-degenerate, $H$ is a smooth function of $(q,p)$ only (at least locally).

In order to quantize the classical system with Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}$ it is assumed that $H$ is defined globally.

We shall see that for fermions it is not true for interesting examples where the Lagrangian is degenerate: $\dot{q}\mapsto p$ is not onto. But in order to quantize canonically a classical system we have to compute an Hamiltonian and a Poisson bracket. Dirac has proposed a method [69] to do that in the degenerate case.

Let us describe roughly the Dirac method which will apply to fermions. We follow here [112] where the reader can find many details.

When $\dot{q}\mapsto p$ is not onto the range of the mapping $(q,\dot{q})\mapsto(q,p)$ ($p=\frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\dot{q}}$) is a non-geometrically trivial part of the phase space. In particular it is not possible to recover $\dot{q}$ from $p$. In this situation we say that the Lagrangian is singular or degenerate.

Following [69], it will be assumed that this is a smooth manifold $\mathcal{C}$ described by equations $\chi_j(q,p)=0$, $1\le j\le m$ where the differential $d\chi_j$ are everywhere independent.

The energy Hamiltonian $H$ is always a function of $q$ and $p$ (as in the regular case) but is defined here only under the constraint $(q,p)\in\mathcal{C}$. Dirac assumed that $H$ has an extension to the whole phase space $\mathbb{R}^n\times\mathbb{R}^n$ ($\mathbb{R}^n$ is identified with $(\mathbb{R}^n)^*$)

and he computed a modified Poisson bracket $\{\bullet, \bullet\}_{Di}$ such that for any observable $F \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n)$ the equation of motion is

$$\dot{F} = \{F, H\}_{Di}, \quad \text{in particular } \dot{q} = \{q, H\}_{Di}, \ \dot{p} = \{p, H\}_{Di} \tag{12.41}$$

On $\mathcal{C}$, using definition of $p$ we have

$$dH = \dot{q}\, dp - \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial q} dq = \frac{\partial H}{\partial q} dq + \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} dp \tag{12.42}$$

Then there exists $u_j(q, \dot{q})$, $1 \le j \le m$, such that

$$\dot{q} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} + \sum_{1 \le j \le m} u_j \frac{\partial \chi_j}{\partial p} \tag{12.43}$$

$$\dot{p} = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q} - \sum_{1 \le j \le m} u_j \frac{\partial \chi_j}{\partial q} \tag{12.44}$$

So we have for every observable $F$

$$\dot{F} = \{F, H\} + \sum_{1 \le j \le m} u_j \{F, \chi_j\} \tag{12.45}$$

The constraints $\chi_j$ have to be preserved during the time evolution, which gives the conditions

$$\{\chi_k, H\} + \sum_{1 \le j \le m} u_j \{\chi_k, \chi_j\} = 0, \quad \text{for } 1 \le k \le m \tag{12.46}$$

For simplicity assume now $m = 2$ and $\{\chi_1, \chi_2\} = \lambda \neq 0$. From conditions (12.46) we can compute $u_1, u_2$:

$$u_1 = \frac{\{\chi_2, H\}}{\lambda}, \qquad u_2 = -\frac{\{\chi_1, H\}}{\lambda}.$$

Then the Dirac bracket has the following expression:

$$\{F, G\}_{Di} = \{F, G\} + \frac{1}{\lambda}\big(\{F, \chi_1\}\{\chi_2, G\} - \{F, \chi_2\}\{\chi_1, G\}\big) \tag{12.47}$$

It is easy to see that $(F, G) \mapsto \{F, G\}_{Di}$ is a Lie bracket on the linear space $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n)$.

Let us consider the following example in the configuration space $\mathbb{R}^2$: $\mathcal{L}_M = x\dot{y} - y\dot{x} - V(x, y)$, $V$ is a smooth potential. This Lagrangian is degenerate. We have

$$p_x := \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}_M}{\partial \dot{x}} = -y, \qquad p_y := \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}_M}{\partial \dot{y}} = x \tag{12.48}$$

The energy Hamiltonian is $H = V(x, y)$. We have the two constraints $\chi_1 = p_x + y$, $\chi_2 = p_y - x$ and $\{\chi_1, \chi_2\} = 2$. Then the Dirac bracket is

$$\{F, G\}_{Di} = \frac{1}{2}\{F, G\} - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}\frac{\partial G}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial y}\frac{\partial G}{\partial x}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial p_x}\frac{\partial G}{\partial p_y} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_y}\frac{\partial G}{\partial p_x}\right) \tag{12.49}$$

We can check that the Hamiltonian $H$ and the Dirac bracket (12.49) give the Euler–Lagrange equation for the motion. We find

$$\dot{x} = \{x, V\}_{Di} = -\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial V}{\partial y}; \qquad \dot{y} = \{y, V\}_{Di} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \tag{12.50}$$

To prepare a canonical quantization of the Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}_M$ we write the commutation relations

$$\{x, y\}_{Di} = \{p_x, p_y\}_{Di} = -\frac{1}{2} \tag{12.51}$$

$$\{x, p_x\}_{Di} = \{y, p_y\}_{Di} = \frac{1}{2} \tag{12.52}$$

$$\{y, p_x\}_{Di} = \{x, p_y\}_{Di} = 0 \tag{12.53}$$

A Dirac quantization $F \mapsto \hat{F}$ satisfies

$$\{F, G\}_{Di} \to -i\big[\hat{F}, \hat{G}\big]$$

So we get a representation of the Lie algebra (12.51) in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ satisfying

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{x} &= \frac{1}{2}\left(x + \frac{\partial}{i\partial y}\right), & \hat{y} &= \frac{1}{2}\left(y - \frac{\partial}{i\partial x}\right) \\ \hat{p}_x &= -\frac{1}{2}\left(y - \frac{\partial}{i\partial x}\right), & \hat{p}_y &= \frac{1}{2}\left(x + \frac{\partial}{i\partial y}\right) \end{aligned} \tag{12.54}$$

Notice that this representation in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ is not irreducible because we have the constraints $\hat{p}_x + \hat{y} = 0$, $\hat{p}_y - \hat{x} = 0$ and the relations (12.54) define an Heisenberg Lie algebra of dimension 3. So we can get a quantization equivalent to the Weyl quantization in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$.

### *12.5.2 Supersymmetric Mechanics*

Supermechanics is an extension of classical mechanics. In supermechanics a point has real (or even) coordinates $x = (x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ representing the bosonic degrees of freedom and Grassmann coordinates, $\xi = (\xi_1, \ldots, \xi_M)$, representing the fermionic degrees of freedom. To encode the two kinds of degree of freedom in the same object one introduces a "real super variables" $X$ living in the configuration space of all the system. A super Lagrangian is a function $\mathcal{L}_S$ of $X$ and its derivative $\mathcal{D}X$, with values in a Grassmann algebra. In coordinates we can write $X = (x, \xi)$ where $x$ has real dependent components, $\xi$ have fermionic (real) components.

In coordinates we get a pseudo-classical Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}(x, \dot{x}, \xi, \dot{\xi})$. The conjugate momenta are

$$p = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}}, \qquad \pi = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{\xi}} \tag{12.55}$$

Assume for a moment that we can define the Hamiltonian $H$ as the Legendre transform of $\mathcal{L}$ in $(\dot{x}, \dot{\xi})$. Let $F$ be an observable on the phase space defined by its coordinates $(x, \xi, p, \pi)$. Along the motion we want to have as usual

$$\dot{F} = \{F, H\}$$

where $F$ is an extension of the usual Poisson bracket. A direct computation, using equations of motion, gives

$$\dot{F} = \left(\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial H}{\partial x}\frac{\partial F}{\partial p}\right) - \left(\frac{\partial H}{\partial \pi}\frac{\partial F}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial H}{\partial \xi}\frac{\partial F}{\partial \pi}\right) \tag{12.56}$$

Recall that $H$ and $F$ are in the superalgebra $\mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{n+n|m+m})$. The right side in (12.56) is the super Poisson bracket $\{F, H\}$, the first term is the usual antisymmetric Poisson bracket in bosonic variables, inside the second parentheses we have a symmetric form for the contribution of fermionic variables.

For any homogeneous observables $F, G$ the Poisson bracket is a super Lie product in $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n|2m})$ satisfying

$$\{F, G\} = \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}\frac{\partial G}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p}\frac{\partial G}{\partial x}\right) + (-1)^{\pi(F)}\left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial \xi}\frac{\partial G}{\partial \pi} + \frac{\partial F}{\partial \pi}\frac{\partial G}{\partial \xi}\right) \tag{12.57}$$

First consider a simple system with one bosonic state and one fermionic state without interaction. Its states are represented by the superfield:

$$X = x + i\theta\xi \tag{12.58}$$

$x$ is a real number depending on time $t$, $\xi$ is an odd number living in a Grassmann algebra. We want that $X$ is even and "real". We introduce two Grassmann complex conjugate generators $\{\eta, \eta^*\}$ and choose $\xi(t) = \bar{c}(t)\eta + c(t)\eta^*$ where $c(t)$ is a complex number. Then we have $(i\theta\xi)^* = i\theta\xi$ so $X$ is even and real. Remark that $X$ is not a $C^\infty$ function on $\mathbb{R}^{1|1}$ because the coefficient $\xi$ is not a complex number but a Grassmann variable.

As we have seen the superfield $X$ has to be understood as a morphism from $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ in $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{1|1})$; using the Grassmann analytic extension principle we have

$$X^*(f)(x, \theta) = f(x) + if'(x)\theta\xi$$

Let us introduce the super Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}_S = \frac{1}{2}\mathcal{D}X \cdot \mathcal{D}(\mathcal{D}X)$$

where $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}_\theta$.

In coordinates we get the pseudo-classical Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}_{pcl} = \int d\theta\, \mathcal{L}_S = \frac{1}{2}\big(\dot{x}^2 + i\xi\dot{\xi}\big)$$

We can easily solve the Euler–Lagrange equations. We get

$$\ddot{x} = 0, \qquad \dot{\xi} = 0$$

We can consider the same model with three superfields $X_j = x_j + i\theta\xi_j$, $1 \le j \le 3$,

$$\mathcal{L}_{pcl} = \frac{1}{2}\big(\dot{x}\cdot\dot{x} - i\dot{\xi}\cdot\xi\big)$$

Here we have three constraints

$$\chi_j = \pi_j + \frac{i}{2}\xi_j$$

But we have $\{\chi_j, \chi_k\} = -i\delta_{j,k}$ so the constraints are second order. This system is invariant by any rotation in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Its Dirac canonical quantization gives a spin system [182].

The super-group SG(1|1) transforms $X$ by right translations, so we have

$$X(t - i\theta\eta, \theta + \eta) = X(t,\theta) + \eta\mathcal{Q}X(t,\theta)$$

where $\mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{Q}_\theta$. So a variation of $X$ is given by $\delta_\eta X = \eta\mathcal{Q}X$, where $\delta_\eta$ is a derivation in $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})[\theta, \eta, \eta^*]$ considered as a $\mathbb{R}(\eta, \eta^*]$ module (coefficients of $X$ are in $\mathbb{R}[\eta, \eta^*]$), $\delta_\eta F = [\eta\mathcal{Q}, F]$.

In coordinates we have $\delta_\eta X = \delta_\eta x + i\theta\delta_\eta\xi$ where

$$\delta_\eta x = i\eta\xi, \qquad \delta_\eta\xi = \eta\dot{x}$$

So we compute the variation of the Lagrangian and the variation of the corresponding action $S = \int dt\, d\theta\mathcal{L}$. Using that $\delta_\eta$ is a derivation, we get

$$\delta_\eta\mathcal{L}_S = \eta\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{L}_S = \eta(i\theta\partial_t + \partial_\theta)\mathcal{L} \tag{12.59}$$

Hence we get

$$\partial_\eta S = \int dt\, \partial_t\bigg(\int d\theta\, i\theta\mathcal{L}_S\bigg) \tag{12.60}$$

By extension of the Noether theorem to the fermionic case we see that the vector field $\mathcal{Q}$ is the generator of a symmetry for the Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}_S$. This symmetry is called supersymmetry because it concerns supervariables mixing usual numbers (real or complex) and Grassmann numbers.

For the corresponding variations of the pseudoclassical Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}_{pcl}$ we have

$$\delta_\eta \mathcal{L}_{pcl} = \frac{3i\eta}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\xi\dot{x}$$

According to Noether's results we have the conserved charge

$$I_Q = i\xi\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} + \dot{x}\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{\xi}} - \frac{3i}{2}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\xi\dot{x} = -2i\xi\dot{x}$$

We can compute the Hamiltonian $H$ by Legendre transform. The phase space here is the superlinear space $\mathbb{R}^{2|1}$. We get for the conjugate momentum

$$\pi = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\xi}} = -\frac{i}{2}\xi$$

So this Lagrangian is degenerate, with the constraint $\chi = \pi + \frac{i}{2}\xi$. We get $H = \frac{p^2}{2}$ where $p$ is the conjugate momentum to $x$.

Now we shall consider a more interesting example involving the super-harmonic oscillator. We consider the superfields:

$$X = x + \theta\psi^* + \psi\theta^* + y\theta\theta^* \tag{12.61}$$

This field may depend on time $t$, so $x, y, \psi, \psi^\star$ are time dependent, where $x, y$ are real numbers, $\theta, \theta^\star$ are conjugate Grassmann variables, $\psi, \psi^*$ are necessarily odd numbers. As above, to compute these numbers we have to introduce an other pair of Grassmann variables $\{\zeta, \zeta^*\}$, anticommuting with the pair $\{\theta, \theta^*\}$. So we consider that $\psi = c\zeta + d\zeta^*$ where $c, d$ are complex (time dependent) numbers.

As we have already remarked, to avoid mathematical difficulties it is necessary to add extra Grassmann variables.

Recall that the superfield $X$ defined in the formula (12.61) is a morphism from $\mathbb{R}^{1|4}$ in $\mathbb{R}$ which means that it is defined by a morphism $X^\star$ from $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ in $\mathbb{C}^\infty(\mathbb{R})[\theta, \theta^*, \zeta, \zeta^*]$ which can be computed by the Grassmann analytic continuation principle:

$$\big(X^\star f\big)(x,\theta) = f(x) + f'(x)\big(\psi\theta^* + \theta\psi^*\big) + f'(x)y\theta\theta^* - f''(x)\theta\theta^*\psi\psi^* \tag{12.62}$$

There exist other rigorous interpretations of this formula. For a detailed discussion we refer to the paper [105].

Let us introduce a super potential $V(X)$ where $V \in \mathbb{C}^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ and the super Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}_S = \frac{1}{2}\mathcal{D}_{\theta^*}X\mathcal{D}_\theta X + V(X) \tag{12.63}$$

Assume that $V$ is polynomial for simplicity. Then the Lagrangian has the supersymmetry defined by the odd generators $\mathcal{Q}_\theta$ and $\mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*}$ defined before. The infinitesimal transformations on fields are $\delta_\eta X = \eta^* \mathcal{Q}_\theta + \eta \mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*} X$ and as above $\delta_\eta$ is a derivation. $\eta, \eta^*$ are Grassmann variables, independent of the other Grassmann variables. We also have $\delta_\eta V(X) = \eta^* \mathcal{Q}_\theta + \eta \mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*} V(X)$ and

$$\delta_\eta \mathcal{L}_S = \eta^* \mathcal{Q}_\theta + \eta \mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*} \mathcal{L}_S$$

As for the above toy model, it results that the Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}_S$ is again supersymmetric with generators $\mathcal{Q}_\theta, \mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*}$.

Now we shall compute in coordinates with the pseudo-classical Lagrangian.

Compute

$$\mathcal{Q}_\theta X = \psi^* + \theta^*(i\dot{x} + y) - i\theta\theta^* \dot{\psi}^* \tag{12.64}$$

$$\mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*} X = -\psi + \theta(i\dot{x} - y) - i\theta\theta^* \dot{\psi} \tag{12.65}$$

So we get

$$\delta_\eta X = \eta^* \psi^* - \eta\psi + \theta\eta(y - i x) + \eta^*(y + i\dot{x})\theta^* - i\big(\eta^* \dot{\psi}^* + \eta\dot{\psi}\big)\theta\theta^* \tag{12.66}$$

Hence in coordinates the supersymmetry has the following infinitesimal representation:

$$\delta_\eta x = \eta^* \psi^* - \eta\psi \tag{12.67}$$

$$\delta_\eta \psi = \eta^*(y + i\dot{x}) \tag{12.68}$$

$$\delta_\eta \psi^* = \eta(y - i x) \tag{12.69}$$

$$\delta_\eta y = -i\big(\eta^* \dot{\psi}^* + \eta\dot{\psi}\big) \tag{12.70}$$

Now we compute the pseudo-classic Lagrangian: $\mathcal{L}_{pcl} := \int d\theta\, d\theta^*\, \mathcal{L}_S$. Using the computation rules for Berezin integral we get

$$\mathcal{L}_{pcl} = \frac{1}{2}\big(\dot{x}^2 + y^2\big) - V'(x)y + \frac{i}{2}\big(\psi\dot{\psi}^* - \dot{\psi}\psi^*\big) + \frac{1}{2}V''(x)\psi\psi^* \tag{12.71}$$

The real variable can be eliminated because we have $\frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{y}}\mathcal{L}_{pcl} = 0$. From Euler–Lagrange equation we get $\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\mathcal{L}_{pcl} = 0$ so $y = V'(x)$. We now get the following Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L}_w = \frac{\dot{x}^2}{2} - \frac{V'(x)^2}{2} + \frac{i}{2}\big(\psi\dot{\psi}^* - \dot{\psi}\psi^*\big) + \frac{1}{2}V''(x)\psi\psi^* \tag{12.72}$$

We can compute the two Noether charges associated with the generators $\mathcal{Q}_\theta$, $\mathcal{Q}_{\theta^*}$. The results are

$$Q = \big(\dot{x} - iV'(x)\big)\psi, \qquad Q^* = \big(\dot{x} + iV'(x)\big)\psi^* \tag{12.73}$$

An easy exercise is to compute the dynamics for the Fermi oscillator, well known for the Bose (or harmonic) oscillator. The Lagrangian is

$$\mathcal{L}_F = \frac{i}{2}\big(\psi\dot{\psi}^* - \dot{\psi}\psi^*\big) + \frac{1}{2}\omega\psi\psi^* \tag{12.74}$$

The Euler–Lagrange equation gives $\dot{\psi} = -i\omega\psi$; hence we get $\psi(t) = \eta \mathrm{e}^{-i\omega t}$, where $\eta$ is any Grassmann complex variable.

It is more suggestive to write down the dynamics in real coordinates:

$$\xi_1(t) = \frac{\psi(t) + \psi^*(t)}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\big(\eta \mathrm{e}^{-i\omega t} + \eta^* \mathrm{e}^{i\omega t}\big) \tag{12.75}$$

$$\xi_2(t) = \frac{\psi^*(t) - \psi(t)}{i\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{i\sqrt{2}}\big(\eta^* \mathrm{e}^{i\omega t} - \eta \mathrm{e}^{-i\omega t}\big) \tag{12.76}$$

### *12.5.3 Supersymmetric Quantization*

The first step is to compute the Hamiltonian $H_w$ for the Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}_w$.

The momenta are defined as usual

$$p = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}_w}{\partial \dot{x}} = \dot{x} \tag{12.77}$$

$$\pi = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}_w}{\partial \dot{\psi}} = -\frac{i}{2}\psi^* \tag{12.78}$$

$$\pi^* = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}_w}{\partial \dot{\psi}^*} = -\frac{i}{2}\psi \tag{12.79}$$

Hence the Legendre transform is not surjective: the Lagrangian is degenerate. We can extend the Dirac method (see more details in [112]) to fermionic variables with the two constraints

$$\chi_1 = \left(\pi + \frac{i}{2}\psi^*\right), \qquad \chi_2 = \left(\pi^* + \frac{i}{2}\psi\right)$$

Recall that here $\{\cdot\}$ is the super-Poisson-bracket. We have $\{\chi_1, \chi_2\} = -i$, so the constraint is of second order. Denote

$$H = \dot{x}p + \dot{\psi}\pi + \dot{\psi}^*\pi^* - \mathcal{L}_w = \frac{1}{2}\big(p^2 + V'(x)^2\big) - V''(x)\psi\psi^*$$

According to Dirac's method we compute multipliers $u_1, u_2$ such that the evolution of any observable $F$ obeys the equation

$$\dot{F} = \{F, H\} + u_1\{F, \chi_1\} + u_2\{F, \chi_2\}$$

$u_1, u_2$ are computed with the compatibility conditions $\dot{\chi}_k = 0$ for $k = 1, 2$. We get

$$u_1 = -iV''(x)\psi, \qquad u_2 = iV''(x)\psi^*$$

The total Dirac Hamiltonian is here, after computation,

$$H_{Di} = H + u_1\chi_1 + u_2\chi_2 = \frac{1}{2}\left(p^2 + V'(x)^2\right) + iV''(x)(\psi^*\pi^* - \psi\pi)$$

To achieve the quantization of our system we define, as in the bosonic case, the Dirac bracket. Let $F, G$ depending only on fermionic variables. Then the Dirac bracket is

$$\{F, G\}_{Di} = \{F, G\} + \frac{1}{\{\chi_1, \chi_2\}}\left(\{F, \chi_1\}\{\chi_2, G\} + \{F, \chi_2\}\{\chi_1, G\}\right)$$

So we have

$$\{\psi, \psi^*\}_{Di} = -i, \qquad \{\pi, \pi^*\}_{Di} = \frac{i}{4}, \qquad \{\psi, \pi\} = \{\psi^*, \pi^*\} = \frac{1}{2} \tag{12.80}$$

A quantization $F \mapsto \hat{F}$ has to follow the correspondence principle. For $F = x, p$ we consider the usual Weyl–Heisenberg quantization with the commutator rule $[\hat{x}, \hat{p}] = i\hbar$. If $F$ and $G$ are fermionic variables then

$$i\hbar\widehat{\{F, G\}} = \left[\hat{F}, \hat{G}\right] \tag{12.81}$$

where the brackets are symmetric (anticommutators).

In particular we have

$$\left[\hat{\psi}, \hat{\psi}^*\right] = \hbar, \qquad [\hat{\pi}, \hat{\pi}^*] = \frac{-\hbar}{4}, \qquad \left[\hat{\psi}, \hat{\pi}\right] = \left[\hat{\psi}^*, \hat{\pi}^*\right] = \frac{-i\hbar}{2} \tag{12.82}$$

The Dirac quantum Hamiltonian is

$$\hat{H}_{Di} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\hat{p}^2 + V'(x)^2\right) + iV''(x)\left(\hat{\psi}^*\hat{\pi}^* - \hat{\psi}\hat{\pi}\right) \tag{12.83}$$

A realization of the commutation relations is obtained with the Pauli matrices:

$$\hat{\psi} = \sqrt{\hbar}\sigma_-, \qquad \hat{\psi}^* = \sqrt{\hbar}\sigma_+ \tag{12.84}$$

$$\hat{\pi} = -\frac{i}{2}\sigma_+, \qquad \hat{\pi}^* = -\frac{i}{2}\sigma_- \tag{12.85}$$

For $\hbar = 1$ we get the Witten supersymmetric Hamiltonian considered at the beginning of this chapter:

$$\hat{H} = \frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + V'(x)^2\right)\mathbb{1}_2 - \frac{\sigma_3}{2}V''(x) \tag{12.86}$$

We can also remark that the supercharges $\hat{Q}$ and $\hat{Q}^*$ are obtained by quantization of the Noether charges $Q$, $Q^*$.

In particular we can consider an harmonic potential $V(x) = \frac{\omega x^2}{2}$. Choosing a quantization such that $\hat{\pi} = -\frac{i}{2}\hat{\psi}^*$ and $\hat{\pi}^* = -\frac{i}{2}\hat{\psi}$ we get the super-harmonic oscillator

$$\hat{H}_{sos} = \frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + \omega^2 x^2\right) + \omega\hat{\psi}^*\hat{\psi} \tag{12.87}$$

We can realize this Hamiltonian with $\hat{\psi} = \theta$ and $\hat{\psi}^* = \partial_\theta$ in the super Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_S := L^2(\mathbb{R}) \otimes \tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(2)}$. It is nothing but a Grassmann algebra interpretation of the Witten model introduced before with $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(2)}$ in place of $\mathbb{C}^2$.

The scalar product in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_S$ is defined as

$$\langle F, G\rangle = \int dx\, d\theta\, d\theta^*\, \mathrm{e}^{\theta^*\theta} F^*(x,\theta)G(x,\theta), \tag{12.88}$$

where $x$ is a real variable, $\theta$ is an holomorphic Grassmann variable.

## 12.6 Supercoherent States

As canonical coherent states are built on the Heisenberg–Weyl Lie group, supercoherent states are built on the super Heisenberg–Weyl super Lie group. We first consider the simplest case with one boson and one fermion. So we have creation and annihilation operators $a_B^*, a_F^*, a_B, a_F$ for bosons and fermions. They satisfy the super-Lie algebra commutation relations:

$$[a_B, a_B^*] = \mathbb{1}, \qquad [a_F, a_F^*]_+ = \mathbb{1} \tag{12.89}$$

All other relations are trivial.

We have a supersymmetric harmonic oscillator $\hat{H}_{sos}$ with supersymmetry generators $Q^*$, $Q$,

$$\hat{H}_{sos} = a_B^* a_B + a_F^* a_F, \qquad \hat{Q} = a_B a_F^*, \qquad \hat{Q}^* = a_F a_B^* \tag{12.90}$$

This definition of $\hat{H}_{sos}$ may differ from others by a constant.

We have $[\hat{H}_{sos}, \hat{Q}] = 0$ so $(\hat{Q}, \hat{Q}^*)$ generates a global supersymmetry defined by the following unitary operators:

$$U_\eta = \mathrm{e}^{\eta\hat{Q}^* + \eta^*\hat{Q}}$$

where $(\eta, \eta^*)$ are any complex conjugate Grassmann numbers.

Super-translations $\hat{T}(z,\gamma)$ are parametrized by $(z,\gamma)$, $z$ is a complex number, $\gamma$ is a Grassmann (complex) number,

$$\hat{T}(z,\gamma) = \exp(z a_B^* - \bar{z} a_B + a_F^*\gamma - \gamma^* a_F) \tag{12.91}$$

Using the Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff formula we have the following useful properties:

$$T(z,\gamma) = \exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\gamma^*\gamma - |z|^2\right)\exp(za_B^*)\exp(a_F^*\gamma)\exp(-\bar{z}a_B)\exp(-a_F\gamma^*) \tag{12.92}$$

$$T(z,\gamma)T(u,\delta) = \exp\left(\frac{1}{2}(z\bar{u} - \bar{z}u + \delta^*\gamma + \delta\gamma^*)\right)T(z+u,\gamma+\delta) \tag{12.93}$$

In particular $T(z,\gamma)^{-1} = T(-z,-\gamma)$ is unitary and

$$T(z,\gamma)^{-1}a_B T(z,\gamma) = a_B + z \tag{12.94}$$

$$T(z,\gamma)^{-1}a_F T(z,\gamma) = a_F + \gamma \tag{12.95}$$

The ground state of $\hat{H}_{sos}$ is the state $\psi_{0,0} := \varphi_0 \otimes \psi_0$ where $\varphi_0$ and $\psi_0$ are the normalized ground states of the bosonic and fermionic oscillators. So we define super-coherent states by displacement of the ground state of the super-harmonic oscillator by super-translations:

$$\psi_{z,\gamma} = T(z,\gamma)\psi_{0,0} \tag{12.96}$$

Using (12.92) we have

$$\psi_{z,\gamma} = \left(1 + \frac{\gamma\gamma^*}{2}\right)\big(|z,0\rangle + |z,1\rangle\gamma\big) \tag{12.97}$$

where we use the notation $|z,\varepsilon\rangle = \varphi_z \otimes \theta^\varepsilon$, $\varepsilon = 0, 1$.

The coherent states family $\psi_{z,\gamma}$ has the following expected properties. The proofs follow easily from results already established for bosonic and fermionic coherent states.

1. (Normalization)

$$\|\psi_{z,\gamma}\|^2 = \langle\psi_{z,\gamma},\psi_{z,\gamma}\rangle = 1 \tag{12.98}$$

2. (Non-orthogonality)

$$\langle\psi_{z,\gamma},\psi_{u,\delta}\rangle = \exp\left(\gamma^*\delta - \frac{1}{2}(\gamma^*\gamma + \delta^*\delta)\right)\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\big(|z|^2 + |u|^2\big) + \bar{z}u\right) \tag{12.99}$$

3. (Over-completeness) For every $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_S$ we have

$$\psi(x,\theta) = \int \langle\psi_{z,\gamma},\psi\rangle\psi_{z,\gamma}(x,\theta)\,dz\,d\gamma^*\,d\gamma \tag{12.100}$$

4. (Translation property)

$$T(z,\gamma)\psi_{u,\delta} = \exp\left(\frac{1}{2}(z\bar{u} - \bar{z}u + \delta^*\gamma + \delta\gamma^*)\right)\psi_{z+u,\gamma+\delta} \tag{12.101}$$

5. (Eigenfunctions of annihilation operators)

$$a_B\psi_{z,\gamma} = z\psi_{z,\gamma}, \qquad a_F\psi_{z,\gamma} = \gamma\psi_{z,\gamma} \tag{12.102}$$

In particular we have the averages for energy and supercharges

$$\langle\psi_{z,\gamma}, \hat{H}_{sos}\psi_{z,\gamma}\rangle = |z|^2 + \gamma^*\gamma \tag{12.103}$$

$$\langle\psi_{z,\gamma}, Q\psi_{z,\gamma}\rangle = z\gamma^*, \qquad \langle\psi_{z,\gamma}, Q^*\psi_{z,\gamma}\rangle = \bar{z}\gamma \tag{12.104}$$

*Remark 72* Definition and properties of supercoherent states with one boson and one fermion can easily be extended for systems with $n$ bosons and $m$ fermions. Then $z = (z_1, \ldots, z_n) \in \mathbb{C}^n$, $\gamma = (\gamma_1, \ldots, \gamma_m)$ represent a system of $m$ complex Grassmann variables, $a_B = (a_{B,1}, \ldots, a_{B,n})$, $a_F = (a_{F,1}, \ldots, a_{F,m})$, etc. The formulas are the same using the multidimensional notations: $\gamma^* \cdot a_F = \sum_{1\le j\le m} \gamma_j^* a_{F,j}$. Then the energy Hamiltonian can be $\hat{H} = \omega_B \cdot a_B^* a_B + \omega_F a_F^* \cdot a_F$, $\omega_{B,F}$ are real numbers.

The Hilbert space of this system is $\mathcal{H}_{n,m} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \otimes \tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(m)}$. To have a supersymmetric system we need that $n = m$ and $\omega_B = \omega_F$.

## 12.7 Phase Space Representations of Super Operators

As is well known for bosons and as was studied before for fermions we can extend to mixed systems bosons+fermions representations formulas for operators in the super-Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Phase space representation means that we are looking for a correspondence between functions on the phase space and operators in some Hilbert space. This correspondence is called quantization in quantum mechanics. Our goal here is to revisit Weyl quantizations for observables mixing bosons and fermions. It could be possible to do it also for anti-Wick quantization.

To have a better analogy between the bosonic and fermionic variables it is nicer to write bosonic Weyl quantization in complex coordinates $\zeta := \frac{q+ip}{\sqrt{2}}$, $\zeta \in \mathbb{C}^n$, $q, p \in \mathbb{R}^n$. The Lebesgue measure in $\mathbb{C}^n$ is $d^2\zeta = |d\zeta \wedge d\zeta^*|$.

Assume for simplicity that $\hat{H}$, $\hat{G}$ have smooth Schwartz kernels in $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n})$. We consider their Weyl symbols $H_w^w$, $G_w^w$ in complex coordinates. Using the same proof as in the fermionic case we have the following Moyal formulas for the Weyl symbols of $\hat{G}\hat{H}$:

$$(G_w \circledast H_w)(\zeta) = \int_{\mathbb{C}^n} d^2\eta\, G_w(\zeta - \eta) H_w(\eta) \mathrm{e}^{1/2(\bar{\zeta}\cdot\eta - \zeta\cdot\bar{\eta})} \tag{12.105}$$

$$\big(G^w \circledast H^w\big)(\zeta) = G^w(\zeta)\mathrm{e}^{1/2(\overleftarrow{\partial_\zeta}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\bar{\zeta}}} - \overleftarrow{\partial_{\bar{\zeta}}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\zeta})} H^w(\zeta) \tag{12.106}$$

The first formula gives the covariant symbol, the second formula the contravariant symbol. We have the following relations:

$$G^w(\eta) = \int d^2\zeta\, \mathrm{e}^{\bar{\zeta}\cdot\eta - \zeta\cdot\bar{\eta}} G_w(\zeta) \tag{12.107}$$

$$G_w(\eta) = (2\pi)^{-2n} \int d^2\zeta \, e^{\zeta\cdot\bar{\eta} - \bar{\zeta}\cdot\eta} Gw(\zeta) \tag{12.108}$$

It is not difficult to get a Moyal formula for classes of operators in the superspace $\mathcal{H}_{n,m} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \otimes \tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(m)}$. As usual it is enough to establish formulas for smoothing operators then the formulas are extended to suitable classes of symbols. So we shall assume that $\hat{G}$, $\hat{H}$ are linear continuous operators from $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n) \otimes \tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(m)}$ into $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n) \otimes \tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(m)}$ (that means that their Schwartz kernels are in $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{2n} \otimes \mathcal{G}_m^c)$). The covariant symbol $H_w$ is defined such that

$$\hat{H} = \int d^2\zeta \, d^2\gamma \, H_w(\zeta, \gamma) \hat{T}(-\zeta, -\gamma) \tag{12.109}$$

$$H_w(\zeta, \gamma) = \mathrm{Str}\big(\hat{H}\hat{T}(\zeta, \gamma)\big) \tag{12.110}$$

where Str is defined as the usual trace in bosonic variable $\zeta$ and the super-trace in the fermionic variable $\gamma$. More precisely, for any trace-class operator $\hat{H}$ in $\mathcal{H}_{n,m}$ we have

$$\mathrm{Str}\hat{H} = \mathrm{Tr}\big(\hat{H}(\mathbb{1} \otimes \chi)\big)$$

where $\chi$ is the chirality operator in $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(m)}$ defined in Chap. 11.

The contravariant symbol is the symplectic Fourier transform of the covariant symbol:

$$H^w(\zeta, \gamma) = \int d^2\eta \, d^2\alpha \, H_w(\eta, \alpha) e^{\bar{\eta}\cdot\zeta - \eta\cdot\bar{\zeta} + \alpha^*\cdot\gamma + \alpha\cdot\gamma^*} \tag{12.111}$$

So we get the following Moyal formula for super symbols:

$$\big(G^w \circledast H^w\big)(\zeta, \alpha) = G^w(\zeta, \alpha) e^{1/2(\overleftarrow{\partial_\zeta}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\bar{\zeta}}} - \overleftarrow{\partial_{\bar{\zeta}}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\zeta} + \overleftarrow{\partial_{\alpha^*}}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_\alpha} + \overleftarrow{\partial_\alpha}\cdot\overrightarrow{\partial_{\alpha^*}})} H^w(\zeta, \alpha) \tag{12.112}$$

Many results explained before for bosons and fermions could be extended to mixed systems. Instead to do that we now discuss a simple application.

## 12.8 Application to the Dicke Model

This model was studied in [1] as a supersymmetric system. The Hamiltonian for this model is

$$\hat{H} = \Omega \mathbf{a}^*\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\omega\sigma_3 + g(\mathbf{a}^* + \mathbf{a})\sigma_1 \tag{12.113}$$

It concerns a two-level atom interacting with a monochromatic radiation field. $\mathbf{a}^*$ and $\mathbf{a}$ are one particle creation/annihilation operators, the Pauli matrices $\sigma = (\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3)$ denote the radiation field with frequency $\Omega$, $\omega$ is the level distance of the states of the atom, $g$ is a coupling constant.

The matrices $\sigma_\pm$ satisfy the (CAR) relation, so we can identify them with fermionic creation/annihilation operators. So we can introduce a pair of complex conjugate Grassmann numbers $(\beta, \beta^*)$ such that $\sigma_+ \equiv \hat{\beta}^* = \partial_\beta$, $\sigma_- \equiv \hat{\beta}$ is multiplication by $\beta$ (see Chap. 11) and $\sigma_3 \equiv 2\hat{\beta}^*\hat{\beta} - \mathbb{1}$. But with this choice $\hat{H}$ is not an even operator. To overcome this problem we add a new Grassmann pair of complex variables $(\theta, \theta^*)$ and the real Grassmann number $\eta = \theta + \theta^*$. We have $\hat{\eta}^2 = \mathbb{1}$ (in [1] $\hat{\eta}$ is denoted $c$ and is called a Clifford number, see Chap. 11 for more explanations). Hence we have the two pairs of Grassmann variables $(\beta, \beta^*)$, $(\theta, \theta^*)$ to represent the Pauli matrices:

$$\sigma_+ \longleftrightarrow \hat{\eta}\hat{\beta}^*, \qquad \sigma_- \longleftrightarrow \hat{\eta}\hat{\beta}$$

where we denote $\hat{\eta} = \theta + \partial_\theta$, $\mathbf{b} = \hat{\beta}$, $\mathbf{b}^* = \partial_\beta$. We have to remark that $(\mathbf{b}\hat{\eta})^*\mathbf{b}\hat{\eta} = \mathbf{b}^*\mathbf{b}$. With this substitution the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ is transformed into an even Hamiltonian defined in the space $L^2(\mathbb{R}) \otimes \tilde{\mathcal{H}}^{(2)}$

$$\hat{H}_S = \Omega\mathbf{a}^*\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{2}\omega(\mathbf{b}^*\mathbf{b} - \mathbb{1}) + g(\mathbf{a}^* + \mathbf{a})(\hat{\eta}\mathbf{b}^* + \mathbf{b}\hat{\eta}) \tag{12.114}$$

Its (contravariant) Weyl symbol is

$$H_S(\zeta, \beta, \theta) = \Omega\left(|\zeta|^2 - \frac{1}{2}\right) + \omega\beta^*\beta + g\big(\zeta + \bar{\zeta}\big)(\eta\beta^* + \beta\eta)$$

Our aim is to study the dynamics for the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}_S$. It is determined by the von Neumann equation

$$i\frac{\partial\hat{\rho}_t}{\partial t} = \big[\hat{H}_S, \hat{\rho}_t\big], \qquad \hat{\rho}_{t=0} = \hat{\rho}_0 \tag{12.115}$$

where $\hat{\rho}$ is a density operator (a positive operator of trace 1), $\rho_t$ is the contravariant Weyl symbol of $\hat{\rho}_t$ (also called the Weyl–Wigner Distribution Function).

Let us remark that $\hat{H}_S$ depends only on $\mathbf{a}$ and $\hat{\gamma}$ where $\gamma = \beta\eta$, because we have $\mathbf{b}^*\mathbf{b} = \hat{\gamma}^*\hat{\gamma}$. Moreover we have $[\hat{\gamma}, \hat{\gamma}^*]_+ = \mathbb{1}$.

$\rho_t$ satisfies a Fokker–Planck type equation which can be computed using the Moyal product formula applied to $H_S \circledast \rho_t - \rho_t \circledast H_S$. So we get

$$-\frac{\partial\rho_t}{\partial t} = \overrightarrow{L}\rho_t + \rho_t\overleftarrow{L}^* \tag{12.116}$$

where we find (see also [1])

$$\begin{aligned}
-i\overrightarrow{L} = {} & \Omega\left(\zeta^* - \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{\partial_\zeta}\right)\left(\zeta + \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{\partial_{\zeta^*}}\right) + \omega\left(\left(\beta^* + \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{\partial_\beta}\right)\left(\beta + \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{\partial_{\beta^*}}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\right) \\
& + g\left(\zeta + \zeta^* + \frac{1}{2}\big(\overrightarrow{\partial_{\zeta^*}} - \overrightarrow{\partial_\zeta}\big)\right) \\
& + \big(\theta + \overrightarrow{\partial_\theta}\big)\left(\beta^* - \beta + \frac{1}{2}\big(\overrightarrow{\partial_\zeta} - \overrightarrow{\partial_\zeta}\big)\right).
\end{aligned} \tag{12.117}$$

$\hat{H}_S$ being time independent we also have

$$\hat{\rho}_t = \mathrm{e}^{-it\hat{H}_S}\hat{\rho}_0\mathrm{e}^{it\hat{H}_S}$$

So we start to consider the propagation of the dynamical variables $\mathbf{a}$ and $\hat{\gamma}$. We first compute the commutators

$$\left[\hat{H}_S, \hat{\gamma}\right] = -\hat{\gamma} + g(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{a}^*)(2\hat{\gamma}^*\hat{\gamma} - \mathbb{1}) \tag{12.118}$$

$$\left[\hat{H}_S, \hat{\gamma}^*\right] = \hat{\gamma}^* - g(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{a}^*)(2\hat{\gamma}^*\hat{\gamma} - \mathbb{1}) \tag{12.119}$$

$$\left[\hat{H}_S, \mathbf{a}\right] = -g(\hat{\gamma}^* + \hat{\gamma}) - \Omega\mathbf{a} \tag{12.120}$$

$$\left[\hat{H}_S, \mathbf{a}^*\right] = g(\hat{\gamma}^* + \hat{\gamma}) + \Omega\mathbf{a}^* \tag{12.121}$$

So we find the non-linear differential system

$$\begin{aligned}
i\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\hat{\gamma}_t &= -\hat{\gamma}_t + g(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{a}^*)(2\hat{\gamma}_t^*\hat{\gamma}_t - \mathbb{1})\\
i\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\hat{\gamma}_t^* &= \hat{\gamma}_t^* - g(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{a}^*)(2\hat{\gamma}_t^*\hat{\gamma}_t - \mathbb{1})\\
i\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{a}_t &= -g(\hat{\gamma}_t + \hat{\gamma}_t^*) - \Omega\mathbf{a}_t\\
i\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{a}_t^* &= -g(\hat{\gamma} + \hat{\gamma}^*) + \Omega\mathbf{a}_t^*
\end{aligned} \tag{12.122}$$

Assume now that the initial Weyl–Wigner distribution $\hat{\rho}$ depends only on $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{a}^*$, $\hat{\gamma}, \hat{\gamma}^*$. Then $\hat{\rho}_t$ has the following shape:

$$\hat{\rho}_t = \hat{\rho}_t^0(\mathbf{a}_t, \mathbf{a}_t^*) + \hat{\rho}_t^1(\mathbf{a}_t, \mathbf{a}_t^*)\hat{\gamma}_t + \hat{\rho}_t^{1,*}(\mathbf{a}_t, \mathbf{a}_t^*)\hat{\gamma}_t^* + \hat{\rho}_t^2(\mathbf{a}_t, \mathbf{a}_t^*)\hat{\gamma}_t^*\hat{\gamma}_t$$

Using (12.122) we find that $\mathbf{a}_t, \mathbf{a}_t^*, \hat{\gamma}_t^*\hat{\gamma}_t$ are functions of $t$ and $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{a}^*, \hat{\gamma}, \hat{\gamma}^*$. So $\hat{\rho}_t$ can be written as follows:

$$\hat{\rho}_t = \hat{\rho}_t^{(0)}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{a}^*) + \hat{\rho}_t^{(1)}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{a}^*)\hat{\gamma} + \hat{\rho}_t^{(1)*}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{a}^*)\hat{\gamma}^* + \hat{\rho}_t^{(2)}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{a}^*)\hat{\gamma}^*\hat{\gamma} \tag{12.123}$$

Now we can give the physical meaning of the bosonic operators $\hat{\rho}_t^{(\bullet)}(\mathbf{a}_t, \mathbf{a}_t^*)$ by taking the average on the fermionic variables $(\beta, \theta)$.

We shall see now that we recover the dynamics generated by the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ taking the basis $\{\mathbb{1}_2, \sigma_+, \sigma_-, \sigma_3\}$.

We have to compute the relative trace $\mathrm{Tr}_{\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_2}(\hat{\rho}_t(\mathbb{1}\otimes\hat{G}))$, where $\hat{G}$ is a fermionic operator in $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_2$, using the formula

$$\mathrm{Tr}_{\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_2}\big(\hat{\rho}_t\big(\mathbb{1}\otimes\hat{G}\big)\big) = \frac{1}{4}\int \rho_t(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{a}^*, \beta, \theta)G_w(\beta, \theta)\, d^2\beta\, d^2\theta$$

We compute the covariant Weyl symbols of $\mathbb{1}_2, \hat{\gamma}, \hat{\gamma}^*, \hat{\gamma}^*\hat{\gamma}$:

$$1_w(\beta, \theta) = \beta^*\beta + \theta^*\theta$$

$$\gamma_w(\beta,\theta) = \beta(\theta - \theta^*)$$
$$\gamma_w^*(\beta,\theta) = (\theta^* - \theta)\beta^*$$
$$(\gamma^*\gamma_w)(\beta,\theta) = \theta^*\theta$$

Then we get effective distribution functions $\rho_{\text{eff}}$ (for simplicity the time $t$ is not written explicitly nor the contravariant bosonic variable $\zeta$)

$$\rho_{\text{eff}}^{(0)} = \int \rho \times (\theta^*\theta + \beta^*\beta)\, d^2\theta\, d^2\beta = \rho^{(0)}$$
$$\rho_{\text{eff}}^{(1)} = \int \rho \times \beta(\theta + \theta^*)(\theta - \theta^*)\beta^*\, d^2\theta\, d^2\beta = -2\rho^{(1)}$$
$$\rho_{\text{eff}}^{(1)*} = \int \rho \times (\theta + \theta^*)\beta^*\beta(\theta - \theta^*)\, d^2\theta\, d^2\beta = -2\rho^{(1)*}$$
$$\rho_{\text{eff}}^{(2)} = 2\int \rho \times \theta^*\theta\, d^2\theta\, d^2\beta = 2\rho^{(2)}$$

Finally after a direct computation we recover the dynamics for the Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ defined by (12.113) from the dynamics for the super Hamiltonian $\hat{H}_S$ defined by (12.114) [99, 100]:

$$\rho_{\text{eff}} = \rho_{\text{eff}}^{(0)}\mathbb{1}_2 + \rho_{\text{eff}}^{(1)}\sigma_+ \rho_{\text{eff}}^{(1),*}\sigma_- + \rho_{\text{eff}}^{(2)}\sigma_3$$

# Appendix A
# Tools for Integral Computations

## A.1 Fourier Transform of Gaussian Functions

This result is the starting point for the stationary phase theorem.

Let $M$ be a complex matrix such that $\Re M$ is positive-definite. We define $[\det M]_*^{1/2}$ the analytic branch of $(\det M)^{1/2}$ such that $(\det M)^{1/2} > 0$ when $M$ is real.

**Theorem 52** *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a symmetric complex symmetric matrix, $m \times m$. We assume that $\Im\mathcal{A}$ is non negative and $\mathcal{A}$ is non degenerate. Then we have the Fourier transform formula for the Gaussian* $\mathrm{e}^{i\mathcal{A}x\cdot x/2}$

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^m} \mathrm{e}^{i\mathcal{A}x\cdot x/2}\mathrm{e}^{-ix\cdot\xi}\,d\xi = (2\pi)^{m/2}\big[\det(-i\mathcal{A})\big]_*^{-1/2}\mathrm{e}^{(i\mathcal{A})^{-1}\xi\cdot\xi/2}. \tag{A.1}$$

*Proof* For $\mathcal{A}$ the real formula (A.1) is well known: first we prove it for $m = 1$ then for $m \geq 2$ by diagonalizing $\mathcal{A}$ and using a linear change of variables.

For $\mathcal{A}$ complex (A.1) is obtained by analytic extension of left and right hand side. □

## A.2 Sketch of Proof for Theorem 29

Recall that critical set $M$ of the phase $f$ is

$$M = \big\{x \in \mathcal{O}, \Im f(x) = 0,\ f'(x) = 0\big\}.$$

Note that if $a$ is supported outside this set then $J(\omega)$ is $O(\omega^{-\infty})$.

Using a partition of unity, we can assume that $\mathcal{O}$ is small enough that we have normal, geodesic coordinates in a neighborhood of $M$. So we have a diffeomorphism,

$$\chi : \mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{O},$$

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0, 

where $\mathcal{U}$ is an open neighborhood of (0, 0) in $\mathbb{R}^k \times \mathbb{R}^{d-k}$, such that

$$\chi\big(x', x''\big) \in M \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad x'' = 0$$

and if $m = \chi(x', 0) \in M$ we have

$$\chi'\big(x', 0\big)\big(\mathbb{R}^k_x\big) = T_m M,$$
$$\chi'\big(x', 0\big)\big(\mathbb{R}^{d-k}_{x''}\big) = N_m M, \quad \text{(normal space at } m \in M).$$

So the change of variables $x = \chi(x', x'')$ gives the integral

$$J(\omega) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \mathrm{e}^{i\omega f(\chi(x',x''))} a\big(x', x''\big) |\det \chi'\big(x', x''\big)\big| \, dx' \, dx''. \qquad \text{(A.2)}$$

The phase

$$\tilde{f}\big(x', x''\big) := f\big(\chi\big(x', x''\big)\big)$$

clearly satisfies

$$\big\{\tilde{f}'_{x''}\big(x', x''\big) = 0, \Im \tilde{f}\big(x', x''\big) = 0\big\} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad x'' = 0.$$

Hence, we can apply the stationary phase Theorem 7.7.5 of [117] in the variable $x''$, to the integral (A.2), where $x'$ is a parameter (the assumptions of [117] are satisfied, uniformly for $x'$ close to 0). We remark that all the coefficients $c_j$ of the expansion can be computed using the above local coordinates and Theorem 7.7.5.

## A.3 A Determinant Computation

Here we give the details concerning computations of the determinant (9.33) in Chap. 9.

We write $\alpha = (\alpha', \alpha_4)$ where $\alpha' = \hat{e}_1 + i \cos\gamma \hat{e}_2$. The gradient of the phase (9.28) is $ix + G(p)$ where $G(p)$ is given by

$$G(p) := \frac{2}{(p^2+1)\alpha \cdot w_1(p)} \big(\alpha' + p\big(\alpha_4 - \alpha \cdot w_1(p)\big)\big) = K(p)M(p),$$

where

$$K(p) = \frac{2}{2\alpha' \cdot p + \alpha_4(p^2 - 1)}$$

and

$$M(p) = \alpha' + \frac{2p}{1+p^2}\big(\alpha_4 - \alpha' \cdot p\big)$$
$$K\colon \quad \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{C}, \qquad M\colon \quad \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{C}^3.$$

Since $x$ is a constant the hessian of (9.28) is simply $DG(p)$ where $DG$ (resp. $DK$, $DM$) is the first differential of $G$ (resp. $K$, $M$). We want to calculate at the critical point $p^c$ with

$$p^c = \left( \frac{\cos\beta}{1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma}, \frac{\cos\gamma\sin\beta}{1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma}, 0 \right).$$

Let $\delta p$ be an arbitrary increase of $p$. One has

$$DG(p)(\delta p) = \big(DK(p)\cdot\delta p\big)\cdot M(p) + K(p)DM(p)\cdot\delta p.$$

We can write

$$\big(DK(p)\cdot\delta p\big)M(p) = \big(M(p)\otimes\big(DK(p)\big)^*\big)\cdot\delta p,$$

where $DK(p)^* \in (\mathbb{R}^3)^* + i(\mathbb{R}^3)^* \simeq \mathbb{C}^3$. Using the dual structure the identification of $(\mathbb{R}^3)^* + i(\mathbb{R}^3)^*$ with $\mathbb{C}^3$ is performed via the isomorphism: $u \mapsto (v \mapsto u\cdot v)$. We have

$$K\big(p^c\big) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\beta}(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma),$$
$$M\big(p^c\big) = \alpha' + \big(i\sin\gamma - \mathrm{e}^{i\beta}\big)p^c.$$

Thus

$$DG\big(p^c\big) = \mathrm{e}^{-i\beta}(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)DM\big(p^c\big) + M\big(p^c\big)\otimes\big(DK\big(p^c\big)\big)^*.$$

It is convenient to choose as a basis of vectors $(p^c, q^c, \hat{e}_3)$ where

$$q^c = \alpha' + \big(i\sin\gamma - \mathrm{e}^{i\beta}\big)p^c.$$

The vectors $p^c$, $q^c$ are $\mathbb{C}$-linearly independent for $\gamma \neq \frac{\pi}{2} + k\pi$. Simple calculus yields

$$DM\big(p^c\big) = \big(i\sin\gamma - \mathrm{e}^{i\beta}\big)\mathbb{1}_{\mathbb{R}^3} - (1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)p^c\otimes\big(q^c\big)^*,$$
$$DK\big(p^c\big) = -\mathrm{e}^{-2i\beta}(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)^2\big(\alpha' + \alpha_4 p^c\big).$$

Thus we get

$$\begin{aligned} DG\big(p^c\big) = {} & \mathrm{e}^{-i\beta}\big(i\sin\gamma - \mathrm{e}^{i\beta}\big)(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)\mathbb{1}_{\mathbb{R}^3} \\ & - \mathrm{e}^{-i\beta}(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)^2 p^c\otimes\big(q^c\big)^* \\ & - \mathrm{e}^{-2i\beta}(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)^2 q^c\otimes\big(q^c + \mathrm{e}^{i\beta}p^c\big)^*. \end{aligned} \tag{A.3}$$

Let $H(p)$ be the Hessian matrix in the basis $(p^c, q^c, \hat{e}_3)$ and denote

$$H_1(p) = \frac{H(p)}{1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma}.$$

The second line of (A.3) yields a matrix in the plane generated by $(p^c, q^c)$ of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} d_1 & d_2 \\ d_3 & d_4 \end{pmatrix}$$

that we calculate using

$$p^c \otimes (q^c)^* = \begin{pmatrix} q^c \cdot p^c & (q^c)^2 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$q^c \otimes (q^c)^* = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ q^q \cdot p^c & (q^c)^2 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$q^c \otimes (p^c)^* = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ (p^c)^2 & p^c \cdot q^c \end{pmatrix}.$$

We have

$$(p^c)^2 = \frac{1+\sin\beta\sin\gamma}{1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma},$$

$$q^c \cdot p^c = \sin\gamma \frac{i - e^{i\beta}\sin\beta}{1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma},$$

$$(q^c)^2 = -e^{2i\beta}.$$

We get

$$d_1 = -(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma),$$

$$d_2 = -e^{-i\beta}(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma),$$

$$d_3 = -e^{-i\beta}\left(1 + i\sin\gamma e^{-i\beta}\right),$$

$$d_4 = 0.$$

Thus the three-dimensional reduced Hessian matrix $H_1$ equals

$$H_1 = \begin{pmatrix} d_1 & d_2 & 0 \\ d_3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & d_5 \end{pmatrix}$$

with $d_5 = e^{-i\beta}(i\sin\gamma - e^{i\beta})$. Its determinant equals

$$\det H_1 = -d_2 d_3 d_5.$$

One has

$$|\det H_1|^2 = (1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)^2\left[1 - 2\sin\beta\sin\gamma + \sin^2\gamma\right]\left[1 + 2\sin\beta\sin\gamma + \sin^2\gamma\right].$$

Finally we get the result:

$$\begin{aligned}&\left|\det H\left(p^c\right)\right|\\&\quad=(1-\sin\beta\sin\gamma)^4\sqrt{\left[\sin^2\gamma+2\sin\beta\sin\gamma+1\right]\left[\sin^2\gamma-2\sin\beta\sin\gamma+1\right]}.\end{aligned}$$

We see that it does not vanish provided $\sin\beta\sin\gamma\neq 1$.

## A.4 The Saddle Point Method

### *A.4.1 The One Real Variable Case*

This result is elementary and very explicit. Let us consider the Laplace integral

$$I(\lambda)=\int_0^a \mathrm{e}^{-\lambda\phi(r)}F(r)\,dr$$

where $a>0$, $\phi$ and $F$ are smooth functions on $[0,1]$ such that $\phi'(0)=\phi(0)=0$, $\phi''(0)>0$, $\phi(r)>0$ if $r\in\,]0,1]$. Under these conditions we can perform the change of variables $s=\sqrt{\phi(r)}$ where we denote $r=r(s)$ and $G(s)=F(r(s))r'(s)$. So we have

**Proposition 142** *For every $N\geq 1$ we have the asymptotic expansion for $\lambda\to+\infty$,*

$$I(\lambda)=\sum_{0\leq j\leq N-1}C_j\lambda^{-(j+1)/2}+O\left(\lambda^{-(N+1)/2}\right),\qquad\text{(A.4)}$$

*where*

$$C_j=\Gamma\left(\frac{j}{2}+1\right)\frac{G^{(j)}(0)}{2j!}.$$

*In particular $C_0=F(0)(\phi''(0))^{-1/2}$.*

*Proof* This is a direct consequence of Taylor expansion applied to $G$ at 0 and using that, for every $b>0$ and $\varepsilon>0$,

$$\int_0^b \mathrm{e}^{-\lambda s^2}s^j\,ds=\frac{1}{2}\Gamma\left(\frac{j}{2}+1\right)\lambda^{-(j+1)/2}+O\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\varepsilon\lambda}\right).$$ □

### *A.4.2 The Complex Variables Case*

This is an old subject for one complex variable but there are not so many references for several complex variables. Here we recall a presentation given by Sjöstrand [179] or [178].

Let us consider a complex holomorphic phase function in a open neighborhood $\mathcal{A}\times\mathcal{U}$ of $(0,0)$ in $\mathbb{C}^k\times\mathbb{C}^n$, $\mathcal{A}\times\mathcal{U}\ni(a,u)\mapsto\varphi(a,u)\in\mathbb{C}$.

Assume that

- $\varphi(0,0)=0$, $\partial_u\varphi(0,0)=0$.
- $\det\partial^2_{(u,u)}\varphi(0,0)\neq 0$.
- $\Re\varphi\geq 0\ \forall u\in\mathcal{U}$, $\Re\varphi>0$ for all $u\in\partial\mathcal{U}_{\mathbb{R}}$ where $\mathcal{U}_{\mathbb{R}}:=\mathcal{U}\cap\mathbb{R}^n$ and $\partial\mathcal{U}_{\mathbb{R}}$ is the boundary in $\mathbb{R}^n$ of $\mathcal{U}_{\mathbb{R}}$.

By the implicit function theorem we can choose $\mathcal{A}\times\mathcal{U}$ small enough such that the equation $\partial_u\varphi(a,z)=0$ has a unique solution $z(a)\in\mathcal{U}$, $a\mapsto z(a)$ being holomorphic in $\mathcal{A}$. Then we have the following asymptotic result.

**Theorem 53** *For every holomorphic and bounded function $g$ in $\mathcal{U}$ we have, for $k\to+\infty$,*

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{e}^{k\varphi(a,z(a))}\int_{\mathcal{U}_{\mathbb{R}}}\mathrm{e}^{-k\varphi(a,\mathbf{r})}g(\mathbf{r})\,d\mathbf{r}\\ &\quad=\left(\frac{2\pi}{k}\right)^{n/2}\left[\det\left(\partial^2_{(u,u)}\varphi\left(a,z(a)\right)\right)\right]^{-1/2}g(a)+O\left(k^{-n/2-1}\right). \end{aligned}\tag{A.5}$$

## A.5 Kähler Geometry

Let $M$ be a complex manifold and $h$ an Hermitian form on $M$:

$$h=\sum_{j,k}h_{j,k}dz_j\otimes dz_k,\qquad \overline{h_{j,k}(z)}=h_{k,j}(z).$$

$h$ is a Kähler form if the imaginary part $\omega=\Im h$ is closed ($d\omega=0$) and its real part $g=\Re h$ is positive-definite. We have

$$\omega=i\sum_{j,k}h_{j,k}(z)\,dz_j\wedge d\bar{z}_k.$$

$(M,h)$ is said a Kähler manifold if $h$ is a Kähler form on $M$.

Then on $M$ exists a Riemann metric $g=\Re h$ and symplectic two form $\omega$.

Locally there exists a real-valued function $K$, called Kähler potential, such that

$$h_{j,k}=\frac{\partial^2}{\partial z_j\partial z_k}K.$$

The Poisson bracket of two smooth functions $\phi$, $\psi$ on $M$ is defined as follows:

$$\{\phi,\psi\}(m)=\omega(X_\phi,X_\psi),$$

where $X_\psi$ is the Hamiltonian vector field at $m$ defined such that

$$d\psi(v) = \omega(X_\psi, v), \quad \text{for all } v \in T_m(M).$$

More explicitly:

$$\{\psi, \phi\}(z) = i \sum_{j,k} h^{j,k}(z) \left( \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \bar{z}_k} - \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z_k} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \bar{z}_j} \right),$$

where $h^{j,k}(z)$ is the inverse matrix of $h_{j,k}(z)$.

The Laplace–Beltrami operator corresponding to the metric $g$ is

$$\triangle = \sum_{j,k} h^{j,k}(z) \frac{\partial}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}_k}.$$

In particular for the Riemann sphere we have

$$ds^2 = 4 \frac{d\zeta d\bar{\zeta}}{(1 + |\zeta|^2)^2}, \tag{A.6}$$

$$\{\psi, \phi\}(z) = i \left(1 + |z|^2\right)^2 \left( \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \bar{z}} - \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \bar{z}} \right), \tag{A.7}$$

$$\triangle = \left(1 + |z|^2\right)^2 \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z \partial \bar{z}}. \tag{A.8}$$

For the pseudo-sphere we have

$$ds^2 = 4 \frac{d\zeta d\bar{\zeta}}{(1 - |\zeta|^2)^2}, \tag{A.9}$$

$$\{\psi, \phi\}(z) = i \left(1 - |z|^2\right)^2 \left( \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \bar{z}} - \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \bar{z}} \right), \tag{A.10}$$

$$\triangle = \left(1 - |z|^2\right)^2 \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z \partial \bar{z}}. \tag{A.11}$$

# Appendix B
# Lie Groups and Coherent States

## B.1 Lie Groups and Coherent States

In this appendix we start with a short review of some basic properties of Lie groups and Lie algebras. Then we explain some useful points concerning representation theory of Lie groups and Lie algebras and how they are used to build a general theory of Coherent State systems according to Perelomov [155, 156]. This theory is an extension of the examples already considered in Chap. 7 and Chap. 8.

## B.2 On Lie Groups and Lie Algebras

We recall here some basic definitions and properties. More details can be found in [72, 105] or in many other textbooks.

### *B.2.1 Lie Algebras*

A Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is a vector space equipped with an anti-symmetric bilinear product: $(X, Y) \mapsto [X, Y]$ satisfying $[X, Y] = -[Y, X]$ and the Jacobi identity

$$\big[[X, Y], Z\big] + \big[[Y, Z], X\big] + \big[[Z, X], Y\big] = 0.$$

The map $(\operatorname{ad} X)Y = [X, Y]$ is a derivation: $(\operatorname{ad} X)[Y, Z] = [(\operatorname{ad} X)Y, Z] + [Y, (\operatorname{ad} X)Z]$.

If $\mathfrak{g}$ and $\mathfrak{h}$ are Lie algebras a Lie homomorphism is a linear map $\chi : \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{h}$ such that $[\chi X, \chi Y] = [X, Y]$.

A sub-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{h}$ in $\mathfrak{g}$ is a subspace of $\mathfrak{g}$ such that $[\mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h}] \subseteq \mathfrak{h}$ $\mathfrak{h}$ is an ideal if furthermore we have $[\mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{g}] \subseteq \mathfrak{h}$. If $\chi$ is a Lie homomorphism then $\ker \chi$ is an ideal.

In the following we assume for simplicity that the Lie algebras $\mathfrak{g}$ considered are finite-dimensional.

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0, 

$\mathfrak{g}$ is abelian if $[\mathfrak{g}, \mathfrak{g}] = 0$.

$\mathfrak{g}$ is simple if it is non-abelian and contains only the ideals $\{0\}$ and $\mathfrak{g}$. The center $Z(\mathfrak{g})$ is defined as

$$Z(\mathfrak{g}) = \left\{X \in \mathfrak{g},\ [X, Y] = 0,\ \ \forall Y \in \mathfrak{g}\right\}.$$

$Z(\mathfrak{g})$ is an abelian ideal.

If $\mathfrak{g}$ has no abelian ideal except $\{0\}$ then $\mathfrak{g}$ is said semi-simple. In particular $Z(\mathfrak{g}) = \{0\}$.

The Killing form on $\mathfrak{g}$ is the symmetric bilinear form $B(X, Y)$ defined as

$$B(X, Y) = \mathrm{Tr}\big((\mathrm{ad}\, X)(\mathrm{ad}\, X)\big).$$

$\mathfrak{g}$ is semi-simple if and only if its Killing form is non-degenerate (Cartan's criterion).

### *B.2.2 Lie Groups*

A Lie group $G$ is a group equipped with a multiplication $(x, y) \mapsto x \cdot y$ and equipped with the structure of a smooth connected manifold (we do not recall here definitions and properties concerning manifolds, see [105] for details) such that the group operation $(x, y) \mapsto x \cdot y$ and $x \mapsto x^{-1}$ are smooth maps.

We always assume that Lie groups considered here are analytic.

A useful mapping is the conjugation $C(x)(y) = xyx^{-1}$, $x, y \in G$. Its tangent mapping at $y = e$ is denoted $\mathrm{Ad}(x)$. $\mathrm{Ad}(x) \in GL(\mathfrak{g})$ and $x \mapsto \mathrm{Ad}(x)$ is a homomorphism from $G$ into $GL(\mathfrak{g})$. It is called the adjoint representation of $G$ and $\mathrm{Ad}(G)$ is the adjoint group of $G$.

We denote ad the tangent map of $x \mapsto \mathrm{Ad}(x)$ at $x = e$.

The Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ associated with the Lie group $G$ is the tangent space $T_e(G)$ at the unit e of $G$. The Lie bracket on $\mathfrak{g}$ is defined as follows:

Let $X, Y \in \mathfrak{g} = T_e(G)$ and define $[X, Y] = (\mathrm{ad}\, X)(Y)$. $\mathfrak{g}$ is the Lie algebra associated with the Lie group $G$. A first example of Lie group is $\mathbf{GL}(V)$ the linear group of a finite-dimensional linear space $V$. Here we have $\mathfrak{g} = \mathcal{L}(V, V)$ and the Lie bracket is the commutator $[X, Y] = XY - YX$.

Much information on Lie groups can be obtained from their Lie algebras through the exponential map exp.

**Theorem 54** *Let $G$ be a Lie group with Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. Then there exists a unique function* $\exp : \to G$ *such that*

(i) $\exp(0) = e$.
(ii) $\frac{d}{dt}\exp(tX)|_{t=0} = X$.
(iii) $\exp((t + s)X) = \exp(tX)\exp(sX)$, *for all* $t, s \in \mathbb{R}$.
(iv) $\mathrm{Ad}(\exp X) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{ad}\, X}$.

*There is an open neighborhood $U$ of $0$ in $\mathfrak{g}$ and an open neighborhood $V$ of $e$ in $G$ such that the exponential mapping is a diffeomorphism form $U$ onto $V$. This local diffeomorphism can be extended in a global one if moreover the group $G$ is connected and simply connected.*

Other properties of the exponential mapping are given in [72].

A useful tool on Lie group is integration.

**Definition 42** Let $\mu$ be a Radon measure on the Lie group $G$. $\mu$ is left-invariant (left Haar measure) if $\int f(x)\,d\mu(x) = \int f(yx)\,d\mu(x)$ for every $y \in G$ and $\mu$ is right-invariant (right Haar measure) if $\int f(x)\,d\mu(x) = \int f(xy)\,d\mu(x)$ for every $y \in G$. If $\mu$ is left and right invariant we say that $\mu$ is a bi-invariant Haar measure.

If there exists on $G$ a bi-invariant Haar measure, $G$ is said unimodular.

**Theorem 55** *On every connected Lie group $G$ there exits a left Haar measure $\mu$. This measure is unique up to a multiplicative constant.*

*If $G$ is a compact and connected Lie group then a left Haar measure is a right Haar measure and there exists a unique bi-invariant Haar probability measure i.e. every compact Lie group is unimodular.*

*Remark 73* The affine group $G_{\text{aff}} = \{x \mapsto ax + b,\ a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is not unimodular but the Heisenberg group $\mathbf{H}_n$ and $SU(1,1)$ are. This remark is important to understand the differences between the corresponding coherent states associated with these groups. Coherent states associated with the affine group are called wavelets.

In many examples a Lie group $G$ is a closed connected subgroup of the linear group $GL(n,\mathbb{R})$ (or $GL(n,\mathbb{C})$).Then we can compute a left Haar measure as follows (see [172] for details).

Let us consider a smooth system $(x^1, \ldots, x^n)$ on an open set $U$ of $G$ and the matrix of one-forms $\Omega = A^{-1} \sum_{1\le j\le n} \frac{\partial A}{\partial x^j}\, dx^j$. Then we have the following [172]:

**Proposition 143** *$\Omega$ is a matrix of left-invariant one-forms in $U$. Moreover the linear space spanned by the elements of $\Omega$ has dimension $n$. There exist $n$ independent left-invariant one-forms $\omega^1, \ldots, \omega^n$ and $\omega^1 \wedge \omega_2 \wedge \cdots \wedge \omega^n$ defines a left Haar measure on $G$.*

Explicit examples of Haar measures:

(i) On the circle $\S_1 \equiv \mathbb{R}/(2\pi\mathbb{Z})$ the Haar probability measure is $d\mu(x) = \frac{dx}{2\pi}$.

(ii) Haar probability measure on $SU(2)$. Consider the parametrization of $SU(2)$ by the Euler angles (see Chap. 7).

$$g(\theta,\varphi,\psi) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i/2(\varphi+\psi)} & -\sin(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{i/2(\psi-\varphi)} \\ \sin(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{-i/2(\psi-\varphi)} & \cos(\theta/2)\mathrm{e}^{i/2(\varphi+\psi)} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{B.1}$$

A straightforward computation gives

$$2g^{-1}\,dg = \begin{pmatrix} -i(\cos\theta\,d\varphi + d\psi) & \mathrm{e}^{i\psi}(d\theta - i\sin\theta\,d\varphi) \\ \mathrm{e}^{-i\psi}(d\theta + i\sin\theta\,d\varphi) & i(\cos\theta\,d\varphi + d\psi) \end{pmatrix}.$$

So we get, after normalization the Haar probability on $SU(2)$:

$$d\mu(\theta,\varphi,\psi) = \frac{1}{16\pi^2}\sin\theta\,d\theta\,d\varphi\,d\psi.$$

(iii) Haar measure for $SU(1,1)$. The same method as for $SU(2)$ using the parametrization

$$g(\varphi,t,\psi) = \begin{pmatrix} \cosh\frac{t}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i(\varphi+\psi)/2} & \sinh\frac{t}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i(\varphi-\psi)/2} \\ \sinh\frac{t}{2}\mathrm{e}^{i(\psi-\varphi)/2} & \cosh\frac{t}{2}\mathrm{e}^{-i(\varphi+\psi)/2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

After computations we get

$$2g^{-1}dg = \begin{pmatrix} i(\cosh t\,d\phi + d\psi) & \mathrm{e}^{-i\psi}(dt + i\cosh t\,d\phi) \\ \mathrm{e}^{i\psi}(dt - i\cosh t\,d\phi) & i(\cosh t\,d\phi - d\psi) \end{pmatrix}$$

and a left Haar measure:

$$d\mu(t,\phi,\psi) = \cosh t\,dt\,d\phi\,d\psi. \tag{B.2}$$

(iv) Let us consider the Heisenberg group $\mathbf{H}_n$ (see Chap. 1). This group can also be realized as a linear group as follows. Let

$$g(x,y,s) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n & s \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & y_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & y_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & y_n \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

where $x = (x_1,\dots,x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $y = (y_1,\dots,y_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $s \in \mathbb{R}$. We can easily check that $\{g(x,y,s),\ x,y \in \mathbb{R}^n, s \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is a closed subgroup $\tilde{\mathbf{H}}_n$ of the linear group $GL(2n+1,\mathbb{R})$. $\tilde{\mathbf{H}}_n$ is isomorphic to the Weyl–Heisenberg group $\mathbf{H}_n$ by the isomorphism

$$g(x,y,s) \mapsto \left(s - \frac{x\cdot y}{2}, \frac{x-iy}{\sqrt{2}}\right).$$

The Lebesgue measure $dx\,dy\,ds$ is a bi-invariant measure on $\tilde{\mathbf{H}}_n$ i.e. the Weyl–Heisenberg group is unimodular.

We shall see that when considering coherent states on a general Lie group $G$ it is useful to consider a left-invariant measure on a quotient space $G/H$ where $H$ is a closed subgroup of $G$; $G/H$ is the set of left coset, it is a smooth analytic manifold with an analytic action of $G$: for every $x \in G$, $\tau(x)(gH) = xgH$. The following result is proved in [105].

**Theorem 56** *There exists a $G$ invariant measure $d\mu_{G/H}$ on $G/H$ if and only if we have*

$$\left|\det \mathrm{Ad}_G(h)\right| = \left|\det \mathrm{Ad}_H(h)\right|, \quad \forall h \in H,$$

*where $\mathrm{Ad}_G$ is the adjoint representation for the group $G$.*

*Moreover this measure is unique up to a multiplicative constant and we have for any continuous function $f$, with compact support in $G$,*

$$\int f(g)\, d\mu_G(g) = \int_{G/H} \left( \int_H f(gh)\, d\mu_H(h) \right) d\mu_{G/H}(gH),$$

*where $d\mu_G$ and $d\mu_H$ are left Haar measure suitably normalized.*

In this book we have considered the three groups $\mathbf{H}_n$, $SU(2)$ and $SU(1,1)$ and their related coherent states. In each case the isotropy subgroup $H$ is isomorphic to the unit circle $U(1)$ and we have found the quotient spaces: $\mathbf{H}_n/U(1) \equiv \mathbb{R}^{2n}$, $SU(2)/U(1) \equiv \mathbb{S}_2$ and $SU(1,1)/U(1) \equiv P\mathbb{S}_2$ with their canonical measure. Each of these spaces is a symplectic space and can be seen as the phase space of classical systems.

## B.3 Representations of Lie Groups

The goal of this section is to recall some basic facts.

### *B.3.1 General Properties of Representations*

$G$ denotes an arbitrary connected Lie group, $V_1, V_2, V$ are complex Hilbert spaces, $\mathcal{L}(V_1, V_2)$ the space of linear continuous mapping from $V_1$ into $V_2$, $\mathcal{L}(V) = \mathcal{L}(V, V)$, $GL(V)$ the group of invertible mappings in $\mathcal{L}(V)$, $U(V)$ the subgroup of $GL(V)$ of unitary mappings i.e. $A \in U(V)$ if and only if $A^{-1} = A^*$.

**Definition 43** A representation of $G$ in $V$ is a group homomorphism $\hat{R}$ from $G$ in $GL(V)$ such that $(g, v) \mapsto \hat{R}(g)v$ is continuous from $G \times V$ into $V$.

If $\hat{R}(g) \in U(V)$ for every $g \in G$ the representation is said to be *unitary*.

**Definition 44** The subspace $E \subseteq V$ is invariant by the representation $\hat{R}$ if $\hat{R}(g)E \subseteq E$ for every $g \in G$.

The representation $\hat{R}$ is irreducible in $V$ if the only invariant closed subspaces of $V$ are $\{V, \{0\}\}$.

**Definition 45** Two representations $(\hat{R}_1, V_1)$ and $(\hat{R}_2, V_2)$ are equivalent if there exists an invertible continuous linear map $A : V_1 \to V_2$ such that

$$R_2(g)A = AR_1(g), \quad \forall g \in G.$$

Irreducible representations are important in physics: they are associated to elementary particles (see [194]).

Let $d\mu$ be a left Haar measure on $G$. Consider the Hilbert space $L^2(G, d\mu)$ and define $L(g)f(x) = f(g^{-1}x)$ where $g, x \in G,\ f \in L^2(G, d\mu)$. $L$ is a unitary representation of $G$ called the left regular representation.

The Schur lemma is an efficient tool to study irreducible dimensional representations.

**Lemma 80** (Schur) *Suppose $\hat{R}_1$ and $\hat{R}_2$ are finite-dimensional irreducible representations of $G$ in $V_1$ and $V_2$, respectively. Suppose that we have a linear mapping $A : V_1 \to V_2$ such that $A\hat{R}_1(g) = \hat{R}_2(g)A$ for every $g \in G$. Then or $A$ is bijective or $A = 0$.*

*In particular if $V_1 = V_2 = V$ and $A\hat{R}(g) = \hat{R}(g)A$ for all $g \in G$ then $A = \lambda\mathbb{1}$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.*

*Suppose that $(\hat{R}, V)$ is a unitary representation in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ then it is irreducible if and only if the only bounded linear operators $A$ in $V$ commuting with $\hat{R}$ ($A\hat{R}(g) = \hat{R}(g)A$ for every $g \in G$) are $A = \lambda\mathbb{1}$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.*

A useful property of a representation $\hat{R}$ is its *square integrability* (see [93] for details).

**Definition 46** A vector $v \in V$ is said to be admissible if we have

$$\int_G \left|\langle \hat{R}(g)v, v\rangle\right|^2 d\mu(g) < +\infty. \tag{B.3}$$

The representation $\hat{R}$ is said square integrable if $\hat{R}$ is irreducible and there exists at least one admissible vector $v \neq 0$.

If $G$ is compact every irreducible representation is square integrable. The discrete series of $SU(1, 1)$ are square integrable (prove that 1 is admissible using the formula (B.2) for the Haar measure on $SU(1, 1)$).

We have the following result due to Duflo–Moore and Carey (see [93] for a proof).

**Theorem 57** *Let $\hat{R}$ be a square integrable representation in $V$. Then there exists a unique self-adjoint positive operator $C$ in $V$ with a dense domain in $V$ such that*:

(i) *The set of admissible vectors is equal to the domain* $\mathcal{D}(C)$.
(ii) *If* $v_1, v_2$ *are two admissible vectors and* $w_1, w_2 \in V$ *then we have*

$$\int_G \overline{\langle \hat{R}(g)v_2, w_2\rangle}\langle \hat{R}(g)v_1, w_1\rangle \, dg = \langle Cv_1, Cv_2\rangle\langle w_1, w_2\rangle. \tag{B.4}$$

(iii) *If G is unimodular then* $C = \lambda \mathbb{1}$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.

*Remark 74* If $G$ is unimodular coherent states can be defined as follows. We start from an admissible vector $v_0 \in V$, $\|v_0\| = 1$ and an irreducible representation $\hat{R}$ in $V$. Define the *coherent state* (or the *analyzing wavelet*) $\varphi_g = \hat{R}(g)v_0$. Then the family $\{\lambda^{-1/2}\varphi_g | g \in G\}$ is overcomplete in $V$:

$$\lambda^{-1} \int_G \overline{\langle \varphi_g, \psi_1\rangle}\langle \varphi_g, \psi_2\rangle \, d\mu(g) = \langle \psi_1, \psi_2\rangle, \quad \psi_1, \psi_2 \in V,$$

where $\lambda = \int_G |\langle \hat{R}(g)v_0, v_0\rangle|^2 \, d\mu(g)$.

### *B.3.2 The Compact Case*

Representation theory for compact group is well known (for a concise presentation see [129] or for more details [130]). Typical examples are $SU(2)$ and $SO(3)$ considered in Chap. 7. Here $G$ is a compact Lie group. The main facts are the following:

1. Every finite-dimensional representation is equivalent to a unitary representation.
2. Every irreducible unitary representation of $G$ is finite-dimensional and every unitary representation of $G$ is a direct sum of irreducible representations.
3. If $\hat{R}_1, \hat{R}_2$ are non equivalent irreducible finite representations of $G$ on $V_1$ and $V_2$ then

$$\int_G \overline{\langle \hat{R}_1(g)v_1, w_1\rangle}\langle \hat{R}_2(g)v_2, w_2\rangle = 0, \quad \text{for all } v_1, w_1 \in V_1, \ v_2, w_2 \in V_2.$$

4. If $\hat{R}$ is an irreducible unitary representation of $G$, then we have

$$(\dim V) \int_G \overline{\langle \hat{R}(g)v_1, w_1\rangle}\langle \hat{R}(g)v_2, w_2\rangle = \overline{\langle v_1, v_2\rangle}\langle w_1, w_2\rangle,$$
$$\text{for all } v_1, w_1 \in V_1, \ v_2, w_2 \in V_2. \tag{B.5}$$

5. (Peter–Weyl Theorem) If we denote by $(\hat{R}_\lambda, V_\lambda)$, $\lambda \in \Lambda$, the set of all irreducible representations of $G$ and $M_{\lambda,v,w}(g) = \langle \hat{R}_\lambda(g)v, w\rangle$, then the linear space spanned by $\{M_{\lambda,v,w}(g) | g \in G, v, w \in V_\lambda\}$ is dense in $L^2(G, d\mu)$.

### B.3.3 The Non-compact Case

This case is much more difficult than the compact case and there are not yet a general theory of irreducible unitary representations. The typical example is $SU(1,1)$ or equivalently $SL(2,\mathbb{R})$ considered in Chap. 8.

These groups have the following properties.

**Definition 47** (i) A Lie group $G$ is said *reductive* if $G$ is a closed connected subgroup of $GL(n,\mathbb{R})$ or $GL(n,\mathbb{C})$ stable under inverse conjugate transpose.

(ii) A Lie $G$ is said *linear connected semi-simple* if $G$ is reductive with finite center.

**Proposition 144** *If $G$ is a linear connected semi-simple group its Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is semi-simple.*

It is known that a compact connected Lie group can be realized as a linear connected reductive Lie group ([127], Theorem 1.15).

Let us consider the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ of $G$. The differential of the mapping $\Theta(A) = A^{-1,*}$ at $e = \mathbb{1}$ is denoted $\theta$. We have $\theta^2 = \mathbb{1}$ so $\theta$ has two eigenvalues $\pm 1$.

So we have the decomposition $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{l} \oplus \mathfrak{p}$ where $\mathfrak{l} = \ker(\theta - 1)$ and $\mathfrak{p} = \ker(\theta + 1)$. Let $K = \{g \in G | \theta g = g\}$. The following result is a generalization of the polar decomposition for matrices or operators in Hilbert spaces.

**Proposition 145** (Polar Cartan decomposition) *If $G$ is a linear connected reductive group then $K$ is a compact connected group and is a maximal compact subgroup of $G$. Its Lie algebra is $\mathfrak{l}$ and the map: $(k, X) \mapsto k \exp X$ is a diffeomorphism from $K \times \mathfrak{p}$ onto $G$.*

## B.4 Coherent States According Gilmore–Perelomov

Here we describe a general setting for a theory of coherent states in a arbitrary Lie group from the point of view of Perelomov (for more details see [155, 156]).

We start from an irreducible unitary representation $\hat{R}$ of the Lie group $G$ in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Let $\psi_0 \in \mathcal{H}$ be a fixed unit vector ($\|\psi_0\| = 1$) and denote $\psi_g = \hat{R}(g)\psi_0$ for any $g \in G$. In quantum mechanics states in the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ are determined modulo a phase factor so we are mainly interested in the action of $G$ in the projective space $\mathbf{P}(\mathcal{H})$ (space of complex lines in $\mathcal{H}$). We denote by $H$ the isotropy group of $\psi_0$ in the projective space: $H = \{h \in G | \hat{R}(h)\psi_0 = e^{i\theta}\psi_0\}$.

So the coherent states system $\{\psi_g | g \in G\}$ is parametrized by the space $G/H$ of left coset in $G$ modulo $H$: if $\pi$ is the natural projection map: $G \to G/H$. Choosing for each $x \in G/H$ some $g(x) \in G$ we have, with $x = \pi(g)$, $\psi_g = e^{i\theta(g)}\psi_{g(x)}$. Moreover $\psi_{g_1}$ and $\psi_{g_2}$ define the same states if and only if $\pi(g_1) = \psi_{g_2} := x$; hence we have $\psi_{g_1} = e^{i\theta_1}\psi_{g(x)}$ and $\psi_{g_2} = e^{i\theta_2}\psi_{g(x)}$.

So for every $x \in G/H$ we have defined the state $|x\rangle = \{e^{i\alpha}\psi_g\}$ where $x = \pi(g)$. It is convenient to denote $|x\rangle = \psi_{g(x)}$ and $x(g) = \psi(x)$. This parametrization of coherent states by the quotient space $G/H$ has the following nice properties.

We have $\psi_g = e^{i\theta(g)}|x(g)\rangle$ and $\theta(gh) = \theta(g) + \theta(h)$ if $g \in G$ and $h \in H$. The action of $G$ on the coherent state $|x\rangle$ satisfies

$$\hat{R}(g_1)|x\rangle = e^{i\beta(g_1,x)}|g_1.x\rangle, \tag{B.6}$$

where $g_1.x$ denotes the natural action of $G$ on $G/H$ and $\beta(g_1, x) = \theta(g_1 g) - \theta(g)$ where $\pi(g) = x$ ($\beta$ depends only on $x$, not on $g$).

Computation of the scalar product of two coherent states gives

$$\langle x_1|x_2\rangle = e^{i(\theta(g_1)-\theta(g_2))}\langle 0|\hat{R}\big({g_1}^{-1}g_2\big)|0\rangle, \tag{B.7}$$

where $x_1 = x(g_1)$ and $x_2 = x(g_2)$. Moreover if $x_1 \neq x_2$ we have $|\langle x_1|x_2\rangle| < 1$ and

$$\langle g.x_1|g.x_2\rangle = e^{i(\beta(g,x_1)-\beta(g,x_2))}\langle x_1|x_2\rangle. \tag{B.8}$$

Concerning completeness we have

**Proposition 146** *Assume that the Haar measure on G induces a left-invariant measure $d\mu(x)$ on $G/H$ (see Theorem 56) and that the following square integrability condition is satisfied*:

$$\int_M \big|\langle 0|x\rangle\big|^2\, dx < +\infty. \tag{B.9}$$

*Then we have the resolution of identity*:

$$\frac{1}{d}\int_M \langle x|\psi\rangle\psi_x\, d\mu(x) = \psi, \quad \forall\psi \in \mathcal{H}, \tag{B.10}$$

*where $d = \int_M |\langle 0|x\rangle|^2\, dx$. Moreover we have the Plancherel identity*

$$\langle\psi|\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{d}\int_M \big|\langle x|\psi\rangle\big|^2\, d\mu(x). \tag{B.11}$$

*Remark 75* (i) As we have seen in Chap. 2, using formula (B.10) and (B.11), we can consider Wick quantization for symbols defined on $M = G/H$.

(ii) When the square integrability condition (B.9) is not fulfilled (the Poincaré group for example) there exists an extended definition of coherent states. This is explained in [3].

*Remark 76* When $G$ is a compact semi-simple Lie group and $\hat{R}$ is a unitary irreducible representation of $G$ in a finite-dimensional Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ then it is possible to choose a state $\psi_0$ in $\mathcal{H}$ such that if $H$ is the isotropy group of $\psi_0$ then $G/H$ is a Kähler manifold (see [148]).

Some results concerning coherent states and quantization have also been obtained for non-compact semi-simple Lie groups extending results already seen in Chap. 8 for $SU(1, 1)$.

# Appendix C
# Berezin Quantization and Coherent States

We have seen in Chap. 2 that canonical coherent states are related with Wick and Weyl quantization. Berezin [20] has given a general setting to quantize "classical systems".

Let us explain here very briefly the Berezin construction. Let $M$ be a classical phase space, i.e. a symplectic manifold with a Poisson bracket denoted $\{\cdot,\cdot\}$, and an Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Assume that for a set of positive numbers $\hbar$, with 0 as limit point, we have a linear mapping $A \mapsto \hat{A}_\hbar$ where $A$ is a smooth function on $M$ and $\hat{A}_\hbar$ is an operator on $\mathcal{H}$. The inverse mapping is denoted $S_\hbar(\hat{A}_\hbar)$. In general it is difficult to describe in detail the definition domain and the range of this quantization mapping. Some example are considered in [187, 188].

Nevertheless for a quantization mapping, the two following conditions are required, to preserve Bohr's correspondence condition (semi-classical limit):

$$\lim_{\hbar\to 0} S_\hbar\big(\hat{A}_\hbar \hat{B}_\hbar\big)(m) = A(m)B(m), \quad \forall m \in M, \tag{C1}$$

$$\lim_{\hbar\to 0} \frac{1}{i\hbar} S_\hbar\big(\big[\hat{A}_\hbar, \hat{B}_\hbar\big]\big)(m) = \{A, B\}(m), \quad \forall m \in M. \tag{C2}$$

We have seen in Chap. 2 that these conditions are fulfilled for the Weyl quantization of $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. In [20] the authors have considered the two dimensional sphere and the pseudosphere (Lobachevskii plane). In these two examples the Planck constant $\hbar$ is replaced by $\frac{1}{n}$ where $n$ is an integer parameter depending on the considered representation. The semi-classical limit is the limit $n \to +\infty$. For the pseudosphere $n = 2k$, where $k$ is the Bargmann index.

In this section we shall explain some of Berezin's ideas concerning quantization on the pseudosphere and we shall prove that the Bohr correspondence principle is satisfied using results taken from Chap. 8.

The same results could be proved for quantization of the sphere [20], using results of Chap. 7.

Nowadays the quantization problem has been solved in much more general settings, in particular for Kähler manifolds (the Poincaré disc $\mathbb{D}$ or the Riemann sphere $\mathbb{S}^2$ are examples of Kähler manifolds), where generalized coherent states are still

M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0, © Springer Science+Business Media B.V. 2012

present. This domain is still very active and is named Geometric Quantization; its study is outside the scope of this book (see the book [201] and the recent review [173].

We have defined before the coherent states family $\psi_\zeta$, $\zeta \in \mathbb{D}$, for the representations $\mathcal{D}_n^+$ of the group $SU(1,1)$ which is a symmetry group for the Poincaré disc $\mathbb{D}$. Recall that $\{\psi_\zeta\}_{\zeta\in\mathbb{D}}$ is an overcomplete system in $\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$; hence the map $\varphi \mapsto \varphi^\sharp$, where $\varphi^\sharp(z) = \langle \psi_z, \varphi\rangle$, is an isometry from $\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ into $L^2(\mathbb{D})$.

Let $\hat{A}$ be a bounded operator in $\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$. Its covariant symbol $A_c(z,\bar{w})$ is defined as

$$A_c(z,\bar{w}) = \frac{\langle \psi_z, \hat{A}\psi_w\rangle}{\langle \psi_z, \psi_w\rangle}.$$

It is a holomorphic extension in $(z,\bar{w})$ of the usual covariant symbol $A_c(z,\bar{z})$. Moreover, the operator $\hat{A}$ is uniquely determined by its covariant symbol and we have

$$\hat{A}\varphi(z) = \int_{\mathbb{D}} A_c(z,\bar{w})\varphi(w)\langle \psi_z, \psi_w\rangle\, d\nu_n(w). \tag{C.1}$$

From (C.1) we get a formula for the covariant symbol product of the product of two operators $\hat{A}$, $\hat{B}$. If $(AB)_c$ denotes the covariant symbol of $\hat{A}\hat{B}$ then we have the formula

$$(AB)_c(z,\bar{z}) = \int_{\mathbb{D}} A_c(z,\bar{w})B_c(w,\bar{z})\big|\langle \psi_z, \psi_w\rangle\big|^2\, d\nu_n(w). \tag{C.2}$$

From our previous computations (Chap. 8) we have

$$\big|\langle \psi_w, \psi_z\rangle\big|^2 = \left(\frac{(1-|z|^2)(1-|w|^2)}{|1-\bar{z}w|^2}\right)^n.$$

We have to consider the following operator:

$$\mathcal{T}_n F(z,\bar{z}) = \frac{n-1}{4\pi}\int_{\mathbb{D}} F(w,\bar{w})\left(\frac{(1-|z|^2)(1-|w|^2)}{|1-\bar{z}w|^2}\right)^n d\mu(w)$$

for $F$ bounded in $\mathbb{D}$ and $C^2$-smooth.

**Proposition 147** *We have the following asymptotic expansion, for $n \to +\infty$:*

$$\mathcal{T}_n F(z,\bar{z}) = F(z,\bar{z})\left(1 - \frac{n}{(n-2)^2}\right) + \frac{1}{n}\big(1-|z|^2\big)^2 \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial z \partial \bar{z}}(z,\bar{z}). \tag{C.3}$$

*Proof* Using invariance by isometries of $\mathbb{D}$ we show that it is enough to prove formula (C.3) for $z = 0$.

Let us consider the change of variable $w = \frac{\zeta - z}{1-\bar{z}\zeta}$. Denote $G(\zeta,\bar{\zeta}) = F(w,\bar{w})$; then we get $\mathcal{T}_n F(z,\bar{z}) = \mathcal{T}_n G(0,0)$. A direct computation gives

$$\frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial\zeta\partial\bar{\zeta}}(0,0) = \left(1-|z\bar{z}|\right)^2 \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial z\partial\bar{z}}(z,\bar{z}) = \triangle F(z;\bar{z}),$$

where $\triangle$ is the Laplace–Beltrami operator on $\mathbb{D}$. So we have proved (C.3) for any $z$ if it is proved for $z=0$.

To prove (C.3) for $z=0$ we use the real Laplace method for asymptotic expansion of integrals (see Sect. A.4).

We write

$$\mathcal{T}_n F(0,0) = \frac{n-1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta \int_0^1 dr\, F\left(r\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}, r\mathrm{e}^{-i\theta}\right) r\mathrm{e}^{-(n-2)\phi(r)}, \tag{C.4}$$

where $\phi(r) = \log((1-r^2)^{-1})$.

Note that $\phi(r) > 0$ for $r\in]0,1]$ and $\phi(0)=1$. So we can apply the Laplace method (see Sect. A.4 for a precise statement) to estimate (C.4) with the large parameter $\lambda = n-2$. Modulo an exponentially small term it is enough to integrate over $r$ in $[0,1/2]$. Using the change of variable $\phi(r)=s^2$, $s>0$, we have $r(s)=\sqrt{1-\mathrm{e}^{-s^2}}$ and

$$\mathcal{T}_n F(0,0) = \frac{n-1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta \int_0^c ds\, \mathrm{e}^{-\lambda s} K\left(r(s)\right) s\mathrm{e}^{-s^2} + O\left(\lambda^{-\infty}\right),$$

where $K(r) = F(r\mathrm{e}^{i\theta}, r\mathrm{e}^{-i\theta})$. Now to get the result we have to compute the asymptotic expansion at $s=0$ for $L(s) = K(r(s))s\mathrm{e}^{-s^2}$. Note that $L(s)$ is periodic in $\theta$ and we have to consider only the part of the expansion independent in $\theta$. If $L_0(s)$ is this part, we get after computation

$$L_0(s) = \frac{n-1}{2\pi(n-2)}F(0,0) + \frac{n-1}{2\pi(n-2)^2}\left(\frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial z\partial\bar{z}}(0,0) - F(0,0)\right) + O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right)$$

and formula (C.4) follows. □

It is not difficult, using Proposition 147, to check the correspondence principle (C1) and (C2).

We get (C1) by applying the Proposition to $F_{AB}(w,\bar{w}) = A_c(z,\bar{w})B_c(w,\bar{z})$. So we have

$$(AB)_c(z,\bar{z}) = \mathcal{T}_n(z,\bar{z}) \underset{n\to+\infty}{\longrightarrow} A_c(z,\bar{z})B_c(z,\bar{z}).$$

For (C2) we write

$$F_{AB}(z,\bar{z}) = A_c(z,\bar{z})B_c(z,\bar{z})\left(1-\frac{n}{(n-1)^2}\right) + \frac{1}{n}\left(1-|z|^2\right)^2\left(\frac{\partial A_c}{\partial\bar{w}}(z,\bar{z})\frac{\partial B_c}{\partial w}(z,\bar{z})\right) + O\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right).$$

So we get

$$n\big(F_{AB}(z,\bar z) - F_{BA}(z,\bar z)\big) = \big(1-|z|^2\big)^2 \frac{\partial A_c}{\partial \bar z}(z,\bar z)\frac{\partial B_c}{\partial z}(z,\bar z) - \frac{\partial A_c}{\partial z}(z,\bar z)\frac{\partial B_c}{\partial \bar z}(z,\bar z) + O\left(\frac{1}{n}\right).$$

But we know that $F_{AB} - F_{BA}$ is the covariant symbol of the commutator $[\hat A, \hat B]$ and the Poisson bracket $\{A, B\}$ is

$$\{A,B\}(z,\bar z) = i\big(1-|z|^2\big)^2\left(\frac{\partial A_c}{\partial \bar z}(z,\bar z)\frac{\partial B_c}{\partial z}(z,\bar z) - \frac{\partial A_c}{\partial z}(z,\bar z)\frac{\partial B_c}{\partial \bar z}(z,\bar z)\right).$$

So we get (C2).

We have seen that the linear symplectic maps and the metaplectic transformations are connected with quantization of the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$. Here symplectic transformations are replaced by transformations in the group $SU(1,1)$ and metaplectic transformations by the representations $g \mapsto \hat R(g) = \mathcal{D}_n^-(g)$. Then we have

**Proposition 148**

(i) *For any bounded operator $\hat A$ in $\mathcal{H}_n(\mathbb{D})$ the covariant symbol $A_g$ of $\hat R(g)\hat A \times \hat R(g)^{-1}$ is*

$$A_g(\zeta) = A_c\big(g^{-1}\zeta, \overline{g^{-1}\zeta}\big). \tag{C.5}$$

(ii) *The covariant symbol $R(g)_c$ of $\hat R(g)$ is given by the formula*

$$R(g)_c(\zeta) = \mathrm{e}^{in\arg(\alpha+\beta\zeta)}\left(\frac{1-|\zeta|^2}{\bar\alpha + \bar\beta\bar\zeta - \beta\zeta - \alpha|\zeta|^2}\right) \tag{C.6}$$

*where $g = \left(\begin{smallmatrix}\alpha & \beta\\ \bar\beta & \bar\alpha\end{smallmatrix}\right)$.*

*Proof* (i) is a direct consequence of definition of $\mathcal{D}_n^-(g)$ and computations of Chap. 8.

For (ii) using formula (8.74) of Chap. 8 in complex variables we get, after computation,

$$\langle \psi_\zeta, \psi_{g^{-1}\zeta}\rangle = \left(\frac{\alpha+\beta z}{|\alpha+\beta z|}\right)^n\left(\frac{1-|\zeta|^2}{\bar\alpha + \bar\beta\bar\zeta - \beta\zeta - \alpha|\zeta|^2}\right)$$

which gives (C.6). □

# References


1. Abe, S., Suzuki, N.: Wigner distribution function of a simple optical model: an extended-phase-space approach. Phys. Rev. A **45**, 520–523 (2001)
2. Aharonov, Y., Anandan, J.: Phase change during a cyclic quantum evolution. Phys. Rev. Lett. **58**, 1593–1596 (1987)
3. Ali, S.-T., Antoine, J.-P., Gazeau, J.-P.: Coherent States Wavelets and Their Generalizations. Springer, Berlin (2000)
4. Aravind, P.K.: Spin coherent states as anticipators of the geometric phase. Am. J. Phys. **10**(October), 899–904 (1999)
5. Arecchi, F.T., Courtens, E., Gilmore, R., Thomas, H.: Atomic coherent states in quantum optics. Phys. Rev. A **6**, 2211–2237 (1972)
6. Arnaud, J.A.: Hamiltonian theory of beam mode propagation. In: Wolf, E. (ed.) Progress in Optics XI. North-Holland, Amsterdam (1973)
7. Arnold, V.: Mathematical Methods of Classical Mechanics. Springer, New York (1999)
8. Babich, V.: Eigenfunctions concentrated in a neighborhood of a closed geodesic. In: Babich, V.M. (ed.) Math. Problems in Wave Propagation Theory. Sem. Math., V.A. Steklov Math. Inst., vol. 9. Steklov Mathematical Institute, Leningrad (1970). Translated by Consultants Bureau, New York (1970)
9. Babich, V.M., Buldyrev, V.S.: Asymptotic Methods in Short Wave Diffraction Problems. Nauka, Moscow (1972)
10. Balazs, N., Voros, A.: The quantized baker's transformation. Ann. Phys. **190**, 1–31 (1989)
11. Balazs, N.L., Voros, A.: Chaos on the pseudosphere. Phys. Rep. **143**(3), 109–240 (1986)
12. Balian, R., Bloch, C.: Distribution of eigenfrequencies for the wave equation in a finite domain. Ann. Phys. **69**, 76–160 (1972)
13. Balian, R., Bloch, C.: Distribution of eigenfrequencies for the wave equation in a finite domain. Ann. Phys. **85**, 514–545 (1974)
14. Bander, M., Itzykson, C.: Group theory and the hydrogen atom. Rev. Mod. Phys. **38**, 330–345 (1966)
15. Bargmann, V.: Irreducible unitary representations of the Lorentz group. Ann. Math. (2) **48**, 568–640 (1947)
16. Bargmann, V.: On unitary ray representations of continuous groups. Ann. Math. (2) **59**, 1–46 (1954)
17. Bargmann, V.: On a Hilbert space of analytic functions. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. **14**, 187–214 (1961)
18. Beals, R.: Propagation des singularités pour des opérateurs. In: Journées E.D.P Saint Jean de Monts, conf., No. 19 (1980)
19. Berezin, F.A.: The Method of Second Quantization. Academic Press, New York (1966)
20. Berezin, F.A.: General concept of quantization. Commun. Math. Phys. **40**, 153–174 (1975)


M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*, Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0, 

21. Berezin, F.A.: Models of Gross–Neveu type are quantization of a classical mechanics with nonlinear phase space. Commun. Math. Phys. **63**, 131–153 (1978)
22. Berezin, F.A.: Introduction to Superanalysis. Reidel, Dordrecht (1987)
23. Berezin, F.A., Shubin, M.A.: The Schrödinger Equation. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht (1991)
24. Berry, M.: Quantal phase factors accompanying adiabatic changes. Proc. R. Soc. Lond. Ser. A, Math. Phys. Sci. **292**, 47–57 (1984)
25. Bertrand, J., Irac-Astaud, M.: Characterization of su(1,1) coherent states in terms of affine wavelets. J. Phys. A, Math. Gen. **35**, 7347–7357 (2002)
26. Bily, J.M.: Propagation d'états cohérents et applications. Ph.D. thesis, Université de Nantes (2001)
27. Bonechi, F., De Bièvre, S.: Controlling strong scarring for quantized ergodic toral automorphisms. Duke Math. J. **117**, 571–587 (2003)
28. Bouclet, J.M., De Bièvre, S.: Long time propagation and control on scarring for perturbed quantized hyperbolic toral automorphism. Ann. Henri Poincaré **6**, 885–913 (2005)
29. Bouzouina, A.: Comportement semi-classique de symplectomorphismes du tore quantifiés. Ph.D. thesis, Université de Paris-Dauphine (1997)
30. Bouzouina, A., De Bièvre, S.: Equipartition of the eigenfunctions of quantized ergodic maps on the torus. Commun. Math. Phys. **178**, 83–105 (1996)
31. Bouzouina, A., Robert, D.: Uniform semiclassical estimates for the propagation of quantum observables. Duke Math. J. **111**, 223–252 (2002)
32. Boya, L.J., Perelomov, A.M., Santander, M.: Berry phase in homogeneous Kähler manifolds with linear Hamiltonians. J. Math. Phys. **42**(11), 5130–5142 (2001)
33. Bratteli, O., Robinson, D.W.: Operator Algebra and Quantum Statistical Mechanics II. Springer, New York (1981)
34. Brocker, T., tom Dieck, T.: Representations of compact Lie groups. In: Graduate Texts in Mathematics vol. 17, pp. 7–87. Springer, New York (2007)
35. Burq, N.: Mesures semi-clasiques et mesures de Défaut. In: Séminaire N. Bourbaki (1996–1997)
36. Buser, P.: Geometry and spectra of compact Riemann surfaces. In: Geometry and Spectra of Compact Riemann Surfaces. Progress in Mathematics, vol. 106. Birkhäuser, Boston (1992)
37. Cahill, K.E., Glauber, R.Y.: Density operators for fermions. Phys. Rev. A **59**(2), 1538–1555 (1999)
38. Cassanas, R.: Hamiltoniens quantiques et symétries. Ph.D. thesis, Université de Nantes (2005)
39. Cesari, L.: Asymptotic Behaviour and Stability Problems in Ordinary Differential Equations. Springer, Berlin (1963)
40. Charbonnel, A.M., Popov, G.: Semiclassical asymptotics for several commuting operators. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **24**, 283–323 (1998)
41. Chazarain, J.: Formule de Poisson pour les variétés riemanniennes. Invent. Math. **24**, 65–82 (1974)
42. Chazarain, J.: Spectre d'un hamiltonien quantique et mécanique classique. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **6**, 595–644 (1980)
43. Chen, L., Oon Lee, J.: Rate of convergence in non linear Hartree dynamics with factorized initial data. J. Math. Phys. **52**, 1–25 (2011)
44. Colin de Verdière, Y.: Spectre du Laplacien et longueurs des géodésiques périodiques I. Comment. Math. Helv. **27**, 83–106 (1973)
45. Colin de Verdière, Y.: Equipartition of the eigenfunctions of quantized ergodic maps on the torus. Commun. Math. Phys. **102**, 497–502 (1985)
46. Colin de Verdière, Y.: Bohr–Sommerfeld rules to all orders. Ann. Henri Poincaré **6**(5), 925–936 (2005)
47. Combescure, M.: A quantum particle in a quadrupole radio-frequency trap. Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré. Phys. Théor. **44**, 293–314 (1986)

48. Combescure, M.: A generalized coherent state approach of the quantum dynamics for suitable time-dependent Hamiltonians. In: Journées Equations aux Dérivées Partielles, Saint-Jean-de-Monts (1992)
49. Combescure, M.: The squeezed states approach of a semi-classical limit of the time dependent Schrödinger equation. J. Math. Phys. **33**, 3870–3880 (1992)
50. Combescure, M.: Circulant matrices, Gauss sums and mutually unbiased bases, I. The prime number case. CUBO **11**, 73–86 (2009)
51. Combescure, M., Robert, D.: Semiclassical spreading of quantum wavepackets an applications near unstable fixed points of the classical flow. Asymptot. Anal. **14**, 377–404 (1997)
52. Combescure, M., Robert, D.: Quadratic quantum hamiltonians revisited. CUBO **8**(1), 61–86 (2006)
53. Combescure, M., Ralston, J., Robert, D.: A proof of the Gutzwiller semi-classical formula using coherent states decomposition. Commun. Math. Phys. **202**, 463–480 (1999)
54. Cordoba, A., Fefferman, C.: Wave packets and Fourier integral operators. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **3**(11), 979–1005 (1978)
55. Cornfeld, I.P., Fomin, S.V., Sinai, Y.G.: Ergodic Theory. Springer, Berlin (1982)
56. Courant, R., Hilbert, D.: Methods of Mathematical Physics. Wiley, New York (1966)
57. Davis, P.: Circulant Matrices. Wiley, New York (1979)
58. De Bièvre, S., Faure, F., Nonnenmacher, S.: Scarred eigenstates for quantum cat maps of minimal periods. Commun. Math. Phys. **239**, 449–492 (2003)
59. De Bièvre, S., Degli Esposti, M., Giachetti, R.: Quantization of a class of piecewise affine transformations of the torus. Commun. Math. Phys. **176**, 73–94 (1995)
60. De Gosson, M.: Maslov Classes, Metaplectic Representation and Lagrangian Quantization. Akademie Verlag, Berlin (1997)
61. De Gosson, M.: The Weyl representation of metaplectic operators. Lett. Math. Phys. **72**, 129–142 (2005)
62. De Witt, B.: Supermanifolds. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge (1984)
63. Degli Esposti, M.: Quantization of the orientation preserving automorphism of the torus. Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré. Phys. Théor. **58**, 323–341 (1993)
64. Degli Esposti, M., Graffi, S., Isola, S.: Stochastic properties of the quantum Arnold's cat in the classical limit. Commun. Math. Phys. **176**, 73–94 (1995)
65. Deligne, P., Etingof, P., Freed, D., Kazhdan, D., Morgan, J., Morrison, D., Witten, E.: Quantum Fields and Strings: a Course for Mathematicians, vol. 1. AMS, Providence (1999)
66. Derezinski, J., Gérard, C.: Scattering Theory of Classical and Quantum $n$-Particle Systems. Springer, Berlin (1997)
67. Derezinski, J., Napiorkowski, M., Solovej, J.P.: On the minimization of Hamiltonians over pure Gaussian states. arXiv:1102.2931 [math-ph] (2011)
68. Dimassi, M., Sjöstrand, J.: Spectral Asymptotics in the Semi-classical Limit. Lecture Note Series, vol. 268. Lond. Math. Soc., London (1999)
69. Dirac, P.A.: Lectures on Quantum Mechanics. Dover, Princeton (2001)
70. Dozias, S.: Opérateurs h-pseudodifférentiels à flot périodique. Ph.D. thesis, Université de Paris-Nord (1994)
71. Duistermaat, J.J., Guillemin, V.: The spectrum of positive elliptic operators and periodic bicharacteristics. Invent. Math. **29**, 39–79 (1975)
72. Duistermaat, J.J., Kolk, J.A.C.: Lie Groups. Springer, New York (1999)
73. Egorov, Y.V.: On canonical transformations of pseudodifferential operators. Usp. Mat. Nauk **25**, 235–236 (1969)
74. Ehrenfest, P.: Bemerkungüber die angenaherte gultigkeit der klassischen mechanik innerhalb der quantenmechanik. Z. Phys. **45**, 455–456 (1927) (Remarks on the approximate validity of classical mechanics in quantum mechanics)
75. Erikson, F.: On the measure of solid angles. Math. Mag. **63**, 184–185 (1999)
76. Fedosov, B.: Deformation Quantization and Index Theory. Akademie Verlag, Berlin (1996)
77. Folland, G.B.: Harmonic Analysis in the Phase Space. Princeton University Press, Princeton (1989)

78. Folland, G.B.: Quantum Field Theory. Mathematical Surveys and Monographs. Am. Math. Soc., Providence (2008)
79. Galaviz, I., Garcia-Compean, H., Przanowski, M., Turrubiates, F.J.: Weyl–Wigner–Moyal formalism for Fermi classical systems. Ann. Phys. **323**, 267–290 (2008)
80. Gazeau, J.-P.: Coherent States in Quantum Physics. Wiley-VCH, Berlin (2009)
81. Gelfand, I., Neumark, M.: Unitary representations of the Lorentz group. Acad. Sci. USSR J. Phys. **X**(3), 93–94 (1946)
82. Gérard, P.: Microlocal defect measures. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **16**, 1761–1794 (1991)
83. Gérard, P., Leichtnam, E.: Ergodic properties of the eigenfunctions for the Dirichlet problem. Commun. Math. Phys. **71**, 559–607 (1993)
84. Gilmore, R.: Geometry of symmetrized states. Ann. Phys. (NY) **74**, 391–463 (1972)
85. Gilmore, R.: On properties of coherent states. Rev. Mex. Fis. **23**, 143–187 (1974)
86. Ginibre, J., Velo, G.: The classical field limit of scattering theory of non relativistic many bosons systems. II. Commun. Math. Phys. **68**, 45–68 (1979)
87. Ginibre, J., Velo, G.: The classical field limit of non relativistic bosons. I. Borel summability for bounded potentials. Ann. Phys. **128**(2), 243–285 (1980)
88. Ginibre, J., Velo, G.: The classical field limit of non relativistic bosons systems, II. Asymptotic expansions for general potentials. Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré. Phys. Théor. **33**, 363–394 (1980)
89. Ginibre, J., Velo, G.: On a class of non linear Schrödinger equation with non local interactions. Math. Z. **170**, 109–136 (1980)
90. Glauber, R.: Coherent and incoherent states of the radiation field. Phys. Rev. **131**, 2766–2788 (1963)
91. Glauber, R.: The quantum theory of optical coherence. Phys. Rev. **130**, 2529–2539 (1963)
92. Goldstein, H.: Classical Mechanics. Addison-Wesley, Reading (1980)
93. Grossmann, A., Morlet, J., Paul, T.: Transforms associated to square integrable group representations. I. General results. J. Math. Phys. **26**, 2473–2479 (1985)
94. Guichardet, A.: Histoire d'un vecteur tricentenaire. Gaz. Math. **117**, 23–33 (2008)
95. Guillemin, V., Sternberg, S.: Geometric Asymptotics. Mathematical Surveys, vol. 14. AMS, Providence (1977)
96. Guillemin, V., Uribe, A.: Circular symmetry and the trace formula. Invent. Math. **96**, 385–423 (1989)
97. Gutzwiller, M.: Periodic orbits and classical quantization conditions. J. Math. Phys. **12**, 343–358 (1971)
98. Gutzwiller, M.: Chaos in Classical and Quantum Mechanics. Springer, Berlin (1991)
99. Hagedorn, G.: Semiclassical quantum mechanics III. Ann. Phys. **135**, 58–70 (1981)
100. Hagedorn, G.: Semiclassical quantum mechanics IV. Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré. Phys. Théor. **42**, 363–374 (1985)
101. Hagedorn, G., Joye, A.: Semiclassical dynamics with exponentially small estimates. Commun. Math. Phys. **207**, 439–465 (1999)
102. Hagedorn, G., Joye, A.: Exponentially accurate semi-classical dynamics: propagation, localization, Ehrenfest times, scattering and more general states. Ann. Henri Poincaré **1–5**, 837–883 (2000)
103. Hall, K.R., Meyer, G.R.: Introduction to Hamiltonian Dynamical Systems and the N-body problem. Applied Mathematical Sciences, vol. 90. Springer, Berlin (1991)
104. Hannay, J., Berry, M.: Ergodic properties of the eigenfunctions for the Dirichlet problem. Physica D **1**, 267–291 (1993)
105. Helein, F.: A representation formula for maps on supermanifolds. J. Math. Phys. **49**, 1–19 (2008)
106. Helffer, B., Martinez, A., Robert, D.: Ergodicité et limite semi-classique. Commun. Math. Phys. **109**, 313–326 (1987)
107. Helffer, B., Robert, D.: Calcul fonctionnel par la transformation de Mellin et opérateurs admissibles. J. Funct. Anal. **53**(3), 246–268 (1983)
108. Helffer, B., Robert, D.: Puits de potentiels généralisés et asymptotique semi-classique. Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré. Phys. Théor. **41**, 291–331 (1984)

109. Helffer, B., Sjöstrand, J.: Multiple wells in the semi-classical limit I. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **9**, 337–408 (1984)
110. Heller, E.J.: Time dependent approach to semiclassical dynamics. J. Chem. Phys. **62**, 1544–1555 (1975)
111. Heller, E.J.: Quantum localization and the rate of exploration of phase space. Phys. Rev. A **35**, 1360–1370 (1987)
112. Henneaux, M., Teitelboim, C.: Quantization of Gauge Systems. Princeton University Press, Princeton (1994)
113. Hepp, K.: The classical limit of quantum mechanical correlation functions. Commun. Math. Phys. **35**, 265–277 (1974)
114. Hirshfeld, A., Henselder, P.: Deformation quantization for systems with fermions. Ann. Phys. **302**, 59–77 (2002)
115. Hislop, P., Sigal, M.: Introduction to Spectral Theory. Applied Mathematical Sciences, vol. 113. Springer, Berlin (1996)
116. Hörmander, L.: The spectral function of an elliptic operator. Acta Math. **121**, 173–218 (1968)
117. Hörmander, L.: The Analysis of Linear Partial Differential Operators. Grundlehren der Mathematischen Wissenschaften, vol. 256. Springer, Berlin (1983)
118. Hörmander, L.: Symplectic classification of quadratic forms and general Melher formulas. Math. Z. **219**, 413–449 (1995)
119. Howland, J.: Two Problems with Time-Dependent Hamiltonians. Lecture Notes in Physics, vol. 130 (1980)
120. Hudson, R.L.: When is the Wigner quasi-probability non negative? Rep. Math. Phys. **6**, 249–252 (1974)
121. Inönü, E., Wigner, E.: On the contraction of groups and their representations. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **39**, 510–524 (1953)
122. Ivrii, V.: Microlocal Analysis and Precise Spectral Asymptotics. Springer, Berlin (1998)
123. Katok, A., Hasselblatt, B.: Introduction to the Modern Theory of Dynamical Systems. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge (1995)
124. Keller, J.B., Streifer, W.: Complex rays with an application to Gaussian beams. J. Opt. Soc. Am. **61**, 40–43 (1971)
125. Khuat-Duy, D.: Formule des traces semi-classique pour un énergie critique et construction de quasi-modes à l'aide d'états cohérents. Ph.D. thesis, Université de Paris-Dauphine (1996)
126. Klauder, J.R., Skagerstam, B.S.: Coherent States. World Scientific, Singapore (1985)
127. Knapp, A.W.: Representation Theory of Semisimple Groups. Princeton Mathematical Series, vol. 36. Princeton University Press, Princeton (1986). An overview based on examples
128. Knapp, A.W.: Lie Groups Beyond an Introduction. Princeton Mathematical Series, vol. 36. Birkhäuser, Boston (1996). An overview based on examples
129. Knapp, A.W., Trapa, P.E.: Representations of semisimple Lie groups. In: Representation Theory of Lie groups, Park City, UT, 1998. IAS/Park City Math. Ser., vol. 8, pp. 7–87. Am. Math. Soc., Providence (2000)
130. Kosmann-Schwarzbach, Y.: Groups and Symmetries. Universitext. Springer, New York (2010). From finite groups to Lie groups, Translated from the 2006 French 2nd edition by Stephanie Frank Singer
131. Leboeuf, P., Voros, A.: Chaos-revealing multiplicative representation of quantum eigenstates. J. Phys. A **23**, 1165–1174 (1990)
132. Leites, D.A.: Introduction to the theory of supermanifolds. Russ. Math. Surv. **35**, 3–57 (1980)
133. Leray, J.: Lagrangian Analysis and Quantum Mechanics. MIT, Cambridge (1981)
134. Leray, J.: Lagrangian Analysis and Quantum Mechanics. A Mathematical Structure Related to Asymptotic Expansions and the Maslov Index. MIT Press, Boston (1981) (trans. from French)
135. Lerner, N.: The Wick calculus of pseudo-differential operators and some of its applications. CUBO **5**(1), 213–236 (2003)

136. Lieb, E.H.: The classical limit of quantum spin systems. Commun. Math. Phys. **31**, 327–340 (1973)
137. Lions, P.L., Paul, T.: Sur les mesures de Wigner. Rev. Mat. Iberoam. **9**, 553–618 (1993)
138. Littlejohn, R.: The semiclassical evolution of wavepackets. Phys. Rep. **138**, 193–291 (1986)
139. Maas, H.: Siegel's Modular Forms and Dirichlet Series. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. 216. Springer, Berlin (1971)
140. Manè, R.: Ergodic Theory and Differentiable Dynamics. Springer, Berlin (1987)
141. Martinez, A.: An Introduction to Semiclassical and Microlocal Analysis. Universitext. Springer, New York (2002)
142. McLachland, N.W.: Theory and Application of Mathieu Functions. Oxford University Press, New York (1947)
143. Mehlig, B., Wilkinson, M.: Semiclassical trace formula using coherent states. Ann. Phys. (Leipz.) **10**, 501 (2001)
144. Meinrenken, E.: Semi-classical principal symbols and Gutzwiller's trace formula. Rep. Math. Phys. **31**, 279–295 (1992)
145. Moyal, J.E.: Quantum mechanics as a statistical theory. Proc. Camb. Philos. Soc. **45**, 99–124 (1959)
146. Mukada, N., Aravind, P., Simon, R.: Wigner rotations, Bargmann invariants and geometric phases. J. Phys. A, Math. Gen. **36**, 2347–2370 (2003)
147. Muller, C.: Spherical harmonics. In: Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. 17, pp. 7–87. Springer, New York (1966)
148. Onofri, E.: A note on coherent state representations of Lie groups. J. Math. Phys. **16**, 1087–1089 (1975)
149. Pancharatnam, S.: Generalized theory of interference and its applications. Proc. Indian Acad. Sci., Sect. A, Phys. Sci. **44**, 247–262 (1956)
150. Paul, T., Uribe, A.: Sur la formule semi-classique des traces. C. R. Math. Acad. Sci. Ser. I, Math. **313**(1), 217–222 (1991)
151. Paul, T., Uribe, A.: A construction of quasi-modes using coherent states. Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré. Phys. Théor. **59**(4), 357–381 (1993)
152. Paul, T., Uribe, A.: The semiclassical trace formula and propagation of wave packets. Commun. Math. Phys. **132**, 192–242 (1995)
153. Paul, T., Uribe, A.: On the pointwise behavior of semiclassical measures. Commun. Math. Phys. **175**, 229–256 (1996)
154. Pauli, W.: General Principles of Quantum Mechanics. Springer, Berlin (1980). Translated from the German by P. Achuthan and K. Venkatesan, with an introduction by Charles P. Enz
155. Perelomov, A.M.: Coherent states for arbitrary Lie group. Commun. Math. Phys. **26**, 222–236 (1972)
156. Perelomov, A.M.: Generalized Coherent States and Their Applications. Texts and Monographs in Physics. Springer, Berlin (1986)
157. Petkov, V., Popov, G.: Semiclassical trace formula and clustering of eigenvalues for Schrödinger operators. Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré. Phys. Théor. **68**, 17–83 (1998)
158. Petkov, V., Robert, D.: Asymptotique semiclassique du spectre d'hamiltoniens quantiques et trajectoires classiques périodiques. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **10**, 365–390 (1985)
159. Ralston, J.: On the construction of quasimodes associated with stable periodic orbits. Commun. Math. Phys. **51**, 219–242 (1976)
160. Ralston, J.: Gaussian beams and propagation of singularities. In: Studies in Partial Differential Equations. MAA Stud. Math., vol. 23, pp. 246–248 (1982)
161. Ramis, J.P.: Les séries k-sommables et leurs approximations. In: Analysis, Microlocal Calculus and Relativistic Quantum Theory, Proceedings, Les Houches, 1979. Lecture Notes in Physics, vol. 126, pp. 178–199. Springer, Berlin (1980)
162. Reed, M., Simon, B.: Fourier-Analysis. Self-Adjointness. Academic Press, New York (1979)
163. Robert, D.: Autour de L'approximation Semi-classique. Progress in Mathematics, vol. 68. Birkhäuser, Basel (1987)

164. Robert, D.: Propagation of coherent states in quantum mechanics and applications. In: Wang, X.P., et al. (ed.) Partial Differential Equations and Applications. Proceedings of the CIMPA School, Lanzhou, China, July 2004. Société Mathématique de France, Paris (2004). Sémin. Congr. **15**, 181–252 (2007)
165. Robert, D., Tamura, H.: Asymptotic behavior of scattering amplitudes on semi-classical and low energy limits. Ann. Inst. Fourier **39**, 155–192 (1989)
166. Robin, J., Salamon, D.: The Maslov index for path. Topology **32**, 827–844 (1993)
167. Robinson, S.L.: The semiclassical limit of the quantum dynamics II: Scattering theory. Ann. Inst. Henri Poincaré **48**, 281–296 (1988)
168. Rodnianski, I., Schlein, B.: Quantum fluctuations and rate of convergence towards mean field dynamics. Commun. Math. Phys. **291**, 31–61 (2009)
169. Rogers, A.: Supermanifolds. Theory and Applications. World Scientific, Singapore (2007)
170. Rudin, W.: Real and Complex Analysis. McGraw-Hill, New York (1966)
171. Ruelle, D.: Statistical Mechanics. Benjamin, New York (1969)
172. Sattinger, D.H.: Lie Groups and Algebras with Applications to Physics, Geometry and Mechanics. Springer, New York (1986)
173. Schlichenmaier, M.: Berezin–Toeplitz quantization for compact Kähler manifolds. A review of results. Adv. Math. Phys. **2010**, 1–38 (2010)
174. Schnirelman, A.: Ergodic properties of eigenfunctions. Usp. Mat. Nauk **29**, 181–182 (1974)
175. Schrödinger, E.: Der stetige übergang von der Mikro- zur Makromechanik. Naturwissenschaften **14**, 664–666 (1926)
176. Schrödinger, E.: Further studies on solving eigenvalue problems by factorization. Proc. R. Ir. Acad., A Math. Phys. Sci. **46**, 183–206 (1940)
177. Simon, B.: The classical limit of quantum partition functions. Commun. Math. Phys. **71**, 247–276 (1980)
178. Sjöstrand, J.: Propagation of analytic singularities for second order Dirichlet problems. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **5**(1), 41–95 (1980)
179. Sjöstrand, J.: Singularités analytiques microlocales. Astérisque **95** (1982)
180. Sokal, A.: An improvement of Watson's theorem on Borel summability. J. Math. Phys. **21**, 261–263 (1980)
181. Soto, F., Claverie, P.: When are the Wigner function of multidimensional system non negative? J. Math. Phys. **24**, 97–100 (1983)
182. Takhtajan, L.A.: Quantum mechanics for mathematicians. In: Quantum Mechanics for Mathematicians. Graduate Studies in Mathematics, vol. 95. AMS, Providence (2008)
183. Tataru, D.: Phase space transform and microlocal analysis. Publ. Cent. Ri. Mat. Ennio Giorgi, pp. 505–524 (2004)
184. Thaller, B.: The Dirac Operator. Springer, Berlin (1990)
185. Thomas, L.E., Villegas-Blas, C.: Asymptotics of Rydberg states for the hydrogen atom. Commun. Math. Phys. **187**, 623–645 (1997)
186. Unterberger, A.: Oscillateur harmonique et opérateurs pseudo-différentiels. Ann. Inst. Fourier **XXXIX**(3), 201–221 (1979)
187. Unterberger, A.: Quantization: some problems, tools, and applications. In: Contemp. Math., vol. 212, pp. 285–298. AMS, Providence (1998)
188. Unterberger, A., Unterberger, J.: Representations of sl(2,r) and symbolic calculi. Integral Equ. Oper. Theory **18**, 303–334 (1994)
189. Uribe, A.: A symbol calculus for a class of pseudodifferential operators on $S^n$ and band asymptotics. J. Funct. Anal. **59**, 535–556 (1984)
190. Varadarajan, V.S.: Supersymmetry for Mathematicians: An Introduction. Am. Math. Soc., Providence (2004)
191. Villegas-Blas, C.: The Laplacian on the n-sphere, the hydrogen atom and the Bargmann space representation. Ph.D. thesis, Mathematics Department, University of Virginia (1996)
192. Wang, X.P.: Time-delay operators in semiclassical limit II. Short range potentials. Trans. Am. Math. Soc. **322**, 1509–1563 (1990)
193. Weil, A.: Sur certains groupes d'opérateurs unitaires. Acta Math. **111**, 143–211 (1964)

194. Weinberg, S.: The Quantum Theory of Fields, Vols. I, II, III. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge (1995)
195. Weinstein, A.: Asymptotics of the eigenvalues clusters for the Laplacian plus a potential. Duke Math. J. **44**, 883–892 (1977)
196. Weyl, H.: The Classical Groups. Princeton Landmarks in Mathematics. Princeton University Press, Princeton (1997). Their invariants and representations, Fifteenth printing, Princeton Paperbacks
197. Wigner, E.: On unitary representations of the inhomogeneous Lorentz group. Ann. Math. (2) **40**(1), 149–204 (1939)
198. Wigner, E.P.: Group Theory and Its Applications to Quantum Mechanics of Atomic Spectra. Academic Press, New York (1959)
199. Wilkinson, M.: A semi-classical sum rule for matrix elements of classically chaotic systems. J. Phys. A, Math. Gen. **20**, 2415–2423 (1987)
200. Witten, E.: Supersymmetry and Morse theory. J. Differ. Geom. **17**, 661–692 (1982)
201. Woodhouse, N.M.J.: Geometric Quantization. Clarendon, Oxford (1991)
202. Yajima, K.: Scattering theory for Schrödinger equations with potentials periodic in time. J. Math. Soc. Jpn. **29**, 729–743 (1977)
203. Yajima, K.: The quasiclassical limit of quantum scattering theory. Commun. Math. Phys. **69**, 101–129 (1979)
204. Yajima, K.: Existence of solutions for Schrödinger evolution equations. Commun. Math. Phys. **110**, 415–426 (1987)
205. Yajima, K.: Schrödinger evolution equations with magnetic fields. J. Anal. Math. **56**, 29–76 (1991)
206. Zelditch, S.: Uniform distribution of the eigenfunctions on compact hyperbolic surfaces. Duke Math. J. **55**, 919–941 (1987)
207. Zinn-Justin, J.: Intégrale de Chemin en Mécanique Quantique: Introduction. CNRS Editions/EDP Sciences, Paris (2003)

# Index




M. Combescure, D. Robert, *Coherent States and Applications in Mathematical Physics*,
Theoretical and Mathematical Physics,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-0196-0,